



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

Chap. RB 25 Copyright No. ....

Shelf. D33

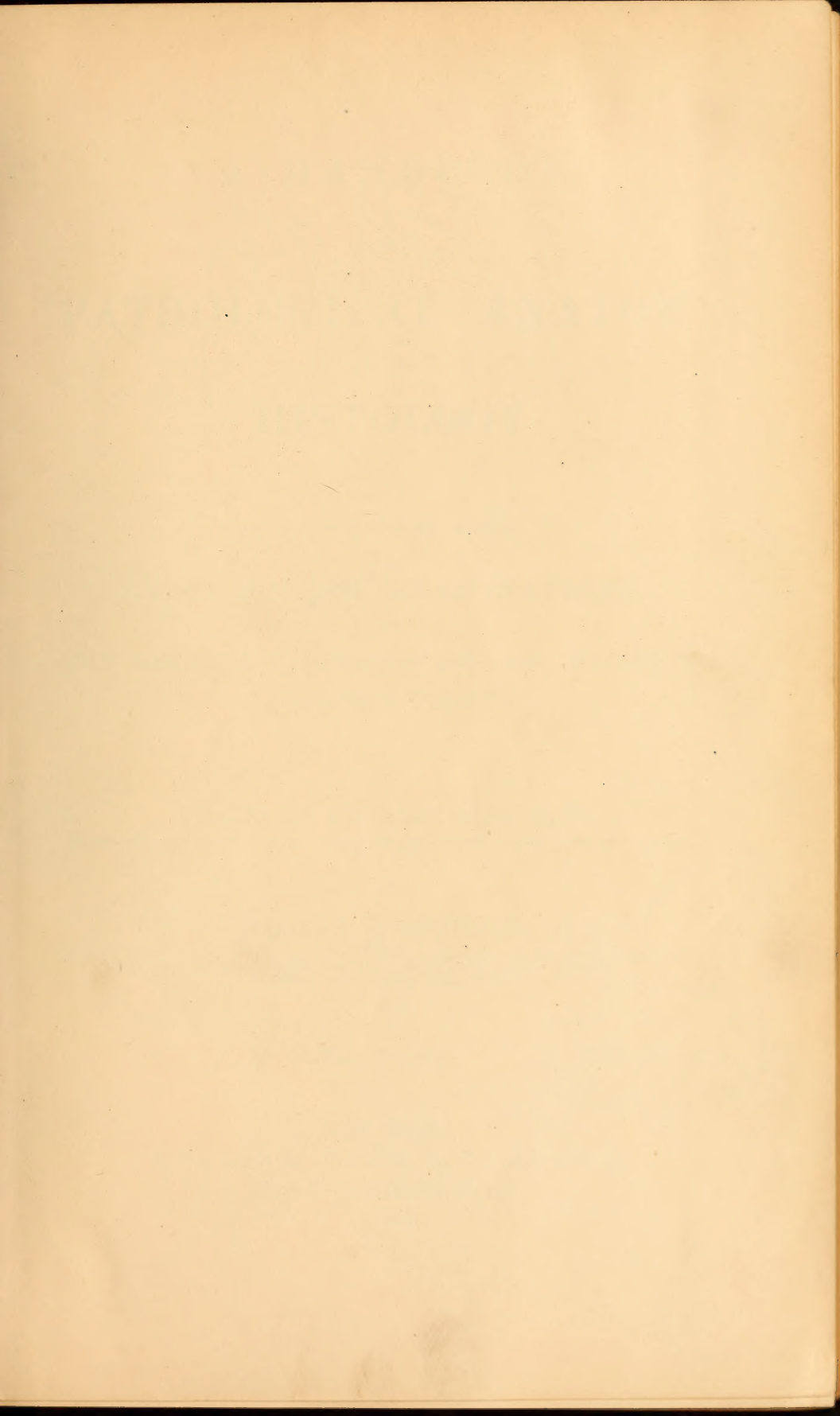
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.











1802.1.14



A HANDBOOK  
OF  
PATHOLOGICAL ANATOMY  
AND  
HISTOLOGY

WITH AN INTRODUCTORY SECTION ON  
POST-MORTEM EXAMINATIONS  
AND  
THE METHODS OF PRESERVING AND EXAMINING  
DISEASED TISSUES

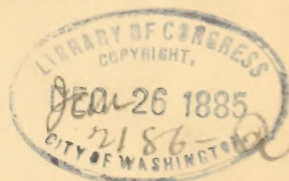
<sup>10</sup>  
4162  
BY  
FRANCIS DELAFIELD, M.D.,

PROFESSOR OF PATHOLOGY AND PRACTICAL MEDICINE, COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS AND SURGEONS,  
NEW YORK,

AND

T. MITCHELL PRUDDEN, M.D.,

DIRECTOR OF THE PHYSIOLOGICAL AND PATHOLOGICAL LABORATORY OF THE ALUMNI ASSOCIATION OF  
THE COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS AND SURGEONS, NEW YORK. LECTURER  
ON NORMAL HISTOLOGY IN YALE COLLEGE



---

NEW YORK  
WILLIAM WOOD & COMPANY  
56 & 58 LAFAYETTE PLACE  
1885

RB 25-

D 33

COPYRIGHT BY

WILLIAM WOOD & COMPANY.

1885.



D. H. S. f. t. 12, 06 A. E. B. Apr 25/13

## PREFACE

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

---

THE first edition of this work was intended to serve as a guide for those persons who might have to perform post-mortem examinations.

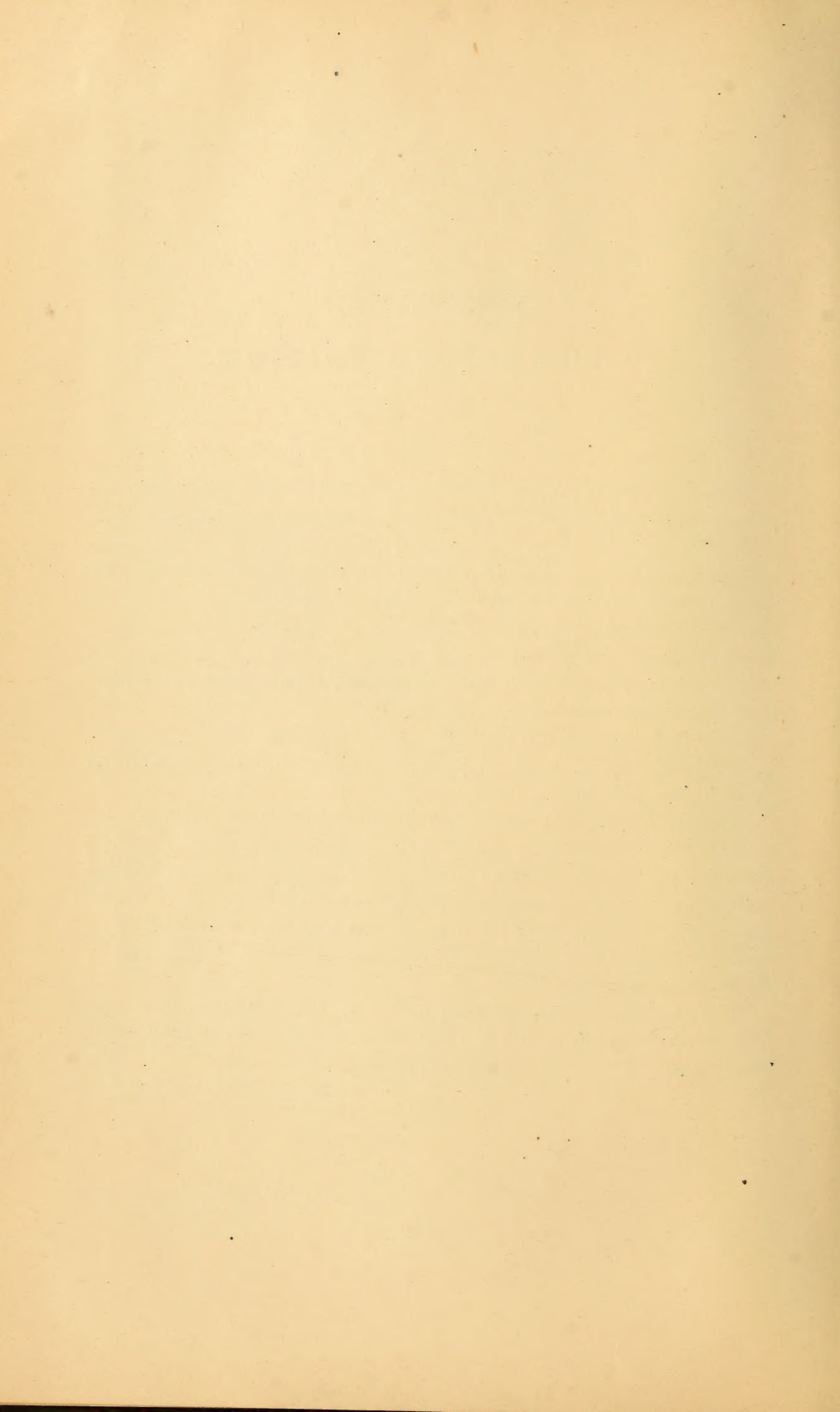
In this second edition, the scope of the work has been very much extended. It is now intended to supply all the needs of students and practitioners who wish to add a knowledge of the lesions of disease to that of its clinical symptoms. The point of view of the work, therefore, is that of the physician who wishes to find out what are the lesions of the diseases which he is in the habit of seeing, rather than that of the pure pathologist.

In order to accomplish this task more effectually, I have associated with myself Dr. T. Mitchell Prudden, and the book represents the result of our joint labors.

The work comprises instruction in the methods of making post-mortem examinations, of preserving diseased tissues, and of preparing them for microscopical examination, and of preparing and examining bacteria; an account of such general processes as inflammation and degeneration; a description of tumors, of the lesions of all the different parts of the body, of the general diseases, of violent deaths, and of deaths from poisoning.

The illustrations have all been drawn by Dr. Prudden and myself from actual specimens, and the drawings reproduced and reduced in size by one of the photographic processes.

FRANCIS DELAFIELD.





# CONTENTS.

---

## PART FIRST.

### THE METHOD OF MAKING POST-MORTEM EXAMINATIONS AND OF PRESERVING DISEASED TISSUES.

The objects of making post-mortem examinations. Causes of death, 3.—EXTERNAL INSPECTION, 4.—Cadaveric lividity, 4.—Putrefactive changes, 5.—Cooling of the body, 5.—Rigor mortis, 6.—Contusions, 7.—Wounds, fractures, scars, and tattoo marks, 8.—INTERNAL EXAMINATION, 8.—*The Head*, 9.—Removal of calvarium, 9.—The dura mater, 10.—The pia mater, 10.—The brain, 11.—Base of the cranium, 13.—Hardening and preserving the tissues for microscopical examination, 13.—*The Spinal Cord*, 14.—Preservation of cord and membranes, 14.—*The Thorax and Abdomen*, 15.—General inspection of abdominal cavity, 15.—The heart, 17.—The pericardium, 18.—The pleural cavities, 20.—Preservation of heart, 20.—The lungs, 20.—Preservation of lungs and bronchi, 21.—Pharynx, larynx, and œsophagus, 22.—Preservation of larynx and trachea, 22.—*The Abdomen*. Kidneys, 23.—Suprarenal capsules, 24.—Preservation of kidney, 24.—The spleen, 25.—Preservation of suprarenal capsules and spleen, 25.—Intestines, 25.—Preservation of intestines and stomach, 26 and 27.—Stomach and duodenum, 27.—Liver, 28.—Preservation of liver, 28.—Pancreas, 28.—Preservation of pancreas, 29.—*Genito-urinary Organs*. Male organs, 29.—Female organs, 29.—Bladder, 30.—Uterus, 30.—Preservation of generative organs, 29 and 31.—Ovaries and Fallopian tubes, 31.

AUTOPSIES IN CASES OF SUSPECTED POISONING, 32 and 573.

EXAMINATION OF THE BODIES OF NEW-BORN CHILDREN. *General Inspection*, 32.—*Internal Examination*, 36.—The head, 36.—The spinal cord and thorax, 37.—The abdomen, 38.—Preservation of foetal and young tissues, 39.

GENERAL METHODS OF PRESERVING TISSUES AND PREPARING THEM FOR STUDY 40.—Fresh tissues, 40.—Decalcifying, 40.—Hardening and preservation, 41.—Chromic acid mixture, 41.—Osmic acid, 42.—Embedding and section-cutting, 42.—Staining, 44.—Preservation of museum specimens, 44.

## PART SECOND.

MORBID CHANGES IN THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD.—CHANGES IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD.—DEGENERATIONS.—ANIMAL PARASITES AND BACTERIA.—INFLAMMATIONS.—TUMORS.

MORBID CHANGES IN THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD. Hyperæmia an

- Anæmia, 49.—Hemorrhage and transudation, 49.—Thrombosis and embolism, 51.
- CHANGES IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD. Coagulability of the blood, anhydræmia and hydræmia, 55.—Leucocytosis, leukæmia, melanæmia, 56.—Foreign bodies in blood, 57.
- DEGENERATIVE CHANGES IN THE TISSUES. Necrosis and coagulation necrosis, 59.—Cheesy degeneration, 60.—Parenchymatous degeneration, fatty degeneration, and fatty infiltration, 60.—Amyloid degeneration, 61. Corpora amylacea, 62.—Mucoid, colloid, and hyalin degeneration, 63.—Calcareous degeneration and pigmentation, 64.
- ANIMAL PARASITES. PROTOZOA, 66.—Amœba, psorospermiae, Cercomonas intestinalis, Trichomonas vaginalis, 66.—Ciliated infusoria, 67.—WORMS, 67.—*Trematoda* (flukes). *Distoma hepaticum*; *D. lanceolatum*, *D. sinense*, *D. hæmatobium*, 67.—*Cestoda* (tape-worms), 67.—*Tænia solium*, 67.—*T. mediocanellata*, *T. echinococcus*, 68.—*Echinococcus multilocularis*, 70.—*Tænia nana*, *T. flavopunctata*, *T. madagascariensis*, *T. cucumerina*, 71.—*Bothriocephalus latus*, 71.—*Nematoda* (round-worms), 71.—*Ascaris lumbricoides*, 71.—*A. maritima*, *A. mystax*, 72.—*Oxyuris vermicularis*, *Strongylus gigas*, *Dochmius duodenalis*, *Tricocephalus dispar*, 72.—*Trichina spiralis*, 73.—*Filaria medinensis*, 74.—*Filaria sanguinis hominis*, 75.—*Rhabdonema strongyloides*, 75.—Methods of study and preparation of internal parasites, 75.—Bibliography of animal parasites, 76.
- PARASITIC FUNGI. Moulds and yeasts, *Achorion Schönleinii*, *Trichophyton tonsurans*, *Microsporon furfur*, *Aspergillus*, 76.—*Oidium albicans*, *Actinomyces*, 77.
- BACTERIA. Morphology and physiology, 77.—Classification of bacteria, 79.—*Sphero-bacteria*, Micrococcus, Diplococcus, Chromogenous micrococci, 79.—Zymogenous micrococci, Pathogenous micrococci, 80.—*Micro-bacteria*, 81.—Chromogenous, Zymogenous and Pathogenous bacteria, 81.—*Desmo-bacteria*, 82.—Zymogenous bacilli, 82.—Pathogenous bacilli, 82, 83.—*Leptothrix*, 84.—*Spiro-bacteria*, 84, 85.
- RELATIONS OF BACTERIA TO DISEASE, 85, 86, 87.
- Methods of studying bacteria*, 88.—Staining bacteria in fluids, 89.—Staining bacteria in sections of tissues, 90.—Artificial cultivation of bacteria, 91.—Preparation of culture substances, 92.—Sterilized potatoes, 92.—Sterilized gelatin bouillon, 93.—Gelatinized blood-serum, 94.—Agar-agar or Japanese isinglass, 94.—Bibliography of vegetable parasites, 95.
- INFLAMMATION, 96.—*Inflammation of connective tissue*, classification, 96.—Cellular inflammation, 97.—Inflammation with production of serum, fibrin, and pus, 98.—Abscesses, 99.—Inflammation with production of serum, fibrin, pus, and new connective tissue, 100.—Granulation tissue, 100.—Inflammation with production of connective tissue, 102.—Tubercular inflammation, 102.—Syphilitic inflammation, 103.
- Inflammation of Mucous Membranes*, 106.—Catarrhal inflammation, 106.—Purulent inflammation, 107.—Croupous inflammation, 108.—Tubercular inflammation, 109.—Syphilitic inflammation, 109.—*Inflammation of the Viscera*, 110.—Parenchymatous inflammation, 110.—Interstitial inflammation, 110.—Diffuse inflammation, 111.
- TUMORS, 112.—*General characters*, 112, 113, 114, 115.—*Cause of tumors*, 116.—*Classification of tumors*, 117.—*Cysts*, 118.—*Nomenclature of complex tumors*, 120.—*Special forms of tumors*, 121.—Fibroma, 121.—Myxoma, 122.—Sarcoma



124.—Endothelioma, 132.—Lipoma, 133.—Chondroma, 133.—Osteoma, 134.—Glioma, 135.—Myoma, 136.—Neuroma, 138.—Angioma, 138.—Lymphangioma, 140.—Epithelial tumors, 140.—Adenoma, 142.—Carcinoma, 144.—Bibliography of tumors, 153.

## PART THIRD.

### MORBID ANATOMY OF THE ORGANS.

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM, 157.—THE MEMBRANES OF THE BRAIN, 157.—*Dura mater*, 157.—Hemorrhages, 157.—Thrombosis of venous sinuses, 157.—Inflammation, 158.—Tumors, 161.—*Pia mater*, 161.—Structure, 161.—Hyperæmia, cedema, and hemorrhage, 163.—Inflammation, 163.—Acute meningitis, 164.—Cellular meningitis, 164.—Exudative meningitis, 165.—Chronic meningitis, 167.—Tubercular meningitis, 167.—Syphilitic meningitis, 171.—Tumors and parasites, 171.—*Ventricles of the brain*, 171.—Ependyma and choroid plexus, 171.—Acute ependymitis, 172.—Chronic ependymitis, 172.—Congenital hydrocephalus, 173.—Secondary hydrocephalus, 173.—Primary hydrocephalus in adults, 174.—Tumors, 174.—*Pineal gland*, 174.—*Pituitary body*, 175.

THE BRAIN, 175.—Thrombosis and embolism, 175.—Hyperæmia, 177.—Anæmia, cedema, and hemorrhage, 178.—Apoplectic foci, 179.—Secondary degenerations, 180.—Inflammations, 181.—Inflammatory softenings, 181.—Abscesses, 181.—Chronic interstitial encephalitis (sclerosis), 182.—Wounds, 183.—Encephalitis in new-born, 183.—Holes or cysts in brain, 184.—Syphilitic and tubercular encephalitis, 185.—Lesions of brain in chronic paralysis of insane, 186.—Hypertrophy, 186.—Atrophy and pigmentation, 187.—Tumors, 187.—Parasites, 188.—Malformations, 188.

SPINAL CORD, 190.—*Dura mater spinalis*, hemorrhage and inflammation, 190.—Tumors and parasites, 190.—*Pia mater spinalis*, 191.—Hemorrhages, inflammations, and tumors, 191.—*The cord*, 192.—Hemorrhage, injuries, and secondary degenerations, 192.—Descending gray degeneration, 193.—Ascending gray degeneration, 193.—Inflammation, 194.—Acute myelitis, 194.—Poliomyelitis anterior, 195.—Chronic myelitis, chronic interstitial myelitis, 196.—Chronic transverse myelitis, 196.—Multiple sclerosis, 196.—Posterior spinal sclerosis, 196.—Solitary tubercles, gummata, and cysts, 198.—Tumors, 198.—Malformations, 199.

THE PERIPHERAL NERVES, 200.—Changes after division, 200.—Acute neuritis, 201.—Chronic neuritis, 201.—Syphilitic, leprous, and tubercular neuritis, 201.—Tumors, 201.

Preparation of nerve tissue for microscopical study, 202.

THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM. *Larynx and Trachea*, 205.—Malformations, 205.—Acute catarrhal laryngitis and tracheitis, 205.—Chronic catarrhal and croupous laryngitis, 206.—Cedema glottidis, 206.—Perichondritis and syphilitic laryngitis, 206.—Tubercular laryngitis and tumors, 207.

*Structure of lungs*, 207.—*The Pleura*. Hydrothorax and hemorrhage, 208.—Classification of inflammation, 209.—Pleurisy with production of fibrin, 209.—Pleurisy with production of fibrin and serum, 209.—Pleurisy with production of fibrin, serum, and pus (Empyema), 213.—Chronic pleurisy, 214.—Tubercular pleurisy, 215.—Tumors, 216.

*The Bronchi*, 217.—Acute catarrhal bronchitis, 217.—Capillary bronchitis, 217.—

Chronic catarrhal and croupous bronchitis and bronchiectasia, 218.—Tumors, 219.

*The Lungs*, 220.—Malformations, injuries, and perforations, 220.—Congestion, oedema, and hemorrhage, 221.—Emphysema, 222.—Atelectasis, 223.—Gangrene, 224.—Inflammation, classification, 224.—Acute lobar pneumonia, 225.—Secondary and complicating pneumonia, 230.—Pneumonia of heart disease, 231.—Broncho-pneumonia, 232.—Interstitial pneumonia, 235.—Syphilitic pneumonia, 236.—Acute miliary tuberculosis, 237.—Chronic miliary tuberculosis, 241.—Acute phthisis, 243.—Chronic phthisis, 245.—Tumors, 250.—Parasites, 251.

*Mediastinum*, 251.—Inflammation, 251.—Tumors, 252.

THE VASCULAR SYSTEM. THE HEART. *Pericardium*, 254.—Injuries, dropsy, hemorrhage, 254.—Pneumonosis and inflammation, 255.—Pericarditis with production of fibrin, serum, and pus, 255.—Tubercular pericarditis and tumors, 256.—*The Heart*. Malformations, 256.—Changes in position, wounds, and ruptures, 258.—Atrophy, 259.—Hypertrophy, 260.—Dilatation, 261.—Degeneration, 262.—Inflammation, 264.—Acute endocarditis, 264.—Malignant endocarditis, 265.—Chronic endocarditis, 266.—Tubercular endocarditis, 267.—Degenerations and myocarditis, 267.—Changes in the valves, 268.—Aneurism and thrombosis of the heart, 269.—Tumors and parasites.

THE BLOOD-VESSELS, 270.—Atrophy, hypertrophy, and degeneration, 270.—*The arteries*. Inflammation, 271.—Acute arteritis, 271.—Chronic arteritis, 272.—Dilatation and aneurism, 275.—Aneurism of the different arteries, 276.—Stenosis, 277.—Ruptures and wounds, 278.—*The veins*. Dilatation, 280.—Wounds and rupture, 281.—Inflammation, 282.—Tumors and parasites, 283.—*The capillaries*, 283.—THE LYMPH-VESSELS, 283.—Inflammation, 284.—Lymphangiectasis; Tumors, 285.—THE LYMPH-GLANDS, 285.—Inflammation, 286.—Acute inflammation, 286.—Chronic inflammation, 287.—Pigmentation, 287.—Inflammation with cheesy degeneration, 288.—Tubercular inflammation, 289.—Syphilitic inflammation, 290.—Degenerations, 290.—Hyperplasia, 291.—Tumors, 292.

THE ALIMENTARY CANAL, 293.—*The Mouth*; Malformations, 293.—Hypertrophy of cheeks and lips, 294.—Inflammation, 294.—Stomatitis; stomatitis ulcerosa, 294.—Gangrene, 295.—Syphilitic and tubercular stomatitis, 295.—Tumors, 295.—*The Tongue*; malformations, 296.—Hypertrophy and inflammation, 296.—Tumors, 297.—*The Pharynx and Œsophagus*, 298.—Malformation and inflammation, 298.—Ulceration, 299.—Dilatation of Œsophagus, 299.—Stenosis, 300.—Tumors, 300.

*The Stomach*; Malformations, 302.—Post-mortem changes; injuries and hemorrhage, 303.—Inflammation, 304.—Ulcers, 306.—Dilatation, 309.—Tumors, 309.—Degenerations, 312.—*The Intestines*; Malformations, 312.—Incarceration, 333.—Intussusception, 314.—Transposition, wounds and ruptures, 315.—*The Small Intestine*; inflammation, 315.—Lesions of solitary and agminated glands, 316.—Emboli, 317.—*Large Intestines*; Inflammations, 317.—Tumors, 319.—Concretions, 320.—Parasites, 321.

THE PERITONEUM, 321.—Malformations, 322.—Inflammations; acute peritonitis, 322.—Cellular peritonitis, 323.—Exudative peritonitis, 324.—Chronic cellular peritonitis, 325.—Chronic peritonitis with adhesions, 326.—Chronic peritonitis with thickening of peritoneum, and with production of serum, fibrin, and pus, 328.—Hæmorrhagic peritonitis, 328.—Tubercular peritonitis, 329.—Tumors, 329.—Parasites, 332.

- THE LIVER ;** Malformations, 333.—Acquired changes in size and position, 333.—Anæmia and hyperæmia, 334.—Wounds, rupture and hemorrhage, 336.—Lesions of hepatic artery, 336.—Lesions of portal vein, 336.—Lesions of hepatic veins, 338.—Atrophy of liver; degenerations, 338.—Pigmentation, 341.—Acute yellow atrophy, 342.—Inflammation; acute hepatitis (abscess), 343.—Chronic interstitial hepatitis (cirrhosis), 344.—Syphilitic hepatitis, 348.—Tubercular hepatitis, 349.—Perihepatitis, 350.—Hyperplasia of lymphatic tissue in the liver, 351.—Tumors, 351.—Parasites, 353.
- The Biliary Passages and Gall-Bladder ;* Catarrhal inflammation, 356.—Suppurative and croupous inflammation, 356.—Constriction, occlusion, and dilatation, 357.—Biliary calculi, 357.—Tumors, 359.
- THE SPLEEN ;** Wounds, rupture and hemorrhage, 360.—Disturbances of the circulation, 361.—Inflammation; acute hyperplastic splenitis, 362.—Suppurative and indurative splenitis, 363.—Syphilitic splenitis, 364.—Tubercular splenitis, 365.—Perisplenitis, 365.—Alterations of spleen in leukæmia and pseudo-leukæmia, 365.—Degenerations, 366.—Tumors, parasites, malformations, and displacements, 367.
- THE PANCREAS ;** Hemorrhage and inflammation, 369.—Degenerations, 370.—Tumors, 371.—Malformations and displacements, 372.
- THE SALIVARY GLANDS ;** Inflammation, 373.—Tumors and parasites, 374.
- THE THYROID GLAND ;** Hyperæmia, inflammation, degenerations, and tumors, 375.—Parasites, 376.
- THE SUPRA-RENAL CAPSULES ;** Malformations, hemorrhage, thrombosis, inflammation and degeneration, 377.—Tumors, 378.
- THE URINARY APPARATUS, 379.—*The Kidneys ;*** Malformations and changes in position, 379.—Bright's Disease, classification, 380.—Congestion, 380.—Acute parenchymatous nephritis, 381.—Chronic parenchymatous nephritis, 382.—Acute diffuse nephritis, 383.—Chronic diffuse nephritis, 383.—Acute interstitial nephritis, 386.—Chronic interstitial nephritis, 387.—Fatty infiltration: suppurative and pyelo-nephritis, 388.—Chronic pyelo-nephritis and nephrophthisis, 389.—Embolism and thrombosis, 390.—Hydronephrosis, 390.—Cystic kidneys, 391.—Perinephritis, 392.—Renal calculi, 392.—Tumors, 393.—Parasites, 394.
- The Urinary Bladder ;* Malformations, 395.—Changes in size and position: rupture and perforation, 396.—Disturbances of circulation, 397.—Inflammation: acute catarrhal cystitis, 397.—Chronic cystitis, 398.—Croupous and tubercular cystitis, 398.—Tumors, 399.—Parasites, foreign bodies, and calculi, 400.
- The Urethra ;* Congenital malformations, and changes in size and position, 401.—Strictures, wounds, ruptures and perforations, 402.—Inflammation: catarrhal urethritis, gonorrhœa, 403.—Croupous, syphilitic, and tubercular urethritis, 404.—Tumors, 404.
- THE ORGANS OF GENERATION, 405.—FEMALE. *The Vulva ;*** malformations, hemorrhage, and hyperæmia, 405.—Edema, inflammations, gangrene, lupus, and tumors, 406.—Cysts, 407.
- The Vagina ;* Malformations, 407.—Changes in size and position: wounds and perforations, 408 ; Inflammations and gangrene, 409.—Tumors and parasites, 410.—*The Uterus ;* Malformations, 410.—Changes in size, 411.—Changes in position, 412.—Rupture, perforation, hyperæmia, and hemorrhage, 414.—Inflammation, 415.—Puerperal inflammation, 417.—Ulceration and degeneration, 418.—Tumors, 419.—Parasites and cysts, 423.—*The Ovaries ;* malformations, 423.—Changes in size and position, hyperæmia, hemorrhage, and



- inflammation, 424.—Tumors, 425.—Cysts, 426, 429.—*The Fallopian Tubes*; Malformations, changes in size and position, and hemorrhage, 430.—Inflammation and tumors, 431.—Extrauterine pregnancy, 432.—*The Placenta*; hemorrhage and inflammation, 433.—Degenerations, 434.
- MALE. *The Penis*; Malformations, 434.—Inflammation, 435.—Tumors, 436.—*The Scrotum*, 437.—*The Testicles*; Malformations, 437.—Hydrocele, 438.—Spermatocele, hæmatocele, and inflammation, 439.—Tumors, 441.—Cysts and parasites, 442.—*The Seminal Vesicles*, 442.—*The Prostate*; hypertrophy, atrophy, and inflammation, 443.—Tumors, parasites, and concretions, 444.
- The Mamma*; Malformations, 444.—Hemorrhage and inflammation, 445.—Tumors, 446. *The male mamma*, 449.
- THE BONES; disturbances of circulation, 450.—Wounds, fractures, and dislocations, 451.—Inflammation; periostitis, 451.—Osteitis, 453.—Congenital syphilis, 457.—Osteomyelitis, 459.—Necrosis, 460.—Caries, 461.—Rachitis, 462.—Osteomalacia, 464.—Alterations of marrow in leukæmia and pseudo-leukæmia, 464.—Alterations of marrow in anæmia, 465.—Atrophy, 466.—Tumors, 466.—Parasites, 469.
- THE JOINTS; Inflammations, 470.—Tumors and foreign bodies, 473.
- MUSCLE; *Voluntary striated*, 475.—Hemorrhage, embolism, wounds, and ruptures, 475.—Inflammation, 475.—Degenerative changes, 478.—Tumors, 481.—Parasites, 482.

## PART FOUR.

### THE LESIONS FOUND IN THE GENERAL DISEASES; IN POISONING, AND IN VIOLENT DEATHS.

- TYPHOID FEVER. *I. Primary or Characteristic Lesions*, 485.—*The Intestines*, 485.—Lesions of the lymph follicles, 485.—Gangrene, 487.—Croupous inflammation, peritonitis, infarctions in the organs and hemorrhages, 488.—*Mesenteric glands and spleen*, 488.—*Secondary Lesions*, 489.—The mouth, pharynx, parotid, pancreas, liver, and heart, 489.—The arteries, veins, larynx, lungs, kidneys, ovaries, testicles, brain and voluntary muscles, 480.—The skin, 491.—Bacilli of typhoid fever, 491.—Staining the bacilli, 492.
- TYPHUS FEVER, 493.
- RELAPSING FEVER, 494.—*Spirochaete Obermeieri*, 495.
- EPIDEMIC CEREBRO-SPINAL MENINGITIS, 496.—Relations of bacteria to the disease and literature, 497.
- DIPHTHERIA, 498.
- YELLOW FEVER, 500.
- CHOLERA. Lesions in skin, brain, lungs, heart, peritoneum, stomach and intestines, 501.—Lesions in liver, spleen, kidneys, uterus and ovaries, 502. Relations of bacteria to cholera, 502.—Method of staining and cultivating the bacteria of cholera, 503.
- TUBERCULOSIS, 504.—General and localized tuberculosis, 505.—Lesions of tuberculosis, 506.—Tubercle bacilli, 507.—Methods of staining the tubercle bacilli, 509.—Cultures of tubercle bacilli, and references to literature, 511.
- PYÆMIA; its nature and varieties, 512.—Micrococci of pyæmia, 514.
- GLANDERS (Farcy), 515.—Bacilli of glanders, 516.
- HYDROPHOBIA, 517.
- LUPUS, 518.

- LEPROSY, structure of its lesions, 520.—The bacilli of leprosy, 521.
- ERYSIPELAS, the character of its lesions, and the micrococci present in them, 522, 523.
- ANTHRAX; its lesions and bacilli, 524, 525.
- THE MALARIAL FEVERS; their lesions and relations to bacteria, 526, 527.
- DISEASES CHARACTERIZED BY ALTERATIONS IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD; CHLOROSIS, PERNICIOUS ANÆMIA, and ADDISON'S DISEASE, 528.—Addison's Disease, the lesions in skin, brain, heart, sympathetic nerves, supra-renal capsules, and blood, 529.
- LEUKÆMIA, 530.
- PSEUDO-LEUKÆMIA (*Hodgkin's Disease*), 530.—SCORBUTUS, 531.—PURPURA, 531.—HÆMATOPHILIA, 532.
- GOUT, 533.
- DIABETES, 534.
- SUNSTROKE, 535.
- DEATH FROM BURNING, 536.
- DEATH FROM LIGHTNING, 537.
- DEATH FROM SUFFOCATION, ASPHYXIA, 538.—*Death from Strangulation, Hanging*, 539.—*Death from Drowning*, 540.—External examination, 540.—Internal examination, 541.
- DEATH FROM POISONING, 543.—Sulphuric acid, 543.—Nitric acid, 544.—Hydrochloric, oxalic, and tartaric acids, 545.—Potash and soda, and their carbonates, 545.—Ammonia, potassium nitrate and phosphorus, 546.—Arsenic, 547.—Corrosive sublimate, lead and copper, 549.—Tartar emetic, vegetable irritants, cantharides, opium, and poisonous fungi, 550.—Hydrocyanic and carbonic acids, and alcohol, 551.—Chloroform and ether, 552.—Chloral hydrate, strychnia, nux vomica, conium, aconite, belladonna, lobelia, digitalis, stramonium, carbonic oxide, and carbonic acid, 553.





## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

---

FIG.	PAGE.
1. Side view of human brain, showing its fissures and convolutions . . . . .	11
2. Head of <i>Tænia solium</i> . . . . .	68
3. Head and proglottides of <i>Tænia mediocanellata</i> . . . . .	68
4. Cuticula of echinococcus cyst . . . . .	69
5. Scolices of <i>tænia echinococcus</i> . . . . .	69
6. Hooklets from scolex of <i>tænia echinococcus</i> . . . . .	70
7. Trichinæ, encysted in muscle . . . . .	73
8. <i>Filaria sanguinis hominis</i> . . . . .	75
9. Sphero-bacteria (genus <i>Micrococcus</i> ) . . . . .	80
10. Micro-bacteria (genus <i>Bacterium</i> ) . . . . .	81
11. Desmo-bacteria (genus <i>Bacillus</i> ), <i>B. anthracis</i> . . . . .	82
12. <i>Leptothrix buccalis</i> and micrococci from mouth . . . . .	84
13. Spiro-bacteria (genus <i>Spirillum</i> ) . . . . .	84
14. Colonies of micrococci in the blood-vessels of the kidney in pyæmia . . . . .	86
15. Cellular peritonitis in omentum of dog . . . . .	97
16. Emigration of white blood-cells in inflamed bladder of frog . . . . .	98
17. Granulation tissue in wound of skin . . . . .	100
18. Developing blood-vessels in new-formed tissue . . . . .	101
19. Cicatricial tissue . . . . .	101
20. Tubercle tissue in acute phthisis . . . . .	102
21. Tubercle granulum from pleura . . . . .	103
22. Tubercle granulum, from lymphatic gland . . . . .	104
23. Tubercle granulum and diffuse tubercle tissue from chronic phthisis . . . . .	104
24. Pus cells from bronchitis . . . . .	107
25. Croupous inflammation of trachea . . . . .	108
26. Fibroma of abdominal wall . . . . .	121
27. Myxoma of subcutaneous tissue of back . . . . .	122
28. Myxoma with fatty degeneration of cells . . . . .	123
29. Large spindle-celled sarcoma of humerus . . . . .	125
30. Small spindle-celled sarcoma of forearm . . . . .	126
31. Small round-celled sarcoma of liver . . . . .	126
32. Large round-celled sarcoma of leg . . . . .	127
33. Melano-sarcoma of submaxillary region . . . . .	127
34. Giant-celled sarcoma of bone . . . . .	128
35. Angio-sarcoma of liver . . . . .	129
36. Myxo-sarcoma of pharynx . . . . .	130
37. Adeno-sarcoma of parotid . . . . .	131

FIG.	PAGE
38. Endothelioma of dura mater . . . . .	132
39. Chondroma of subcutaneous tissue . . . . .	134
40. Myxo-chondroma of cervical region . . . . .	134
41. Neuroglia or "spider cells" from glioma of brain . . . . .	136
42. Myoma of uterus . . . . .	137
43. Angioma telangiectoides of skin . . . . .	139
44. Angioma cavernosum of liver . . . . .	139
45. Adenoma of mamma . . . . .	142
46. Adenoma of stomach . . . . .	143
47. Cancer cells infiltrating the tissue near a tumor . . . . .	145
48. Metastatic carcinoma in lymph-vessels of pleura . . . . .	146
49. Epithelioma of neck . . . . .	147
50. Epithelioma of axillary lymph gland . . . . .	148
51. Epithelioma of back of hand . . . . .	148
52. Small epithelioma of side of nose . . . . .	149
53. Epithelioma of nose, highly magnified . . . . .	149
54. Carcinoma mammæ (scirrhous) . . . . .	150
55. Medullary carcinoma of stomach . . . . .	151
56. Colloid carcinoma of rectum . . . . .	152
57. Carcinoma myxomatodes of mamma . . . . .	152
58. Chronic pachymeningitis interna hemorrhagica . . . . .	159
59. Brain sand from pachymeningitis interna . . . . .	160
60. Cellular meningitis . . . . .	164
61. Acute purulent meningitis . . . . .	165
62. Fatty degeneration of cells in pia mater after meningitis . . . . .	166
63. Miliary tubercle of pia mater of child . . . . .	167
64. Miliary tubercle of pia mater . . . . .	168
65. Miliary tubercle around artery in brain . . . . .	169
66. Miliary tubercles of ependyma of lateral ventricles . . . . .	169
67. Miliary tubercle of ependyma highly magnified . . . . .	170
68. Congenital hydrocephalus of child . . . . .	173
69. Degenerated brain-tissue in embolic softening . . . . .	176
70. Fatty degeneration of blood-vessels in embolic softening of brain . . . . .	177
71. Syphilitic obliterating endarteritis of cerebral vessel . . . . .	184
72. Solitary tubercle of cerebellum . . . . .	185
73. Degenerated tissue in acute myelitis . . . . .	195
74. Posterior spinal sclerosis . . . . .	197
75. Posterior spinal sclerosis, highly magnified . . . . .	197
76. Multiple fibromata (false neuromata) of pneumogastric nerve . . . . .	201
77. Fibroma (false neuroma) of lumbar nerve . . . . .	202
78. Artificial pleurisy of dog, twenty-four hours' duration . . . . .	211
79. Artificial pleurisy of dog, fifth day . . . . .	212
80. Tubercular pleurisy . . . . .	215
81. Lobar pneumonia, red hepatization . . . . .	226
82. Acute lobar pneumonia with organized tissue in air spaces . . . . .	228
83. Organized tissue in air vesicle . . . . .	229
84. Pneumonia of heart disease . . . . .	231
85. Broncho-pneumonia of child . . . . .	233
86. Broncho-pneumonia of adult . . . . .	234
87. Interstitial pneumonia of chronic phthisis . . . . .	235
88. Interstitial syphilitic pneumonia . . . . .	263

FIG.		PAGE
89.	Miliary tubercle of lung . . . . .	238
90.	Miliary tubercle of lung . . . . .	239
91.	Composite miliary tubercle of lung . . . . .	240
92.	Bacilli of tuberculosis in miliary tubercle of child's lung . . . . .	240
93.	Chronic miliary tubercle . . . . .	241
94.	Aggregation of miliary tubercles in chronic miliary tuberculosis . . . . .	242
95.	Diffuse tubercular inflammation . . . . .	243
96.	Area of coagulation necrosis in acute phthisis . . . . .	245
97.	Tubercle tissue around area of coagulation necrosis . . . . .	246
98.	Fatty epithelium in air vesicle in chronic phthisis . . . . .	247
99.	Growth of connective tissue in an air vesicle in chronic phthisis . . . . .	248
100.	Growth of connective tissue in an air vesicle in chronic phthisis . . . . .	248
101.	Interstitial pneumonia of chronic phthisis . . . . .	249
102.	Primary carcinoma of lung . . . . .	250
103.	Fatty degeneration of heart muscle . . . . .	262
104.	Lipomatosis of heart . . . . .	263
105.	Micrococci in colonies in malignant endocarditis . . . . .	266
106.	Chronic endarteritis of cerebral artery . . . . .	272
107.	Chronic obliterating endarteritis . . . . .	273
108.	Atheroma of aorta . . . . .	273
109.	Diffuse sarcoma of pharynx . . . . .	302
110.	Acute cellular peritonitis, human omentum . . . . .	323
111.	Acute peritonitis, human omentum . . . . .	325
112.	Chronic cellular peritonitis, human omentum . . . . .	326
113.	Chronic peritonitis with adhesions . . . . .	327
114.	Retro-peritoneal sarcoma . . . . .	331
115.	Retro-peritoneal sarcoma . . . . .	331
116.	Chronic congestion of liver . . . . .	335
117.	Fatty infiltration of liver cells . . . . .	339
118.	Amyloid degeneration of liver capillaries . . . . .	340
119.	Chronic interstitial hepatitis . . . . .	345
120.	Chronic interstitial hepatitis, highly magnified . . . . .	346
121.	Small syphilitic tumor of liver . . . . .	348
122.	Gumma of liver . . . . .	349
123.	Echinococcus multilocularis of liver . . . . .	355
124.	Primary carcinoma of bile-duct . . . . .	358
125.	Acute parenchymatous nephritis . . . . .	381
126.	Acute diffuse nephritis . . . . .	383
127.	Waxy degeneration of vessels of glomeruli of kidney . . . . .	385
128.	Chronic diffuse nephritis, atrophied kidney . . . . .	385
129.	Acute interstitial nephritis . . . . .	387
130.	Cystic adenoma of ovary (papillary form) . . . . .	426
131.	Fatty cells from ovarian cyst . . . . .	428
132.	Chronic inflammation of mamma . . . . .	446
133.	Intra-canalicular fibroma of mamma . . . . .	447
134.	Rarefying osteitis, ulna of child . . . . .	454
135.	Condensing osteitis, ulna of child . . . . .	456
136.	Cells from marrow in leukæmia . . . . .	465
137.	Chronic interstitial myositis . . . . .	477
138.	Pseudo-hypertrophy of gastrocnemius muscle . . . . .	479
139.	Hyalin degeneration of muscle in typhoid fever . . . . .	481



FIG		PAGE
140.	Spirochæte Obermeieri of relapsing fever . . . . .	495
141.	Bacillus tuberculosis in sputa of chronic phthisis . . . . .	508
142.	Micrococci in exudation of pyæmic pleurisy . . . . .	513
143.	Lupus of face . . . . .	518
144.	Bacilli of Leprosy . . . . .	521
145.	Micrococci in vessels and lymph spaces in erysipelas . . . . .	522
146.	Bacillus anthracis in vessels of liver of mouse . . . . .	524

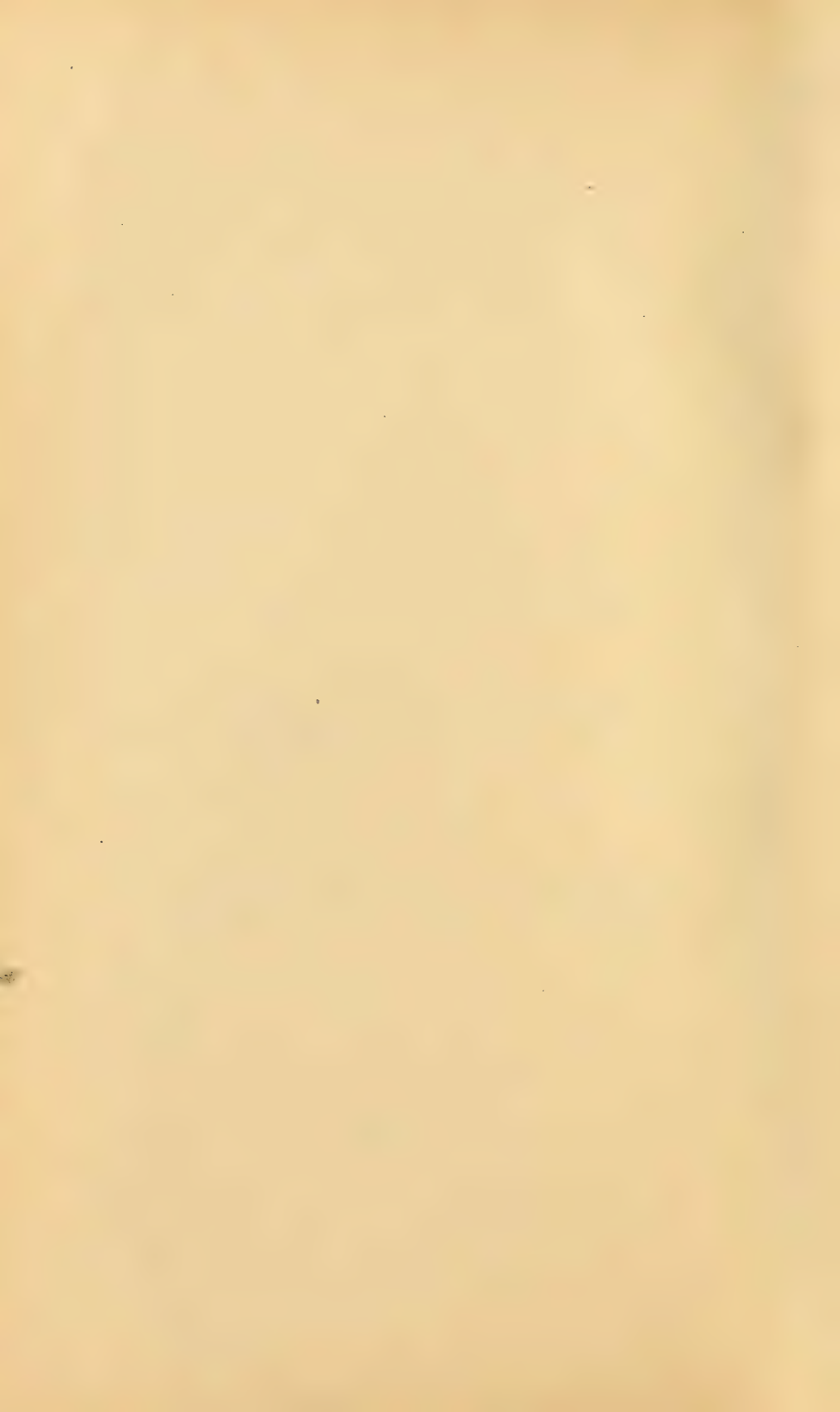
PART I.

THE METHOD OF MAKING

POST-MORTEM EXAMINATIONS

AND OF

PRESERVING DISEASED TISSUES.





# THE METHOD

## OF MAKING

### POST-MORTEM EXAMINATIONS.

---

THE particular object of making a post-mortem examination varies in different cases. It may be to determine whether a person has died from violence or poisoning; to account for a sudden death; or to study the lesions of disease. In any case the examination should embrace all the important parts of the body, not merely a suspected organ, and it should be recorded at the time it is made.

In endeavoring to ascertain the cause of death, when the clinical history is imperfect or unknown, great care is necessary. Mechanical causes of death, which destroy life by abolishing the function of one of the important viscera, only occur in a moderate number of cases. Most of the lesions which we find after death, rather indicate the disease than the cause of death. We do not know how great a degree of meningitis, or of pneumonia, or of endocarditis, or of cirrhosis, or of nephritis, necessarily causes death. On the contrary, we find that one patient recovers with an extent of lesion that is sufficient to destroy the life of another. So with accidents; there is often no evident reason why a fracture of the skull or of the pelvis should destroy life, but yet they usually do. In some of the general diseases, such as typhoid fever, the lesions cannot always be called the cause of death; in others, such as typhus fever, there may be no evident lesions at all. Sudden deaths of persons who have apparently been in good health up to the time of death are particularly obscure. In many of them we have to acknowledge that we can find no sufficient cause for the death. This is of course due to our imperfect knowledge. But it is much better in such cases to avow our ignorance than to attribute the death to some trifling lesion. The brain and the heart are the organs which are especially capable of giving symptoms during life

without corresponding lesions after death. Very well-marked cardiac or cerebral symptoms may continue for days or months, and apparently destroy life, and yet after death we find no corresponding anatomical changes. It is the novice in post-mortem examinations who is particularly apt to mistake ordinary post-mortem appearances for lesions.

#### EXTERNAL INSPECTION.

Before commencing the examination of the internal viscera, it is always necessary to make some inspection of the external surface of the body. The minuteness of this inspection will depend upon the character of the case: in the case of an unknown person, or of one suspected to have died from unnatural causes, it is necessary to search for and record, not only all contusions, wounds, etc., their size, situation, and condition, but also deformities from disease and any physical peculiarities of hair, eyes, teeth, moles, etc., by which the person may be identified. In such cases it is well, if possible, to have a photograph taken of the entire body. In ordinary examinations, we note the general nutritive condition of the body and look for evidences of external injury, for skin diseases, ulcers, œdema, gouty deposits, abscesses, enlarged lymphatic glands, etc. The glans penis and prepuce are to be carefully searched for syphilitic cicatrices.

It is usual to find certain changes in the external appearances of the body which are due to the cessation of life, and the commencement of decomposition. We speak now of bodies which have not been buried, but which have been kept in the ordinary way lying on the back and loosely covered with a shroud, or dressed with the ordinary clothes.

*Cadaveric Lividity.*—After life becomes extinct and before the blood coagulates it settles in the veins of the more dependent parts of the body, producing, usually within a few hours after death, a mottling of the surface with irregular livid patches. These patches may coalesce, forming a uniform dusky red color over the back of the trunk, head, and extremities, and sometimes over the ears, face, and neck. The same effect is observed on the anterior aspect of the body if it has lain on the face. At points of pressure, from folds in the clothes or from the weight of the body on the table, the red color is absent or less marked. These changes occur before putrefaction sets in. This cadaveric lividity or hypostasis should not be mistaken for ante-mortem ecchymosis, from which it may usually be readily distinguished by its position and extent, by the fact that the surface of the skin is not elevated, and by the fact that on incision no blood is found free in the interstices of the tissues. • Not infrequently the subcutaneous tissue in the vicinity of these post-mortem hypostases becomes infiltrated with reddish serum. Very soon after death, particularly in warm weather, the tissues immediately around the subcutaneous veins of the neck and thorax and in other situations may become stained

of a bluish-red color from the decomposition and escape from the vessels of the coloring matter of the blood. If the epidermis has been detached at any point, the skin beneath soon becomes dry and brown.

*Putrefactive Changes.*—Usually in from one to three days, depending upon circumstances, a greenish discoloration of the skin appears, at first upon the middle of the abdomen, over which it gradually spreads, assuming a deeper hue and often changing to a greenish purple or brown. Greenish patches may now appear on different parts of the body, earliest upon those overlying the internal cavities; this discoloration is probably produced by the action on the hæmoglobin of gases developed by decomposition. The eye-balls now become flaccid, and if the eye-lids are not closed, the conjunctiva and cornea become brown and dry. The pressure of gases developed by decomposition in the internal cavities, not infrequently forces a greater or less quantity of frothy reddish fluid or mucus from the mouth and nostrils; produces distention of the abdomen; and if excessive may produce changes of position of the blood in the vessels, and even a moderate amount of displacement of the internal organs.

After five or six days, under ordinary circumstances, the entire surface is discolored green or brown. After this the epidermis becomes loosened from the formation of gases and separation of fluids beneath, and the tissues become flaccid. The abdomen and thorax may be greatly distended, the features distorted and scarcely recognizable from swelling, and the hair and nails loosened. Beyond this stage of putrefaction, the consecutive changes, leading to more or less disintegration of the soft tissues, can scarcely be followed with certainty. The rapidity with which these changes follow one another depends upon a variety of conditions, such as temperature, moisture, access of air, and the diseases which have preceded or caused death. Thus an elevated temperature and the presence of air and moisture, hasten the advent and progress of putrefactive changes. The bodies of infants usually decompose more rapidly than those of adults, fat bodies more quickly than lean ones. The infectious diseases, intemperance, and the puerperal condition promote rapid decomposition; as does also death from suffocating gases. Poisoning by arsenic, alcohol, antimony, sulphuric acid, strychnine, and chloroform may retard the progress of decomposition. Burial in dry soil and submersion in water also retard the progress of decay.

*Cooling of the Body.*—The internal temperature of the healthy living body is about  $37.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ . ( $99.5^{\circ}\text{Fahr}$ ). But it may be increased several degrees in consequence of disease. After death, the chemical changes upon which the maintenance of this temperature depends, rapidly diminish, and the body gradually cools to the temperature of the surrounding medium. This usually occurs in from about fifteen to twenty hours, but the time required depends upon a variety of conditions. Immediately after death, there is, in nearly all cases, a slight elevation of internal tem-



perature, owing to the fact that the metabolic changes in the tissues still continue for a time, and the blood ceases to be cooled by passing through the lungs and peripheral capillaries. After death from certain diseases, yellow fever, cholera, rheumatic fever, and tetanus, a considerable elevation of internal temperature has been repeatedly observed. This post-mortem rise of temperature amounted in a case of rheumatism, reported by Dr. Davy, to  $7.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The time occupied by the cooling of the body may be prolonged after sudden death from accidents, acute diseases, apoplexy, and asphyxia. A number of cases are recorded in which the the body retained its heat for several days without known cause.

After death from wasting chronic disease, and in some cases after severe hemorrhages, the cooling of the body is very rapid, the external temperature being reduced to that of the surrounding air within four or five hours. Fat bodies cool less quickly than lean ones, the bodies of well-nourished adults less quickly than those of children or old persons. The temperature of the surrounding medium, the degree of protection of the body from currents of air, will, of course, modify the progress of cooling; and the internal organs retain their heat naturally longer than the surface of the body. The rate at which cooling occurs is most rapid, as a rule, during the hours immediately following death, notwithstanding the post-mortem rise which may ensue.

It will thus be seen that if required to pronounce upon the time which has elapsed since death in a given case, we can do so only approximately. It is necessary to take into account all of the above-mentioned conditions which modify the rate of cooling of the body, and then we may be able to state only the probabilities of the case. It is furthermore unsafe in any case to infer the cause of death from the rate of cooling of the body.

*Rigor Mortis*.—Death is usually succeeded immediately by a period of complete muscular relaxation; the jaw drops and the limbs become flaccid. The muscles may retain for two or three hours, however, the capacity of contracting on the application of appropriate stimuli. On the average within six hours, the muscles become firm and rigid. This post-mortem rigidity, called *rigor mortis*, is due, according to Kühne, to the coagulation of myosin or muscle fibrin. This substance is coagulated by weak acids. According to the theory of Kühne, acids are being constantly formed in and removed from the system during life. After death, however, these acids accumulate in the muscles, producing coagulation of myosin and consequent rigidity. On the occurrence of putrefaction at a later period, ammonia is developed, which dissolves the myosin and the flaccidity of decomposition ensues.

On the occurrence of the rigor mortis, the muscles become fixed in whatever position they may have had at the time of its occurrence. It usually begins in the muscles of the eyelids, extends to those of the back



of the neck and lower jaw, then to the face and neck, and thence passing downwards affects the muscles of the thorax and lower extremities. It usually disappears in the same order.

Although commencing on the average six hours after death, it may set in almost instantly, or it may be delayed for twenty-four hours or more. It may pass off very rapidly, in rare cases in from one to three hours; or it may persist for two or three weeks or longer. It may be said in general that the average time of its disappearance is within twenty-four or forty-eight hours after its occurrence, depending on temperature, its intensity, the mode of death, the period of its advent, etc. Caspar states that in foetuses before term he has never observed rigidity, and that in young children it is feeble and of short duration.

Its occurrence and phenomena may be in some cases of the highest medico-legal importance; but its careful observation does not, with our present knowledge of its significance, appear to essentially further the aims of the practical pathologist.<sup>1</sup>

*Contusions.*—It is often important to determine whether violence has been inflicted in a given body before death. In regard to this point, we must remember, first, that blows and falls of sufficient violence to fracture bones and rupture the viscera, may leave no marks on the skin, even though the person has survived for several days; and second, that there are post-mortem appearances which simulate ante-mortem bruises. A severe contusion during life may present, at first, no mark or only a general redness. After a short time, the injured part becomes swollen and of a red color; this color may be succeeded by a dark blue, and this in turn fade into a greenish-yellow or yellow; these later appearances are due to an escape of blood from the vessels and to a subsequent decomposition of hemoglobin. If therefore we cut into such an ecchymosis after death, we find extravasated blood or the coloring matter of the blood, in the form of pigment granules, free in the tissues. Post-mortem discolorations, on the other hand, although their external appearance may resemble that of ante-mortem ecchymosis, are not formed by an extravasation of blood, but by a circumscribed congestion of the vessels, or by an escape of blood-stained serum. If we cut into such discolorations, therefore, we find no blood outside the vessels.

Blows on the skin of a body which has not been dead for more than about two hours may produce true ecchymosis with extravasation of blood, such as can be distinguished with great difficulty or not at all from those formed during life. If putrefactive changes be present, the difficulty of distinguishing between ante-mortem and post-mortem bruises is greatly enhanced.

---

<sup>1</sup> For further details concerning rigor mortis, putrefactive changes, particularly the later stages, and the phenomena of cooling of the body, see Tidy, "Legal Medicine," vol. i., p. 52-120, or other works on medical jurisprudence.

Hanging and strangulation are attended with the formation of marks on the neck which are fully described in works on forensic medicine. These marks must not be confounded with the natural creases of the skin of the neck. Many adults during life have creases of the skin of the neck, one or more in number, running downwards from the ear under the chin or encircling the neck. After death these creases may be much more evident than during life, and may be rendered more decided by the position of the head, and the freezing of the body. They regularly persist until the skin putrefies.

*Wounds.*—We should notice the situation, extent, and direction of a wound; the condition of its edges and the surrounding tissues. If it be a deep penetrating wound, its course and extent should be ascertained by careful dissection rather than by use of a probe.

If the edges of a wound be inflamed and suppurating, or commencing to cicatrize, it must have been inflicted some time before death. In a wound inflicted a short time before death, the edges are usually everted; there may be more or less extravasation of blood into the surrounding tissues, and the vessels contain coagula; but sometimes none of these changes are observed. The chief characteristics of a wound inflicted after death are, absence of a considerable amount of bleeding, non-retraction of the edges, and the absence of extravasation of blood into the tissues. But a wound inflicted within two hours after death may resemble very closely one inflicted during life. In general, unless a wound is old enough for its edges to present inflammatory changes, we must be very careful in asserting its ante-mortem or post-mortem character.

*Fractures.*—It may be important to determine whether a bone was fractured before or after death. This point cannot always be decided. Fractures inflicted during life are, as a rule, attended with more extravasation of blood and evidences of reaction in the surrounding tissues; but fractures produced within a few hours after death may resemble these very closely. Usually a greater degree of force is necessary to fracture bones in the dead than in the living body.

*Scars and Tattoo Marks.*—The presence and character of cicatrices should be noticed. Scars produced by any considerable loss of substance may become very much smaller and less conspicuous, but never entirely disappear. Slight and superficial wounds, however, produce marks which may not be permanent. The discoloration produced by tattooing may, although rarely, disappear during life.

#### INTERNAL EXAMINATION.

After completing the external inspection of the body, we commence the internal examination. This examination should be made both thoroughly and rapidly, and, in order to effect this, we must follow a regular method. The method should be such as will enable us to examine

the relations of parts to one another, without seriously disturbing them, and to remove and inspect the organs in such an order and manner as will not interfere with the examination of parts which are to follow. In certain cases it may be necessary to depart from the regular method; but, as a rule, the following plan will be found most advantageous.

It is important to remember the difference between the distribution of the blood in the body during life and after death. During life, the blood is in constant motion and is distributed in a regular way in the heart, capillaries, arteries, and veins. Inflammations and obstructions to the circulation may disturb this natural distribution and produce congestion of particular parts of the body. After death, the blood ceases to circulate; it leaves the left cavities of the heart, the arteries and capillaries, and collects in the veins and the right cavities of the heart. According to the character of the disease which causes death, coagulation of the blood takes place more or less extensively and at an earlier or later period. The local congestions which existed during life often disappear after death. On the other hand, local congestions are found after death which did not exist during life. Thus, after death, the scalp often contains a large amount of venous blood. The veins of the pia mater and the sinuses of the dura mater may be filled with blood. The mucous membrane of the larynx and trachea may appear to be deeply congested. The lungs are congested, if the patient has been comatose for some hours before death. All the tissues of the back and the membranes of the spinal cord are often gorged with venous blood. The right auricle and ventricle of the heart may contain fluid or clotted blood in considerable quantity.

#### THE HEAD.

The scalp is divided by an incision across the vertex from ear to ear. The flaps are dissected forward and backward, taking up the temporal muscles with the skin, and leaving the pericranium attached to the bone. The internal surface of the scalp and the pericranium are to be searched for ecchymoses and inflammatory lesions. A circular incision is then made with a saw, and the roof of the cranium removed. The incision in front should pass through a point about three and one-half inches above the bridge of the nose, behind through the occipital protuberance. If fracture of the cranium be suspected, the bones should be sawn entirely through; if not, it is sufficient to saw partly through them and then separate the calvarium with a chisel. When the roof of the cranium is thus entirely loosened, a stout hook is introduced under the upper edge of the calvarium, and this is wrenched off with a jerk. Sometimes the dura mater is so adherent to the calvarium that the latter cannot be torn from it without injury to the brain. In this case, the dura mater should be cut through at the level of the cranial incision, and the brain removed with the calvarium.



We should notice whether or not the calvarium is symmetrical. The cranial bones increase in size by a growth of bone at the edges of the sutures. If any suture become completely ossified and closed prematurely, the bones will be unequally developed. The thickness and density of the cranial bones vary considerably within the limits of health. There are often deep depressions on the inner surface of the skull along the sagittal suture, caused by the pressure of the Pacchionian bodies, and of no pathological significance. We should observe the blood content of the bone, determine the existence or absence of fractures, inflammatory lesions, exostoses, etc.

*The Dura Mater* is now exposed to view. It will be found more or less adherent to the calvarium; a moderate amount of adherence, especially in old persons, does not denote disease. Very extensive and firm adhesions are usually produced by inflammation. Near the median line, the Pacchionian bodies often project through the dura mater and may produce indentations in the internal surface of the calvarium. We must look for clots and for tumors and for inflammatory lesions on the external surface of the dura mater. The longitudinal sinus should be laid open with the scissors, and its contents examined. A circular incision is then made through the dura mater in a line corresponding to the cranial incision; the falx is divided between the anterior lobes of the brain, and the entire membrane drawn back. We should observe the existence of abnormal adhesions of the dura mater to the pia mater, bearing in mind that a moderate amount of adhesion along the longitudinal fissure is normal. The internal surface of the dura mater is to be examined for the products of inflammation and for tumors.

*The Pia Mater* covering the convex surface of the brain is now exposed. The degree of congestion, and the existence of serum, pus, or blood, beneath, within, or upon it, are now to be ascertained before the brain is removed. The pia mater in old persons frequently loses its transparency and becomes thick and white; this change is most marked along the longitudinal fissure and large vessels. Marked and general thickening of the pia mater is produced by chronic inflammation. Along the longitudinal fissure, and sometimes at a considerable distance from it, we usually find small elevated whitish nodules, which are the *Pacchionian bodies* and are normal in the adult.

The amount of serum beneath the pia mater varies. A considerable amount, especially in cachectic persons, may exist without brain disease. Clear serum raising the pia mater and separating the convolutions of the brain may be simply dropsical, or due to chronic meningitis. Turbid and purulent serum, beneath and in the pia mater, are produced by acute or chronic meningitis. The degree of flatness of the surface of the convolutions should be observed before removing the brain; for, when marked, it affords an important indication of pressure, from hemorrhage, inflam-



matory products, internal fluid effusions, and tumors. The pia mater should be carefully examined for miliary tubercles.

*The Brain.*—After examining the convex surface of the brain, the anterior lobes of the cerebrum are to be pulled gently backwards, the nerves, vessels, and tentorium severed, and the medulla cut across as low down as possible. The brain is now removed from the cranium by passing the fingers of one hand down, beneath and behind the lobes of the cerebellum, and drawing the brain out, supporting the convexity with the other hand.

The adult brain in the male weighs on the average about 1,400 grms. ( $49\frac{1}{2}$  oz.); that of the female, about 155 grms. (5 oz.) less. The average proportional weight of the brain to that of the body is about  $\frac{1}{45}$ , although in this, as in the absolute weight, there is considerable variation.

The exact situation of any lesion which is apparent externally, should be described by its relation to the lobes, fissures, convolutions, and sulci.

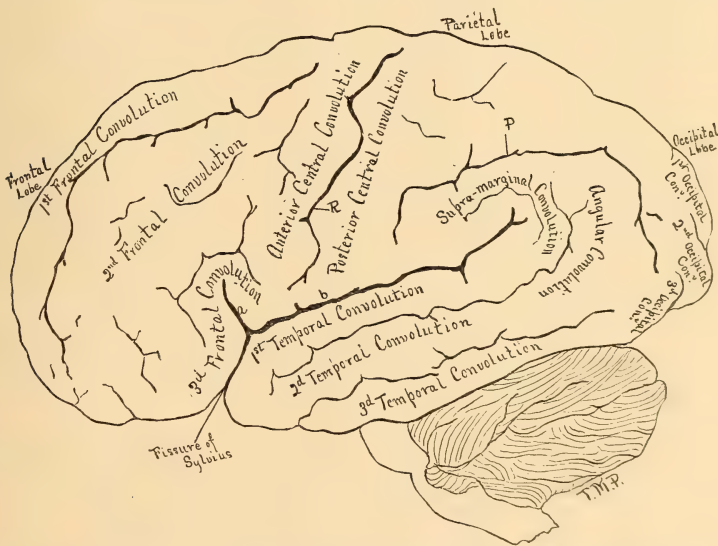


FIG. 1.—SIDE VIEW OF THE HUMAN BRAIN, SHOWING ITS FISSURES AND CONVOLUTIONS.

The brain is first laid upon its convex surface, and the anterior, middle, and posterior cerebral arteries, as well as the basilar and the carotids, are to be examined for emboli, thrombi, atheroma, and aneurisms. Extravasations of blood, tumors, and inflammatory lesions are now to be looked for. The brain is next turned over on to its base. An incision is made through the pia mater over the convex surface of the cerebrum. The membrane is stripped up, and its adherence to the brain and its thickness noted.

The halves of the cerebrum are then to be separated until the superior

surface of the corpus callosum is exposed. A longitudinal incision is made through the junction of the corpus callosum and the cerebrum, and downward into the ventricle.

The incision should be made carefully so as not to cut through the ventricle into the ganglia below. The incision thus made through the roof of the ventricle is prolonged backward and forward in the direction of the cornua so as to expose the entire ventricle. A longitudinal incision is then made outward and backward into the hemisphere, from the outer edge of the lateral ventricle, nearly to the pia mater. A second incision is then made through this cut surface outward, and this is repeated until the hemisphere is divided into a number of long prism-shaped pieces, held together by the pia mater and a small portion of the cortex.

The brain is now turned around so as to bring the other hemisphere under the hand, and the operation is repeated on the other side.

The size, shape, and contents of the ventricles should be noticed, and the thickness and appearance of the ependyma.

The fornix and the central portion of the corpus callosum are cut across by passing the point of the knife through the foramen of Munro and cutting upward. They are then drawn backward, one of the posterior cornua of the fornix being severed and laid to one side. The velum interpositum and the choroid plexus are now dissected up, the blood contents and the general appearance noted, and the third ventricle examined. Not infrequently small cysts of the choroid are found, which seem to have little or no pathological significance.

The fourth ventricle is now opened by a longitudinal incision through the vermiform process. Each hemisphere of the cerebellum is divided first into two parts by an incision through the upper and inner convex border, and then each segment is further divided by incisions in the same direction.

Thin transverse sections are now made through the cerebral ganglia, commencing in front. The ganglia are supported and the sections caused to fall apart as they are cut, by carrying the fingers of one hand under the brain, and gently lifting the ganglia at points just beneath where the sections are made. It is important to observe the exact position of any lesion which may be discovered in the cerebral ganglia, their relations to the external and internal capsule, and to the caudate and lenticular nucleus.

Finally the segments of the cerebrum and cerebellum are folded up together into their original positions, the whole is turned over on to the vertex, and thin sections are made through the medulla. Small clots in the medulla should not be overlooked.

In case of the discovery of apoplectic clots, areas of softening, etc., either in the hemispheres or in the basal ganglia, after their location and

extent is determined, they should be carefully searched for lesions of the blood-vessels, minute aneurisms, areas of degeneration, and ruptures. For this purpose it may be necessary to allow a stream of water to run over the affected portion, so as to wash out the brain substance and expose the vessels. In some cases the blood-vessels are best exposed by macerating the brain tissue at the seat of the lesion for some hours in water, and then washing out the brain substance under the faucet.

*The Base of the Cranium.*—We now return to the skull. The remaining sinuses of the dura mater should be opened, and this membrane then entirely stripped from the bone. The bones at the base of the skull are to be examined for fractures, inflammatory lesions, and tumors. In cases of acute purulent meningitis, the temporal and frontal bones should be carefully examined, as the inflammatory process is sometimes transmitted from the internal ear, or mastoid cells, or frontal sinuses.

The eyes may be removed by breaking the roof of the orbit with a hammer, removing the fragments of bone, and dissecting away bone and muscles, so as to expose the optic nerve and posterior segment of the eye. That portion of the globe which is not covered by conjunctiva can now be cut away with a scissors, and removed with the optic nerve.

*Hardening and Preservation of the Tissues for Microscopical Examination.*—For the study of tumors and inflammatory lesions of the bones of the skull and ossifications of the dura mater and pia mater, the affected portions should be cut into small pieces, decalcified with picric acid, and subsequently hardened in strong alcohol. In the ordinary lesions of the dura mater, the tissues are best hardened and preserved by stretching the diseased portions on a flat piece of wood or cork with pins, and placing them in Müller's fluid.<sup>1</sup>

The pia mater is so delicate, that if it be torn from the brain when quite fresh, its tissues are apt to be injured. The portions of the pia mater which are to be preserved should therefore be removed by cutting off slices of the brain substance about  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch thick, with the membrane still attached, and placing the whole in Müller's fluid. After twenty-four hours the pia mater will have become sufficiently hard to permit of its being stripped off without injury, and it is then stretched on a flat cork with pins. The hardening is completed with Müller's fluid and alcohol, if sections are to be made. If it is to be studied *in toto* without sections, after lying for ten days in Müller's fluid it should be washed and be transferred to, and preserved in a mixture of equal parts of glycerin, alcohol, and water. The pia mater should not remain longer than twenty-four hours in Müller's fluid before being stripped off; for after this time it usually becomes so firmly attached to the brain substance as to render its removal very difficult.

The ependyma should be sliced off with a sufficient quantity of underlying brain substance to prevent its folding, and hardened in Müller's fluid. Special care should be exercised not to touch the surface of the ependyma, since the epithelium is easily rubbed off.

The brain tissue in general and tumors are hardened in Müller's fluid, the pieces being cut quite small. Care should be exercised that the tissues are re-

---

<sup>1</sup>For the details of the methods of hardening, decalcifying, staining, etc., see the end of Part I.



moved from the Müller's fluid, and placed in alcohol as soon as they become hard; for after this they are apt to become brittle and difficult of manipulation.

Certain lesions, particularly the softenings of the brain, are best studied by teasing, when fresh, in one-half-per-cent solution of sodium chloride, or in frozen sections of the fresh tissue. (See chapter on the nervous system.) The blood-vessels should be stretched on cork with pins, and hardened with Müller's fluid and alcohol. The eye and portion of the optic nerve, if removed, should be hardened in Müller's fluid.

#### THE SPINAL CORD.

The examination of the spinal cord may in many cases be omitted. When it is necessary, it is usually most conveniently done after the removal of the brain.

The body should be placed face downwards, with a block under the thorax and the head hanging over the edge of the table. An incision is made through the skin and muscles along the entire length of the spine, and the soft parts dissected away on each side so as to expose the laminæ of the vertebral column. The laminæ are then divided close within the articular processes, with the rachitome or with the saw and chisel. The spinous processes and laminæ are then torn away together with a stout hook, and the cord is thus exposed.

When the body has lain on the back, the membranes of the cord may be found considerably congested without indicating the pre-existence of any disease. If the body has lain for some time, especially in warm weather, serous fluid may have accumulated within the membranes as a result of post-mortem change.

The roots of the nerves are now to be cut across, and the cord removed in its membranes, care being taken not to press it in any way. It is the safest plan not to grasp the cord itself, but with a forceps to seize the dura mater and thus lift it up at once; or the dura mater may be slit open and the cord removed from it. If both are removed together, they are now laid on the table, and the dura mater laid open with a scissors on the anterior and posterior surfaces over its entire length, and searched for tumors, inflammatory lesions, etc. The finger should be passed gently along the cord as it lies on the table so as to detect any marked softening or sclerosis. It should now be held lightly over the fingers, and smooth transverse incisions made with a very sharp knife, about one inch apart through its entire substance. The cut surfaces should be carefully examined for abnormal blood contents, hemorrhages, inflammatory lesions, softening, sclerosis, and pigmentations. Important lesion of the cord may be invisible to the naked eye, and hence, if disease be suspected, the organ should be preserved for microscopical examination. After removal of the cord, fractures and displacements of the vertebræ are easily recognized.

*Preservation of the cord and membranes.*—The entire cord should be sus-



pended in a long jar filled with Müller's fluid. If the dura mater has been removed with the cord, the segments into which the latter has been divided are held together and in position by the dura mater to which they remain attached by the spinal nerve roots, and they should be left in this position until the hardening is complete. The same care should be exercised as in the brain, not to permit the cord to become brittle by remaining too long in the Müller's fluid. If the dura matter of the cord alone is to be preserved, it should be treated in the manner suggested for the dura matter cerebri. The pia mater spinalis is best studied in sections through the entire cord, the membrane being left *in situ*.

#### THE THORAX AND ABDOMEN.

To examine these cavities, the body is replaced on its back, and a single straight incision is made from the top of the sternum to the pubes, passing to left of the umbilicus. For this purpose a large knife should be used, held firmly in the whole hand, and the movement should be mainly from the shoulder. The first incision should divide everything down to the sternum and peritoneum. A short incision should then be made through the peritoneum, just below the ensiform cartilage. Into this opening two fingers of the left hand are introduced and separated from one another, and the parietes being raised and the sides of the opening being held apart by the fingers, the peritoneum is divided to the pubes, care being taken to hold the knife horizontally so as not to cut the intestines. The skin and muscles are then dissected off from the thorax on both sides as far back as the false ribs.

This dissection should be made by long sweeps of the knife, which should be made to cut with the full blade and not with the point only; and if the skin and muscles be pulled strongly away from the chest with the left hand, it may be done very rapidly and with a few strokes of the knife. We notice here the amount of subcutaneous fat and the condition of the muscles. In order better to expose the abdominal cavity, the rectus abdominis muscles should be divided transversely beneath the skin just above the pubes, and the abdominal flaps may then be turned freely outward.

*General inspection of the abdominal cavity.*—We first notice the position and general condition of the viscera. It is best at this stage of the examination to note the condition of the vermiform appendix, and to look over the peritoneal cavity for serum, inflammatory lesions, evidences of perforation, and for the existence of invagination, incarceration, and herniæ of the intestines. A small quantity of reddish serum is frequently found in the abdominal cavity, particularly in warm weather, as the result of commencing decomposition.

It should be remarked here that a variety of striking changes in the character and appearance of the internal organs are produced by putrefaction; changes which are often mistakenly regarded as evidences of disease, and much experience is required in judging of their significance.

correctly. These changes are in general, softening and discoloration, both of which may occur as the result of disease. It may be said in general that the post-mortem reddening or hypostases are most marked in the more dependent parts of the organs. Post-mortem softening usually affects entire organs, not being limited to a part, as is often the case in disease. Gray or greenish-brown post-mortem discolorations are apt to appear in those organs or parts of organs which lie in contact with the intestinal canal.

The *omentum* should be found smoothly spread over the surface of the small intestines, but it may be rolled up and displaced in a variety of ways, or may be adherent at some point to the small intestines or the abdominal wall.

The surface of the *small intestines* should be smooth and shining. They may be greatly distended with gas, and thus so completely cover the abdominal viscera that it becomes necessary to let out some of the gas by a small puncture. The transverse colon passes across the abdomen through the upper part of the umbilical region. It may be lower than the umbilicus or higher up against the liver and diaphragm, it may be distended with gas or contracted.

The *liver* is situated in the right hypochondriac and epigastric regions, filling the concavity of the diaphragm. Its upper border reaches, in the *linea mammilaris*, to the fifth intercostal space; in the *linea axillaris*, to the seventh intercostal space; close to the vertebral column to the tenth intercostal space. At the median line the upper border of the liver corresponds to the lower border of the heart. The left lobe extends about three inches to the left of the median line. The lower border of the right lobe usually reaches to the free border of the ribs, while the left lobe is visible for about an inch below the ensiform cartilage. In women the liver is usually lower than in men.

The position of the liver is affected by changes in the thoracic cavity forcing it downward; by change in the abdominal cavity forcing it upward; by constriction of the waist in tight lacing, forcing it either upward or downward; by changes in the size of the organ itself. The liver may not only be displaced downward, but dislocated, so that its convex surface faces the abdominal wall, and its posterior edge is turned upward against the diaphragm.

The *stomach* is situated in the left hypochondriac and epigastric regions, extending also into the right hypochondrium; it lies in part against the anterior wall of the abdomen, in part beneath the liver and diaphragm, and above the transverse colon. Its anterior surface, which is directed upward and forward, is in contact above with the diaphragm and the under surface of the liver, and lower down with the abdominal wall opposite to the epigastric region. Its posterior surface is turned downward and backward, and rests on the transverse mesocolon, the pan-

creas, and the great vessels. To its lesser curvature or upper border are attached the gastro-phrenic ligament and the gastro-hepatic omentum. To the greater curvature or lower border is attached the gastro-colic omentum. Its cardiac orifice communicates with the œsophagus, its pyloric end with the duodenum.

When the stomach is distended, the greater curvature is elevated and carried forward, the anterior surface is turned upward and the posterior surface downward. When distended with food or gas, the organ is prominent; when empty it may hardly be visible below the ribs; when the intestines are dilated it may be entirely covered by them.

Before opening the thorax, the hand should be passed up against the under surface of the diaphragm on either side to determine its height. According to Quain, the vault of the diaphragm rises in the dead body on the right side to the level of the junction of the fifth rib and sternum, on the left side as high as the sixth rib. Both the relative and the absolute height of the diaphragm vary under a variety of pathological conditions.

If the existence of air or gas in the pleural cavities be suspected, the abdominal cavity should be filled with water and the diaphragm punctured below the level of the fluid. If air be present it will escape in bubbles through the water.

#### THE THORAX.

We now leave the abdominal viscera and proceed to the examination of the thorax. With a costatome or a strong knife, the costal cartilages are divided close to the ribs, the clavicles are disarticulated from the sternum, and the latter removed, taking care not to wound the large veins. We first examine the position of the heart and lungs.

*The Heart.*—The upper border of the heart is on a level with the third costal cartilage, the lower border extends from 1.3 cm. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  in.) below the lower end of the sternum to the fifth left intercostal space. The left boundary of the heart is situated to the left of the junction of the fifth rib with its costal cartilage, and behind or to the left of a vertical line drawn downwards from the left nipple. The right boundary extends about 2.5 cm. (1 in.) to the right of the right edge of the sternum. The portion of the heart uncovered by the lungs is of an irregular quadrangular shape. Its lateral diameter is from 3.8 cm. to 11.1 cm. ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ – $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches); its upper boundary varies from the level of the second left costal cartilage to that of the fifth, but it is usually behind the third or fourth cartilage or fourth space.

The area of the heart which is found uncovered will, however, vary much according to the degree to which the lungs collapse after opening the chest. Any disease which diminishes the size of the lungs, or pleuritic adhesions which retract or bind them down, may increase the area



of exposed heart. On the other hand, emphysema, pneumonia, or any disease which increases the size of, or retains the air in the lungs, may diminish the area of exposed heart. The exposed area varies also with the size of the heart itself.

The *pericardium* is now opened by a slightly oblique incision on its anterior surface. The existence of serous, fibrinous, or purulent exudation, and of adhesions is to be noticed. A small quantity of clear serum exists normally in the pericardial sac, and this serum may be blood-stained from beginning decomposition. White thickenings of the pericardium on the surface of the ventricle are often seen; they do not indicate any important disease.

Now that the pericardial sac is open, the position of the heart can be clearly seen. It lies obliquely in the chest, its long axis at about an angle of about 60 degrees with that of the thorax. The portion of the heart which is first seen is the anterior surface of the right ventricle; upward and to the right of this is the right auricle, which lies about  $\frac{2}{3}$  on the right of the sternum and about  $\frac{1}{3}$  behind it. Its upper border usually corresponds to the plane of the middle of the anterior end of the second intercostal space on the right side. Its size varies with the amount of blood which it contains. The left auricle lies behind the root of the pulmonary artery, so that only its appendix is visible. The middle of the auricle corresponds to the third costal cartilage. Of the left ventricle only a narrow rim is seen, on the left side of the right ventricle. The pulmonary valve is usually entirely or in part on the left side of the sternum behind the second space, or third costal cartilage.

The aortic valve is usually at the level of the third cartilage or the third space, and behind the left two-thirds or half of the sternum. The mitral valve is oblique, the upper end to the left. It is on the level of the third to the fourth cartilage near the middle of the sternum. The tricuspid is oblique, its upper end to the left; the upper end is at the level of the third cartilage, the third space, or the fourth cartilage. The valve is opposite to the middle of the sternum.

The hand should now be passed over the arch of the aorta, to ascertain whether or not an aneurism is present. The heart is then grasped at the apex, raised out of the pericardium, tilted upward and removed unopened by cutting through the vessels at its base.

To determine the sufficiency of the aortic and pulmonary valves, the heart is held horizontally by both auricles, so as not to pull the valves open, and water is poured into the aortic and pulmonary arteries, and we observe how well the valves support the column of liquid. To ascertain the sufficiency of the mitral and tricuspid valves, the auricles are first laid open so as to expose the upper surfaces of the valves. A large pipe is passed through the aorta or pulmonary artery beyond their valves, and a small stream of water allowed to flow into the ventricles. The



auriculo-ventricular valves will be swollen upward, and we can observe their degree of sufficiency. The tricuspid valve is normally somewhat insufficient. The water tests, however carefully applied, are not very reliable, since under the most favorable conditions the natural bearings of the valves are not perfectly preserved.

To ascertain the size of the different valvular openings, we introduce the fingers, held flat with their edges in contact, into each of the orifices, and then measure the width of the fingers at the point where they fill the orifice. In this way we find that, under normal conditions in the adult, the aortic orifice measures about 2.5 ctm. (1 inch), the mitral valve about 4.5 ctm. (1.8 in.), the pulmonary about 3.1 ctm. (1.2 in.), the tricuspid about 5 ctm. (2 in.).

In order to examine the interior of the heart, we first make an incision through the anterior wall of the right ventricle, close to the septum, and reaching to the apex of the ventricle; through this opening the blade of the enterotome is passed into the pulmonary artery, and the ventricle and artery laid open. With a little care, the incision may be made to pass through one of the points of junction of the valves.

The auricles and ventricles may be empty, or may contain fluid blood, or the so-called heart-clots. These heart-clots are of two kinds—those which are formed some time before death, and those which are formed during the last hours of life and after death. The clots which are formed some time before death are usually associated with organic disease of the heart, especially with dilatation of the ventricles. They are firm, dry, and of whitish color; they may soften or be infiltrated with the salts of lime. They are free in the cavities of the heart, or entangled in the trabeculæ or firmly adherent to the endocardium. They are composed of coagulated fibrin, or, rarely, of sarcomatous tissue as a complication of sarcoma in other parts of the body. The clots which are formed during the last hours of life and after death are red, yellow, or white. They may be soft or succulent, or quite firm. They may be free in the heart cavities, or be adherent to the trabeculæ, or extend into the large vessels. They are usually most constant and of largest size in the right auricle and ventricle. Such clots may be formed within two hours after death. Clots of this character are a regular post-mortem condition, and of no pathological significance. It is evident, however, if the blood did coagulate in the heart within twenty-four hours before death that this coagulum could not be distinguished from the ordinary post-mortem clots. If it is supposed, therefore, that a person dies from heart-clot developed a few hours before death, the proof of this must be derived from the clinical symptoms, and not from the autopsy.

The condition of the pulmonary valves and of the endocardium and the thickness and appearance of the walls of the ventricle are now noticed; the left ventricle is opened by an incision through its anterior wall,

close to the septum, and examined in the same way. We sometimes see the endocardium of the upper part of the left ventricle thick and white without the existence of valvular lesions or any clinical history of disease. The endocardium and valves are often stained red, particularly in warm weather, by imbibition of coloring matter of the blood set free by decomposition. To complete the examination of the cavities, the enterotome is passed into each auricle, carried down into the corresponding ventricle, and an incision made along the outer border of both auricle and ventricle to the apex of the latter. In this way the auriculo-ventricular valves are completely exposed.

After removing the blood, the heart should be finally weighed. In adults the normal average weight of the heart is in males about 300 grms. (10 oz.), in females about 250 grms. (8 oz.); the relative weight to that of the body is in males 1-158, in females 1-149. According to Bizot, the thickness of the wall of the left ventricle is in males 11.2 mm. ( $\frac{7}{16}$  inch), in females 8.1 mm. ( $\frac{5}{16}$  inch); of the right ventricle, in males 4.8 mm. ( $\frac{3}{16}$  inch), in females 3.2 mm. ( $\frac{2}{16}$  inch). Generally speaking, the size of the heart corresponds to the size and the development of the individual. In judging of an increase or decrease in its size, we must consider the weight of the organ and the thickness of its walls. If the person dies while the heart is contracted, the walls of the ventricles will appear thicker, their cavities smaller than usual. If he die of some exhausting disease, like typhoid fever, or if decomposition has commenced, the heart-walls will usually be flabby, and the cavities will appear larger than usual.

*Preservation of Specimens.*—Parenchymatous and fatty degeneration of the heart-muscle are best studied microscopically by teasing the fresh muscle in one-half-per-cent salt solution, or by examining in the same solution fresh sections made with the freezing microtome. For the study of interstitial changes, fatty infiltration, etc., small pieces of the heart-muscle should be hardened in Müller's fluid. The valves may be stretched on a flat cork with pins, laid for forty-eight hours in a mixture of equal parts of one-sixth-per-cent chromic acid and alcohol, and then transferred to strong alcohol. For the methods of detecting bacteria in ulcerative endocarditis, see section on bacteria staining. When the presence of bacteria is suspected, the specimen should be preserved in strong alcohol.

*The pleural cavities* are next examined. The hand is passed into each, and the existence of serous or fibrinous exudations or of old adhesions ascertained. The method of detecting the presence of air has been given above. After the commencement of putrefaction, reddish serum may accumulate in the pleural cavities. This should not be mistaken for the result of disease.

*The Lungs.*—Each lung is lifted up in turn, the vessels, etc., at its base divided, and the organ removed. If the pleura is very adherent, it is better to strip off the costal pleura with the lung. After inspecting

the external surface of the lung, observing its size, shape, color, and consistency, we open the bronchi. For this purpose, we use scissors with long, narrow, blunt-pointed blades, one blade a little longer than the other. The lung is held in the left hand with its base upward. We first open the large bronchi which run on the inner side of the lower lobe, afterward those of the upper lobe. Each bronchus should be followed to its smaller ramifications.

We should observe the contents of the bronchi and the appearance of their walls. In the larger and medium-size bronchi the cartilages in their walls do not form complete rings, but appear shining through the mucous membrane like irregular white patches. This appearance should not be mistaken for a pathological change. In bodies which have been dead for some time, especially in cold weather, the bronchial mucous membrane may be red and swollen as a post-mortem change. The contents of the stomach are sometimes forced after death into the pharynx, and thence find their way into the trachea and bronchi, giving them a peculiar reddish and even gangrenous appearance. Bronchitis does not always leave lesions which can be appreciated after death.

After the examination of the bronchi, the lung is turned over, the vessels, etc., at its root grasped with the left hand, and a long, deep incision made from apex to base. We observe the appearance and texture of the lungs, whether the air vesicles are dilated (emphysematous), or filled with serum, blood, or inflammatory exudation. Fluid can be pressed out of the air vesicles without breaking down the lung tissue. Solid inflammatory exudation, on the other hand, renders the lung more resistant and easily broken down. Attention should be paid to the oozing of purulent or other fluid from the smaller bronchi when the lung is squeezed near the cut surface. It is the rule to find the lower lobes much more congested than the upper.

*Preservation of the Lungs and Bronchi.*—If the lungs have been cut, small pieces from the affected portions of lung tissue or bronchi should be hardened in Müller's fluid, care being taken not to squeeze or handle them unnecessarily. It is better, when the microscopical examination is more important than the macroscopical, not to open the lungs at once, but to fill the air spaces with preservative fluid by means of a funnel attached to a short rubber tube and canula, which is tied into the main bronchus. In this way, not only are the minute structures preserved better, but the air vesicles are filled out and hardened in an approximately natural condition. Care should be taken not to have too great a pressure from the inflowing fluid, since then exudations might be displaced or the lung distorted or ruptured. While the lung is being filled, it should be immersed in a vessel of the same preservative fluid, in which it lies for twenty-four hours. It is then cut into small pieces, and the hardening completed. A variety of hardening agents may be used: Müller's fluid, strong alcohol, or the mixture of equal parts of one-sixth-per-cent solution of chromic acid and alcohol. For general purposes, the latter fluid is perhaps the best. If, however, the lung is commencing to decay,



strong alcohol will stop the process more quickly, and give as good results as are possible under the circumstances.

It is often desirable, and particularly in cases in which the topography of lesions is to be studied, as in acute miliary tuberculosis, acute and chronic phthisis, infarctions, etc., to inject the blood-vessels with colored gelatin. The lung should then be hardened in alcohol.

*The Pharynx, Larynx, and Œsophagus.*—If these organs are to be examined, which is not always necessary, the incision of the thorax is prolonged to a point one inch below the chin. The soft parts are dissected from the larynx, taking care not to cut the thyroid body, and an incision is made through the floor of the mouth, following the internal surface of the inferior maxilla. Through this incision the fingers are introduced into the mouth, the tongue drawn down, the posterior wall of the pharynx divided above the tonsils, and the pharynx and larynx drawn out together. These organs are then dragged downwards, and with the aid of the knife the trachea and œsophagus are removed entire, the œsophagus being cut just above the stomach. If the contents of the stomach are to be preserved, as in cases of suspected poisoning, a ligature is put around the œsophagus just below the point at which it is to be cut off.

With the enterotome the pharynx and œsophagus are now slit open upon their posterior surfaces. The mucous membrane thus exposed is examined for evidences of caustic poisons, of inflammation, tumors, strictures, etc. The enterotome is next introduced into the larynx, and this organ and the trachea laid open along the posterior wall. Here we look for œdema of the aryteno-epiglottidean folds (œdema of the glottis), and for evidences of catarrhal, croupous, ulcerative, and syphilitic inflammation, for tumors and lesions of the laryngeal cartilages. Œdema and redness of the larynx may be produced by post-mortem changes, especially in bodies which have been kept for several days in cold weather. A well-marked œdema glottidis during life may leave no trace after death. Putrefactive changes usually commence early in the larynx and trachea.

*Preservation of the Larynx and Trachea, etc.*—They are freed from superfluous tissue and suspended entire by a thread in a large quantity of a mixture of equal parts of  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent chromic acid and alcohol. The mixture should be renewed at the end of twenty-four hours, and again on the third and sixth day; at the end of ten days the specimen is washed and transferred to strong alcohol, in which it is preserved. The œsophagus should be stretched on a flat cork with pins, and then treated in the same way.

#### THE ABDOMEN.

Returning now to the abdominal cavity, we first dissect off the omentum. If tubercles of the peritoneum exist, they are best seen and studied in the omentum. The colon is then raised and dissected free, to the cæcum on one side, and to the rectum on the other. The colon



and small intestines are then drawn first to the right and then to the left side so as to expose in turn the right and left kidneys. As each kidney is brought into view, an incision is made through the peritoneum over the track of the ureter. The ureter is followed through its entire length and its condition ascertained.

*The kidneys* are then removed, separating the peritoneum and fat from them with the hand, and dividing the vessels with the knife. The suprarenal capsules, which are attached to the upper end of each kidney, are removed at the same time. The kidneys may be softened by putrefaction, or the surface may have a greenish-gray color, caused by the post-mortem action of putrefactive gases on the hæmoglobin.

An incision is made through the capsule, along the convex border of the kidney, and the membrane stripped off. We notice the degree of adherence of the capsule to the kidney, and also the surface of the latter, whether smooth or roughened, pale, congested, or mottled; an incision is made along the convex surface down to the pelvis, so that the organ is divided into halves. We observe the relative thickness of the cortical and pyramidal portions, as well as the size of the entire organ. To ascertain the latter point, it is well to weigh each kidney; the normal weight is about from 140 grms. ( $4\frac{1}{2}$  oz.) to 155 grms. (5 oz.). It is necessary to remember, however, that in a kidney which is much atrophied, there may be an increase of fat in the pelvis, which gives the organ nearly its normal size and weight, while the kidney tissue proper may have in great measure disappeared.

We now inspect the kidney tissue more closely, especially the cortical portion. The pyramids consist largely of tubes running in nearly straight lines from the apex to the base of each pyramid. These straight tubes pass from the pyramids into the cortex in bundles, called medullary rays, many of them retaining their straight course until they nearly reach the surface of the kidney. These straight tubules send off branches on all sides of the rays which become convoluted, form Henle's loops, and finally terminate in the glomeruli or Malpighian bodies. In this way the cortex of the kidney, as seen in section, is divided into alternate bands of straight tubes, convoluted tubes and glomeruli; both sets of bands being perpendicular to the surface of the kidney, and called respectively medullary rays and labyrinths. About the convoluted tubules and glomeruli is a rich venous plexus, and since after death the blood usually remains in this plexus and in the glomeruli, the bands containing the convoluted tubules, *i. e.*, the labyrinths, usually appear red, while the medullary rays are grayish-white. In a normal kidney, therefore, the cortex should be regularly striped in narrow alternating red and whitish bands.

If there be extensive congestion, the entire cortex is red. If the epithelium of the tubules degenerates and fills them up, or if there are

considerable changes in the interstitial tissue, the regular bands are lost, and the cortex is irregularly mottled. If the tubular epithelium becomes filled with fat-globules, this is indicated by an opaque yellow color of the affected parts; in many cases, therefore, the existence of kidney disease can be recognized with the naked eye.

If waxy degeneration be present to a marked extent, it may be manifest by a peculiar translucent appearance of the affected parts, but in most cases it is necessary to apply reagents to demonstrate it satisfactorily. The cut surface of the kidney is washed with water to free it from blood, and repeatedly brushed with an aqueous solution of iodine (iodine 1 part, potassium iodide 3 parts, water 100 parts). The glomeruli and the blood-vessels are most frequently affected, and if so, they will appear as mahogany-colored dots and lines on a yellow ground.

The pelvis should be examined for inflammatory lesions and calculi. Sometimes a whitish fluid is seen in the pelvis, and can be squeezed from the papillæ; this is produced by a post-mortem desquamation of the epithelium, but is liable to be mistaken for pus.

*Preservation of the Kidney.*—If the kidney be not opened, the blood-vessels may be injected through the renal artery with Müller's fluid, or with a mixture of  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent aqueous solution of chromic acid 2 parts, alcohol 1 part. The organ is immersed for twelve hours in the same fluid as that used for the injection, and is then cut into small pieces, pyramidal in shape, so as to include a portion of the cortex and medulla, and these are to remain for ten days in the same fluid, which should be renewed once or twice. They are then soaked in water for an hour to get rid of the chromic acid, and transferred to and kept in strong alcohol. If the kidneys have been opened at the autopsy, they should be cut up and treated as above, but of course without the injection. Parenchymatous degeneration of the kidney is best studied in sections from the frozen fresh organ, or in fragments teased in  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent salt solution. Kidneys which are to be examined for the presence of bacteria, should be cut into small pieces and placed at once in strong alcohol, which should be changed once or twice, and in which they are permanently preserved.

*The Suprarenal Capsules* are in the fœtus of an ovoidal, in the adult of a triangular shape. They are situated at the upper and inner border of the kidney, to which they are loosely attached by connective tissue. On the anterior surface is an irregular fissure, called the hilus, from which the veins emerge. The size varies considerably, but in the adult the average vertical diameter is from 3.2 ctm. ( $1\frac{1}{4}$  in.) to 4.5 ctm. ( $1\frac{3}{4}$  in.); the transverse diameter about 3.2 ctm. ( $1\frac{1}{4}$  in.), and they are from 4.2 mm. ( $\frac{1}{6}$  in.) to 6.4 mm. ( $\frac{1}{4}$  in.) in thickness. They weigh in the adult from about 4 gm. (13) to 8 gm. (23). They are composed of a cortical and medullary portion, the cortex forming a yellowish shell around the dark-red or brown medulla. They are inclosed in a connective tissue capsule, from which fibrous processes extend inward, dividing the gland into a series of irregular chambers. Those in the cortex are mostly elongated, giving this portion a striated appearance, while those

in the medulla are polyhedral. It is in these spaces that the parenchyma cells lie. The suprarenal capsules readily decompose; the inner layer of the cortex may soften and break down, so that the outer zone forms a sort of cyst filled with reddish-brown broken-down substance. Hypertrophy, tuberculosis, and cheesy degeneration, fatty degeneration, and tumors are to be looked for.

*Preservation.*—The suprarenal capsules should be hardened in Müller's fluid or in strong alcohol.

*The Spleen.*—This organ has, when removed from the body, the general shape of a flattened ellipsoid, most curved on its external and posterior surface. It is situated in an oblique position on the left side of the stomach, and between its cardiac end and the diaphragm. The vessels are given off from its inner surface, which is crossed by a more or less well-marked vertical ridge. The point of emergence of the vessels is called the hilus. Its long diameter extends from the seventh intercostal space to the eleventh rib. Its upper portion is separated from the ribs by the lungs; its lower portion by the diaphragm. Its usual length is 12.2 ctm. ( $4\frac{3}{4}$  in.) to 14.1 ctm. ( $5\frac{1}{2}$  in.); its breadth from 8.3 ctm. ( $3\frac{1}{4}$  in.) to 10.2 ctm. (4 in.); its thickness from 3.2 ctm. ( $1\frac{1}{4}$  in.) to 4.6 ctm. ( $1\frac{3}{4}$  in.); its average weight in the adult is about from 248 grm. (8 oz.) to 325 grm. ( $10\frac{1}{2}$  oz.). But its measurement and weight vary considerably within the limits of health. It is in these respects the most variable organ in the body. In old age the average weight gradually diminishes.

The spleen is enclosed in a fibrous capsule covered with peritoneum. The parenchyma is formed of blood-vessels and fibrillar connective tissue, and of a soft dark-red pulp, in which are embedded whitish spheroidal or elongated bodies, the glomeruli or Malpighian bodies. In the normal human spleen the glomeruli are hardly perceptible to the naked eye, but sometimes they are very plain. Sometimes the fibrous stroma is very apparent; sometimes not.

The size, consistence, and color of the organ vary a good deal without any known cause. Decomposition softens it. Thickenings of the capsule and abnormal adhesions are very common, and often occur without any clinical history indicating disease. We should look for changes in size, pigmentations, hyperplasia of the connective tissue, amyloid degeneration, tubercles, and infarctions.

Not infrequently one or more spheroidal or flattened so-called accessory spleens are found in the vicinity of the spleen; they vary in size from that of a pea to that of a walnut.

*Preservation.*—In certain diseases of the pulp, leukæmia, leucocythemia, etc., the tissue should be teased when fresh in one-half per-cent salt solution. For general purposes, small pieces of the organ are hardened in Müller's fluid.

*The Intestines.*—The rectum is divided, the intestine seized with the



left hand, and being kept stretched, is separated from its attachments by repeated incisions through the mesentery close to the gut, until the duodenum is reached, where it is again cut off. The operation is more cleanly if, before dividing the gut, ligatures are placed around it at either end. The entire length of the gut is now laid open with the enterotome along the mesenteric attachment, the mucous membrane is cleaned with a stream of water, and then examined.

In cases of suspected poisoning, a ligature should be placed around the rectal end of the gut and two around the duodenal end, and it is then cut off below the former and between the latter ligatures. The gut is now opened, and the contents emptied into a clean glass jar for delivery to the chemist, care being taken that they be not allowed to touch anything but the inner surface of the jar. After washing the intestine in pure fresh water and examining it, it should be placed entire in another clean jar and sealed.

Cadaveric lividities are very common in the intestines, and are usually most marked in the dependent portions. They are apt to occur in patches, but may be diffuse and very extensive. If the wall of the gut be stretched, they are often seen to be discontinuous, owing to the pressure of the blood from the parts which are squeezed by folds. Small patches of arborescent or diffuse red staining are often seen formed by the imbibition from the vessels of decomposing hæmoglobin. In the more advanced stages of decomposition, the mucosa may be softened and loosened. A dark purple or brownish discoloration of the entire intestinal wall is frequently seen, either diffuse or in patches. Much experience and careful observation are requisite in forming a correct judgment regarding the significance of changes of color in the intestines. Caution is necessary in distinguishing normal digestive hyperæmia from abnormal congestion. A very considerable congestion may exist without disease. In cholera seasons especially, observers are prone to call the most moderate degree of congestion abnormal.

The lesions ordinarily to be looked for are catarrhal, croupous, and ulcerative inflammations, perforations, hemorrhages, strictures, tumors, amyloid degeneration, swelling, and ulceration of the solitary follicles and Peyer's patches, and pigmentation. For the detection of amyloid degeneration of the mucosa, this structure should be carefully washed and brushed with a solution of iodine (see p. 24).

*Preservation.*—For the general purposes of microscopic study, portions of the gut should be stretched on cork and hardened in chromic-acid mixture (one-sixth-per-cent chr. acid and alcohol, equal parts), especial care being taken to change the fluid frequently. For obvious reasons, the mucous membrane should be handled as little as possible, for, in the majority of cases, decomposition and softening has already set in at the time of the autopsy, and under the most favorable conditions, the epithelium is very easily rubbed off. If the wall of the intestine is to be examined for bacteria, as in typhoid fever, cholera, etc., portions



should be stretched and hardened entirely in strong alcohol. If decomposition be far advanced, strong alcohol is the best hardening agent in all cases.

*The Stomach and Duodenum.*—We now introduce the enterotome into the duodenum, at its transverse portion, and open it on the convex border. When the pylorus is reached, the incision is carried obliquely over to the greater curvature of the stomach, along which it is extended as far as the œsophageal opening, and the organ examined *in situ*, or, if a more careful examination of the stomach is called for, after ascertaining whether or not the bile-duct is pervious (see below), the duodenum and stomach may be removed together, and the stomach opened and examined on the table. (If poisoning be suspected, a ligature should have been placed earlier in the examination [p. 26] around the lower end of the œsophagus and the duodenum. The stomach and duodenum are now removed together unopened. They are to be opened in a carefully cleansed glass jar, and after an inspection of the mucous membrane and the contents with the naked eye and a hand-lens, stomach, duodenum, and contents are to be sealed in the jar for the chemist.)

We now look for the orifice of the bile-duct, which will be found about the middle or the descending portion of the duodenum on its concave border. Pressure on the gall-bladder or on the common duct will cause the bile to flow into the intestine if the ducts are pervious. But a sufficient degree of stoppage may exist in the ducts to give rise to marked symptoms of disease without preventing the flow of bile under these conditions, even with a moderate pressure. A long director is now passed into the gall-duct, which is laid completely open; ulcerations, cicatrices, gall-stones, inflammatory lesions, and tumors are looked for. At this point, should there be any special reason for doing so, the portal vein, which lies close behind the ductus choledochus, should be opened and examined for periphlebitis, phlebitis, and thrombosis. The mucous membrane of the duodenum and stomach are now rinsed off and examined. Acute inflammations from caustic poisons, chronic catarrhal inflammations, hemorrhages, ulcers, erosions, swelling of the solitary follicles, and tumors are lesions most frequently seen. We sometimes find a diffuse congestion of the stomach similar to that produced by irritant poisons, as a result of doses of croton oil given just before death.

*Preservation.*—The same methods should be used as for the intestines (see above). Tumors should be cut into small pieces and hardened in Müller's fluid.

*The Liver.*—To remove the liver, the diaphragm is first divided on one side of the suspensory ligament as far back as the spine, the suspensory ligament is then divided; then the right and left lobes being in turn raised, the lateral ligaments are severed. Then seizing the left lobe, the organ is dragged obliquely downward into the abdominal cavity, the remaining attachments being dissected away. The liver is first laid on its superior surface, and the gall-bladder and its contents examined. The

character of the gall is to be determined, and gall-stones, inflammatory lesions, and tumors sought for. To determine the actual size of the organ, it should be both measured and weighed. Its size varies greatly in different healthy individuals, but in general it may be said that it measures from 25 to 30 ctm. (10 to 12 in.) transversely; from 15.3 to 18 ctm. (6 to 7 in.) antero-posteriorly, and about 9 ctm. ( $3\frac{1}{2}$  in.) at its thickest part; the ordinary bulk is about 229 to 253 c.c. (90 to 100 cu. in.); its ordinary weight between 1,550 to 1,860 grm. (50 to 60 oz.). In children, its weight relative to that of the body is greater than in adults. The liver is increased in size and weight during digestion and by congestion from any cause.

The surface of the liver is now examined, and it is then laid on its lower surface and several deep incisions made from the convex surface downwards. The color and consistence of the liver tissue should be noticed, also the distinctness with which the lobular outlines can be seen; whether or not the centres of the lobules are congested or their peripheries lighter in color than usual, the presence of tumors, tubercles, abscess, ecchino-coccus, new connective tissue, and pigmentation. Suspected amyloid degeneration should be tested for by the iodine solution (p. 24).

We often find the surface of the liver of a greenish or very dark-brown color; less frequently the same color extends into the substance of the organ. This discoloration, which is entirely post-mortem, is like the similar discoloration of other internal organs, produced by the action of the gases or putrefaction on the coloring matter of the blood.

*Preservation.*—For the study of parenchymatous degeneration, sections of the fresh frozen tissue or small teased fragments should be examined in half-per-cent salt solution. For general purposes, small pieces should be hardened in Müller's fluid. Tumors should be treated in the same way. In many cases of marked cirrhosis, the topography of the lesion is best demonstrated by injecting the organ with blue gelatin through the portal vein and then hardening in strong alcohol.

*The Pancreas.*—This organ, of a light yellowish-red color, is elongated, irregularly prismatic in shape and flattened antero-posteriorly; the right end, called the head, is broader than the rest, and lies in the concavity of the duodenum. The remainder of the organ, the body and tail, are usually tapering and lie transversely in the abdominal cavity, the tail reaching to the spleen. Its size and weight vary considerably; its usual length is from 15.3 to 20.3 ctm. (6 to 8 in.), its breadth about 3.8 ctm. ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  in.), its thickness about 1.3 to 2.5 ctm. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 in.). Its weight is usually from 70 to 108 grm. ( $2\frac{1}{4}$  to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  oz.). The organ may be rounded instead of flattened; the head and tail may be disproportionately large; the tail may be unusually long or may be divided or curved. The superior mesenteric artery and vein which pass behind the gland are usually partly imbedded in it, but are sometimes completely inclosed.

A longitudinal incision should be made through the whole gland, which may remain in situ, and its substance and duct should be searched for calculi, tumors, malformations, and evidences of acute and chronic inflammation and amyloid degeneration of the blood-vessels. The pancreas is frequently of a dark-red color from post-mortem staining.

*Preservation.*—Portions of this organ or tumors may be hardened in the chromic acid mixture.

#### THE GENITO-URINARY ORGANS.

*The Male Organs.*—If the urine is to be examined, it may be drawn off with a catheter; or a vertical incision may be made into the bladder, just above the symphysis pubis, and some of the urine dipped out. The cut end of the rectum should now be grasped with the left hand and raised up, and this and the bladder, prostate gland, etc., dissected away from the pelvis, the knife being carried close to the bone. The bladder is now drawn backward and the loose tissue close under the symphysis pubis cut. The body of the penis is then shoved backward within the skin and dissected away from behind beneath the symphysis, and finally cut off just behind the glans penis. The penis and bladder are now drawn backward and upward and the pelvic organs removed together. Or the penis may be removed by sawing away the bones above the pubic arch, and then dissecting away the penis whose root is thus exposed.

The pelvic organs are then laid on the table, the bladder uppermost; a long director is passed into the urethra which is opened on its upper surface through its entire length and the bladder widely opened. In the urethra the presence of strictures, diverticulæ, ulcers, inflammatory lesions is to be noticed; in the bladder, inflammatory lesions, hypertrophies, congestion, and ecchymosis of the mucous membrane and tumors. The organs are now turned over; the rectum opened and examined for varicose veins, hemorrhages, ulcers, strictures, and tumors. The prostate gland is then cut into and the presence of calculi, inflammatory lesions, hypertrophies, and tumors sought for. Lastly the vesiculæ seminales are examined, in which, though rarely, we may find evidences of tubercular inflammation and dilatation.

*The Testicles* may be removed when necessary, without cutting the scrotum, by enlarging the inguinal canals from within, and crowding the glands through them and cutting them off. Inflammatory lesions, tuberculosis, abscesses, and tumors are the most frequent lesions.

*Preservation.*—The urethral canal and bladder may be pinned open and hardened in the chromic acid mixture. The prostate, vesiculæ seminales, testicles, and tumors should be hardened in Müller's fluid.

*The Female Organs.*—The position and general condition of the pelvic organs should first be determined by inspection. Abnormal adhesions of the ovaries, broad ligament, Fallopian tubes and uterus, malpo-



sitions of the uterus, subserous tumors of the uterus and ovarian tumors, are frequently observed. Hemorrhage into the posterior cul-de-sac is sometimes found. The urine should be collected, if necessary, as above directed; the organs should be dissected away laterally, as in the male, care being taken not to injure the ovaries and Fallopian tubes. The bladder is then drawn strongly backward and upward, and dissected away from the symphysis and the pubic arch, and the point of the knife being carried forward and downward, the vagina is cut off in its lower third, the rectum severed just above the anus, the remaining attachments cut, and the pelvic organs taken out together. If it be necessary to remove the external generative organs, after freeing the lateral surfaces of the internal organs and the bladder, the legs are widely separated and the vulva and anus circumscribed by a deep incision. The tissues close beneath the pubic arch are now dissected away from below and the vulva thrust back beneath the symphysis; it is now seized above the bone, and together with the anus dissected away and removed with the other organs.

*The Bladder* is first opened and examined. The *vulva* may now be examined for hypertrophies, inflammatory lesions, ulcers, cicatrices, cysts, and tumors. The *vagina* is opened along the anterior surface; its more common lesions are inflammations, fistulæ, ulcers, tumors, and rarely cysts.

*The Uterus*.—Before opening this organ, its size and shape should be determined. The adult virgin uterus is a pear-shaped body, flattened antero-posteriorly, the upper portion or body is directed upwards and forwards; while the lower portion, the cervix, is directed downward and backwards. It is covered anteriorly by peritoneum to a point a little below the level of the os internum; posteriorly, to a point a little below the level of its junction with the vagina. The peritoneal investment separates from the organ at the sides to form the broad ligaments. The uterus is held in position by the broad and round ligaments and by its attachments to the bladder and rectum and vagina. The upper end, the fundus, does not extend above the level of the brim of the pelvis. Its average length is about 7.6 cm. (3 in.); its breadth about 5.1 cm. (2 in.); its thickness about 2.5 cm. (1 in.); its average weight is about 31 to 46 grm. (1 to 1½ oz.). During menstruation the uterus is slightly enlarged, and the mucous membrane of the body becomes thicker, softer, and its vessels engorged with blood; while its inner surface is more or less thickly covered with blood and cell detritus. A description of the complicated changes in the uterus which pregnancy entails may be found in the works on obstetrics. After pregnancy, the uterus does not return to its original size, but remains somewhat larger; the os is wider and frequently fissured.

In the infant the uterus is small, the body flattened, the cervix dis-



proportionately large. During childhood the organ increases in size, but the body remains small in proportion to the cervix. At puberty the shape changes and the body becomes larger. We not infrequently find in the mucous membrane of the lower part of the cervix, small transparent spheroidal structures called ovula Nabothi; these are small retention cysts caused by the closure of the orifices of the mucous glands of the part. The more common lesions observed in the uterus are malpositions, malformations, lacerations, ulcerations of the cervix, acute and chronic inflammation of the mucous membrane or muscularis or both, thrombosis and inflammation of the veins and tumors.

*The Ovaries* are flattened, ovoidal bodies which are situated one on each side and lying nearly horizontally at the back of the broad ligament of the uterus. Their size is variable and they are usually largest in the virgin state. Their average weight is from 3.9 to 6.5 grm. (3 to 5  $\odot$ ). They measure about 3.8 ctm. ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  in.) in length, 1.9 ctm. ( $\frac{3}{4}$  in.) in breadth, and nearly 1.3 ctm. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  in.) in thickness. The sides of the ovary and its posterior border are free; it is attached along the anterior border; to its end is attached the ovarian ligament; to its outer extremity one of the fimbriæ of the Fallopian tube. The ovary is covered on its free surface by cylindrical epithelium, and its surface is less glistening than the general peritoneum. The surface of the ovary is smooth in the young, but becomes rougher and depressed in spots as the process of ovulation goes on. In adult females we usually find corpora lutea in their various stages. We should seek for evidences of acute and chronic inflammations, for tumors and cysts.

*The Fallopian tubes*, lying in the upper margin of the broad ligaments, are between 7.6 to 10 ctm. (3 to 4 in.) in length. They commence at the upper angles of the uterus as small perforated cords which become larger farther outward, and bend backward and downward towards the ovary. They terminate in an expanded fimbriated extremity about 2.5 ctm. (1 in.) beyond the ovary. They are covered by peritoneum, and the mucous membrane lining them, continuous with that of the uterus, is thrown into longitudinal folds. Malpositions by adhesions, closure, inflammations, and cysts are the more common lesions. The possibility of tubal pregnancy should be borne in mind.

*Preservation.*—All of these organs and their tumors may be hardened in Müller's fluid. The vagina should be stretched flat on cork and the cavity of the uterus laid wide open. Great care should be taken not to touch either the internal surface of the uterus or the external surfaces of the ovaries, since in both the epithelium is very easily rubbed off.

Should decomposition have commenced in the mucous membrane of the uterus (this usually occurs very early), it is better to place it at once in the chromic acid mixture (p. 26) for twenty-four hours and then in strong alcohol. It is better to suspend the ovaries by a thread in a jar of the preservative fluid, than to let them lie on the bottom, since the epithelium is thus less liable to be rubbed off.

## AUTOPSIES IN CASES OF SUSPECTED POISONING.

It is always best, in cases of suspected poisoning, to preserve for the chemist not only the stomach and intestine, but the entire liver and brain; or if portions of these only can be saved, these should be carefully weighed, as well as the entire organs, and the relative amount of tissue reserved carefully noted at the time. It is even well, particularly in cases in which the administration of the readily diffusible poisons, such as arsenic, strychnia, etc., is suspected, to preserve the whole of all of the internal organs, together with a large piece of muscle and bone, since with large quantities of tissue the results of the chemical analysis depend less upon calculations and are hence more comprehensible to the average jury. In all such cases jars should, if possible, be procured which have never been used before, and these should be carefully washed and rinsed with distilled water. They should have glass stoppers and be sealed at once and carefully labelled before leaving the hands of the operator. If they can be delivered to the chemist without much delay, they should have no preservative fluid added. If they are to be kept for a considerable time, pending the action of a coroner's jury or for some other reason, a small quantity of pure strong alcohol may be poured over them. In this case the operator should be particular to reserve a quantity, at least a half a pint, of the specimen of alcohol used, in a clean sealed and labelled bottle so that this may be tested by the chemist and be proven to be free from the poison. It is better in all cases, however, to avoid if possible the use of alcohol. In all autopsies which may have medico-legal importance, full notes should be taken by an assistant as the operation proceeds, carefully read over immediately afterwards, and dated and kept by the operator for future reference. The labelling and disposition of the jars should be recorded in the notes.

## EXAMINATION OF THE BODIES OF NEW-BORN CHILDREN.

In examining the bodies of new-born children, we may have to determine, besides the ordinary lesions of disease, the age of the child, whether it was born alive, how long it has been dead, what was the cause of death.

## GENERAL INSPECTION.

*The Size and Age.*—Caspar<sup>1</sup> gives the following description of the foetus during the different months of intra-uterine life.

At the *fourth week*, the embryo is 8 to 13 mm. ( $\frac{3}{10}$  to  $\frac{5}{10}$  in.) long. The cleft of the mouth and two points indicating the eyes can be recognized

---

<sup>1</sup> Caspar: Handbook of Forensic Medicine. Revised German Edition by Litsman, 1882, p. 865 *et seq.*: or Sydenham Society Translation.

in the head. The extremities are represented by little wart-like projections. The heart can be distinguished, the liver is disproportionately large. The umbilical vessels are not yet formed. The entire ovum has about the size of a walnut.

At the *eighth week* the embryo is 2.3 to 4 ctm. ( $\frac{9}{16}$  to  $1\frac{5}{16}$  in.) long. The head forms more than a third of the entire body, the mouth is very large; the nose and lips can be distinguished, but not the external ear. The hand is longer than the forearm; the fingers are formed, but joined together, the toes look like little buds; the soles of the feet are turned inwards. The position of the anus is indicated by a point. The abdomen is closed. All the viscera can be recognized. Centres of ossification are formed in the apophysis of the first cervical vertebra, the humerus, radius, scapula, ribs, and cranial bones. There are rudimentary external genitals, but the sex can hardly be distinguished. The ovum has about the size of a hen's egg.

At the *twelfth week*, the placenta is formed. The embryo is 5 to 6.5 ctm. (2 to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches) long and weighs about 31 grm. The head is separated from the thorax by a distinct neck. The eyes and mouth are closed. The nails can be perceived on the fingers. The sex can be recognized. The umbilical cord is inserted near the pubes; the muscles begin to be recognizable. The thymus and supra-renal capsules are formed. The cerebrum, cerebellum, medulla, and the cavities of the heart can be recognized. The humerus is 1.7 mm. long; the radius 5.5 mm.; the ulna 6.6 mm.; the femur and tibia 4.4 to 6.6 mm.; the fibula 5.5 mm. The ovum is as large as a goose's egg.

At the *sixteenth week*, the embryo is 13 to 15 ctm. (5 to 6 in.) long, and weighs 77 to 93 grm. ( $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 3 oz.). The skin is of a rose-red color and has considerable consistency. The formation of fat in the subcutaneous tissue has begun. The scrotum and labia are formed. The face begins to assume its characteristic appearance. There is whitish meconium in the duodenum. The liver is not so disproportionately large and the gall-bladder is formed; the anus is open. The length of the humerus, radius, and ulna is 1.7 ctm.; the femur and tibia 8.8 to 11 ctm. The calcaneus begins to ossify at the middle of the fourth month.

At the *twentieth week*, the embryo is 26 to 28 ctm. (10 to 11 in.) long; it weighs from 225 to 320 grm. ( $7\frac{3}{16}$  to 10 oz.). The nails are quite perceptible; there is a thin down on the head. The head is still disproportionately large, occupying about one-fourth of the body. There is as yet none of the vernix caseosa. The secretion of bile has commenced and stains the meconium. The insertion of the umbilical cord is still further off from the pubes. The liver, heart, and kidneys are large in proportion to the other organs. The convolutions of the brain cannot be recognized. The humerus is 2.8 to 3 ctm. long; the radius 2.6 ctm.; the ulna 2.8 ctm.; the



femur, tibia, and fibula each 2.6 ctm. The astragalus and the upper part of the sternum begin to ossify.

From this time on, the length of the foetus forms an approximately accurate basis for the estimation of its age. *From this period till its maturity, the length of the foetus, determined in centimetres, corresponds to about  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the number of months of its age.* From this time on, the weight exhibits marked individual differences and is therefore a less reliable criterion of its age than is the length.

At the *twenty-fourth week*, the embryo is 31 to 34 ctm. (12 to 13 in.) long and weighs 750 to 875 grms. (24 to 28 oz.). The lanugo and vernix caseosa are formed. The skin is of a dusky cinnabar-red color. The meconium is darker. The scrotum is empty, small, and red; the labia majora are prominent and held apart by the projecting clitoris. The pupillary membrane is present and readily recognized. The length of the humerus and radius is 3.5 ctm.; of the ulna, femur, tibia, and fibula, each 3.7 ctm.

At the *twenty-eighth week*, the embryo is 36.4 to 39 ctm. ( $14\frac{1}{4}$  to  $15\frac{1}{4}$  in.) long, and weighs 1,500 to 1,750 grms. (48 to 57 oz.). The hair is more abundant and longer. The great fontanelle measures about 4 ctm. ( $1\frac{3}{8}$  in.) in diameter and all of the fontanelles are readily perceived. The skin is of a dirty reddish color and abundantly beset with the lanugo and vernix caseosa. The large intestine contains much meconium. The humerus is 4.5 to 5 ctm. long; the radius 3.7 ctm.; the ulna 4 ctm.; the femur, tibia and fibula each 4.2 to 4.6 ctm.

At the *thirty-second week*, the embryo is 39 to 41.5 ctm. ( $15\frac{1}{4}$  to  $16\frac{1}{4}$  in.) long, and weighs 1,500 to 2,500 grms. (48 to 81 oz.). The skin is lighter in color; the pupillary membrane has disappeared. The testicles are in the scrotum or the inguinal canal; the labia are still widely apart and the clitoris prominent. The nails reach nearly to the ends of the fingers. The humerus is 5 to 5.2 ctm. long; the radius 4 to 4.2 ctm.; the ulna 4.8 to 5 ctm.; the femur 5.2 ctm.; the tibia and fibula each 4.8 to 5 ctm. The last sacral vertebra begins to ossify.

At the *thirty-sixth week*, the embryo is 44.2 to 46 ctm. (17.4 to 18 in.) long, and weighs about 3,000 grm. (97 oz.). The scrotum begins to become wrinkled and the labia to close. The hair becomes more abundant, while the lanugo begins to diminish in amount.

At the *fortieth week*, the foetus is fully developed and the term of its intra-uterine life accomplished.

The fresh corpse of a new-born child at term no longer resembles that of the immature foetus. The skin is firm and pale, like that of an adult. The lanugo has disappeared except on the shoulders. In the majority of cases the hair on the head is 1.5 to 2 ctm. ( $\frac{3}{8}$  to  $\frac{4}{5}$  in.) long. The great fontanelle is, in the average, 2 to 3 ctm. ( $\frac{8}{10}$  to  $1\frac{1}{10}$  in.) long. As determined by an analysis of 661 cases, the average length is 50 ctm. (20 in.); the



weight 3,256 grm. (105 oz.). The nails are hard and reach to the tips of the fingers, but not to those of the toes. The cartilages of the ears and nose are hard. The labia are more nearly closed. An ossification centre in the lower epiphysis of the femur should be sought for, as its presence is one of the most reliable signs of the maturity of the foetus. If it is absent, the foetus is, as a rule, not more than thirty-seven weeks old; but in rare cases, it may be absent at term. A centre of ossification 1 mm. (.039 in.) in diameter, indicates an age of 37 to 38 weeks, if the child was born dead or died soon after birth. Rarely it is no larger than this at term. A diameter, at birth, of 1.5 to 9 mm. (.058 to .351 in.) indicates an age of 40 weeks. A diameter of less than 9 mm. (.351 in.) indicates, as a rule, that the child has lived some time after its birth; a less diameter than 7 mm. (.273 in.), however, does not prove the contrary.

*Twenty-four hours after the birth of the child*, the skin is firmer and paler. The umbilical cord is somewhat shriveled, although still soft and bluish in color. From the *second to the third day*, the skin has a yellowish tinge, and the cuticle sometimes appears cracked. The umbilical cord is brown and dry. From the *third to the fourth day*, the skin is yellower, and the cuticle is apt to separate from the skin. The umbilical cord is of a brownish-red color, flattened, semi-transparent, and twisted. The skin around its insertion is red and congested.

The head should be examined for the marks of injuries. Very commonly some portion of the scalp will be found swollen and infiltrated with blood and serum. This may be the *caput succedaneum* formed during delivery. The mouth and nose should be examined for the presence of any foreign bodies which might have caused suffocation.

The neck should be examined for marks of strangulation. The umbilical cord may be twisted around the child's neck and strangle it. The mark left by the cord is usually continuous, broad, not excoriated, sometimes accompanied by ecchymoses in the skin.

The entire body should be examined for the presence of vernix caseosa, blood, marks of injury, and the existence of putrefaction. It should be remembered that putrefaction is apt to commence earlier in the bodies of young children than in those of adults.

*The umbilical cord* may be cut or torn. It usually separates by the fifth day, sometimes not until the tenth. If the umbilicus is cicatrized and healed, the child has probably lived for three weeks. A zone of redness around the insertion of the cord may exist previous to birth. Redness and swelling (which may disappear after death) with suppuration can only be found in a child which has lived for several days. The drying and mummification of the cord may take place as well in dead as in living children. It is possible for a child to die by hemorrhage from a cut or torn cord, either before or after it has breathed.

The extremities may exhibit fracture of the bones. These may oc-

cur during intra-uterine life, from injuries to the woman or from unknown causes; or may be produced by violence in delivery, or by injuries after birth.

#### INTERNAL EXAMINATION.

*The Head.*—The fontanelles and sutures should first be examined as to their size and for penetrating wounds. An incision should then be made through the scalp across the vertex, and the flaps turned backwards and forwards, as in the adult. With a small knife, the edges of the bones should be separated from the membranous sutures and the dura mater, beginning low down in the frontal and going back into the lambdoidal suture on either side. The bones are then drawn outward and cut through around the skull, with strong scissors. The brain is removed and examined as in the adult.<sup>1</sup>

Effusions of blood—cephalhæmatoma—may be formed soon after birth, between the pericranium and bone, or, more rarely, between the dura mater and bone. Clots are also found between the dura mater and skull; between the dura and pia mater; more rarely, in the substance of the brain, as the result of protracted or instrumental deliveries, or of injuries after birth.

The cranial bones may be malformed, or exhibit the lesions of rickets or caries, or be indented, fissured, or fractured. These latter lesions may be produced during intra-uterine life by injuries to the mother, by unknown causes, by difficult deliveries, or by direct violence after birth.

In cases of chronic internal hydrocephalus in young children in which the ventricles are much dilated and the brain substance thinned over the vertex, the brain is very apt to be torn in removal, and the amount of dilatation thus becomes difficult of determination. It is, therefore, better in such cases to place a pail of water beneath the head, or even immerse the latter in it, and remove the brain in the water. In this way, it floats after removal supported on all sides. It may now be opened in the water and the extent of the lesion determined at once and parts saved for microscopical examination.

If it be desired to preserve the brain for demonstration of the lesion, or for a museum specimen, it should be transferred unopened to a large jar containing a mixture of equal parts of alcohol and water. A portion of the ventricular fluid should now be removed with a syringe provided with a small canula and replaced by strong alcohol. This may be done by puncturing the ventricles from below. The fluid in the jar, as well as in the ventricles, should be changed in forty-eight hours and then gradually increased in strength until the organ becomes hard. The brain may then be cut transversely across, when the degree of dilatation of the ventricles, etc., will be revealed. The brain, of course, shrinks

<sup>1</sup> Or an incision through the bones with a fine saw may be made as in the adult.

considerably by this process, but the relative proportions are approximately preserved.

The brain is normally much softer and pinker than in the adult, the pia more delicate; both may be much congested or anæmic without known cause. The ventricles contain very little serum. Malformations, apoplexies, hydrocephalus, simple and tubercular inflammatory lesions are to be looked for.

*Spinal Cord.*—Extravasations of blood between the membranes of the cord may occur from the same causes as those in the brain. Spina bifida is the most frequent malformation.

*The Thorax and Abdomen.*—These are opened as in the adult. The *peritoneal cavity* contains a very little clear serum. A red fluid may be produced by decomposition. The peritoneum is often the seat of intra-uterine inflammation.

*The Diaphragm.*—In still-born infants its convexity reaches to the fourth or fifth rib. After respiration, it reaches a point between the fourth and seventh rib. Its position is, however, so variable that it is of little diagnostic importance.

*The Thorax.*—The *thymus gland*, at this period very large, occupies the upper portion of the anterior mediastinum, covering the trachea and large vessels. Its average weight is about 15.5 gm. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  oz.). It is usually about 5 ctm. (2 in.) long, 3.8 ctm. ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  in.) wide at its lower part, and about .63 to .85 ctm. ( $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{3}$  in.) in thickness. It may be hypertrophied and compress the large vessels, or be inflamed and suppurating.

The *heart* lies more nearly in the median line than in the adult. It weighs from 46 to 108 gm. ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  oz.). The ventricular walls are of nearly equal thickness. The pericardium contains very little serum. A considerable quantity of red fluid may accumulate here, as a result of decomposition. There may be small extravasations of blood beneath the pericardium in still-born children and in those born alive. Pericarditis, with effusion of serum and fibrin, and endocarditis, with consequent changes in the valves, may exist before birth. Malformations and malpositions of the heart cavities and large vessels are not infrequent. The time of closure of the foramen ovale and the ductus arteriosus varies very widely in different cases.

The *pleural cavities* contain very little serum; but decomposition may lead to the accumulation of a considerable quantity of red fluid. Small extravasations of blood in the sub-pleural tissue may be found in children which have died before birth and after protracted labors. Inflammation, with exudation of serum, fibrin, and pus, may exist before birth.

The *lungs* in a still-born child are small, do not cover the heart, are situated in the upper and posterior portion of the thorax, are of a dark-red color, and of firm, liver-like consistence, and do not crepitate. In



a child born alive, and which has respired freely, the lungs fill the thoracic cavity, but do not cover the heart as much as in the adult; they are of a light-red or pink color, and crepitate on pressure. If respiration has been incompletely performed, we find various intermediate conditions between the foetal and inflated states.

If any doubt exists as to respiration having taken place, it is customary to employ the *hydrostatic test*. This is done by placing the lungs, first together, then separately, and afterwards cut into small pieces, in water. It is commonly said that, if they sink, the child has not breathed; if they float, it has. This test is not, however, a certain one. Taylor says regarding it:

1. That the hydrostatic test can only show whether a child has or has not breathed, not whether it was born alive or dead.

2. That the lungs of children who have lived after birth may sink in water, owing to their not having received air, or to their being in a diseased condition.

3. That a child may live for some time with the lungs only partly inflated.

4. That a child may live for twenty-four hours, when no part of its lungs has been penetrated by air.

5. The sinking of the lungs is no proof that a child has been born dead.

6. That the lungs of children which have not breathed, and have been born dead may float in water from putrefaction or artificial inflation.

The lesions of inflammation, and vesicular and sub-pleural emphysema may be found in the lungs of new-born children.

The *pharynx* should be opened and examined for foreign bodies.

The *larynx* and *trachea* should be examined for the lesions of inflammation and for injuries to the cartilages.

The *thyroid gland* weighs about 12 grm. (3 iii.). It may be so enlarged as to interfere with respiration.

*The Abdomen.*—The *kidneys* are lobulated and proportionately larger than in the adult. There may be ecchymoses on their surface; inflammation; deposits of uric acid and urates in the tubules of the pyramids; cystic dilatation of the tubules, sometimes reaching an enormous size. There may be absence or retarded development of one kidney. Malformations and malpositions of the kidneys are of frequent occurrence.

The *supra-renal capsules* are large. They may be dilated into large cysts filled with blood.

The *spleen* is large and firm. It may be abnormally enlarged, and its surface is sometimes covered with fresh inflammatory exudations.

*The Intestines.*—In the small intestines, inflammation, and swelling



and pigmentation of the solitary and agminated follicles are sometimes found. The large intestine usually contains meconium, but this may be evacuated before or during birth. The sigmoid flexure is not as marked as in the adult.

The formation of gas in the stomach and intestines does not usually take place until respiration is established. If decomposition has commenced, however, gas may be formed as a part of the process.

*The liver* is of a dark-red color, is large, and contains much blood. Its size diminishes after respiration is established. The size is so variable, before and after respiration, that it gives little information as to the age of the child. Large extravasations of blood are sometimes found beneath the capsule of the liver, without known cause. A variety of pathological conditions, fatty and waxy degeneration, gummy tumors, etc., may be found.

*The bladder* may be full or empty both in still-born children and in those which have breathed. Dilatation and hypertrophy may exist during intra-uterine life.

*Generative Organs.*—The external generative organs in both males and females are more prominent than in adults. The ovaries are high up in the pelvis and large; the cervix uteri is long; the body small and lax, resting forward against the bladder. Phimosi in the male is the normal condition. Malpositions and retarded development of the testicles should be noticed. It should be observed whether the anus is perforate.

The *bones*, in suspected cases, should be examined for the lesions of inflammation, rickets, and syphilis.

*Preservation.*—The various foetal tissues may be preserved by the same methods as are employed for those of the adult; but as they are very delicate they should be handled with great care, and the preservative fluids changed with sufficient frequency.

## GENERAL METHODS OF PRESERVING PATHOLOGICAL SPECIMENS AND PRE- PARING THEM FOR STUDY.

It is not our purpose in this section to give a complete account of the technical procedures required in the study of pathological specimens, since the methods are for the most part identical with those employed in the study of normal tissues, with which the student or practitioner is presumably familiar before prosecuting pathological studies. We wish simply to give a few brief hints as to the general methods which we have found most useful. Additional details will be found in parts of the book dealing with special tissues and organs.

*The Study of Fresh Tissues.*—Although for the most part the conditions for the minute study of tissues are more favorable after they have been hardened in some preservative agent, it is yet in many cases very important to examine them in the fresh condition. For this purpose they may be teased apart in a one-half-per-cent solution of sodium chloride and mounted and studied in the same. The same solution may be used for studying semifluid substances, such as exudations from the mucous membranes, pus cells, etc. These preparations are not suitable for permanent mounting, as they do not keep well. For staining the elements of fresh tissues, particularly the nuclei, a one-per-cent solution of methyl green or Bismark brown in a mixture of 2 pts. alcohol and 98 pts. water may be used.

Thin sections of fresh tissues may be prepared by the use of some of the forms of the freezing microtome. The freezing microtome devised by Thoma and made by Jung, of Heidelberg, is simple, cheap, and effective.

*Decalcifying.*—Bones which are the seat of lesions, or calcified tissues must be freed from lime salts before thin sections can be made from them. This is best accomplished by the use of a saturated aqueous solution of picric acid. The bone or other tissue should be cut into small pieces, not larger than a cubic centimetre, and suspended by a thread in a large quantity of the fluid, which should have an excess of picric acid crystals at the bottom, and should be frequently shaken. Considerable time is required for decalcification by this method, but the results are better than by any other.

If it be necessary to decalcify more rapidly, chromic acid may be used at first and the process completed by nitric acid. The small pieces of

bone are suspended at first in a  $\frac{1}{6}$ -per-cent aqueous solution of chromic acid. After two or three days the strength of the solution is increased to  $\frac{1}{4}$ -per-cent and after three days to  $\frac{1}{2}$ -per-cent. After another week, the fluid should be changed and 1 per cent of nitric acid should be added. This fluid should be renewed every three days until the decalcification is complete, which may be determined by passing a fine needle through the specimen. The specimen should now be thoroughly soaked in water to remove all traces of the acid, and after lying for a day or two in strong alcohol is ready for embedding and section-cutting.

*Hardening and Preservation.*—In the majority of cases, pathological specimens are best hardened first in *Müller's fluid* and the process completed by alcohol. Müller's fluid is made by the following formula:

Potassium Bichromate.....	2 parts
“ Sulphate .....	1 “
Water .....	100 “

The specimens, which should be cut into small pieces, not more than one or two cm. square, are placed in a large quantity of the fluid, at least ten times the bulk of the specimen, and allowed to remain for two or three weeks. The fluid should be changed after a couple of days and again before the hardening is completed. Some specimens, such as brain tissue, may require a longer time. In all cases, however, the hardening process may be greatly hastened by keeping the fluid at a temperature of about 35° C. The development of bacteria in the fluid may be prevented by putting a small piece of gum camphor into it. In this way tissues may be hardened in Müller's fluid in from four to eight days. After the specimens have acquired considerable consistency or have been in the fluid for the proper time, they are removed from the fluid and soaked for from twenty-four to forty-eight hours in water, which should be frequently changed. They are then placed in equal parts of alcohol and water for forty-eight hours, and then in strong alcohol, by means of which the hardening is completed.

*Chromic Acid Mixture.*—For many purposes a very excellent hardening may be obtained by using a mixture of  $\frac{1}{6}$  per cent aqueous solution of chromic acid 2 parts, and alcohol 1 part. This fluid, like all others, should be frequently changed, and the hardening may be finally completed with alcohol. This is commonly spoken of simply as the chromic acid mixture.

If the specimens are not in a good state of preservation, they will be best preserved by putting them at once into strong alcohol, which may be changed in two or three days.

Although the above is the routine method of hardening tissues, departures from it are occasionally desirable in the preparation of different organs or for the accomplishment of special ends. Thus, in some cases,



as in the kidneys for example, the preservative fluids are brought into more direct and immediate contact with the tissue elements if they are injected under low pressure directly into the blood-vessels. Or by means of an hypodermic syringe the fluids may be thrown directly into the interstices of the tissue by thrusting the needle into them and slowly injecting the preservative agent. This is called *interstitial injection*.

*Osmic Acid* is of great value for the hardening of small portions of delicate tissues, since it serves to fix the elements in a nearly normal condition and stains them of a brown or black color. It is generally used in one-per-cent aqueous solution, the tissues being placed in it when quite fresh and allowed to remain for twenty-four hours. They are now washed in water and may be preserved in a mixture of equal parts of glycerin, alcohol, and water. Such preparations are best adapted for teasing or isolation by other methods than section cutting. If it is desired to make sections of solid tissues preserved in osmic acid, the latter should be introduced by interstitial injection, and the fragment immersed in the acid for twenty-four hours, and then removed, washed and placed in strong alcohol. Instead of using the one per cent osmic acid pure, very good results are obtained by diluting it with an equal volume each of water and strong alcohol. This is in many cases preferable, since the tissues are not stained so dark by the acid, and are more readily preserved subsequently in alcohol.

Pathological specimens which occur, or are isolated in the form of membranes should be stretched with pins on a piece of wood or flat cork before being immersed in the preservative fluids.

Minute formed elements, such as occur in exudations from the mucous membranes; in cyst fluids; renal casts, etc., may be preserved by allowing them to settle, decanting as much of the fluid as possible, and then adding a considerable quantity of Müller's fluid, which after a few days should be decanted and replaced by water. The latter should be renewed by decantation several times, and finally the sediment may be preserved in a mixture of equal parts of glycerin, water, and saturated aqueous solution of picric acid.

*Embedding and Section Cutting.*—Some dense tissues, after being well hardened, are sufficiently solid to permit of thin sections being made from them without further preparation, but in most cases very thin sections cannot be prepared without filling the interstices of the tissue with some embedding material which gives it greater consistency, and holds the tissue elements firmly in their natural relations to one another while the section is being made. Cacao butter, wax, paraffin, and various other substances have been largely used for this purpose, and are very useful; but the more recently employed *celloidin* is by far the most valuable material, and may be used in nearly all cases.

Celloidin, a non-explosive purified form of gun cotton, is best obtained

in the form of thin shavings,<sup>1</sup> since it is most easily dissolved in this form. A strong solution is made in equal parts of sulphuric ether and alcohol. The solution should have the consistency of thick molasses. The specimen having been soaked for twenty-four hours in a mixture of equal parts of alcohol and ether, is placed in the celloidin solution where it remains until permeated by it. This will ordinarily occur, if the specimen be of moderate size, in from twelve to twenty-four hours. For this preliminary soaking the celloidin solution may be a little thinner than above mentioned. If the specimen be small and requires but little support, it may now be laid directly on the end of a small cork, and a few drops of celloidin poured around it. In most cases, however, it is better to make a small paper box in which the specimen is placed in a proper position, and the celloidin poured in around it so as to completely inclose it. In either case, a considerable quantity of celloidin should be poured around the specimen, since the celloidin shrinks considerably in hardening. If sections are to be cut with the microtome, the paper box should be made by winding a strip of filter paper around the end of a straight cork, allowing it to project for a sufficient distance beyond the end. The paper is held in place by tying a thread around it. We have thus a cylindrical box with a cork bottom which projects below it. It is better to use filter paper than sized paper, because the hardening of the celloidin takes place more readily through it.

After the specimen, either free on the end of the cork or in its box, is surrounded by celloidin, it should be allowed to stand for a short time exposed to the air, so that it may harden on the outside by the evaporation of the ether. If the temperature be high, the too rapid evaporation of the ether will cause bubbles to appear in the mass. This should be avoided by covering the specimen with a bell-jar. After the celloidin mass has acquired sufficient hardness on the outside to keep its shape, the whole should be immersed in a mixture of equal parts of alcohol and water, in which the celloidin will harden and acquire a sufficient consistency for cutting in a few hours. When this is accomplished, the paper may be stripped off, and the specimen is ready for section cutting. A little practice will teach the operator of what consistency to make the celloidin solution, how long to expose to the air, etc.

After the sections have been cut, they may be stained in the usual way (see below), and mounted in glycerin or balsam. If mounted in balsam, the oil of cloves, which is ordinarily used for clearing up the sections, will dissolve the celloidin. For some tissues this does no harm, since they are firm enough to hold together even in thin sections, but in handling friable and delicate tissues it is well to keep the celloidin in

---

<sup>1</sup> It may be obtained from Messrs. Bachrach and Bro., cor. Eutaw and Lexington Streets, Baltimore, Md., or from Meyrowitz Bros., New York.

place, mounting it with the specimen, with the study of which it does not interfere. This may be accomplished by using the white oil of thyme instead of oil of cloves for clearing.

The uncut portion of tissue may be preserved, embedded in celloidin, by keeping it in eighty-per-cent alcohol.

*Section Cutting* may be done by the free hand with a razor ground flat on the lower side, but better sections can be obtained by means of a microtome. One of the most useful of these is Thoma's which is made of three sizes, the intermediate or the larger one being the more useful. These instruments are made by R. Jung, Heidelberg, and may be obtained of the Prang Educational Co., 7 Park street, Boston, Mass., or of Meyrowitz Bros., cor. Fourth avenue and 23d street, New York.

*Methods of Staining.*—Sections of hardened tissues may be stained for microscopical study in a variety of ways, but for routine work the double staining with hematoxylin and eosin is most generally useful and applicable to nearly all cases.

The solution of hematoxylin is prepared as follows: To make 600 c.c. of the solution, take 400 c.c. saturated solution of ammonia alum, and add to this 4 grm. crystallized hematoxylin (Merck's) dissolved in 25 c.c. strong alcohol. This is exposed to the light in an unstoppered bottle, for three or four days, when the color will gradually change from a dirty red to a deep bluish purple color. The solution is now filtered and 100 c.c. each of glycerin and Hasting's wood naphtha are added. After standing for a day or two, the solution is filtered, allowed to stand for another day and again filtered, and this is repeated until a sediment no longer forms in the fluid.

The solution is now ready for staining, and should be considerably diluted with water as it is used, the best results being obtained by diluting the fluid with from ten to twenty times its bulk of water. The sections are placed in the fluid and allowed to remain until they have acquired a distinct purple color, which persists after rinsing in water. They are now placed for a moment in a dilute alcoholic solution of eosin, and then mounted in glycerin which has been colored lightly with an alcoholic solution of eosin. In this way the nuclei of the cells will be stained of a purple color; while the cell bodies, and to a certain extent the intercellular substance, will be colored a light rose-red.

If specimens are to be mounted in Canada balsam, they are stained with hematoxylin as before, and the eosin staining is done by tinging with eosin the alcohol with which the final dehydration of the specimen is accomplished.

*Methods of Preserving Specimens for Gross Demonstration and for Museums.*—When specimens of diseased tissues or organs are to be preserved entire for exhibition in jars in a museum, it suffices in most cases, after removing superfluous parts and making the requisite dissection, to



suspend them in proper position in jars containing thirty per cent alcohol. The alcohol should be changed as often as it becomes discolored by blood, and the specimens may be finally preserved in forty per cent alcohol. It is desirable that specimens which are to be examined without removal from the jars should be placed in proper position before the alcohol is added, since when they are once hardened it is usually difficult to place them in good positions again; but this may be in most cases deferred for a day or two, until a part of the blood is soaked out of them by the first dilute alcohol.

*Cysts*, such as *ecchinococcus* cysts, small embryos in their membranes, cystic kidneys, etc., may be preserved in a nearly natural condition by placing them in a five-per-cent aqueous solution of chloral hydrate, and after a week replacing this by a ten-per-cent solution of the same, in which they may be permanently preserved.

If it be desired to preserve the natural color of specimens, this may be partially done by placing them in Wickersheimer's fluid, one of the formulæ for which is as follows:

	For injecting.	For immersing.
Arsenious acid, -	16 grms.	12 grms.
Sodium chloride, - -	80 "	60 "
Potassium sulphate, 200	"	150 "
Potassium nitrate, - 25	"	18 "
Potassium carbonate, 20	"	15 "
Glycerin, - -	4 litres.	4 litres.
Wood-naphtha, - - $\frac{3}{4}$	"	$\frac{3}{4}$ "
Water, - - -	10 "	10 "

The fluid may be used for injecting the vessels or for soaking the tissues, or both; the object being to bring the fluid into as direct contact with the tissues as possible. The attempt to preserve the natural appearance of specimens by this method is never entirely successful, but it is useful in many cases, particularly when it is desired to keep specimens for a few days for demonstration.

We would most urgently commend to the reader the importance of putting pathological specimens which are to be hardened and subsequently examined microscopically, at the earliest possible moment into the preservative fluids, which should always be abundant. And furthermore, when specimens are large, it is very desirable to cut them open, so that the fluids may come into direct contact with the tissues. It should be borne in mind that immediately after death or the removal of parts from the body, especially in warm weather, changes commence in the tissues and progress very rapidly, so that in some cases a few hours or even a few moments delay, will not only render subsequent microscopical examinations difficult and unsatisfactory, but may lead to serious errors. As

above stated, Müller's fluid or alcohol are the most generally useful agents. Carbolie acid, glycerin, and usually chloral, should be avoided, and the not uncommon practice of wrapping a specimen in a cloth soaked in alcohol or carbolie acid, and permitting it to remain in this for hours or days, is of no use whatever in preserving specimens of which microscopical examinations are to be made. Almost equally useless is the too common practice of placing a specimen in a bottle which it nearly fills, and pouring a little preservative fluid around it. Not only should the proper fluid be used, but it should be abundant, and the specimen so prepared and arranged that it may come into direct contact with it.

## PART II.

MORBID CHANGES IN THE CIRCULATION  
OF THE BLOOD.

CHANGES IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE  
BLOOD.

DEGENERATIONS.

ANIMAL PARASITES AND BACTERIA.

INFLAMMATION.

TUMORS.





## MORBID CHANGES IN THE CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD.

---

**HYPERÆMIA and ANÆMIA.**—There is an important series of changes in the character of the circulation during life, which may, when death ensues, either alter considerably in appearance or disappear altogether. Among the more important of these changes are *hyperæmia*—excess of blood in a part; and *anæmia*—deficiency of blood in a part. These conditions and the causes which lead to them will not be described in detail in this book, which has chiefly to do with alterations of the tissue which persist and may be studied after death. Tissues which have been the seat of a temporary, and sometimes of a prolonged hyperæmia, may show to the naked eye nothing abnormal after death, or they may look redder than normal, they may be œdematous, and more blood than usual may flow from them when incised. On microscopical examination, the blood-vessels may be normal in appearance, or more or less distended with blood. Long-continued hyperæmia may lead to hæmorrhage and transudation, to an hypertrophy of tissue, or to an atrophy of tissue through pressure, or even to death of tissue.

The paleness which is characteristic of *anæmic* tissues may not be evident after death. Anæmia may lead to no recognizable microscopical changes. On the other hand, if long-continued, it may induce atrophy and fatty degeneration, and, if excessive, may lead to death of tissue.

### HÆMORRHAGE AND TRANSUDATION.

*Hæmorrhage* is an escape of blood from the heart or vessels. It may occur from a rupture of the walls of the vessels, and is then called hæmorrhage by *rhexis*. The rupture may be occasioned by injury, by some disease of the walls of the vessels which renders them too weak to resist the blood pressure from within, or it may occur from the blood pressure in the thin and incompletely developed walls of new-formed vessels in granulation tissue, tumors, etc.

Under other conditions, without recognizable changes in the walls of the vessels, all the elements of the blood may become extravasated by

passing without rupture through the walls of the vessels. This is called hæmorrhage by *diapedesis*. These hæmorrhages are usually small, but may be very extensive. They usually occur in the smaller veins and capillaries, the cells and fluids of the blood passing out through the cement substance between the endothelial cells. Although no marked morphological changes have as yet been detected which explain this extravasation, it is probable that some change in the nutrition of the walls does occur which renders them more permeable. Hæmorrhage by diapedesis is apt to occur as a result of venous congestion, or when the flow of blood in the smaller vessels has been suspended for some time; or it may result from the action of some poison, or from an injury not leading to rupture; or it may occur in incompletely developed blood-vessels, in tumors and other new-formed tissues.

In the extravasation of blood by diapedesis, the white blood-cells may pass through the walls of the vessels, partly at least in virtue of their amœboid movements; the red cells, on the other hand, having no power of spontaneous movement, are, according to Arnold, carried passively through the walls by minute currents of fluid which, under the changed condition, stream in increased force and volume through the endothelial cement substance into the lymph spaces outside.

The altered condition of the blood-vessels leading to hæmorrhage may be local or general, and in the latter case it may either be congenital, as in some cases of the hæmorrhagic diathesis, or it may be the result of some general disease, as scurvy, purpura, etc. The presence of bacteria in the vessels, as in malignant endocarditis, and in hæmophilia neonatorum, is believed in some cases to produce changes in the walls of the vessels leading to extravasation.

Very small hæmorrhages are called *petechiæ* or *ecchymoses*. A complete infiltration of a circumscribed portion of tissue with blood is called a *hæmorrhagic infarction*. A collection of blood in a tumor-like mass is called a *hæmatoma*.

The extravasated blood in the tissues usually soon coagulates, although exceptionally it remains fluid for a long time. A certain number of the white blood-cells may wander into adjacent lymph-vessels, or they may remain entangled with the red cells in the meshes of the fibrin. The fluid is usually soon absorbed; the fibrin and a portion of the white blood-cells disintegrate and are absorbed. The red blood-cells soon give up their hæmoglobin, which decomposes, and may be carried away or be deposited either in cells or in the intercellular substance at or near the seat of the hæmorrhage, either in the form of yellow or brown granules or as crystals of hæmatoidin. Sometimes all trace of extravasations of blood in the tissues disappears, but frequently their seat is indicated for a long time by a greater or less amount of pigment, or by new-formed connective tissue. Occasionally the blood-mass, in a more or less degene-



rated condition, becomes encapsulated by connective tissue forming a cyst.

*Transudation* is the passage through the walls of the blood-vessels into the lymph-spaces outside, of fluid from the blood, with little or no admixture of its cellular elements. This occurs constantly, to a certain extent, under normal conditions, and forms the commencement of the lymph circulation. But when the amount of fluid passing through the walls of the blood-vessels is increased, or its outflow into the larger lymph trunks is hindered so that it accumulates in undue quantity in the interstices and lymph channels of the tissues, the condition is pathological, and is called transudation. An accumulation of transuded fluid in the interstices of the tissues is called œdema; in the serous cavities, dropsy. Its occurrence is usually dependent upon some hindrance to the venous circulation or upon some change in the condition of the blood, which may become more watery, or lead to alterations in the walls of the blood-vessels. A simple interference to the outflow of lymph does not usually alone suffice to induce transudation, although it may favor its occurrence. The transuded fluid is usually transparent and colorless or yellowish; it contains the same salts as the blood plasma, but less albumen. It may contain fat, mucin, urea, biliary acids, coloring matter of the bile; fibrinogen is usually present in variable quantity, and rarely fibrin. It may contain endothelial cells from the lymph spaces, and a variable number of red and white blood-cells. The amount of fluid which may accumulate in the tissues varies greatly, depending upon whether they are loose or dense in texture. The fibres and cells of loose tissues may be crowded widely apart, the cells are apt to be more granular than normal, and may be atrophied. Transudations occurring in inflammation usually contain a considerable number of white blood-cells and more or less fibrin, and differ in this from the non-inflammatory transudations; but there is no sharp distinction in some cases between them. The inflammatory transudations are often called *exudations*.

#### THROMBOSIS AND EMBOLISM.

*Thrombosis*.—Thrombosis is a coagulation of blood in the heart or vessels during life. The coagulum is called a *thrombus*. Thrombi may lie against the wall of a vessel, only partially filling the lumen, and are then called *parietal thrombi*; or they may entirely fill the vessel, and are then called an *obliterating thrombi*.

Thrombi may occur as the result of an injury to the wall of a vessel, or may follow its compression or dilatation; they may result from some alteration of the wall of the vessel by disease, or by the retardation of the circulation. So long as the endothelial linings of the vessels are intact, simple retardation of the circulation does not usually alone suffice to induce coagulation; but changes in the endothelium from a great

variety of causes, such as inflammation, degeneration, atheroma, calcification, and the presence of tumors and foreign bodies, favor its occurrence.

Thrombi may be composed of fibrin and of red and white blood-cells, intermingled in about the same proportion as in an ordinary extravascular blood-clot. These are called *red thrombi*, and usually occur from some sudden stoppage of the circulation. Other thrombi, usually such as form while the blood is in motion, may consist almost entirely of white blood-cells with a little fibrin; these are called *white thrombi*. Red thrombi, when decolorized by changes in the blood-pigment, may somewhat resemble genuine white thrombi. *Mixed thrombi* are usually lamellated, and contain varying proportions of fibrin and red and white blood-cells.

The changes which occur in the thrombus after its formation may be either in the direction of degeneration or organization. In some cases they seem to undergo a simple shrinkage and decolorization, and to become infiltrated with salts of lime, forming the so-called *phleboliths* or *vein-stones*; in other cases, they may soften and disintegrate. Certain thrombi contain bacteria or other infectious material, and on softening of the thrombus, these may be carried into the circulation, producing very disastrous results. Finally, the thrombus may be replaced by a new formation of vascular connective-tissue, itself disappearing as the new tissue is formed. This is called organization of the thrombus, but in reality the new connective tissue is produced, in large measure at least, not from the cells of the thrombus itself, but from the cells of the walls of the affected vessel, from whose vasa-vasorum the new blood-vessels of the thrombus also arise. It is possible, however, that the white blood-cells of the thrombus may contribute somewhat to the formation of the new tissue. In this way the vessel may be completely and permanently occluded, or more rarely, a channel may be re-established through the new connective-tissue mass.

Thrombi in veins may lead to hyperæmia and œdema; in arteries, to an anæmia whose significance will vary greatly, depending upon the situation of the occluded vessel.

*Embolism*.—This is the stoppage of a blood-vessel by the arrest in its lumen of some material carried along in the circulating blood. The substance causing the stoppage is called an *embolus*. This may be composed of a great variety of substances. The most common emboli are detached portions of thrombi, and these may have all the variety of structure which thrombi present. Masses of bacteria or other parasites, fragments of the heart valves and of tumors, droplets of fat from the medulla of fractured bones, masses of pigment, bubbles of air, etc., may form emboli. Embolism is, in a majority of cases, confined to the arteries and to the branches of the portal vein.

The primary effect of the stoppage of an arterial trunk, is of course, to largely deprive the region of the body to which its branches are distributed of its normal supply of blood. If the branches of the occluded artery form anastomoses with other arteries beyond the point of stoppage, a collateral circulation may be established, and the embolus do no harm. If, however, the occluded vessel be a so-called *terminal artery*, that is, one whose branches do not form anastomoses with other arteries, the result of the embolism is quite different. When a terminal artery is occluded by an embolus, the tissue of the affected region usually dies, and there may be an extravasation of blood by diapedesis, leading to the formation of a dark-red solidified area called an *hæmorrhagic infarction*.<sup>1</sup> The area of infarction corresponds to the region supplied with blood by the occluded vessel, and is usually more or less wedge-shaped.

After a time, the infarction becomes decolorized; inflammatory changes may occur in its periphery, the blood and involved tissues may undergo degeneration and be absorbed, and finally the seat of the infarction may be indicated only by a mass of cicatricial tissue, which frequently contains more or less pigment.

In another class of cases, instead of an extravasation of blood in the affected region, the tissue is simply deprived of nourishment and undergoes necrosis. The affected area is then usually light in color, and is called a *white infarction*. Inflammatory changes may occur in its periphery, and a new connective-tissue capsule form around it, and the dead mass may thus persist for some time, or be gradually absorbed and replaced by cicatricial tissue. The scope of this book does not permit us to consider the somewhat complicated and often obscure reasons why in one case we have hæmorrhagic, in another white infarction, as a result of embolus.

If the embolic material consists of or contains infectious substances, such as some forms of bacteria, in addition to the mechanical effects of simple emboli, we may have gangrene, suppuration, and formation of

---

<sup>1</sup> When an embolus lodges in a terminal artery, and the circulation in the territory supplied by its branches ceases, the pressure from the side of the artery is reduced to zero; but, on the other hand, according to Cohnheim, the venous pressure now makes itself felt in a backward direction, and the capillaries and small veins in the affected region become crowded with blood. This blood is stagnant, however, and the walls of the small vessels being deprived of their usual nourishment, undergo, it is believed, degenerative changes, which favor the occurrence of extensive diapedesis. Thus, in the hæmorrhagic infarction, not only the blood-vessels, but the extravascular tissues also are crowded with stagnant blood. The researches of Litten make it seem probable that, in most cases, the back pressure in the region of infarction comes, not from the veins, or not from them alone, but from adjacent arterial twigs, which communicate with the capillaries of the affected region.

abscesses, etc., as the result of the local action of the infectious material, even though this may be present in very small amount.

The organs in which embolic infarctions most frequently occur are the spleen, kidney, brain, lungs; less frequently the retina, liver, and small intestines. Hæmorrhagic infarctions are not liable to occur in the liver from emboli in the branches of the portal vein, on account of the blood-supply which may come to the affected region through the branches of the hepatic artery. On the other hand, embolic abscesses from infectious emboli are of not infrequent occurrence here. Hæmorrhagic infarctions may occur exceptionally in regions not furnished with terminal arteries, as in the small intestines.



## CHANGES IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD.

---

Only the more common morphological alterations of the blood will be considered here, and particularly such as may be appreciable after death.

The *coagulability of the blood* and the characters of the resulting clot vary widely, depending partly upon the composition of the blood and partly upon the conditions under which the coagulation occurs. There may be very little coagulation of the blood in death from the exclusion of air from the lungs, or from diseases and accidents which in any way interfere with the aëration of the blood, and permit the accumulation of carbonic acid within it. Thus, in death from strangulation or drowning, many chronic diseases, scurvy, and under many conditions which we do not understand, the blood may remain fluid, or nearly so, after death. On the other hand, in a variety of acute inflammatory diseases, such as rheumatism, pneumonia, etc., very voluminous clots may be formed, although this is by no means constantly the case. The fact that large clots form after death is not conclusive evidence that an undue amount of fibrin-forming elements were present in the blood, nor does the absence of marked coagulation prove a diminution in the blood of fibrin-forming elements.

The blood may be very thick from the removal of its fluid constituents, in diseases associated with excessive serous discharges from the intestines. This is especially marked in some cases of cholera, and is called *anhydræmia*. On the other hand, the blood may contain a large amount of water in proportion to its solid ingredients—albumin and blood-cells. This is called *hydræmia*, and occurs in a variety of diseases of the heart, kidneys, liver, and lungs. In anæmia, etc., the blood looks more or less watery.

There may be a diminution in the number of the red blood-cells and in their hæmoglobin content, as well as changes in their shape. This may be seen in various forms of *anæmia*. The red blood-cells may be unduly pale from a decrease in the amount of hæmoglobin. Varying numbers of spheroidal or irregular shaped bodies, smaller than the red

blood-cells but having the same color, may be found, particularly in marked cases of pernicious anæmia. These are called *microcytes* and may be ill-developed red blood-cells or red blood-cells in a degenerated condition. The number of red blood-cells in extreme cases of anæmia may be diminished to  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the normal or to about 500,000 in the cubic millimetre. Under these conditions the white blood-cells may remain in normal proportion or they may be increased in number. Fatty degeneration of the heart and blood-vessels, liver, kidney, etc., and capillary hæmorrhages and a change of the yellow into red marrow are frequent accompaniments of excessive anæmia. This latter change is largely due to the disappearance of the fat. Nucleated red blood-cells are also observed in the red marrow.

*Leucocytosis* signifies a temporary increase in the number of white blood-cells, and this is usually of moderate amount. It occurs in a variety of acute inflammatory diseases, in profuse suppuration in any part of the body, often in connection with cancerous growths, tuberculosis, etc., and may, as above stated, be associated with anæmia.

*Leukæmia (Leucocythæmia).*—This disease is characterized by a persistent, progressive, and often enormous increase in the number of the white blood-cells. The blood is pale in well-marked cases, but not watery, and the number of white blood-cells may in extreme cases equal or even exceed that of the red. There are sometimes nucleated cells in the blood, of irregular shape and larger than the leucocytes, and others which are smaller. The origin of these cells is not yet certain, the leucocytes are frequently in a condition of fatty degeneration. There may be a decrease in the number of red blood-cells in leucocythæmia. There are marked changes in the liver, spleen, and lymph glands, as well as in the bone marrow, in leukæmia; the degree of involvement of the different organs varying in different cases (see *leukæmia*, in section devoted to general diseases).

Most of the above-mentioned changes in the morphological characters of the blood are better studied during life than after death, since the redistribution of its elements, owing to the clotting and the effects of gravity, render the obtaining of a pure sample very difficult or impossible, and the results of examination only in a very general way reliable.

*Melanæmia.*—In this condition, the blood contains larger and smaller irregular-shaped particles or masses of brown or black pigment. This condition is most frequently the result of intermittent and remittent fever, particularly the severer forms. It may be accompanied by anæmia and leucocytosis. It does not occur in all cases of the above-named affections. It may be transient in character. The pigment may be free, or more usually is enclosed in leucocytes. Under the same conditions, pigment may be deposited in the liver, spleen, lymph glands, bone-marrow, and blood-vessels. Owing to the deposit of pigment in the organs, they

may assume a gray or slate color. The pigment is supposed to originate in the decomposition of the hæmoglobin.

Pigment which has been taken into the lungs from the air, such as coal-dust, etc., may find its way into the blood either before or after deposition in the bronchial or other lymph glands, and may be afterwards deposited in the spleen and liver.

### *Foreign Bodies in the Blood.*

Various bodies which do not belong there, aside from those above mentioned, may find access to the vessels, and mingle with the blood. Pus-cells may get into the blood from the opening of an abscess into the vessel, or from some inflammatory change in its walls. Desquamated endothelial cells from the vessel-walls, either in a condition of fatty degeneration or in various stages of proliferation, may be mingled with the normal blood elements; also tumor cells of various kinds, fragments of disintegrating thrombi, portions of heart valves, etc. Crystals of bilirubin have been found in the blood in icterus.

*Fat*, in a moderate amount, is a normal ingredient of the blood during digestion and in lactation. Under pathological conditions it may occur in larger and smaller droplets. *Lipæmia* occurs as a result of deficient oxidation, in diabetes, in drunkards, and in some cases of dyspnœa from various causes. The droplets are small and liable to escape observation.

In many cases of injury, particularly in crushing fractures of the bone, the fat of the marrow finds its way into the blood, and it may collect in large drops in the vessels of the lungs, forming the so-called *fat emboli*, or it may pass the lungs, and form emboli in other parts, as the brain, kidneys, etc. The fat may be absorbed from the vessels, having produced little or no disturbance; or in some cases it may produce serious results by the stoppage of a large series of vessels in the lungs, brain, or other parts of the body.<sup>1</sup> The fat may be best seen by cutting sections of the fresh tissues with the freezing microtome and staining them at once for twenty-four hours with one-per-cent aqueous solution of osmic acid. They may then be mounted in glycerin.

*Air in the Blood*, as the result of an opening in the veins, is of occasional occurrence. If the amount of air be small, it appears to be readily absorbed, and does little or no harm. If, on the other hand, a large quantity is admitted to the veins at once, it collects in the right side of the heart from which the contractions of the organs are unable to force it in any considerable quantity, and the supply of blood being thus cut off from the lungs, death very quickly ensues. It is especially from

---

<sup>1</sup> Consult for resumé of this subject, with good bibliography, article by Park on Fat Embolism.—New York Med. Jour., Aug. 16th, 1884.

wounds of the veins of the neck and thorax that the accident is most apt to occur. But it may be due to the introduction of air into the uterine veins in intra-uterine injection, or in the removal of tumors.<sup>1</sup>

The occurrence of animal and vegetable parasites is considered more in detail in parts of this book devoted to these organisms. It will suffice to mention here that the more important of the animal parasites of the blood are: the *Filaria sanguinis hominis*; the *Distoma hæmatobium*, and the embryos of *trichina* and *echinococcus* which are of occasional, and usually temporary occurrence.

Among the bacteria may be mentioned the *anthrax bacillus*, the *spirochæte Obermayeri*, the bacillus of typhoid fever, and various less well-defined forms, chiefly *micrococci*, which occur in septicæmia and other acute infectious diseases.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Consult: Couty, Etudes exp. sur l'entrée de l'air dans les veines, Paris, 1875, for experiments and older literature; also later article by Couty, Arch. de Physiol. nor. et path., 2d ser., T. 4, p. 429, 1877. More recent consideration of the subject in Archiv für klin. Medicin, Bd. 31, p. 441, 1882, by Jürgensen.

<sup>2</sup> For literature and detailed consideration of morphological and other alterations of the blood, consult Cohnheim, Vorlesungen über allgemeine Pathologie, Bd. I., 2d Ed., or Orth, Lehrbuch der speciellen pathologischen Anatomie, or Birch-Hirschfeld, Lehrbuch der pathologischen Anatomie. 2d Ed., Bd. II. For methods of blood examination for clinical purposes, consult Bizzozero, Handbuch der klinischen Mikroskopie, translation into German by Lustig and Bernheimer.

For method of blood-counting, apparatus, etc., consult Thoma and Lyon, Ueber die Methode der Blutkörperzählung, Virchow's Arch., Bd. 84, p. 131, 1881. For alterations in size under various diseased conditions consult article by Gram in Fortschritte der Medicin, Bd. II., No. 2, Jan. 15th, 1884, which contains considerable literature.



## DEGENERATIVE CHANGES IN THE TISSUES.

---

*Necrosis.*—Necrosis is the death of a circumscribed portion of tissue. It may be the result of insufficient nutrition from the cutting off of the blood supply; or it may depend upon the action of destructive chemical agents, extreme degrees of temperature, certain materials produced by the life processes of some forms of bacteria; or it may be due to mechanical injury. The appearances which dead tissues present under the microscope vary greatly. In some cases we have a simple and gradual disintegration and softening of the tissue, resulting in a mass of degenerated cells and cell detritus, with more or less fluid and various chemical substances resulting from decomposition. The softening of the brain in embolism is an example of simple necrotic softening. In some cases the dead tissues simply gradually dry and shrivel and become hard and dark-colored.

In another class of cases the dead tissues are permeated by fluids, which may be dark-red in color from the solution of coloring matter from the blood, and contain bacteria which induce putrefaction with the production of gases and various new chemical substances. The tissues become swollen and granular and disintegrate; and finally the whole may form a mass of irregular granules with fat droplets, various forms of crystals, shreds of the more resistant kinds of tissue, and bacteria.

*Coagulation necrosis.*—If the supply of blood is shut off from a portion of tissue which is surrounded by, or continuous with other tissue in which the blood continues to circulate, there results a death and transformation of a peculiar character. The composition of the cells of the tissue is altered so that the cell bodies are shining and translucent, diminished in size, sometimes altered in shape, and the nuclei of the cells disappear. This condition is often succeeded by cheesy degeneration. The white infarctions of the spleen and kidneys, the areas of coagulation necrosis in phthisis, and the epithelial cells in croupous inflammation of the mucous membranes are the most common examples of this lesion.

If, for example in the spleen, one of the small arteries is plugged by an embolus, a corresponding portion of the spleen becomes anemic and

appears as a white, wedge-shaped mass, sharply defined from the surrounding splenic tissue. If such a white infarction has existed but a short time, there is hardly any difference between the appearance of its anatomical elements and those of the surrounding spleen, except that they are differently affected by staining fluids. If the infarction is older, the cells are small and shiny and their nuclei cannot be seen.

In croupous inflammations of mucous membranes covered by pavement epithelium, the epithelial cells become shiny, the nuclei disappear, and the shape of the cells is changed so that a number of them together look like a net-work of coagulated fibrin.

*Cheesy degeneration* is the second stage, or the necrobiotic result of an originally hyperplastic growth-process, and the cheesy substance is nothing but the dead remains of broken-down tissue. In this necrobiosis both the newly-formed and the old parts die; the circulation stops, and the vessels disappear; the cells degenerate, partly by an incomplete fatty metamorphoses, partly by a shrinkage from the loss of water. Thus is formed the totally anæmic, dry, dense, and almost amorphous mass (Virchow).

*Parenchymatous Degeneration* (Cloudy swelling).—In this condition the cells of tissues and organs are swollen and filled with small albuminous granules which may be so abundant as to entirely conceal the original cell structure. The granules disappear on treatment with acetic acid, and are insoluble in ether. This degeneration may be present in the parenchyma cells of any inflamed organ, but is most marked and frequent in the liver, kidney, heart-muscle, and mucous membrane of the gastro-intestinal canal. It may occur in infectious or severe febrile diseases, after severe burns, and in poisoning with arsenic, phosphorus, or mineral acids. The cells in a condition of parenchymatous degeneration may regain their normal condition, or become fatty, or disintegrate. In such organs as the liver, kidney, and heart, the gross appearances are often very characteristic; the tissue is swollen and has a less translucent and more dull and grayish look than under normal conditions.

The microscopical study of this lesion is best done in sections of the fresh tissue made with the freezing microtome or in teased fresh tissue, in one-half-per-cent salt solution.

*Fatty Degeneration*.—This is the conversion of the protoplasm of cells into fat, which accumulates in the cell body. The fat is usually present in the cell in very small particles or droplets, but these may coalesce to form large drops. The protoplasm may even be almost entirely replaced by the fat.

*Fatty Infiltration* of cells is a common occurrence under normal as well as pathological conditions, but in this case the fat is believed to originate outside of the cells and simply accumulate in them, causing a passive atrophy of the protoplasm. In this way fatty infiltration is

believed to differ essentially from fatty degeneration, but in many cases a definite distinction between the two is impossible with our present knowledge of the chemistry of cell life. In general the fat droplets are larger in fatty infiltration than in fatty degeneration, yet to this there are many exceptions. Fat granules and droplets are recognized in cells by their strong refraction, by their solubility in alcohol and ether, and their insolubility in acetic acid, and by the black color which they assume when the fresh tissue is treated with osmic acid. Not infrequently feathery clusters of delicate fat crystals occur within the cells. Fatty degenerated cells may break down and form an oily detritus, in which, especially when much moisture is present, cholesterin crystals may be formed by decomposition of the fat.

To the naked eye, organs in a condition of marked fatty degeneration are usually larger and softer than normal, have a grayish yellow color, or are mottled with yellowish streaks or patches, and the normal markings of cut surfaces are more or less obscured.

Fatty degeneration may be due to local or general disturbances of nutrition, from a great variety of causes; disturbances which either directly affect the life processes of the cells themselves, or which produce alterations in their nutritive supply. In addition to its local occurrence, as a result of local disturbances of circulation, in the vicinity of inflammations or in tumors, etc., it is apt to occur in the liver, heart-muscle, and kidney in chronic exhausting diseases and in conditions and diseases to which profound anæmia is incident, or as the result of the action of certain poisons such as phosphorus and arsenic. Fatty degeneration is as a rule, a more serious lesion than fatty infiltration.

Tissues in a condition of fatty degeneration or infiltration may be studied by teasing, or cutting the fresh tissue with the freezing microtome and examining unstained, or lightly stained with eosin, in one-half-per-cent salt solution. Or they may be placed when fresh for twenty-four hours in one-per-cent solution of osmic acid and then studied either after teasing or in sections, in glycerin. A preliminary hardening in Müller's fluid and afterwards in alcohol gives moderately good results if the lesion is extensive. But it should be remembered that in tissues which have been soaked in alcohol the fat is no longer present, its former seat being indicated by clear spaces which are filled with the mounting medium. The fat crystals, however, often persist after prolonged soaking in alcohol.

*Amyloid Degeneration* (Waxy or lardaceous degeneration).—This is a process by which the basement substance of various forms of connective tissue, and especially the walls of the blood-vessels, become swollen and thickened by their conversion into a translucent, firm, glassy, colorless material, albuminous in character. This albuminous material may be present in the tissues in such small amount as to be recognizable only under the microscope, or it may be so abundant as to give a very characteristic appearance to the tissue. Parts in which the lesion is marked are usually larger and contain less blood and feel harder than normal



and have a peculiar dull shining and translucent appearance which varies in character, depending upon the extent and distribution of the degenerated areas and upon its association with other lesions, such as fatty degeneration. It most frequently occurs in the smaller arteries and capillaries whose lumen becomes encroached upon by the thickening of the walls which the process involves. It is the media and intermediary layers of the intima which are earliest and most extensively affected. The change also often occurs in the interstitial connective tissue and membranæ propriæ of organs and in reticular connective tissue. It is both asserted and denied that it may affect the parenchyma cells of organs. We have not been able to find unmistakable evidence of its occurrence in parenchyma cells. These, however, frequently undergo atrophy as the result of pressure from the swollen degenerated tissue.

It is not yet known whether amyloid degeneration is due to a direct transformation of the tissue, or is an infiltration of the tissue by some abnormal material formed elsewhere and brought to it, or derived from the blood.

Amyloid degeneration occurs most frequently and abundantly in the liver, spleen, kidneys, intestinal canal, and lymph glands; but it may occur, usually to a less marked degree, in other parts of the body; in the larger blood-vessels, in the interstitial tissue of the heart and mucous membranes of the air passages, and in the generative organs. It may occur locally, or appear in various parts of the body at once. It may exist without any known cause, but it most frequently occurs in connection with severe wasting diseases, particularly in those involving chronic suppuration and ulceration, especially of the bones. It frequently occurs in tuberculosis, syphilis, in the cachectic condition induced by malignant tumors and is occasionally seen in severe malarial infection, dysentery, and leukæmia.

For microscopical examination, the tissue, either fresh or after preservation, should be cut into thin sections, and these deeply stained with one-per-cent aqueous solution of methyl violet; the sections are washed in water and mounted in glycerin. The differentiation between the amyloid and other parts is more distinct if, after staining, the specimen be dipped for an instant in HCl and alcohol 1—100, and then carefully rinsed, before mounting in glycerin. The degenerated areas are thus stained rose red, while the normal tissue elements have a bluish violet color. In some cases, for reasons which we do not know, the amyloid substance does not show a well-marked reaction with methyl violet. Other anilin dyes also differentiate amyloid substance from normal tissues. On treating sections of amyloid tissue with solution of iodine, the degenerated parts acquire a mahogany color. If they are then treated with sulphuric acid, the degenerated portions acquire a greenish or blue color; but the latter reaction is not very reliable.

*Corpora Amylacea* are small spheroidal homogeneous or lamellated bodies which assume a bluish color on treatment with solution of iodine



or iodine and sulphuric acid. They are frequently found in the acini of the prostate gland, sometimes in large numbers; in the ependyma of the ventricles of the brain, and in areas of sclerosis of the brain and cord; also in extravasations of blood and in various other situations. They may occur under normal as well as pathological conditions, and are apparently of little importance. They seem to have nothing to do with amyloid degeneration, although they somewhat resemble its products. Some of the tube-casts of the kidney resemble in many respects the corpora amyloacea.

*Mucoid Degeneration* may occur in cells or in intercellular substance. When occurring in cells, it consists, under pathological as under normal conditions, of the transformation of the protoplasm into a translucent semi-fluid material, occupying more space than the unaltered protoplasm, and hence causing a swelling of the cells. This new-formed material contains mucin in solution, which is precipitated by acetic acid. It occurs under a variety of conditions, sometimes as a morbid increase of a normal function of cells, as in many catarrhs, sometimes as an entirely abnormal transformation. The cells may be entirely destroyed by the accumulation of the mucoid material within them.

In certain cases, as in many tumors, in cartilage, bone, and other tissues, the intercellular substance undergoes conversion into mucin-containing material, losing almost entirely its original structure. The cells in such cases may be affected only secondarily by the pressure which the new-formed material exerts upon them.

*Colloid Degeneration* is very closely allied, both in chemical and morphological characters, to mucoid degeneration, and in many cases there is no definite microscopical distinction between them. But colloid material is firmer and more consistent than mucous, does not yield a precipitate on addition of acetic acid, and its formation is usually confined to cells; not involving intercellular substance, except by an atrophy which its accumulation sometimes induces. The cells may contain larger and smaller droplets of colloid material, or it may nearly or entirely replace the protoplasm, and accumulate to such an extent as to cause rupture and destruction of the cell. In this way, and by the atrophy of intercellular substance which its accumulation causes, cysts may be formed containing colloid material and cell detritus. Colloid degeneration is of frequent occurrence in certain tumors and in the thyroid gland, and occurs occasionally in other places.

*Hyalin Degeneration* is the transformation of tissues into a transparent glassy substance, much resembling amyloid in its morphological characters; but it does not give the micro-chemical reactions of amyloid, and appears under different conditions. Hyalin substance is quite resistant to the action of acids, and stains readily with eosin. It occurs especially in the walls of the smaller blood-vessels in various parts of the body, in

voluntary muscle fibres, and is said to sometimes involve interstitial tissue. It has been described as occurring in the brain, lymph glands, and ovaries; in the tubules of the kidney, in the walls of aneurisms, in muscle fibres, in the lesions of diphtheritis, tuberculosis, and syphilis, in the hyaloid membrane and vessels of the eye, and elsewhere. It is sometimes called vitreous or fibrinous, and also waxy degeneration. It seems to be, in some ways, allied to coagulation necrosis, but its exact significance and relations to other forms of degeneration and the conditions of its occurrence are not yet known.

In *Calcareous Degeneration* there is a deposition, either in cells or in the intercellular substance, of larger and smaller granules composed chiefly of phosphate and carbonate of calcium. These particles, when abundant, give hardness, brittleness, and a whitish appearance to the affected tissue. Under the microscope, they appear dark by transmitted, white and glistening by reflected light. The addition of strong acids causes their solution, usually with the formation of bubbles of carbonic acid gas, whose evolution may be observed under the microscope. Tissues may be nearly completely permeated with the salts, or the latter may be scattered in patches through them. Sometimes large lamellated concretions are formed in tissues, usually at the seat of some old inflammatory process. Calcification usually occurs in parts of tissues which are dead, or are in a condition of reduced vitality, as a result of some antecedent morbid process, usually of an inflammatory nature. Among the most common and important examples of calcareous degenerations may be mentioned those which occur in the valves of the heart and walls of the blood-vessels.

*Pigmentation.*—The pigment which is present in the body under abnormal conditions may be formed in the body or may be introduced into it from without. It may be deposited in the cells or in the intercellular substance, and is sometimes visible to the naked eye and sometimes not. The pigment occurring in the body may be in the form of yellow, brown, black, or reddish granules, or in crystalline form. In the majority of cases, the pigment is formed by the decomposition of hæmoglobin from extravasated masses of red blood-cells. Parts which have been the seat of long-continued hyperæmia may have a diffuse grayish appearance from the alterations of the hæmoglobin in red blood-cells which have escaped from the vessels by diapedesis. Pigment may be formed in the blood-vessels in severe cases of malarial infection, and circulate in the blood. In another class of cases, various forms of cells seem to be actively concerned in elaborating pigment; this is exemplified in the true melanotic tumors, and the process has its physiological prototype in the formation of pigment in the choroid, skin, and some connective tissues. Pigmentation of tissue from the bile occurs under a variety of conditions, and may be the result of the deposition of granules or crystals.

A diffuse staining also frequently occurs from the bile without the formation of solid particles.

In many cases, the mode of formation of pigment is not at all understood. In tissues which are normally somewhat colored, the color may greatly deepen by a simple atrophy of the tissue without the new formation of pigment, as in simple atrophy of the heart-muscle and in atrophied fat.

As examples of pigment introduced into the body from without, we may mention the deposition of minute particles of silver from the internal use of silver nitrate; the coloring of the skin and lymph glands from tattooing; and especially, the pigmentation of the lungs and bronchial glands from the inhalation of coal and other dust, which is universally present under the conditions which modern civilization imposes.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> For the literature on the subjects treated of in this chapter see the extensive bibliography in Recklinghausen's *Handbuch der Allgemeinen Pathologie*, which constitutes parts 2 and 3 of Billroth and Luecke's *Deutsche Chirurgie*, 1883.

## PARASITES.

---

The scope of this work permits us to do little more than enumerate and give a very brief description of some of the more important forms of animal parasites found in man. Among the vegetable parasites, however, the bacteria are at the present time assuming such an important place in the consideration of the etiology of certain diseases that they justly claim a somewhat extended notice.

### ANIMAL PARASITES.

#### PROTOZOA.

Among the unicellular organisms several genera and species occur in the human body, but none are of great pathological significance. A species of *amœba* has been found a few times in large numbers in the intestinal contents in dysentery. Amœba has also been found in the mouth. The so-called *psorospermia*—minute oval structures about .035 mm. long, with a thick capsule and coarsely granular contents—which are of very frequent occurrence in the liver of the rabbit, forming a part of the contents of yellowish, irregular-shaped cysts, have been found three or four times in the liver of man. Another smaller form occurring in the intestinal epithelium of dogs, cats, and rabbits, has been found in two cases in a similar situation in man.

Among the *infusoria* we find in man representatives of several genera. The more common of these are *Cercomonas intestinalis*, a pear-shaped flagellate structure about 0.012 mm. long, making, when alive, rapid movements. It has been found in the evacuations of persons suffering from cholera, typhoid fever, and diarrhœa. *Trichomonas vaginalis* has an oval or pear-shaped body, about 0.01 mm. long, on which are a few cilia, and at the end two or three flagellæ, somewhat longer than the body. They are of very frequent occurrence in acid vaginal exudations in catarrhal vaginitis. The possibility of mistaking the *T. vaginalis* for human spermatozoa should be borne in mind in medico-legal examinations, although to an observer familiar with either structure such a mistake could hardly occur.



Some forms of *ciliated infusoria* have been found in large numbers in the intestines in typhoid fever, particularly in the north of Europe. Most of the above-mentioned parasitic protozoa are apparently of little significance and simply accompany, not cause, the lesions with which they are occasionally associated.

#### WORMS.

**TREMATODA (*Flukes*).**—These worms are small, flat, tongue-shaped or leaf-like creatures, with an intestine, and discoidal structures on the under surface, by means of which they attach themselves. There are several genera and species found in man. The most common genus is *Distoma*. Of these, *D. hepaticum* is of most frequent occurrence. It is about 30 mm. long, and usually occurs in the gall-ducts and gall-bladder. The embryos are attached generally to water-plants, from eating of which the infection is believed to occur. *D. lanceolatum* is more slender, pointed at the ends, 8 to 10 mm. long, and has been found a few times in the gall-bladder. *D. sinense* is a slender worm about 15 mm. long, and has been found in the bile in considerable numbers, particularly in the Chinese. *D. hæmatobium* is a more nearly cylindrical worm; the sexes are distinct; the male from 12 to 14 mm. long, the female 16 to 18 mm. long, and occurs especially in Egyptians in the portal and other abdominal veins.

**CESTODA (*Tape Worms*).**—These important worms consist, in the mature state, of more or less rectangular or elongated segments, each one of which represents a single individual, arranged in a linear series to form a colony, at one end of which, called the head, is a variously formed structure for the attachment of the colony to its host. The neck and head are called the *scolex*, while the segments are called *proglottides* (Fig. 3). These worms have neither mouth nor alimentary canal. They are hermaphrodites, the sexes being united in the proglottides. The head and neck (scolex) may exist as an immature form in various tissues and organs where they are encysted, and are often called *cysticercus*.

*Tænia solium* is of frequent occurrence in man. It may be several metres in length, and may be coiled up or stretched out in the small intestines. The head, about the size of a pin's head, has a projecting proboscis or rostellum, around which are arranged a double row of horny hooklets. Below these are four sucking discs at the sides of the head. The hooklets of the anterior row are larger than those in the posterior row, and are from 0.16 to 0.18 mm. long. The proglottides, when fully developed, are from 10 to 12 mm. long, and from 5 to 6 mm. wide, but those nearest the head are much shorter and immature. The eggs of *T. solium* are ovoidal structures, about 0.03 mm. in diameter. The embryo of this worm is most commonly seen in the muscles of the pig as an encysted scolex, commonly called a "measle." It occasionally

occurs in man in the muscles, brain, eye, etc., and is called *cysticercus cellulosæ*. It is usually about the size of a pea, but may be as large as a pigeon's egg, and surrounded by a connective-tissue capsule.

Infection with the worm occurs in the human subject from the ingestion of insufficiently cooked "measly" pork, or in the case of *cysticercus cellulosæ*, from the ingestion of the eggs, which may, in a variety of ways in uncleanly persons, get into the food.

*Tænia mediocanellata* (*T. saginata* LEUCKART).—The head of this species is somewhat cuboidal without either rostellum or hooklets, but with four sucking discs. The segments are generally broader and

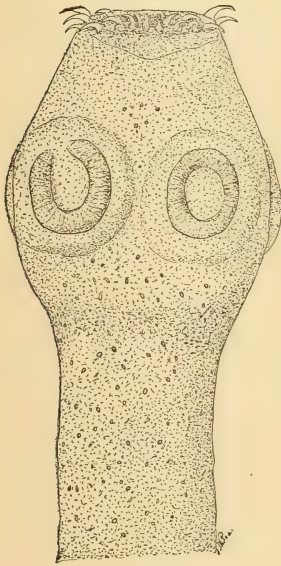


FIG. 2.

FIG. 2.—HEAD OF *TÆNIA SOLIUM*,  $\times 40$ .

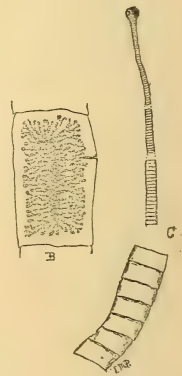


FIG. 3.

FIG. 3.—HEAD AND PROGLOTTIDES OF *TÆNIA MEOCANELLATA*.

A, Head,  $\times 15$ .

B, Mature Proglottid showing generative apparatus, nat. size.

C, Head and small fragments of Immature Proglottides showing gradual tapering of the neck, nat. size.

shorter than in *T. solium* and the worm is usually larger. In the embryonal form the scolex occurs as the *Cysticercus Tæniæ mediocanellatæ* in the form of small cysts in the muscles of cattle, from the eating of which in the uncooked condition the infection occurs. This is the most common tape-worm in the United States.

*Tænia echinococcus*.—This worm in the mature condition forms a short small colony inhabiting the intestine of the dog. The head is about 0.3 mm. in diameter and has a double row of hooklets around the rostellum. The proglottides are three or four in number, the last being the larger.

The entire colony is not more than 4 to 5 mm. in length. The significance of this parasite in human pathology depends upon the cysts called hydatids which it forms, in the immature or cysticercus stage, in various parts of the body. When the eggs of the mature worm get into the intestinal canal of man, they undergo partial development and find their way into the tissues and organs, most frequently into the liver.

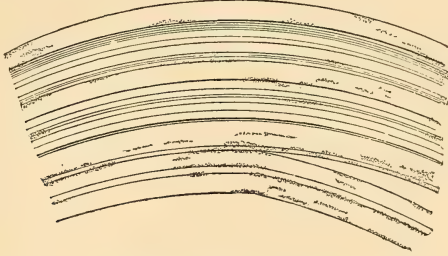


FIG. 4.—CUTICULA OF ECHINOCOCCUS CYST,  $\times 250$ .

Here cysts are formed which become encapsulated by a connective-tissue membrane produced by the inflammatory reaction of the organ. The cyst-wall of the parasite is formed of two layers—an outer finely lamellated layer called the *cuticula*, and an inner granular layer containing muscle-fibres and blood-vessels, called the *parenchymatous layer*. Inside of the primary cyst, secondary cysts sometimes form, called *daughter cysts*, and within the latter tertiary cysts, called *granddaughter cysts*, may develop. On the inner surface of the cysts, either primary, secondary, or tertiary, the scolices or heads of the immature

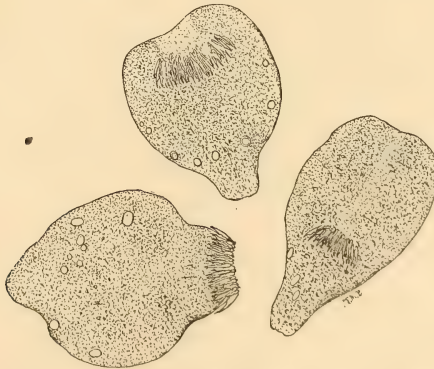


FIG. 5.—SCOLICES OF TENIA ECHINOCOCCUS.  $\times 60$ .  
In one the rostellum is projected, in the others it is withdrawn.

worm are formed. These develop in the walls of the pediculated vesicles called *brood capsules*. The walls of these vesicles have a lamellated cuticula and a parenchymatous layer similar to those of the primary cysts. The scolices, of which there may be several in each brood capsule,



are similar to the heads of the mature tape-worm. They are about 0.3 mm. in diameter, having a rostellum surrounded by a double row of hooklets and four sucking discs. At the posterior end of the scolex is a pedicle by which it is originally attached to the wall of the brood capsule. Little lamellated concretions of lime salts are often present in the scolex. The anterior portion of the scolex, the rostellum, hooklets, and suckers, are often invaginated in the posterior portion. The scolices may be free inside of the brood capsules, or, owing to the rupture of the latter, they may be free in the cavity of the primary cysts. They may die and degenerate, forming a granular mass in which the hooklets may be embedded, or the hooklets may be free in the brood capsules or in the primary cysts. Sterile cysts are often found, that is, those in which

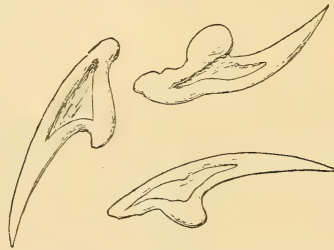


FIG. 6.—HOOKLETS FROM SCOLEX OF *TÆNIA ECHINOCOCCUS*,  $\times 750$ .

neither brood capsules nor scolices are developed. The cysts contain, in addition to the scolices, a clear gelatinous fluid. This fluid may become turbid by admixture with disintegrated scolices or fragments of the parenchymatous layer, or it may contain fatty detritus, cholesterin crystals, and particles of lime salts. The fluid may be partially absorbed, leaving a thick grumous material within the cysts, which may become calcified or converted into a stony mass. When the scolices are not found entire, the diagnosis may be made by the discovery of the separate hooklets, or fragments of the characteristically lamellated cyst-walls. The connective-tissue walls of the primary cysts may become fatty or cheesy or calcified.

Sometimes the secondary vesicles project outwards instead of inwards, forming a series of cysts outside of the primary one. This variety of development is sometimes seen in man, but is more common in the domestic animals. It is called *echinococcus scolecipariens* or *exogena*.

Another variety of echinococcus, called *E. multilocularis*, is almost always found in the liver, and appears to be the result of incomplete and disturbed development of the embryos or cysts. It consists of a congeries of irregular, usually small cysts, surrounded by broad and narrow bands of connective tissue, and sometimes containing gelatinous fluid and scolices or hooklets; but the latter structures are commonly absent or



difficult of detection. The whole is often surrounded by a dense connective-tissue capsule which may be calcified. The entire mass often presents an alveolar structure, and was formerly regarded as a tumor—alveolar cancer. The diagnosis may be established by the discovery of the hooklets or scolices, or fragments of the lamellated cuticula.

There are four or five other species of *tænia* occurring rarely in man.

*T. nana*.—This species occurs in the form of small colonies about 15 mm. in length. The rostellum is surrounded by a single row of hooklets. It has been seen once in large numbers by Bilharz in the duodenum of a child which died of meningitis in Cairo.

*T. flavopunctata*, a species about which little is known, is reported twice in America, as occurring in the intestine of young children.

*T. madagascariensis*, also little known and rare, has been seen in two children in Madagascar.

*T. cucumerina*.—This species occurs in colonies about 20 ctm. long. The head is very small and spheroidal, and has four rows of hooklets. It is frequent in the small intestines of dogs or cats. It occurs occasionally in man. Its scolex inhabits the dog louse, and infection may occur in man by the transference of the lice or the embryos of the parasite to the mouth, as the result of the filthy habit of kissing dogs and cats, or permitting the face to be licked by them.

*Bothriocephalus latus*.—This the largest of the human tape-worms, has very broad quadrangular proglottides. The head is ovoidal and about 2 mm. long and 1 mm. broad. It has no proper sucking discs and no hooklets; but by long grooves on either side of the head, the animal attaches itself to its host. The neck is long and filiform. It occurs most frequently in Europe, particularly in the northern provinces. The eggs undergo partial development in water, and are taken up by the pike and eel-pout, and perhaps by other fresh-water fish, from the ingestion of whose flesh in an imperfectly cooked condition the human infection occurs. Two other species of *Bothriocephalus* have been described as of rare occurrence in man: *B. cordatus* in Greenland and Iceland, and *B. cristatus*.

NEMATODA (*Round-Worms*).—These worms are in general cylindrical, elongated, usually pointed at the ends, and sometimes filiform. The surface is sometimes smooth, sometimes irregularly beset with hairs and papillæ, or possesses longitudinal elevated striæ or transverse rings; but the body is not segmented. There is a mouth at the anterior portion, and a ventral anus near the posterior end. The intestine is straight. The sexes are in most forms distinct, the male being in general smaller than the female.

*Ascaris lumbricoides*.—This is one of the most common of the human intestinal parasites, and is of particularly frequent occurrence in children. It is of a light brownish or reddish color. The female is from 30 to 40

ctm. long, and from 5 to 6 mm. thick. The male is somewhat more than half as large. Both sexes are pointed at the ends, the posterior end of the male being curved into a spined hook. The eggs, from 0.05 to 0.06 mm. in diameter, are surrounded by an albuminous envelope, and are quite resistant to destructive agencies. The mode of development and life history of these parasites are not very well understood. Their usual seat, in man, is the small intestine, but they may wander into the stomach, and exceptionally get into the mouth, nose, bronchi, gall passages, peritoneal cavity, etc. They may be single in the gut or present in great numbers.

Two other species of *Ascaris* have been found in man. *A. maritima* was found in the vomit of a child in Greenland, in an immature condition. *A. mystax*, a tolerably common form in cats and dogs, has been found a few times in man. It is smaller than *A. lumbricoides*.

*Oxyuris vermicularis* (Thread-worm or Pin-worm).—This species is very small; the female has a pointed tail, and is about 1 ctm. long. The posterior end of the male, which is about 4 mm. long, is blunt, and after death somewhat curled. The eggs are produced in great numbers, are oval, and about 0.052 mm. long. This parasite is very common in children, and may be present in large numbers in the colon. They may in the female enter the vagina and uterus. This worm is only known to infest the human subject, and infection doubtless occurs by the ingestion of the eggs, which are widely distributed in a variety of ways on many objects, fruits, etc.

*Strongylus gigas*.—This is a slender red worm, the female being sometimes 1 metre long and over 1 ctm. in diameter. It has been found several times in the pelvis of the kidney in man. It is more common in the wolf, fox, horse, seal, and some other animals. *Strongylus longevaginus*. The female is about 2.5 ctm. long, the male, as usual, shorter. It is of a yellowish-white color, and has been found once in the lung of a boy in Germany.

*Dochmius duodenalis*.—The female is from 1 to 2 ctm. long, the male about 1 ctm. long. The body of the male is dilated anteriorly and curved backwards. Its mouth is furnished with a chitinous capsule, and chitinous claws and teeth. It is found in the small intestine of man in Italy, Switzerland, Egypt, and Brazil. The head is burrowed into the mucous membrane of the host, and the animal is nourished by the blood which it sucks out, and which is usually seen in its intestine. An ecchymosis is produced at the point of attachment or even severe hæmorrhage, and marked anæmia may be the result of the presence of large numbers of the parasites.

*Trichocephalus dispar* (Whip-worm).—The males and females are of nearly equal size, 4 to 5 ctm. long. A little less than one-half of the body (the posterior portion) is about 1 mm. thick, and in the male is rolled into a flattened spiral, but in the female is but slightly bent. The

anterior part of the body is very slender, and is embedded in the mucous membrane of the host. The eggs are elongated, oval-shaped, about 0.05 mm. long, and about one-half as wide, with a thick brown capsule. This parasite is very common in some countries; it dwells in the cæcum in small or large numbers. It is usually of little pathological significance, commonly producing no symptoms. Its developmental history is not well known.

*Trichina spiralis*.—The female of this most dangerous and common parasite is in the mature condition about 3 mm. long; the male from 1 to 1.5 mm. long; they are filiform in shape and white in color. The young are born in the form of tiny worms about 0.01 mm. in length, and somewhat similar to the adult in shape. Infection occurs in man from the ingestion of insufficiently cooked pork. The muscle of the diseased pig contains the embryos of the parasite in an encysted condition. In the stomach the capsule of the worm is dissolved, and the embryos are set free. They very rapidly mature, increasing in size, and the females give birth in the small intestine to very large numbers of young. It is estimated that a single female may give birth to from 1,300 to 1,500 young. These find their way through the mucous membrane and wall of the gut into various parts of the body.

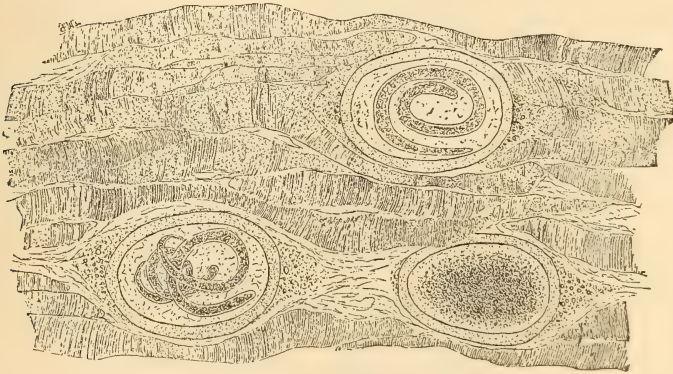


FIG. 7.—TRICHINÆ ENCYSTED IN MUSCLE.

In one capsule the parasite is dead and its remains calcified.

The exact course which they take in getting out of the gut is not fully established, probably they traverse the tissues in different ways. At any rate, they find their way to the voluntary striated muscle tissue, which they penetrate, and enter the muscle fibres. Here they cause a disintegration of the contractile substance, and coil themselves inside of the sarcolemma. In this situation they become encapsulated by material in part furnished by themselves, in part by means of the inflammatory reaction which their presence induces in the connective tissue of the muscle. The worms are surrounded inside the capsule by granular material.



The capsule after a time becomes partially calcified, and in this condition may be readily seen by the naked eye as a tiny white speck. In this encysted state they may remain inactive but living, for an indefinite, often for a very long time. Most frequently the cysts contain but one embryo, but they may contain from two to four. The embryo may die and its remains become calcified.

The same course of events transpires when the muscle trichinæ are eaten by the pig or a variety of other animals.

The embryos in the muscle are killed by a temperature of 55° C.

The embryos may mature, and a new generation be born within from five to eight days after the ingestion of the diseased meat.

As the result of the presence of these parasites in the body, if the invasion be severe, acute catarrhal enteritis, with diarrhoea and vomiting, high fever, and severe pains are apt to occur. (Edema of the face and of other parts of the body, broncho-pneumonia, and fatty degeneration of the liver, may be found at the post-mortem examination of cases which have succumbed to the disease. The encapsulated embryos may be found in enormous numbers in various voluntary muscles of the body, but they are most apt to be found, when not very abundant, in the muscles of the neck and larynx, in the intercostals, and the diaphragm. They tend to collect towards the tendinous extremities of the muscles. Trichinæ also occur in the rat, cat, mouse, and other animals.<sup>1</sup>

*Filaria medinensis* (Guinea worm).—This is a thread-like worm; the female, which is alone known, being sometimes as much as 80 ctm. long and from 0.5 to 1.7 mm. thick. It is common in the east, and inhabits the subcutaneous connective tissue, in which it often gives rise to abscesses

---

<sup>1</sup> For the examination of muscles for the detection of the presence of the parasite, small pieces are snipped out with the scissors, and squeezed into a thin sheet between the slide and a thick cover-glass, and examined with a low power. A considerable number of bits of muscle should be examined, particularly from the above-mentioned favorite situations, before excluding them in a suspected case, because they are sometimes present in small numbers. A thorough search is of especial importance in the examination of pork, since, owing to the enormous fertility of the parasites, even a moderate number may give rise to a severe infection.

For the minute examination of the parasite, bits of muscle should be hardened in Müller's fluid and alcohol, and decalcified if necessary, and after embedding in celloidin, thin sections cut and stained double with hæmatoxylin and eosin, and mounted in balsam. Bits of muscle may be also teased, the embryos picked out with a needle, and the cysts either broken open under a lens with the needle, or squeezed under the cover-glass. The embryo worm thus set free may be mounted in a mixture of equal parts of glycerin and picric acid. The adult forms, which may be obtained by feeding rabbits with uncooked trichinous muscle, and examining after the proper interval, may be hardened in Müller's fluid, and mounted in a mixture of equal parts of picric acid and glycerin, or in the same mixture which has been lightly tinged with eosin.



and ulcers. The embryos live for a time free in fresh water, and are then taken up by a species of fresh-water crustacean, in whose body they undergo further development, and by the ingestion of which the infection of the human subject occurs.

*Filaria sanguinis hominis*.—The embryo of this parasite, which inhabits the blood of men, especially in Brazil, Egypt, and some parts of the Orient, and occasionally occurs in this country, is about 0.35 mm.

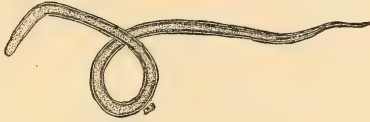


FIG. 8.—FILARIA SANGUINIS HOMINIS,  $\times 200$ .

From a case in the New York Hospital. The specimen was prepared and loaned to the writer by Dr. Frank Ferguson.

long, rounded anteriorly, and pointed at the tail. It has about the diameter of a red blood-cell. It occurs, sometimes in great numbers, in the blood during the night-time, being as a rule absent during the day. It may occur in the urine in connection with chyluria and hæmaturia. The mature female is from 8 to 10 cm. long, and has been found inhabiting the lymph-vessels of man, particularly in the scrotum and lower extremities. Owing to the obstructions which it causes in the lymph-circulation and to the local irritation which its presence induces, it sometimes gives rise to lymphangiectasis, œdema, abscesses, and perhaps elephantiasis. One of the embryonic stages of development is believed to transpire in the body of a species of nocturnal mosquito. Through the bodies of the dead mosquitos, which are liable to fall into the drinking-water, it is believed that the spread of the parasite may occur.

There are several other species of filaria occasionally found in man which it is not necessary to enumerate here.

*Rhabdonema strongyloides*.—A small filiform worm from 1 to 2 mm. in length is found, often in enormous numbers, in the intestines, biliary and pancreatic ducts of man in Cochin China, giving rise to endemic chronic diarrhœa. It has been thought that there are at least two species, which have been described under the generic name *Aguillula*, but recent researches by Leuckart have led him to believe them to be different developmental stages of the same form, for which he suggests the above name.

The scope of this work does not permit us to enter into the subject of external parasites, which will be found described in treatises on diseases of the skin, or in the general works on parasites referred to below.

*Modes of Study and Preparation of the Internal Parasites*.—The protozoa may be studied in the living condition in one-half-per-cent solution of sodium chloride. They may be killed and preserved by allowing a

drop of one-per-cent osmic acid to run under the cover-glass, and replacing this after a few hours by glycerin lightly tinged with eosin. The smaller and embryonic forms of the various kinds of parasitic worms may be hardened best under the cover-glass with Müller's fluid or osmic acid, and these may be, when the hardening is completed, replaced by dilute, and this by strong alcohol, and the latter finally replaced by eosin-glycerin, in which the specimens are permanently preserved; or they may be stained lightly by tinging the alcohol with eosin, and then cleared up by oil of cloves, and finally mounted in balsam.

It is necessary, however, for detailed study of the larger parasites, to make thin longitudinal and transverse sections from different parts of the body. This can be readily done even in very small forms by imbedding the animal—after careful hardening in osmic acid or in Müller's fluid, and afterwards in alcohol—in celloidin, and using the microtome. The sections may be stained double with hæmatoxylin and eosin and mounted in balsam.

The general arrangement of the generative organs in the proglottides of tape worms may be well seen by staining in eosin or eosin-glycerin after moderate hardening in dilute alcohol, and then squeezing the segment between two glass slides.

*Bibliography.*—Especially to be recommended for detailed descriptions of human parasites, together with practical suggestions for their study, is the small work of Braun, "Die thierischen Parasiten des Menschen," 1883, which contains also the more important bibliography.

The more extended classical works of Cobbold, "Entozoa of Men and Animals," 1879, and Küchenmeister and Zürn, "Die Parasiten des Menschen," 2d Ed., should be consulted, and both contain valuable bibliography. Various forms of external parasites of men and animals are fully described and illustrated in the work of Mégnin, "Les Parasites et les Maladies parasitaires chez l'homme," etc., 1880. The plates of Stein, illustrating the *Cestoda*, 1882, are carefully executed. In the "Report on Trichinæ and Trichinosis," in 1880, by Glazier, Surgeon in the Marine Hospital Service, will be found an illustrated account of the natural history of this parasite, history of the disease, etc., and a section on its occurrence in the United States.

#### PARASITIC FUNGI.

These lowly vegetable organisms which are of not infrequent occurrence on and in the human body, both in health and disease, embrace the structures commonly known as *moulds* and *yeasts*. Of these, the moulds are of the greatest importance, and these present varying degrees of significance. The scope of this work does not permit us to describe either the natural history of the group or the different forms. For this we refer to works on skin disease and on vegetable parasites.

We may simply mention as the more common and important the *Achorion Schönleinii* or *favus fungus*; the *Trichophyton tonsurans* or ring-

worm fungus; the *Microsporon furfur* or the fungus of pityriasis versicolor. A form of *Aspergillus* is of occasional occurrence in the external meatus of the ear, and on the membrana tympani. The peculiar white pellicle often seen on the mucous membrane of the mouth and pharynx, sometimes in adults who are the victims of exhausting diseases, but more often in young children (*thrush*) is associated with the fungus *Oidium albicans* (*Saccharomyces albicans*).

*Actinomycosis* (Ray fungus). This fungus grows in radiate masses especially in the jaws of cattle, but is of occasional occurrence in man. The fungous mass may form a large tumor in the jaw, by its own growth and by the formation of granulation tissue, which is apt to slough and spread so that not only may the tissues of the tongue, pharynx, larynx, etc., be involved, but nodules of similar character may form in the gastro-intestinal canal, lungs, skin, etc. These nodules were formerly considered to be some form of sarcoma. The fungus forms little yellow masses as large as a millet seed or smaller, which are scattered through the new-formed granulation tissue or mingled with the pus, giving the growths a very characteristic appearance. It is the peculiar radiate grouping of the filaments of the growth which gave rise to the name 'ray fungus.' The disease is propagated from one animal to another by inoculation or by contact of the growth with a wound or an abrasion of the mucous membrane.<sup>1</sup>

#### BACTERIA.

*Morphology and Physiology.*—Bacteria are minute vegetable organisms of the lowest and simplest form. They are widely distributed in the air, water, and surface soil, and are particularly abundant among the habitations of men, or wherever animal and vegetable substances are undergoing decay. They are also invariably present in greater or less numbers in the mouth, nose, lungs, and gastro-intestinal canal of men and animals. The largest of them are too small to be seen with the naked eye, and the smallest require for their recognition the most perfect and powerful of our microscopic aids. They have various shapes: spheroidal, rod-like, filiform, or spiral. They are simple cells, multiplying, when the conditions are favorable, with extraordinary rapidity, by transverse division, or by the formation of spores which develop into the adult forms. They are very resistant to the action of dilute acids and alkalies, and are believed to possess a membrane inclosing the protoplasm, which may appear homogeneous or granular.

They lie sometimes singly, sometimes in pairs or chains, and sometimes in masses embedded in a transparent gelatinous substance, and are

<sup>1</sup> For general consideration of the fungi and their relations to disease, consult Flügge, "Fermente und Mikroparasiten, Handbuch der Hygiene und der Gewerbe-Krankheiten." Pettenkofer und v. Ziemssen, 1883.



then called *zoöglæa colonies*. Some are capable of performing rapid movements, others not, and the same form may be at one time mobile, and at another immobile. Some of them have a cilium at the ends by means of whose vibrations they may perform active progressive movements.

They require for their nourishment nitrogen and the hydrocarbons, oxygen is necessary for the proliferation and activities of some forms, and for others not.

They are active only in the presence of moisture, but when this and other conditions favoring their activities fail, they do not necessarily die, but some forms may remain, either as spores or as fully developed organisms, for long periods wholly dry and inert, but capable of resuming their activity whenever they are again restored to favorable conditions.

Some are and some are not very sensitive to changes of temperature. At a temperature below  $+5^{\circ}\text{C}$ . they are incapable of activity or proliferation, but some forms are not killed by a temperature of  $-111^{\circ}\text{C}$ . As the temperature is raised, their activities increase up to a certain point. It may be said in general that they are most active at about the temperature of the body, although species differ considerably in this respect. In fluids, many bacteria are killed by a temperature of  $80^{\circ}\text{C}$ . and all are killed by a temperature of  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$ ., if this be long enough continued. When dry they resist much higher temperatures than when moist. The spores are as a rule more resistant to high temperatures than the bacteria themselves; some having been exposed, dry, to a temperature of  $140^{\circ}\text{C}$ . without destruction of life. Fluids containing the spores of bacteria which resist very high temperatures, may be sterilized by boiling for a short time, then being allowed to stand at ordinary temperatures for several hours, and then again boiling; this process being repeated several times. In this way, although the spores themselves are not killed by the heat, the bacteria into which they develop during the intervals are killed, so that finally the medium is entirely freed from both living spores and adult bacteria.

As a result of their growth and activities, certain materials are produced in the nutrient media, which, when sufficiently concentrated, may bring their activities to a stand-still. Putrefaction and putrefactive products are always dependent upon their presence and activity. In the same nutrient medium one form of bacteria, for whose growth the soil is more favorable, may interfere with or even destroy another, by its own excessive growth.

Certain disinfecting agents, when brought into contact with bacteria, are capable of greatly reducing their activities, or destroying them altogether; but different forms differ greatly in their power of resisting the action of these agents. The spores of certain bacteria are exceedingly resistant, much more so than the bacteria themselves, to the action of disin-



fecting agents. Among these disinfectants may be mentioned carbolic acid, sulphurous acid, solutions of chlorine, iodine, and bromine, and especially solutions of corrosive sublimate, which is very inimical to the life of some bacteria and their spores even in very dilute solutions (1 : 1000–1 : 5000), or less.

*Classification of Bacteria.*—These organisms are so small and so difficult to obtain for experimentation in a pure, unmixed condition, and their systematic study is of so recent a date, that much uncertainty still exists as to the life history of the different forms. It is even not yet absolutely established whether or not the different forms of bacteria belong in all cases to different and distinct species. The theory is advanced by some observers that, standing, as they do, very low in the scale of living beings, they are capable of being so influenced by their environment as to undergo such marked morphological and physiological alterations as to insure a mutability of species, so that a single form is capable of changing from one species into another. While this possibility must be recognized, the most careful researches tend to confirm the belief that species are distinct and practically permanent.

The most useful classification of the bacteria and the one generally adopted is that of Cohn, by which all forms are brought into four main groups, depending upon their shape.

I. *Sphero-bacteria*.—Spheroidal-celled bacteria.

II. *Micro-bacteria*.—Short-rod-celled bacteria.

III. *Desmo-bacteria*.—Filiform-celled bacteria.

IV. *Spiro-bacteria*.—Spiral-celled bacteria.

This classification is provisional, and doubtless, in the light of future research, will be essentially modified; but it is at present almost indispensable for purposes of study.

I. *Sphero-bacteria*.—The most common and important genus of this group of bacteria is *Micrococcus*, of which there are many species. Some of these are capable of producing coloring-materials of various kinds in the nutrient media and are called *chromogenous micrococci*; others induce different forms of fermentation—*zymogenous micrococci*; still others occurring in the body in connection with various diseases are called *pathogenous micrococci*. The cells of most of the species of micrococci are very small, having, for the most part, a diameter of less than  $1\ \mu$  (0.001 mm.); but some forms are considerably larger. They occur either singly or joined together in pairs—*diplococcus*; in longer or shorter beaded chains, or in zooglœa masses. They are believed never to exhibit spontaneous movements, although liable to show the Brownian movement. The species differ from one another in size, sometimes slightly in shape, in mode of grouping, in refractile power, and in their physiological activities.

Among the *chromogenous micrococci* may be mentioned the *Micro-*

*coccus prodigiosus* which produces a deep-red color in its nutrient medium, and which is supposed to have given rise to the alleged miracle of the bleeding host, and which sometimes occurs, in a very destructive way, on bread. *Micrococcus luteus* forms yellow droplets upon the surface of the nutrient medium. Both may be readily cultivated for experimentation on the surface of boiled and sterilized potatoes (see below, methods of studying bacteria).

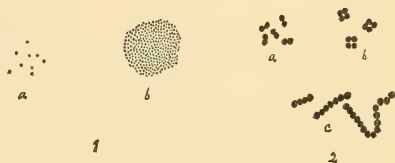


FIG. 9.—SPHERO-BACTERIA (GENUS MICROCOCCUS).

1. Micrococci from Ulcerative Endocarditis. *a*, single; *b*, zoogloea.
2. Micrococci Cultivated from Laboratory Dust. *a*, in pairs (diplococcus form); *b*, in tetrads; *c*, in chains (sometimes designated as Streptococcus).

Specimens stained with fuchsin,  $\times 700$ .

Among the *zymogenous* micrococci may be mentioned *M. ureæ*, which frequently occurs in urine, inducing ammoniacal fermentation. Other species are found in fermenting wine and in a great variety of putrefying substances.

The so-called *pathogenous micrococci* belong, as a rule, among the minuter forms, and morphological distinctions between the species are as yet, for the most part, wanting.

Micrococci have been found at the seat of lesion or in various parts of the body in *diphtheria*, *erysipelas*, *ulcerative endocarditis*, *syphilis*, *cerebro-spinal meningitis*, *lobar pneumonia*, *osteo-myelitis*, and *infective periostitis and syphilis*. Their occurrence and significance will be considered in the descriptions of the lesions of these diseases in the section of this book devoted to Special Pathology.

In the exudation of *gonorrhœa*, large micrococci, mostly in the form of diplococcus, are found, sometimes in the cells, sometimes free (see lesions of the urethra). In *pyæmia* and *puerperal fever*, micrococci have been found in various parts of the body, sometimes in the blood-vessels, sometimes in the tissues, and frequently in abscesses and necrotic areas. They are assumed by some observers to be the cause of these diseases, but this is not yet proven. Inoculation of material containing the micrococci from the bodies of pyæmic persons may produce the same or a similar disease in healthy animals.<sup>1</sup>

Micrococci have also been described as occurring in scarlatina, typhus and typhoid fever, measles, lupus, pyelitis, acute yellow atrophy of the

<sup>1</sup> Consult Koch : "Traumatic Infective Diseases"; and Rosenbach : "Mikro-Organismen bei den Wund-Infections-Krankheiten," 1884.

liver, small-pox, hemophilia neonatorum, and in other diseases; but no definite proof has yet been furnished that they stand in a causative relation to them. They frequently occur in connection with the process of *suppuration*; but their influence upon the process, if any, has not yet been definitely determined.

Another genus of sphero-bacteria is *Sarcina*, which embraces several species. Among these is the *S. ventriculi*, consisting of large cells usually grouped in clusters of four to sixteen. They are found in the stomach, both in health and disease, but are not proven to stand in a causative relation to the diseased conditions in which they occur.

II. *Micro-bacteria* (rod bacteria).—This group is represented by a single genus—*Bacterium*, from which is derived the general name applied to this whole class of organisms. They have the form of short rods or cylinders and are sometimes elliptical. The cells usually appear in pairs or in rows of four, but seldom form longer chains. They not infrequently form zooglœa colonies. They are capable of active spontaneous movements. The different species may be grouped into chromogenous, zymogenous, and pathogenous bacteria. Among the chromogenous species may be mentioned *Bacterium synxanthum*, which is found in the so-called yellow milk, and the *B. æruginosum*, which sometimes gives a greenish-blue color to pus.

The most common representative of the zymogenous species is *Bacterium termo*. This is the most common and wide-spread of all the bacteria and is found usually in active proliferation wherever putrefaction is going on, although the part which it plays is not definitely known. It is usually associated with other bacteria. Its cells are short



FIG. 10.—MICRO-BACTERIA (GENUS BACTERIUM).  
1, *Bacterium termo*. 2, *Bacterium lineola*.  
Specimen stained with fuchsin,  $\times 600$ .

cylinders usually from 1 to 2  $\mu$  in length. It performs tremulous progressive movements, sometimes turning on its axis and jerking about in a most fantastic manner. Cilia are described as projecting from its ends and causing its movements. Frequently associated with *B. termo*, and very common in stagnant water and putrid infusions is a larger, but quite similar species—*B. lineola*.

The species of *Bacterium* supposed, with much reason, to be pathogenous in character are very few in number and mostly confined to the diseases of animals. One species is found in, and supposed, as the result of



careful experiments, to be the cause of septicæmia in rabbits. Another is believed to be the cause of the so-called chicken cholera. Some forms of *Bacterium* have been described as occurring in *lobar pneumonia*, *septicæmia*, and *pyelonephritis*, but of their significance here we have little definite knowledge.

III. *Desmo-bacteria*—filamentous bacteria.—The members of this group consist of elongated or filiform cells, which are sometimes joined together at the ends, forming longer and shorter chains. They often occur in dense masses, and rarely in the form of zoogloea colonies. In shape there is no sharp distinction between the desmo- and the micro-bacteria, as there seem to be intermediate forms. They frequently proliferate by the formation of spores within the cells, and may exhibit spontaneous movements. There are zymogenous and chromogenous species, and others belong to the most important of the pathogenous bacteria. The most important genus is *Bacillus*.

*Zymogenous bacilli*.—Of these the most common species is *B. subtilis*, usually formed of long, delicate, thread-like chains of cells. These are ciliated at the ends, and may perform very marked pendulous progressive movements, often bending and turning on their axes. This is one of the bacteria requiring oxygen for its development. Its spores are very abundant in the air, in dust, and on the surfaces of the greatest variety of objects. When growing, it forms a light yellow pellicle on the surface of its nutrient medium. It is readily obtained for experimentation from the dust of hay or from hay infusions. Another common form, similar in appearance to the last, is *Bacillus butyricus*, which induces butyric fermentation in a great variety of organic substances.

Among several species of pigment-forming bacilli may be mentioned the *Bacillus syncyanum*, which is found with other bacteria in the so-called blue milk.

*Pathogenous bacilli*.—*Bacillus anthracis*.—Its cells have the form of filaments from 5 to 20  $\mu$  long, and about 1  $\mu$  broad, which may be



FIG. 11.—DESMO-BACTERIA (GENUS *BACILLUS*).

*Bacillus anthracis*, from spleen of mouse inoculated with the bacillus. Specimen stained with methylen blue,  $\times 600$ .

straight or curved; they are not rounded at the ends, and often hang together in chains. They proliferate by transverse division and by the formation of spores. Spontaneous movements have not been observed

in them. They are constantly found in the body in *splenic fever* (malignant pustule), usually in large numbers in the spleen and in the capillary blood-vessels, especially in the lungs, liver, kidneys, and intestine. They are readily cultivated outside of the body, and when thus purified, their inoculation into a number of different animals produces the disease, and in the blood of the diseased animals multitudes of the bacilli are found, showing their proliferation in the blood-vessels and elsewhere. They are of especial interest and importance, because we know more of their life-history than of almost any other of the bacteria, and because it was this bacterium which was first absolutely demonstrated to be the cause, and the only cause, of a well-defined disease in man.

*Bacillus tuberculosis*—B. Kochii.—This species was first definitely identified by Dr. Robert Koch in 1882. It is very short and slender, and apparently of the utmost importance in connection with tuberculosis. Its characters and significance will be considered under tuberculosis in the section on the general diseases.

*Bacillus lepræ*.—This is in many respects similar to the *B. tuberculosis*, and is supposed by some observers to cause the lesions of leprosy, under which heading it is considered.

*Bacillus malarie*.—For a brief consideration of this, the alleged cause of malarial fever, see section on Malarial Fever.

Bacilli have been found in the lesions of *glanders*, which are believed to cause the disease. They are somewhat smaller than *B. tuberculosis*.

Bacilli, believed by many observers to be constantly present and the probable cause of the diseases in typhoid fever and cholera, will be considered under the lesions of these diseases.

*Bacilli of septicæmia of mice*.—Dr. Koch has described a small bacillus—0.8 to 1  $\mu$  long—occurring sometimes in pairs, sometimes in chains, which are found as spores or as developed bacteria in a great variety of putrefying fluids. They may be readily cultivated on gelatin, and the inoculation of the purified organisms or of the putrefying fluids into house mice, produces symptoms characteristic of septicæmia. The bacilli may be found in great numbers in the leucocytes, in the subcutaneous tissue about the seat of inoculation, and very generally in the blood-vessels. The animals may die, or if they survive exhibit a marked immunity from the characteristic effects of subsequent inoculations. Field mice are not affected by inoculation with these bacilli, and rabbits usually but slightly.

*Bacilli of malignant œdema of mice, guinea-pigs, and rabbits*.—These are from 3. to 3.5  $\mu$  long, rounded at the ends, and more slender than the *B. anthracis*, which they somewhat resemble. They frequently occur in pairs, and may exhibit spontaneous movements. They occur in cultivated soil, in hay, putrefying fluids, and elsewhere. When introduced into the subcutaneous tissue of the above-named animals, they

proliferate and produce a wide-spread œdema about the seat of inoculation. In the clear reddish œdematous fluid multitudes of the bacilli may be found. After death they may be found in the blood, in the juices of internal organs, or upon serous surfaces. It is very difficult to cultivate them outside of the body.

*Leptothrix*.—There exist under almost all conditions in the mouth and about the junction of the teeth and gums, single or in larger or smaller masses, long, slender, filiform bacilli, usually without transverse divisions, which have received the general name *Leptothrix buccalis*. There are some reasons for supposing that they may be concerned in caries of the teeth, in connection with which they are often found. But beyond this fairly well-founded conjecture, we have no reason to suspect them to be of any pathogenic significance. They are frequently entan-



FIG. 12.—LEPTOTHRIX BUCCALIS WITH MICROCOCCUS COLONIES FROM THE MOUTH OF A HEALTHY PERSON. Stained with gentian violet,  $\times 600$ .

gled among scattered or larger and smaller masses of micrococci. *Leptothrix* is a general name only, and we do not know whether it represents a single genus or species, or whether it is made up of undeveloped forms of some variety of bacillus.

IV. *Spiro-bacteria*—spiral-celled bacteria.—The spirals of these cells may be close or open, few in number or numerous; some of them are ciliated at the ends. One of the common genera of these bacteria is *Spirillum*. *S. rugula* occurs in swamp water, on the surfaces of the teeth, and in fæces. It is thick, has open spirals, and occurs in chains or interlacing masses. Other species, among which may be mentioned *S. serpens*, occur in stagnant water and in putrefying fluids.



FIG. 13.—SPIRO-BACTERIA (GENUS SPIRILLUM).

*Spirillum serpens*. From putrefying hay infusion stained with fuchsin,  $\times 600$ .

Another important genus of spiro-bacteria is *Spirochæte*, whose cells are in general larger and more flexible than those of spirillum, with more closely set spirals.

*Spirochæte denticola* is found in the mucous membrane of the mouth



and on the teeth mixed with *Leptothrix*, and also in carious teeth. It is usually about 10 to 20  $\mu$  long, and pointed at the ends. *S. plicatilis* is about 110 to 225  $\mu$  long, very slender, with many spirals, and blunt ends. It moves with great rapidity, and is frequently found in summer, in swamp water and in eavetroughs.

The most important member of this group of bacteria is *Spirochæte Obermeieri*, because there is little doubt that this species stands in a causative relation to *relapsing fever*. The cells are quite similar in appearance to those of *Spirochæte denticola*, but somewhat longer and thicker, with compressed spirals. It performs rapid undulating movements. It is constantly found in the blood in greater or less numbers during the attacks of relapsing fever, but is absent in the intervals. The inoculation of the blood of relapsing fever patients which contains the bacteria, into monkeys, induces the disease, with the appearance of the bacteria in their blood. They have not as yet been obtained in a pure condition by cultivation outside of the body.

It should always be borne in mind, in examining tissues taken from the dead body, that various forms of bacteria commence to proliferate in the fluids and tissues very soon after death, and may develop in extraordinary numbers in a very short time.

*The Relations of Bacteria to Disease.*—Bacteria of various forms may occur on the surface of the skin and mucous membranes, and in the lungs, exerting no apparent influence whatever, so far as we can judge by morphological appearances, upon the surrounding parts. They may occur on the surface of wounds, ulcers, etc., without the production of any evident changes; they sometimes lie within cells which appear otherwise perfectly normal. On the other hand, the cells and tissues in their vicinity may show very marked alterations, which are presumably due to their influence. The cells may be swollen, their nuclei may break down or disappear, and the protoplasm may be converted into a mass of shining or coarsely granular particles, or may completely disintegrate. The intercellular substance near the bacteria may also soften and disintegrate. In a word, the tissue in their immediate vicinity is often found in a condition of necrosis of one kind or another. The walls of blood-vessels near which they lie may die, and the blood which they carry may form thrombi. The bacteria may themselves enter the vessels and proliferate in the blood; they may be swept away as emboli to remote parts of the body, and establish new foci of bacterial proliferation and tissue necrosis. Some forms, instead of causing the immediate death of the tissue, appear to incite inflammatory changes about themselves. These may be simple, and similar to those produced by the presence of any irritating foreign body, or, it would seem that the bacteria may determine, in some way as yet unknown to us, very peculiar and characteristic inflammatory changes, which may result in the formation of new tissues of various

kinds. Some forms of bacteria find in the blood, others in the lymph-spaces and vessels, the conditions most favorable for their proliferation.

It will be seen from what has now been said of the bacteria, that in different parts of the system in health, and in a large number of diseased conditions, various forms of bacteria occur; but it is quite evident that the significance which we must attach to their mere presence varies greatly. In a large number of cases, especially when on parts exposed to the air or in the gastro-intestinal canal, they are evidently of no more importance than so much inorganic dust. When, however, special forms of bacteria are found to occur uniformly in connection with well-defined



FIG. 14.—COLONIES OF MICROCOCCI IN THE BLOOD-VESSELS OF THE KIDNEY FORMING A SMALL ABSCESS.

Around the dilated and partially necrotic blood-vessel, in which the micrococci lie, is an area of necrotic tissue and small cell infiltration. From a case of pyæmia,  $\times 700$  and reduced.

diseases, or in their lesions, the conjecture is certainly justified that they may have something to do with their production. Yet in all such cases we have to consider the possibility that it is the diseased state or the character of the lesion, produced perhaps by other causes, which affords conditions suitable for bacterial growth; and that they may consequently occur in considerable numbers; while in the absence of these conditions they would be unable to develop. Even the constant occurrence in the body, in certain diseases, of bacteria which evidently produce well-

marked local effects, either inflammatory or degenerative, does not absolutely prove their causative relation to the disease, although it renders it to a certain degree probable. In order to absolutely prove the bacterial origin of an infectious disease, we must not only be able to demonstrate the constant presence in the body at some time of a special form of bacteria, but we must obtain them in an absolutely pure condition, unmixed with any other living thing, or with any chemical substance not belonging to them, and by the introduction of the purified organisms into a healthy animal, be able to produce the disease, in some definite form. When all this is done, and not before, can we assert with absolute certainty the causative relation between a given form of bacteria and any special infectious disease. But the fulfilment of these strict requirements is very difficult in many cases, and in some, apparently, almost if not quite impossible, for we must remember, in the first place, that the lower animals, upon which alone, for the most part, inoculation experiments are practicable, are apparently not subject to certain important diseases of men; and second, that they present among themselves the most marked differences in the degree and manner in which they are affected by the inoculation of pathogenic bacteria. Desirable as is the complete fulfilment of the above requirements in every case, it must be admitted that a reasonable certainty regarding the bacterial origin of a given disease may be arrived at without positive results from the inoculation of the bacteria associated with its lesions.

It is furthermore very important to remember in this connection that the conceptions expressed by the terms *pathogenic* and *infectious* are not identical. For a given species of bacteria may be capable of producing lesions in the body or causing a well-defined disease, in other words may be pathogenic, without necessarily being capable of transmitting the disease by direct inoculation.

To cite the example adduced by Koch in illustration of this point. "Assuming intermittent fever to be a bacterial disease, which indeed requires further proof, it would furnish an excellent example of a micro-organism which is pathogenic, but not infectious."

The discussion of the probabilities of the bacterial origin of certain classes of disease, and the long series of phenomena exhibited by them, which the bacterial theory very satisfactorily explains, does not fall within the scope of this book.

The complete demonstration which certainty requires has as yet been furnished in but a very small number of cases. In a considerable number of other cases, although the complete cycle of proof has not yet been established, enough has been done in the way of study and experimentation to render it altogether probable that certain forms of bacteria are the cause of the diseases.

Splenic fever has been proven to be caused, and caused alone, by the



*Bacillus anthracis*. The exhaustive researches of Koch on the *Bacillus tuberculosis* have covered all the points, so far as we can see at present, which a rigid logical demonstration requires, and judging from them alone, tuberculosis must be regarded as a bacterial disease. These experiments are recent, however, and, as an intelligent conservatism should always require, must be confirmed at the hands of other equally conscientious and expert observers. All the more important researches on the *Bacillus tuberculosis*, since the announcement of its discovery, seem in the main to confirm Dr. Koch's observations and conclusions, but none have as yet covered the entire ground.

All the known facts point towards the *Spirochæte Obermeieri* as the producer of relapsing fever, and its significance in this respect is generally accepted, although the full cycle of proof has not yet been completed by its cultivation and isolation outside of the body. The proof of the bacterial origin of erysipelas must also be considered complete, if the investigations of Fehleisen and others shall receive the support of confirmatory research. The same may be said of diphtheria, typhoid fever, and cholera. However probable the alleged causative connection between any of the scores of other diseases in association with which bacteria have been more or less constantly found, it has at the present time (1884), in the writer's opinion, not yet been fully demonstrated.

*Methods of Studying Bacteria*.—The simplest mode of studying bacteria is to examine them either in the fluids in which they lie, or in thin sections of the tissues mounted in one-half-per-cent salt solution, and for the study of many of the phenomena of life this method is important. The tissue and other elements, however, with which they are often associated, greatly interfere with the study of the bacteria, and many forms are so small as to be scarcely recognizable in the natural condition. We may partially overcome the interference of tissue elements in preparations, by the use of acetic acid, or an aqueous solution of caustic potash (1 to 10), which render the tissues more transparent, while but little affecting the bacteria. The latter may be often differentiated in this way from albuminous granules, fat-droplets, etc.

By far the most important aid, however, is derived from the use of staining agents. Most of the bacteria are stained more or less readily by one or more of the anilin dyes. The ease with which they are colored varies considerably in different species and with the different dyes. The tissue elements, and a variety of other materials with which the bacteria may be associated, also stain more or less readily at the same time; but most of these part with their color more readily than do the bacteria, on being treated with alcohol or dilute acids. We are thus enabled to obtain a differentiation in color between bacteria and other structures. The bacteria, moreover, differ among themselves, in respect to the tenacity with which they hold their stain in the presence of decolorizing

agents; and upon this fact is based one of the important methods of distinguishing between different species.

The anilin dyes consist, in the main, of two great groups; the acid and the basic. The acid dyes are those in which the coloring principle acts as the acid. This is not necessarily a free acid, nor does the dye necessarily have an acid reaction, but it may be, and in the common commercial dyes usually is, combined with some base forming a salt. The basic anilin dyes, which are almost exclusively used for staining nuclei and bacteria, usually come in commerce in the form of salts in combination with some acid, such as acetic or hydrochloric. The common commercial fuchsin, for example, is an hydrochlorid of rosanilin.

Among the anilin dyes more commonly employed for bacteria staining may be mentioned fuchsin, gentian violet, methylen blue, and Bis-mark brown. These are conveniently employed in one-per-cent aqueous solution with about  $\frac{1}{10}$  alcohol, to prevent formation of fungi. Some bacteria require special methods for their differentiation, for example, the *Bacillus tuberculosis* (see *Tuberculosis* in section on General Diseases). The following methods are well adapted for general use.

*To Stain Bacteria in Fluids.*—A small drop of the fluid is placed on a cover-glass, and a second cover-glass pressed close down upon it, so as to spread it into a very thin layer. The glasses are then slid apart, and the fluid dried on to the cover. This may be done by grasping the cover with forceps and passing it, specimen side up, two or three times, quickly through the flame of an alcohol lamp or Bunsen-burner. The fluid is to be well dried, but not burned. This drying not only fixes the contents of the fluid firmly on to the glass, so that it will not easily soak off, but it renders insoluble any albuminous materials which may be mixed with the bacteria, and which might otherwise interfere with subsequent examinations, by forming granular precipitates. The cover-glass, with its adherent specimen, is now placed in contact with the staining fluid. If a short exposure only is required, a few drops of the stain may be placed directly upon the inverted cover; or, if a longer exposure is required, it is best to float the specimen on the surface of the fluid, in a small dish. The time of exposure required for staining varies considerably in different species of bacteria, but in general, from five to thirty minutes will suffice, although a longer time usually does no harm. The staining is hastened by gently warming the fluid—not above 40 to 50° C. The specimen is now washed with distilled water and may be mounted in glycerin; or better, carefully dried over the lamp, and mounted directly in Canada balsam. It is well to use balsam which has not been softened with chloroform, since the latter extracts the color from some bacteria. It is well, when other materials, besides the bacteria, are present in the fluid, and may be also stained, to extract the color from them, by rinsing the

specimen with alcohol or with water to which a few drops of acetic acid have been added (5 to 10 drops to 100 c.c.).

*To Stain Bacteria in Tissues.*—The tissues should be well hardened in alcohol. Thin sections are placed in the coloring solutions where they may remain from one to ten hours. Gentle warming (40 to 50° C.) will hasten the staining. The entire tissue, as well as the bacteria, is in this way deeply colored. The sections are rinsed with distilled water, and then placed in alcohol. This, with varying degrees of rapidity, with different stains and tissues, gradually extracts the color from the tissue, most slowly from the nuclei. The time required and the exact degree of decolorization to be sought for, must be learned by experience in different cases. Sometimes five, sometimes thirty minutes are required. It is often necessary, and the decolorizing of the tissue is thereby hastened, to add a few drops of acetic acid to the alcohol. When acetic acid is used, it should be finally thoroughly washed out by alcohol. The specimens are now cleared up by oil of cloves, and mounted in balsam. Oil of cloves removes the color from some forms of bacteria, and in this case, zylol or oil of bergamot should be substituted for it.

In specimens prepared in the above way, the nuclei of cells usually retain to some extent a color similar to that of the bacteria, but their size and shape serve for the differentiation. A very useful method of differentiating the stained bacteria from tissue elements in many, although apparently not in all cases, is that devised by Gram.<sup>1</sup> Sections of tissues to be stained must be preserved in absolute alcohol. They are then stained for from one to three minutes (the tubercle bacillus requires from twelve to twenty-four hours) in *anilin-gentian violet* solution. This is prepared by adding to a filtered saturated aqueous solution of anilin oil a concentrated alcoholic solution of gentian violet, until a precipitate forms: then filter. This must be freshly filtered each time before using, and should be frequently freshly prepared. From the staining solution the sections are transferred directly to a solution of iodine in potassium iodide and water (I 1.0—KI 2.0—H<sub>2</sub>O 300.0). In this they remain from one to three minutes, a precipitate forming in the solution, and the sections becoming of a dark reddish or slate color. The sections are now transferred to absolute alcohol which should be changed, and in this they become almost completely decolorized. They may now be cleared up in oil of cloves and mounted in balsam.

Certain coloring materials, such as eosin and carmin, have the power of replacing the color in the nuclei, and not in the bacteria, if applied after the anilin staining; and in this way we may get a double staining, which leaves the nuclei of one color and the bacteria of another. For this purpose the anilin staining may be done in the usual way, with

---

<sup>1</sup> Gram: *Fortschritte der Medicin*, Bd. 2, No. 6, March 15th, 1884.



some dark-colored dye, such as gentian violet, and after sufficient decolorization in alcohol or alcohol and acetic acid, the sections are washed in water, and laid for from one-half an hour to an hour in picro-carmin solution. They are then dehydrated with alcohol, passed through oil of cloves, and mounted in balsam. The nuclei are thus stained red, while the bacteria are bluish in color.

For the recognition and study of bacteria, especially of the minuter forms, the best optical apparatus is requisite. Good dry lenses will answer in many cases; but for finer work, homogeneous immersion lenses (at least  $\frac{1}{2}$ ) must be employed.

A special mode of illumination is also in many cases requisite, such as may be obtained by the use of the Abbe condensor. The structural outlines which the tissue elements present, in many cases greatly interfere with the observation of the color by which the stained bacteria are recognized. This interference is considerably reduced, by mounting the specimens in balsam; but usually not sufficiently so for the study of the minuter forms. The Abbe condensor is a combination of lenses, placed close beneath the object, by means of which, owing to the direction in which the rays of light are brought upon the object, structural outlines are made to nearly entirely disappear, and in this way the stained objects, the bacteria, stand out much more distinctly than would otherwise be the case, against the nearly homogeneous background.

*Artificial Cultivation of Bacteria.*—For the complete investigation of the different forms of bacteria, particularly in their relations to disease, we must study their life-history, and the effects of their inoculation into healthy animals. It has long been known that bacteria could be cultivated in a variety of artificially compounded, so-called nutrient media or soils. Fluids were formerly used for this purpose, but it is very difficult, if not impossible, to cultivate a single species through several generations in fluid media, without an admixture with other forms, or to detect such contaminations when they occur. Moreover, the inevitable mechanical disturbances of the fluid prevent, for the most part, the formation of gross characteristic appearances in the masses of growing bacteria. Dr. Robert Koch introduced a technical improvement of inestimable value, in suggesting and formulating the details of using solid media for the cultivation of bacteria. Among these may be mentioned, sterilized boiled potatoes, and gelatinized infusions of various natural or artificially compounded substances, sterilized by heat. Different species of bacteria often require different nutrient media, and some require different temperatures for their most flourishing growth. They usually grow on the surface of the nutrient media in sharply circumscribed masses, and different species may grow side by side in the same receptacle for considerable periods, without in the slightest degree interfering with one another, or tending to mix. The mode of growth and general

appearances of the proliferating bacterial masses on the solid medium often present very characteristic differences between different forms, and thus not only furnish valuable means of identifying species, but renders possible an early detection of contamination from chance admixture of species. A given species of bacteria may be cultivated through a series of generations by transferring, with proper precautions, a minute portion from a growing colony to a fresh surface of sterilized soil. After cultivation through several generations, the species may be presumed, and by microscopical examinations proved to be entirely pure, and the effects, if any, produced by its inoculation into healthy animals, to be due to it alone.

*The preparation and use of culture substances.*—There are many culture media, some of which are best suited for one, some for another, species of bacteria. Those most commonly used are boiled potatoes, gelatinized bouillon, and the so-called gelatinized blood-serum.

The cut surfaces of *sterilized boiled potatoes* furnish an excellent medium for the cultivation of a variety of common atmospheric and some pathogenic bacteria. The potato is first scrubbed clean with water, and all defects on the surface carefully scraped out. It is then washed with a solution of corrosive sublimate 1-1000 to which a few drops of HCl are added, in which it should lie for a couple of hours. It is then exposed to a current of live steam for half an hour. The steaming is done in an apparatus called a steam sterilizer.<sup>1</sup> The steamed potatoes are now taken out (the hands of the operator being carefully washed with sublimate solution), and cut into slices with knives which have immediately before been heated to redness and cooled. The slices whose surfaces are only to be touched by the sterilized knife-blade, are quickly placed on a plate on which moistened blotting paper is spread, and covered by a bell jar. The plate, bell-jar, and paper should have been disinfected with sublimate solution. The slices may now be kept for some time to see whether they are completely sterilized, or whether bacteria from the air have fallen on them during the manipulations. A simple exposure for a short time to

---

<sup>1</sup> This consists of a tube 12 ctm. in diameter and about one metre long, at the upper end of which is a conical cover with one opening in the top for the escape of steam and one for a thermometer. The substance to be sterilized may be suspended in the tube, in a bucket made of wire gauze, by a wire or cord passing up through the hole in the cover. This whole upright tube is fastened on to the middle of a cover which is to be fitted tightly over any pot or can in which water may be vigorously boiled. An iron pot eight inches in diameter answers very well. The upright tube may be made of tin and should be covered with thick felt or some non-conducting material. On boiling water in the pot, the live steam passes up through the chamber, and any object therein placed can thus be much more effectually and thoroughly exposed to the temperature of boiling water than if placed in the water itself. Other forms of sterilizers answer the same purpose.

the air of an inhabited room will usually suffice for the deposition on the sterilized surface of a number of different forms of bacteria, which will rapidly multiply and produce circumscribed masses or colonies of varying color and appearance. If it be desired to study any of these under the microscope, the cover should be cautiously raised, and a small portion removed with a looped platinum wire, fused into a glass rod, which immediately beforehand is sterilized by heating to redness. The removed portion may be studied fresh in salt solution, or spread on a cover glass and stained in the usual way. If it be desired to cultivate the separate forms, minute portions may be transferred with the sterilized wire to fresh sterilized potato slices, on which they are planted in a series of lines. Thus a given species may be grown through several generations. Contamination will usually show itself in some change of color or mode of growth of the colonies on the nutrient surface, and may readily be detected by the microscope.

Less easy to prepare, but of much more general value, is the *sterilized gelatin bouillon*. Lean beef is cut into small pieces and pounded in a mortar, then mixed with an equal weight of water, and allowed to stand eight to ten hours in a cool place. The watery extract is now squeezed through the cloth and boiled until a clear fluid separates from the coagulate. It is now again filtered through cloth and diluted to the original volume with water. To this is added one per cent pepton siccum, one-half per cent sodium chloride, from four to five per cent gelatin. In warm weather more gelatin will be required, sometimes as much as ten per cent. The gelatin may be soaked in the cold in a portion of the beef extract and when it has become softened it may be mixed with the rest, and warmed until the whole is fluid. The acidity of this mixture is neutralized by a sufficient quantity of a saturated aqueous solution of basic sodium phosphate. It is now filtered warm through sterilized flannel into a sterilized flask, and the neck of the latter stopped with a sterilized cotton plug at least three ctm. long. The filtering of the warm gelatin is facilitated by using a double funnel between the walls of which hot water is allowed to flow. The flasks, cotton plugs, filter, test-tubes, and pipettes to be subsequently used are sterilized by heating in a dry oven for at least an hour to a temperature of at least 150° C. The gelatin is now steamed for an hour in the sterilizer or boiled for an hour in water. It is then drawn off by a sterilized pipette into a number of sterilized test-tubes, each of which is filled about  $\frac{1}{3}$  full and immediately plugged with sterilized cotton. The contents of the tubes are now allowed to cool and stand for twenty-four hours. They are then steamed again for an hour and set away to cool. Although all developed bacteria are killed by this process, the spores are sometimes so resistant that they will still develop and then may be killed by again boiling and allowing to stand as before. The development of the spores becomes evident by the appearance of opacities upon or



within the clear amber-colored gelatin. If the operations have been carefully performed, very few of the tubes will usually show any change, although kept at temperatures suitable for bacterial development. When no more appear, or when those tubes in which a development of spores occurred have been re-sterilized, the tubes are ready for inoculations or may be kept for an indefinite time without exhibiting the slightest change. When the gelatin is permitted to cool for the last time, the tubes should be slightly inclined so as to furnish a larger surface for cultivations. The gelatin should not be heated oftener than necessary, and not too long, since it may then lose its power of solidifying. It is well to keep the tubes in a moist chamber to prevent the drying of the surface of the gelatin.

For inoculation, the cotton plug should be carefully removed, the tube being held horizontally, and the material introduced on the sterilized wire, as in planting bacteria on potatoes, and the cotton quickly replaced. The wire to which the inoculating material adheres may be rubbed over the surface or stuck into the gelatin for a short distance.

*Gelatinized blood serum* is best adapted for the cultivation of the *Bacillus tuberculosis*, and is well suited for many other forms. Blood of cattle or sheep is drawn directly into a sterilized flask, and allowed to coagulate in perfect quiet in a cool place. The serum is transferred with a sterilized pipette to a series of sterilized test-tubes, which are immediately plugged with sterilized cotton. These tubes are kept heated an hour each day for six successive days to a temperature of 58° C. In this way, it is possible in most cases to completely sterilize the serum. The tubes are now heated to 65° C. and kept at this temperature in an inclined position, so as to get a large culture surface, until the contents become stiff. It has now a yellowish, transparent, or opalescent appearance, and should be kept for several days at about 35° C. to see whether it contains any spores capable of development. Those tubes which show no change are ready for inoculation with tuberculous or other materials.

A number of other materials may be used for solidifying the culture media, among the most generally useful of which are a form of sea-weed known as Agar-Agar and the so-called Japanese isinglass.<sup>1</sup> The cultures may be conducted in tubes as above described, or when it is desired to study the mode of growth under the microscope, the gelatin may be poured in thin layers on glass slides, which are preserved for inoculation under bell jars, the air of which is kept moist. The temperature at which the ordinary bacteria grow most readily is from 20°–25° C., and

---

<sup>1</sup> One per cent of the Agar-Agar may be substituted for the gelatin, and possesses the advantage of not losing its power of solidifying by repeated heating. The Japanese isinglass remains solid at higher temperatures than gelatin, and may be used in 1 to 2 per cent solution.

for the maintenance of this temperature they may be kept in a water oven.

The most scrupulous care is required in sterilizing the nutrient media and the utensils and instruments used, and the greatest caution should be exercised in transferring the bacteria from one receptacle to another to prevent contamination. A large experience in this sort of manipulation is necessary before reliable results can be obtained in original investigation, since the slightest error or carelessness in manipulation or failure to observe the occurrence of contamination are liable to entirely vitiate the results of long series of experiments. It is only by an extended preliminary training in the cultivation of some of the more characteristic and easily recognizable forms, under a variety of conditions, in a perfectly pure state, through a series of generations, that one can be assured of his capacity to carry on researches in this most difficult and intricate field.

The methods of inoculation of animals with pure cultures and the precautions to be observed must be sought in more extended treatises on this subject.

*Bibliography.*—The most useful work for general purposes is that by Flügge on "Ferments and Microparasites" in the "Handbuch der Hygiene und der Gewerbekrankheiten," by Pettenkofer and Ziemssen, Erster Theil, 2. Abtheilung, 1. Heft, in which will be found an excellent bibliography. Most valuable also are the publications of Koch, among which especially to be noted are "Wundinfektionskrankheiten," Leipzig, 1878; English translation, "Traumatic Infective Diseases," Sydenham Soc., 1880; and "Mittheilung a. d. k. Gesundheitsamte," Berlin, 1881, Vol. I. Among the general works in English the translation of Ziegler's "Pathological Anatomy," by MacAlister gives the most useful series of references. The work of Sternberg and Magnin on "Bacteria" contains a valuable bibliography and general description of various forms of bacteria, with micro-photographs, modes of staining, etc.

The voluminous recent literature may be found for the most part in the "Index Medicus" for the past few years.

# INFLAMMATION.

---

A very considerable number of the lesions which we find in the human body are the results of the various morbid processes which we group together under the name of inflammation. Not only are there different kinds of inflammation, but there are also different tissues which are inflamed and different causes of the inflammatory process. So it happens that the inflammatory lesions vary in their character, their degree, and their anatomy.

It is convenient to consider separately the phenomena and lesions of inflammation as they are presented to us in connective tissue, in the mucous membranes, and in the viscera.

## I. INFLAMMATION OF CONNECTIVE TISSUE.

Connective tissue forms a large and important part of the whole body, and is distributed everywhere through it. The tendons, ligaments, membranes, and fasciæ; the walls of the blood-vessels, the stroma of the viscera, and the frame-work of the mucous membranes all are composed of connective tissue.

Wherever it exists, connective tissue is composed of a basement substance and of cells, and imbedded in it are blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.

When connective tissue becomes inflamed, there follow certain changes in the blood-vessels, the lymphatics, the cells, and the basement substance, and new materials make their appearance, called inflammatory products. The predominance of one or other of these new morbid conditions gives a certain character to the particular inflammation, so that we may properly distinguish the following varieties:

1. Cellular inflammation.
2. Inflammation, with the production of serum, fibrin, and pus.
3. Abscesses.
4. Inflammation, with the production of serum, fibrin, pus, and new connective tissue.
5. The formation of granulation tissue.
6. The formation of new connective tissue.



7. Tubercular inflammation.
8. Syphilitic inflammation.

### 1. *Cellular Inflammation.*

In this form of inflammation, serum, fibrin, and pus are absent. The circulation of the blood in the inflamed part is but little altered, and the inflammatory lesion is confined to the cells. That the changes in the cells require some change in the nutritive material which they receive from the blood-vessels seems evident, but this is not attended by any marked vascular lesions visible after death. It is probable that such an inflammation, of which the only lesion is a growth and multiplication of connective-tissue cells, may take place in various parts of the body, but the only regions in which we can speak of it with certainty are the serous membranes. Many young connective-tissue cells cannot be distinguished from emigrated white blood-cells, but the endothelial cells can.

This form of inflammation does not seem to be an early stage of other forms, but is an individual process. It occurs both as an acute and a chronic condition, and is observed in the pia mater, the peritoneum, and the pleura.

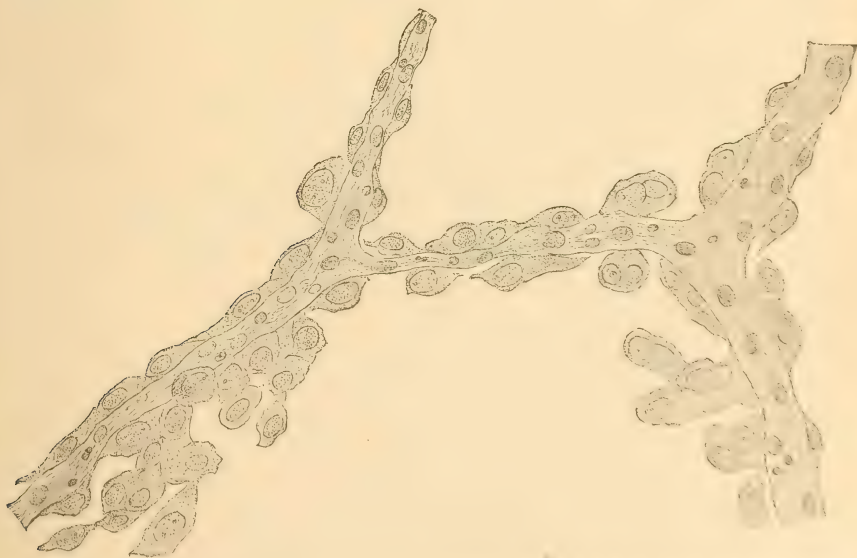


FIG. 15.—OMENTUM OF A DOG. CELLULAR PERITONITIS ON THE 4TH DAY.  $\times 500$  and reduced.

In the acute form, the flat connective-tissue cells (endothelium) of the affected membrane are increased in size, and quantities of new cells somewhat resembling them are produced. At the same time the blood-vessels are moderately congested. There is very little swelling or redness

of the inflamed tissue, the changes to the naked eye are slight; and yet this apparently trivial lesion produces marked clinical symptoms and often death.

In the chronic form, the inflammatory process may stop short at the production of new flat cells, or the cells may become aggregated together into delicate membranes, which cover the surfaces of the inflamed parts or form adhesions.

## 2. *Inflammation with the production of serum, fibrin, and pus.*

This form of inflammation is in strong contrast with the preceding. The connective tissue and its cells remain comparatively passive, while the blood-vessels and the blood are the active agents. We are able not only to observe the results of this form of inflammation after death, but also to witness the different stages of the process during life.

The transparent connective-tissue membranes of some of the lower



FIG. 16.—EMIGRATION OF WHITE BLOOD-CELLS IN INFLAMED BLADDER OF FROG,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

animals can be studied under the microscope while inflammatory changes are going on. In this way we have learned that there is first a dilatation of the arteries, veins, and capillaries, and an increased rapidity of the circulation of the blood. Then the blood-current becomes slower, white blood-cells accumulate in the small veins and capillaries, and adhere to their walls. Then the white cells, changing their shape, find their way between the endothelial cells of the vessels, through their walls, and appear on the outside of the vessels in the tissue (Fig. 16). This process is called *emigration*. Red blood-cells in smaller numbers may also pass

through the walls of the capillaries and veins, and this is called *diapedesis*. At the same time the plasma of the blood transudes through the walls of the vessels and infiltrates the tissues as serum; while by the union of substances contained in the blood plasma and in the white cells fibrin is formed.

In this simple manner are elaborated the inflammatory products—pus, serum, and fibrin, which are sometimes called *exudations*. The pus-cells are emigrated white blood-cells; the serum is part of the plasma of the blood; the fibrin is produced by a union of the fibrinogen in solution in the blood plasma with substances contained in the white blood-cells, and appears coagulated in the form of granules, amorphous masses, or a reticulum.

In order that these inflammatory products may be formed, it is evidently necessary that the blood should continue to circulate through the vessels of the inflamed tissue.

Different examples of this form of inflammation give different amounts of inflammatory products, and also different relative proportions of serum, fibrin, and pus; while extravasated red blood-cells may also be intermingled with them.

The inflammatory products may accumulate wherever there are cavities to receive them, in the interstices of connective tissue, on the surfaces of the serous membranes, and in the serous cavities.

The ordinary course of such an inflammation may be modified:

(a) The congestion may be extreme, the blood may cease to circulate in the vessels, and in this way a considerable area of tissue may die without the production of any considerable amount of serum, fibrin, or pus.

(b) The inflammation may be of a very intense type; the production of inflammatory products, especially of fibrin, very large; there may be stasis in some of the vessels. As the combined result of the stasis, and the pressure of the inflammatory products, there is *necrosis* of small portions of tissue.

(c) The congestion is so great that the blood ceases to circulate in some of the vessels of the inflamed part, while it continues to do so in others. There is at the same time a large production of pus-cells, and a necrosis and breaking down of tissue. In this way are formed

### 3. Abscesses.

Abscesses are collections of pus contained in cavities. The cavities are formed by the destruction of tissue. The pus is a fluid composed of serum, pus globules, and fragments of necrotic tissue. According to the relative quantity of these three substances, the character of the pus will vary. Whether all the pus-cells are emigrated white blood-cells, or whether some of them are derived from connective-tissue cells cannot be certainly determined. Pus contained in a cavity seems to act as an ir-



ritant to the surrounding tissues, and sets up in them inflammation of a more or less severe type. In this way the abscess often becomes larger and extends in different directions. In most abscesses bacteria of various kinds are found in the pus.

4. *Inflammation with the production of serum, fibrin, pus, and new connective tissue.*

In this form of inflammation, both the blood-vessels and the connective-tissue cells take an active part. From the blood-vessels come the serum, fibrin, and pus. From the connective-tissue cells and from the emigrated white blood-cells are produced new cells, which are at first small and of indifferent type, but later assume the characteristic shape of the cells of the new tissue. As the inflammation subsides, the serum, fibrin, and pus, and some of the new connective-tissue cells are absorbed after degenerative processes. The rest of the new connective-tissue cells go on to the formation of new connective-tissue with cells and basement substance, so that the result of the whole process is the formation of permanent new connective tissue, or of granulation tissue.

5. *Granulation Tissue.*

This name is employed to designate a peculiar form of new tissue, which is developed from connective tissue, or from emigrated white



FIG. 17.—GRANULATION TISSUE FROM WOUND OF SKIN,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

blood-cells, in the course of acute and chronic inflammations, and after the destruction of tissue by wounds or necrotic processes.

Granulation tissue (Fig. 17) is composed of cells, a basement substance, and blood-vessels.

The cells are numerous and often close together. Some resemble

white blood-cells; some are small, polyhedral cells with a large nucleus; some are larger, polyhedral cells resembling epithelial cells; some are fusiform or branched.

The basement substance is at first scanty and homogeneous, or finely granular. As the granulation tissue grows older, it becomes more abundant, denser, and fibrillated.

The blood-vessels are very numerous and at first thin-walled. They are formed from the original blood-vessels of the connective tissue by the outgrowth of solid sprouts of protoplasm which afterwards become channelled, so that the blood passes into them, and changed so as to form a wall of endothelial cells (Fig. 18).



FIG. 18.



FIG. 19.

FIG. 18.—DEVELOPING BLOOD-VESSELS IN NEW-FORMED TISSUE,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

FIG. 19.—CICATRICIAL TISSUE,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

The surface of such granulation tissue is dry, or coated with serum, pus, or fibrin.

It may remain in the condition of granulation tissue for an indefinite length of time, or it may be gradually changed into cicatricial connective tissue. In the latter case, the basement substance increases and becomes dense, the cells disappear, the new blood-vessels are obliterated, and there results a dense, contracted area of connective tissue (Fig. 19).

Such granulation tissue is the ordinary result of wounds of all kinds, and is the medium by which they are repaired.

Any destruction of tissue is followed in the same way by the formation of this new tissue, so that the floors and walls of ulcers and abscesses may be formed of granulation tissue.

Acute and chronic inflammation of connective tissue are often attended with an abundant cell growth and the splitting up of the basement substance, so that here, too, granulation tissue is formed.

6. *Inflammation with the production of connective tissue.*

This form of inflammation is of a chronic type. It runs a slow course, and the formation of new tissue is gradual. There is no production of serum, fibrin, or pus. The inflammatory product is new connective tissue—both cells and basement substance. The cells may be numerous, and the new tissue approach the type of granulation tissue; or the basement substance may be formed in large quantity, so that the new tissue is firm.

7. *Tubercular Inflammation.*

This form of inflammation is characterized by the formation of an inflammatory product called tubercle tissue, a tissue nearly related to

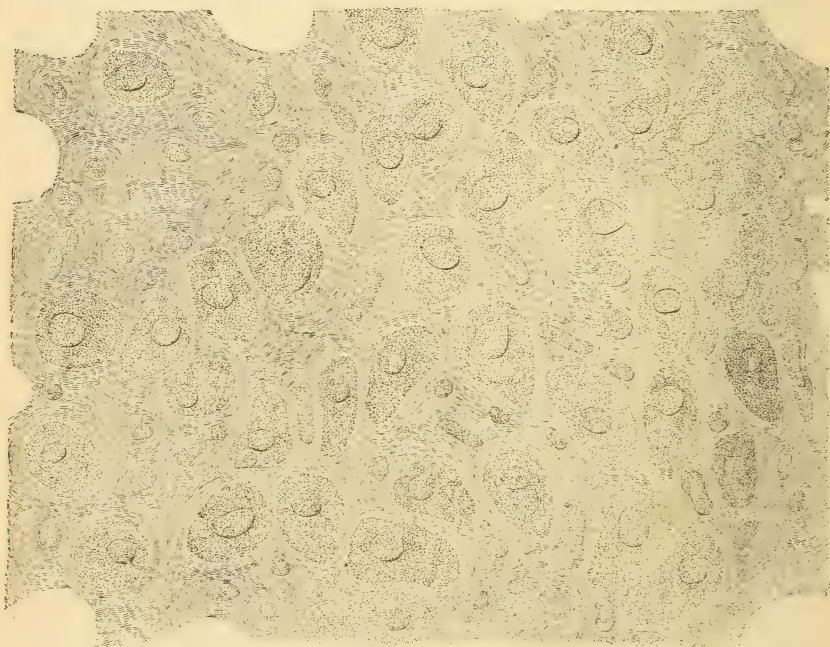


FIG. 20.—TUBERCLE TISSUE FROM ACUTE PHTHISIS,  $\times 1500$  and reduced.

granulation tissue. It is composed of a basement substance and cells. The basement substance is very delicate and transparent, or denser and more opaque, according to the duration of the inflammatory process. In the basement substance are round and oval nuclei, the oval nuclei being particularly transparent and delicate.

The basement substance is arranged so as to form a reticulum containing spaces, and in each space is a polygonal nucleated cell. The large multinuclear masses of protoplasm, called giant-cells, are often present and seem either to form part of the basement substance, or to be in the shape of circumscribed cells.



Tubercle tissue is arranged in the form of little spheroidal masses—*tubercle granula*, or of a diffuse tissue—*tubercle tissue*.

Tubercular inflammation is regularly accompanied by other inflammatory processes with the formation of pus, fibrin, connective-tissue cells, and granulation tissue.

Wherever tubercle tissue is produced, there is a change in the small blood-vessels. In some there is an obliterating endarteritis, in others a growth of the endothelial cells. There is also hardly any formation of new vessels in the tubercle tissue, so that it is apt soon to degenerate.

The little bodies called miliary tubercles may be formed of tuber-

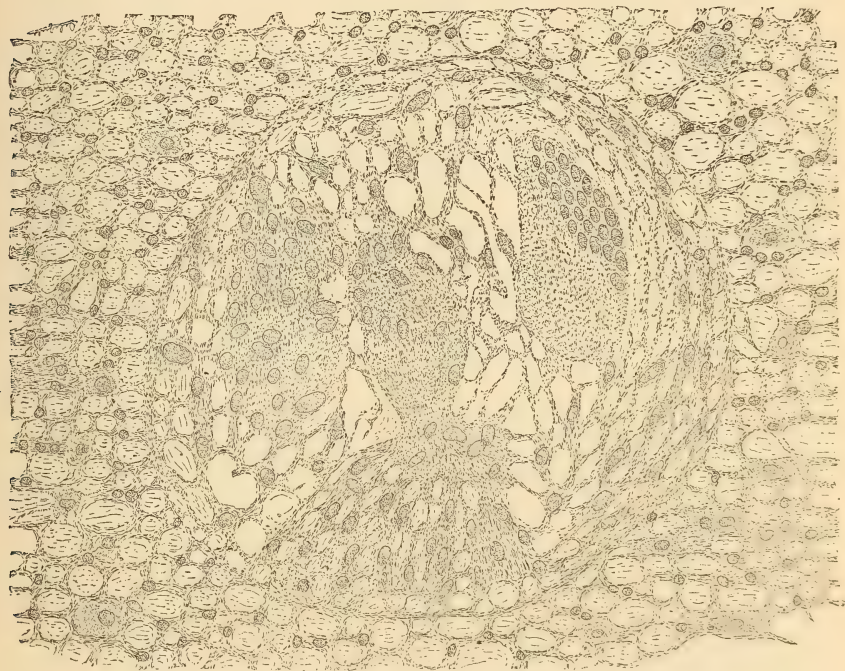


FIG. 21.—A TUBERCLE GRANULUM FROM THE PLEURA,  $\times 850$  and reduced.  
The giant-cells form part of the basement substance.

cle tissue alone, or mixed with inflammatory products, or of granulation tissue mixed with other inflammatory products.

In most forms of tubercle tissue, especially when in the state of active formation or of cheesy degeneration, we find the *Bacillus tuberculosis* of Koch in greater or less numbers. It is also found in the miliary tubercles which are not composed of typical tubercle tissue. (See Tuberculosis.)

### S. Syphilitic Inflammation.

The poison of syphilis gives rise to a variety of inflammations affect-

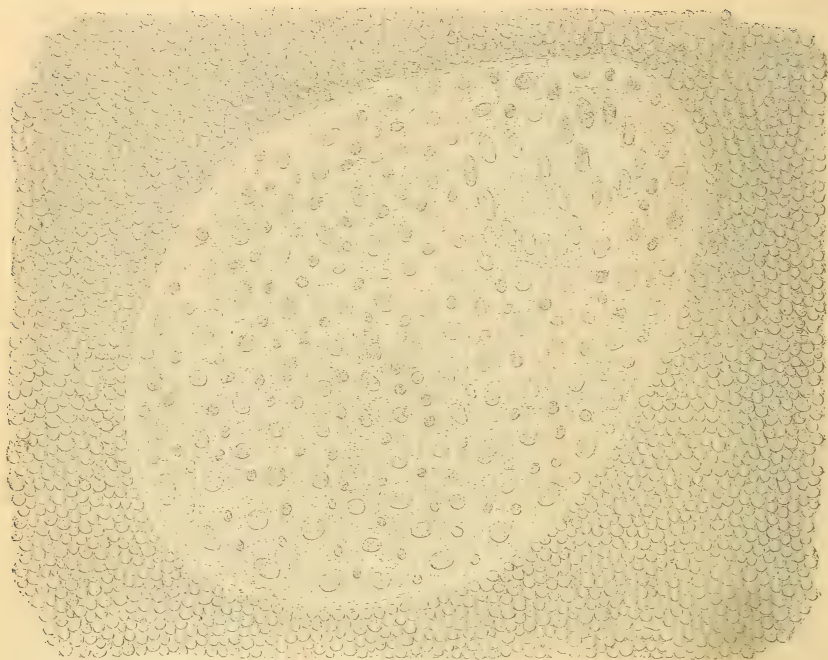


FIG. 22.—A TUBERCLE GRANULUM FROM A LYMPHATIC GLAND,  $\times 850$  and reduced.  
The giant-cells are enclosed by the basement substance.

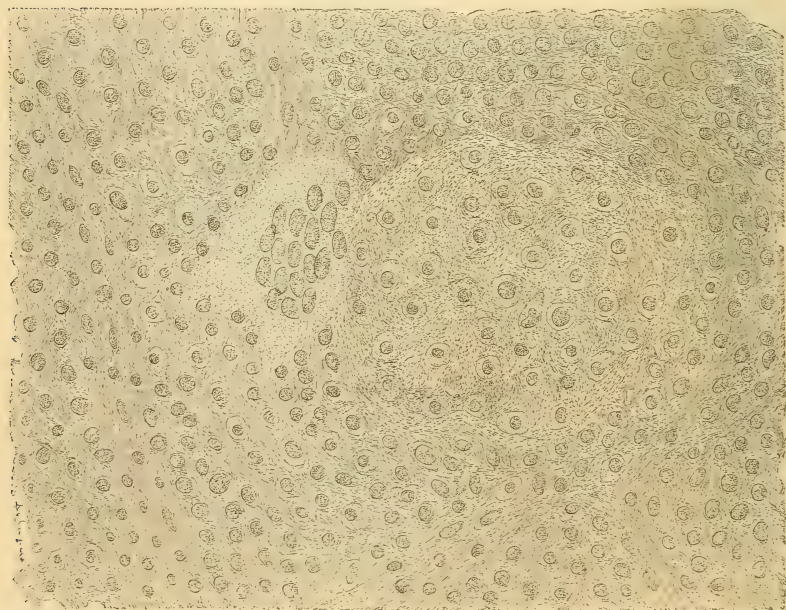


FIG. 23.—A TUBERCLE GRANULUM AND DIFFUSE TUBERCLE TISSUE FROM CHRONIC PHTHISIS,  
 $\times 850$  and reduced.



ing different parts of the body. Only one of the inflammatory processes, however, can be fairly said to present characteristic structural features—the one which results in the production of the *gummy tumor*. From the circumscribed character of this inflammatory product and the size which it often reaches, it is frequently described among the tumors, but it is really only a result of inflammation.

Syphilitic inflammation has been observed in many different parts of the body. Wherever connective tissue exists, either in the form of membranes, as the stroma of viscera, as the frame-work of mucous membranes and the skin, or as the periosteum of bones, it is liable to this form of inflammation.

The inflammatory process may be acute, or slow and chronic. The inflamed part becomes swollen, and in the acute form congested. There is a production of small round cells and of a basement substance. The cells are fragile and imperfectly formed, the basement substance is of soft, gelatinous character. These inflammatory products are usually formed within a circumscribed area, so as to make a sort of tumor—the gummy tumor.

The inflammatory product may remain in this condition of cells and gelatinous basement substance for some time, and then be absorbed and disappear, or it may undergo further changes.

Most frequently it undergoes cheesy degeneration, and then is surrounded by a zone of granulation tissue and fibrous tissue. Or it may be changed into fibrous tissue, or it may suppurate, and form abscesses.

In a recent gummy tumor of the periosteum, this membrane is split up into layers. At the centre of the gumma the connective tissue is infiltrated with cells and fibrin, all in the condition of coagulation necrosis. The periphery of the gumma is infiltrated with cells, and the arteries are changed. Their walls are thickened, and the endothelial cells are increased in size and numbers.

Bacteria have been repeatedly found in the characteristic lesions of syphilis by several observers, among whom may be mentioned Klebs,<sup>1</sup> Birch-Hirschfeld,<sup>2</sup> Aufrecht,<sup>3</sup> Barduzzi,<sup>4</sup> Morison.<sup>5</sup> While some of these observers describe the bacteria as small rods, the later researches of Birch-Hirschfeld, and those of Aufrecht, Barduzzi, and others, go to show that they are micrococci which are often arranged in pairs or in short chains and which may readily be mistaken for rods. That these

<sup>1</sup> Klebs, *Archiv f. exp. Path.*, Bd. x., pp. 161–221, 1879.

<sup>2</sup> Birch-Hirschfeld, *Centralblatt f. Med. Wiss.*, 1882, Aug. 19th, p. 582, and Nov. 4th, p. 785.

<sup>3</sup> Aufrecht, *Centrbl. f. Med. Wiss.*, 1881, p. 228.

<sup>4</sup> Barduzzi, *Gazz. degli ospitali*, 1884, No. 12, Review in *Centrbl. f. Klin. Med.*, 1884, No. 12.

<sup>5</sup> Morison, *Maryland Med. Jour.*, Jan. 1st, 1883.



bacteria stand in a causative relation to the disease has not yet been proven.

## II. INFLAMMATION OF MUCOUS MEMBRANES.

Mucous membranes are composed of a layer of epithelium, a connective-tissue framework, and of glands. The epithelium is of the cylindrical, or ciliated, or polygonal variety, according to the particular mucous membrane. The connective-tissue framework supports the epithelial layer, and is itself provided with blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves. The glands are of the tubular and racemose character; they are embedded in the connective-tissue framework; their function is to produce mucus. During health, mucus of normal quantity and quality is constantly produced by the glands or epithelium of the surface. The epithelial layer is in a constant condition of growth of the deeper cells, and desquamation of the superficial ones.

Mucous membranes may be affected by catarrhal, croupous, purulent, tubercular, and syphilitic inflammation.

### 1. *Catarrhal Inflammation.*

(a) *Acute catarrhal inflammation.*—This form of inflammation is much better marked during life than after death. During life the lesions are evident, but they are of such a character that after death they can often no longer be recognized.

The first evident result of the inflammatory process is congestion, and swelling of the affected membrane; the congestion and the swelling, and the preponderance of venous congestion, varying with the intensity of the inflammation. In the worst cases the congestion is so extreme that the blood ceases to circulate, and the part becomes gangrenous. At first, the function of the mucous glands is suspended so that the surface of the inflamed membrane is unnaturally dry; later these glands produce mucus in increased quantity and of altered quality, which coats the inflamed membrane or runs off from its surface.

The superficial layers of epithelium desquamate more rapidly than in health, while in the deeper layers new cells are produced in increased numbers.

The congestion of the vessels is attended with the emigration of only a moderate number of white blood-cells, which infiltrate the connective tissue or reach the surface, and are mixed with the mucus and desquamated epithelium.

Red blood-cells may escape in considerable numbers either by diapedesis or by rupture of vessels, so that fluid blood is discharged from the free surface of the membrane. In mucous membranes provided with lymphatic glands, these glands may become swollen, they may soften and break down and thus form small, round ulcers.

(b) *Chronic Catarrhal Inflammation*.—This form of inflammation is regularly attended with structural changes which are evident after death. But yet these changes are not always in proportion to the symptoms observed during life. The excessive production of mucus and pus which exists during life is not necessarily attended with marked changes in the mucous glands or blood-vessels.

The layer of epithelium often becomes irregular, thinned in some places and thickened in others. The cells are deformed in various ways.

The blood-vessels may be increased in number, dilated and distended with blood; the inflamed membrane is then of a red or purple color. Or the blood-vessels are small, contain but little blood, and the membrane is pale. Or there may be an irregular deposit of pigment so that the membrane is of a blackish color.

The connective-tissue framework may be atrophied or hypertrophied. When it is atrophied the entire membrane is thinned. The hypertrophy may be diffuse with thickening of the entire membrane; or circumscribed with the formation of polypoid growths.

The secretion of the mucous glands may be increased, altered in character and mixed with pus; or it may be diminished.

The glands themselves may be atrophied and obliterated; or they may be dilated so as to form cysts; or they may be hypertrophied. Sometimes the circumscribed hypertrophies of the stroma are associated with hypertrophy of one or more glands, and then the polypoid outgrowths will be composed partly of glands.

If the inflamed membrane has lymphatic glands embedded in its wall, ulcers are often formed by the swelling and breaking down of these glands.

## 2. *Purulent Inflammation*.

This form of inflammation resembles acute catarrhal inflammation in some respects. There is the same congestion and swelling of the mucous

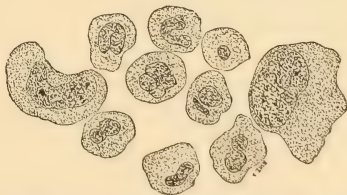


FIG. 24.—PUS CELLS FROM PURULENT INFLAMMATION OF BRONCHIAL MUCOUS MEMBRANE. X 1200 and reduced.

membrane, the same increased production of mucus, the same desquamation of the superficial and growth of the deep epithelial cells. But all these changes are much more intense in purulent inflammation than in catarrhal. The characteristic difference, however, between the two

forms of inflammation is that in purulent inflammation there is a large emigration of white blood-cells from the congested vessels. These cells do not infiltrate the mucous membrane to any great extent, but for the most part find their way to its surface and there are mixed with the mucus.

### 3. *Croupous Inflammation.*

There is a very great convenience in having some name to designate that form of inflammation of mucous membrane which is characterized by the production of pus and fibrin, without any reference to the cause which produces the inflammation. The term 'croupous inflammation' is not a good one, but it will answer the purpose if we use it as an arbitrary name to designate a definite anatomical lesion confined to the mucous membranes. The term 'diphtheritic inflammation' is also used to express the same lesion. But this word is more objectionable, as it implies that the process is related to the general disease, diphtheria. In diphtheria the characteristic lesion is a croupous inflammation, but this

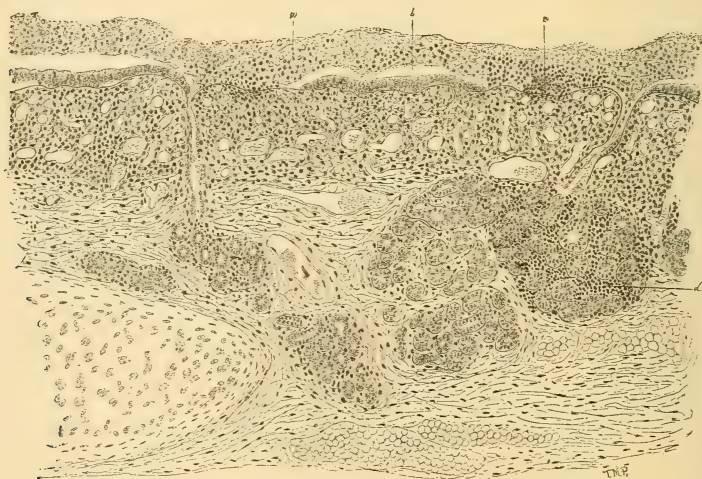


FIG. 25.—CROUPOUS INFLAMMATION OF TRACHEA,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

In this case there is purulent infiltration of the mucosa and submucosa and of portions of the mucous glands. *a*, False membrane. *b*, Portion of intact epithelium. *c*, Infiltration of the mucosa with fibrin. *d*, Portion of mucous gland infiltrated with pus.

inflammation does not differ anatomically from the croupous inflammation due to other causes.

In croupous inflammation the whole thickness of the mucous membrane is congested and swollen. The production of mucus is arrested. The white blood-cells emigrate, and the plasma exudes from the vessels. In this way are produced pus and fibrin which infiltrate the interstices of the connective-tissue framework, and make their appearance on the



surface of the inflamed membrane as a false membrane. In some cases the superficial layers of the epithelium undergo coagulation necrosis, the cells are changed in their shape and appearance, so that they look like a network of coagulated fibrin.

In some cases the congestion of the vessels and the pressure of the inflammatory products are sufficient to cut off the vascular supply of portions of the inflamed mucous membrane, and so cause their death. This death is followed by sloughing, and in this way ulcers are formed.

The whole inflammatory process is, therefore, one in which the blood-vessels take the most active part, but which is complicated by the tendency to superficial and deep necrosis.

The intensity of the process, the quantity of fibrin and pus, the degree and depth of the infiltration of the connective-tissue framework, and the extent of the necrosis, vary in the different cases.

The false membrane which coats the surface of the inflamed mucous membrane is composed either of fibrin and pus alone, or of necrotic epithelium alone; or both of these are present in varying proportion. Bacteria of different varieties are also often infiltrated in the false membrane or lie upon its surface.

#### 4. *Tubercular Inflammation.*

Tubercular inflammation is developed in two different ways, which may exist separately or be combined.

(a) Tubercle granula are formed in the connective-tissue framework of the mucous membrane close beneath the epithelium. Round cells of indifferent type infiltrate the connective tissue around the tubercle, and a diffused catarrhal inflammation is developed. The tubercle granula may become cheesy and soften; the epithelium and tissue over them then become necrotic and slough away, and in this way ulcers are formed.

In the intestines the tubercle granula are usually formed in the solitary or agminated glands instead of in the connective tissue.

(b) A diffuse catarrhal inflammation of a peculiar type is developed. There is an increased production of mucus, desquamation and proliferation of the epithelium, and an infiltration of the connective-tissue framework with round cells and tubercle granula. There is a marked tendency to cheesy degeneration, not only of the tubercle, but also of the other inflammatory products and of the tissue of the mucous membrane. So we find the inflamed membrane coated with cheesy matter, and itself thickened, cheesy, and ragged.

#### 5. *Syphilitic Inflammation.*

In the mucous membranes the only characteristic syphilitic inflammatory lesion is the 'Mucous Patch,' or 'Condyloma.'

A mucous patch is at first a circumscribed flattened swelling, formed by the growth of imperfect granulation tissue in the connective-tissue framework beneath the epithelium. Later this granulation tissue dies and degenerates, the epithelium over it becomes loosened and detached, and in this way ulcers are formed. The process may be still further complicated by the development of a suppurative inflammation of the surrounding connective tissue.

### III. INFLAMMATION OF THE VISCERA.

Every viscus is composed of a connective-tissue stroma, in which are blood-vessels, nerves and lymphatics, and of cells. These cells are the characteristic anatomical constituents of each viscus by which its proper functions are effected. Such cells, therefore, besides living, have to perform functions, and any morbid process affects not only their vitality, but their capacity for performing their proper functions. So we find that the importance of inflammation of the viscera is principally on account of the consequent derangement of their functions.

We can distinguish:

#### 1. *Parenchymatous Inflammation.*

In this form of inflammation the lesions are confined to the characteristic cells of the viscus. The stroma and the vessels take no active share in the process.

The cells are first swollen, then the substance which forms the cell body is changed and becomes granular, then it is infiltrated with coarse granules and small fat-globules, and finally it breaks down into an amorphous granular mass.

Such changes seem identical with other changes which are simply degenerative; but yet they are often developed in the viscera in such a way as to deserve the name of an acute inflammation.

#### 2. *Interstitial Inflammation.*

This is an inflammation of the stroma of the viscera, and is of the same characters as have been already described in speaking of connective tissue.

There may be a congestion of the blood-vessels and an emigration of white blood-cells with exudation of plasma, so that the inflamed stroma is infiltrated with serum, fibrin, and pus in different proportions.

The emigration of white blood-cells may be associated with necrosis and liquefaction of portions of tissue, and so abscesses are formed. Or the inflammation may be of a chronic character with the production of new connective tissue, both basement substance and cells.

In all cases the inflammation is confined to the stroma, and the cells of the viscus only undergo degenerative or necrotic changes.

### 3. *Diffuse Inflammation.*

We may employ this term to designate those inflammations of the viscera, in which there are active changes both in the stroma and in the parenchyma cells. Such an inflammation may run either an acute or a chronic course.

In the stroma there may be an infiltration with serum and pus, and a new growth of connective-tissue cells with or without a growth of basement substance.

In the cells there are changes of the same character as those which occur in parenchymatous inflammation. Besides this, the cells become degenerated, deformed, and displaced in various ways.

Both tubercular and syphilitic inflammations are developed in the viscera, but no satisfactory general description of them can be given. They must be described as they occur in each particular viscus.



## TUMORS.

---

### SECTION I. GENERAL CHARACTERS.

Tumors are composed of the same types of tissue as those normally existing in the body, and from the latter they are derived by a proliferation of pre-existing cells. The tissues of tumors may be similar to those of the part in which they grow, when they are called *homologous*; or they may be dissimilar, and are then called *heterologous*. Tumors are not only analogous to the normal tissues of the body in structure, but their life history transpires under the same general laws of nutrition, growth, reproduction, etc. With this important difference, however, that while the normal tissues, serving as they do a definite purpose in the organism, are closely limited in their growth and minute characters by physical and other conditions which determine the uniform development and correlation of various parts; the tissues of tumors exhibit a certain lawlessness in growth, structure, and life history, which gives them a distinctive character while not removing them from the physiological types. Thus in the Chondromata,<sup>1</sup> the tissue, while distinctly cartilaginous in type, presents itself not only in places where it does not belong, but may show a tendency to the development of fibres in one part of its basement substance, while another may be distinctly hyaline or another soft and almost gelatinous. The cells also are apt to exhibit great lack of uniformity in size, shape, and grouping. The lawlessness in tumor tissues is shown in their tendency, under certain conditions, to change from one form into another, as from fibrous tissue into bone.

Tumors are supplied with blood-vessels which grow into them from adjacent healthy parts, just as they do into granulation tissue, so that they may finally possess a more or less independent vascular system of arteries, capillaries, and veins. They are furnished with lymph-vessels and some of them with nerves. The cell division by which tumors grow exhibits the same minute phenomena as does cell division in normal tissues. Tumor tissues are subject to the same degenerative changes as

---

<sup>1</sup> Tumors are designated by the termination *oma* (plural *omata*).

other tissues; they may become fatty or calcified, ulcerated, gangrenous, pigmented, etc. By necrotic changes a tumor may be largely destroyed, but complete obliteration rarely occurs in this way. They are liable to undergo the ordinary inflammatory changes, granulation tissue may form in them, and abscesses and cicatrices.

The rapidity of growth of tumors varies greatly; some grow very slowly indeed, and may change but imperceptibly in size and appearance for years, while others, on the other hand, grow so fast that they do not acquire solidity, and their elements remain in an incompletely developed condition, and are thus more liable to destructive changes than normal tissues are. In healthy tissues the blood-vessels are supported by surrounding elements, which aid them in sustaining the blood-pressure from within. In rapidly growing tumors this external support is often lacking, and as the walls of the blood-vessels are themselves badly formed, the result is that the walls are apt to become pouched or aneurismal, and they often burst, giving rise to larger or smaller interstitial hemorrhages.

Tumors have various shapes: nodular, tuberous, fungoid, polypoid, papillary, dendritic, etc.

Tumors may occur singly or in greater or less numbers in the same or in different parts of the body. If they are multiple, they may have occurred simultaneously or at different times, as independent structure. Or, multiple tumors may occur as the result of the dissemination in the body from a primary tumor, of cells which form a starting-point for new tumors. Many tumors are sharply circumscribed, may be even encapsulated, and influence surrounding parts only by the pressure which they exert upon them. In this way they may cause displacement, atrophy, or necrosis; they may by pressure on neighboring vessels cause œdema, thrombosis, etc.; they may in the same way cause dislocation, and caries of bones.

Tumors may grow largely by increase of elements within them, thus simply expanding; this is called *central growth*. They may grow in part or largely at the surface—*peripheral growth*. In this case the growth may be a direct continuous enlargement of the mass at or near the periphery, or it may be by the formation of secondary nodules near the primary growth, which, gradually enlarging, finally coalesce with the latter, forming a part of the nodular tumor. This mode of enlargement is called *discontinuous peripheral growth*, and is due to the dissemination of cells from the mother tumor into the adjacent tissue, through the blood or lymph channels, and their proliferation at the points of lodgment. This dissemination may occur by the agency of blood or lymph currents or by the amoeboid movements of the cells.

It is not yet certain whether the new-cells which are produced in tumors are altogether the result of the proliferation of the primary tumor cells, or whether the ordinary tissue cells of the part, connective-tissue

cells, white blood-cells, etc., may undergo transformation and proliferation under the influence of the characteristic cells of the tumor. It is not unlikely that both modes of increase occur, although the former is probably the more common and important. Some tumors increase by an infiltration of surrounding tissues, whose elements they gradually replace. In certain tumors the old tissue of the part in which they grow may remain with its vessels, and form a sort of matrix whose interstices are infiltrated with the new tumor-tissue. The irritation of the tumor may induce inflammatory new formation of tissue of the old matrix about or within the tumor.

But all tumors are not limited to that part or region of the body in which they first occur. Sooner or later, secondary nodules resembling the first may be found in the most distant parts of the body; sometimes singly, sometimes in great numbers. These may grow like the parent tumor, and themselves form foci for new disseminations.

This dissemination of tumors is one of the most important elements of malignancy, and is called *metastasis*, the secondary tumors being called *metastatic tumors*. This occurs by the transportation of tumor-cells through the blood or lymph channels. Since the tumor itself may be filled with new and badly formed blood and lymph-vessels, and its structures be in close contact with the vessels of the tissue in which it grows, the cells of the primary tumor may, by ulceration through, or by atrophy of the walls, readily find their way into the lumen of the vessels, and be swept away by currents as emboli, and finding lodgment, proliferate and grow, forming secondary tumors; or the proliferation may occur in the vascular endothelium itself, when the formation of emboli is easy to understand. When carried through the lymph-vessels, the tumor-cells may for some time be kept from the larger channels, and from general dissemination by lodgment in the lymph glands, where they may establish independent tumors. The parts of the body in which metastatic tumors are most apt to form, depend, of course, upon the situation of the primary tumor and the distribution of the vascular channels through which dissemination occurs.

The tumors in which metastasis is most apt to occur are, as a rule, those which grow rapidly, are vascular and succulent, and contain many cells.

Not less variable than the size, mode of growth, and structure of tumors is their significance in the organism. Surgeons have in the past, and to a certain extent still do classify tumors, for practical purposes, as *malignant* and *benign*, and for a long time malignant tumors and cancer were synonymous terms. Now we know that other tumors as well as cancers are malignant, and furthermore, contrary to the former belief, that malignancy does not depend upon any specific agent in the tumor. If we mean by a malignant tumor one which may cause death,



any tumor may be malignant if growing in the right place. Thus a simple fat tumor, by pressing on the trachea, may cause suffocation, and any tumor may secondarily cause death by hemorrhage or septicæmia. The real signs of malignancy in a tumor are: 1. Invasion of adjacent tissues by eccentric or peripheral growth. 2. The tendency to local recurrence after removal. 3. The formation of metastases. 4. A tendency to interfere with the nutrition and general well-being of the body, which may give rise to a condition known as cachexia. The modes of invasion of surrounding tissues and the formation of metastases have been considered above. The tendency to local recurrence after removal is probably in most, if not all cases, due to the incomplete removal of the peripheral infiltrating cells. These may be very few in number and lacking in characteristic structural features, but are none the less endowed with the capacity of proliferation and development into a new and similar tumor at or near the seat of the extirpated one. The infiltrating peripheral cells may remain dormant for a long time after an operation, or may immediately commence to grow. The mere fact that a second tumor develops in the place of one removed does not imply malignancy, since it may result from the same mechanical cause which produced the first, as in the case of certain carcinomata of the lip induced by the mechanical irritation of a pipe.

The drain upon the system by the rapid growth of a tumor, together with the absorption from it into the body of deleterious putrefactive materials, from sloughing, ulceration, and degeneration, may give rise to fever and well-marked septicæmia. Or they may induce feebleness, anæmia, and that general impairment of the nutritive functions of the body known as cachexia. This condition is frequently rendered worse by the mental status of the patient in the presence of such a traditional object of alarm.

It should be remembered, however, that so long as they are localized and have not undergone degenerative changes, even the most malignant tumors do not usually give rise to a cachexia, since the drain upon the nutritive powers of the system by their simple growth is not under ordinary conditions very considerable. When the system is deteriorated by the absorption of septic materials from tissue-degeneration, however, this may become a very important factor.

This condition of cachexia, so evidently secondary to the growth and degeneration of the tumor, was formerly termed a dyscrasia or diathesis, and was supposed to precede and induce the growth of malignant tumors, particularly cancers.

It is further to be noted that the fragments of tumors which have found access to the veins may act as simple emboli and produce immediate death or simple metastatic abscesses.

*The Cause of Tumors.*

In regard to the causation of tumors, our actual knowledge is still very meagre. In a certain number of cases, mechanical influences are undoubtedly sufficient inciting causes. In other instances, heredity is an important factor. But to both of these influences too much importance has been attributed in former times. The most recent, and to a certain extent plausible hypothesis, and one which most satisfactorily accounts for the occurrence and character of many tumors, is that of Cohnheim, called the *hypothesis of the embryonal origin of tumors*. This is to the effect that all true tumors are due to faulty embryonal development; that certain embryonal cells of various kinds in the course of the development of the body are superfluous, or become displaced, or do not undergo the normal changes, and remain ready, when the conditions shall become favorable in later life, from whatever reason, to commence growing with all the potencies of embryonic and lowly organized cells in the midst of the mature tissues. Not being restrained, however, by the regulating influences which determine the nature and relative extent of growth in normal development, they go on to the production of tumors, which represent, though in atypical form, the various tissues which the strayed or unused cells were destined normally to produce.

The evident hereditary character of many tumors, the congenital nature and early development of others, their atypical structure in general, and the tendency of many forms to occur in situations in which, during the development of the embryo, considerable complexity exists, as well as their heterologous occurrence and their frequent primary multiplicity; all of these characters of tumors seem to favor Cohnheim's hypothesis. On the other hand, the theory leaves unexplained the sudden growth of the alleged germs which have long remained dormant, and lacks as yet the absolute demonstration of a morphological basis, since no one has seen the strayed or delayed embryonic cells. These may, of course, be very small and difficult of demonstration, and this, according to Cohnheim, fully explains the lack of a definite histological basis to his hypothesis. It should be remembered furthermore that, under ordinary conditions in the body, certain cells which are destined to replace others which have fulfilled their destinies, as in the skin, possess to a greater or less degree the characters of embryonal cells, and that, while in the struggle for existence the growth of these cells may be held in check, as by conditions of pressure, nutritive supply, etc., if these conditions be altered, these cell may undergo proliferative changes as significant as those of the alleged belated germs of Cohnheim. Such a changed condition of affairs has been shown by Thiersch to occur frequently in the skin in old age, and to explain in large measure the occurrence of certain epithelial tumors. It should be remembered that this hypothesis was offered

by Conheim only as a suggestion to facilitate research, and that he expressly warned his confrères against attaching a premature importance to the possibility to which he called attention. Thus, while the hypothesis of the embryonal origin of tumors is most fascinating, and for certain forms quite satisfactory, we may well demand a more definite basis of fact before accepting it as of universal application.

It was formerly supposed, when the doctrine of the specific nature of tumors prevailed, that the cells of malignant tumors, particularly of cancer, had a characteristic structure and appearance, and that by the examination of single or of a few separated cells the nature of the tumor could be determined. From the above considerations, it will be evident, as all tumor cells have their prototypes in the normal body, that therefore there is nothing pathognomonic in the appearances of single cells. It is by a study of the general structure, and the topography of tumors, as well as of the characters of the individual cells, that we are enabled to determine their nature. And even then we must often bring to our aid the clinical history and gross appearances of the growth before we can arrive at a definite conclusion. We may, indeed, sometimes, aided by the clinical history or gross appearances, be able, by the microscopical examination of scrapings from a tumor or of fluids from an internal cavity in which it is growing, to form a reasonable conjecture regarding its nature.

As a rule, the peripheral portions of the more rapidly growing tumors are best adapted for microscopical examination, because here secondary degenerative changes are less likely to have occurred than in the central parts.

*Classification of Tumors.*—The fact that tumors are composed of structures which resemble the various types of tissue found in the normal body suggests the guiding principle in their classification. If we wish to arrange in groups the different kinds of tumors found in the body, we have only to recall the varieties of tissue which normally exist there, and their grouping, and upon the classification of the physiological types to construct the classification of tumors. It should be remembered that the usual separation of the normal tissues into groups is useful rather because it facilitates their study than because it expresses absolute and fundamental distinctions, and the same may be said of all the classifications of tumors. In both, an increase of our knowledge concerning their structure and genesis will doubtless lead to a more accurate grouping; but for the present such an arrangement as the following will be found of practical value for the purposes of studying tumors.

*I. Tumors Composed of Tissues of the Type of those Forming the Connective Tissue Group. (Histioid or Connective-Tissue Tumors.)*

*Physiological Type.*

1. Fibrillar connective tissue.
2. Mucous tissue.

*Tumors.*

1. Fibroma.
2. Myxoma.



- |                                 |                  |
|---------------------------------|------------------|
| 3. Embryonal connective tissue. | 3. Sarcoma.      |
| 4. Endothelial cells.           | 4. Endothelioma. |
| 5. Fat tissue.                  | 5. Lipoma.       |
| 6. Cartilage.                   | 6. Chondroma.    |
| 7. Bone.                        | 7. Osteoma.      |
| 8. Neuroglia.                   | 8. Glioma.       |

*II. Tumors Composed of Tissues of the Type of Muscle Tissue.—Myomata.*

- | <i>Physiological Type.</i> | <i>Tumors.</i>  |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Smooth muscle tissue.   | 1. Leiomyoma.   |
| 2. Striated muscle tissue. | 2. Rhabdomyoma. |

*III. Tumors Composed of Nerve Tissue.—Neuromata.*

- | <i>Physiological Type.</i> | <i>Tumors.</i> |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| 1. Nerve tissue.           | 1. Neuroma.    |

*IV. Tumors Composed of Vascular Tissue.—Angiomata.*

- | <i>Physiological Type.</i> | <i>Tumors.</i>   |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Blood-vessels.          | 1. Angioma.      |
| 2. Lymph-vessels.          | 2. Lymphangioma. |

*V. Tumors in which the Predominant or Characteristic Elements are Epithelial Cells.*

- | <i>Physiological Type.</i>                                   | <i>Tumors.</i> |
|--|----------------|
| 1. Glands.   | 1. Adenoma.    |
| 2. Various forms of epithelial cells and associated tissues. | 2. Carcinoma.  |

*VI. Tumors Formed by Various Combinations of the above Types.—Mixed Tumors.*

Aside from the above well-marked classes, we may mention here for the sake of completeness :

(a) *Complex Congenital Tumors,—Teratoma.*—These are congenital tumors which frequently contain a great number of different forms of tissue, such as various forms of fibrillar connective tissue, cartilage, bone, teeth, hair, skin, muscle, and glands. They are most frequently found at the lower end of the spine, about the head and neck, or in the generative organs. Some of them probably arise by an inclusion of portions of another foetus. These are called *teratoid tumors* or *teratomata*. Among them are sometimes classed other and simpler congenital formations, such as dermoid cysts, congenital angiomata, and the so-called pigmented moles.

(b) *Cysts.*—These structures, for the sake of convenience, are usually classed among the true tumors, although in general characters, structure, and genesis, they are entirely different products. They are usually divided into two classes:

I. *Cysts which develop in pre-existing cavities.*

II. *Cysts which originate independently as the result of pathological changes.*

I. Cysts which develop in pre-existing cavities.

1. *Retention Cysts.*—These are chiefly formed by the accumulation in glands or their excretory ducts of the more or less altered secretion of the gland. They usually occur as the result of some hindrance to the normal discharge, as from inflammatory contractions, pressure, etc. The contents of such cysts are usually mucous, sebaceous, serous, or of a mixed character. Their walls are the more or less altered walls of the original structure. To this class belong comedones, milium, atheroma, chalazion, ranula, the ovula Nabothi, milk cysts, and certain serous cysts of the ovaries, Fallopian tubes, gall-ducts, and uriniferous tubules.

2. *Exudation Cysts.*—These arise usually, though not always, as the result of a chronic inflammatory process in lymph-spaces or serous sacs, and among them are to be classed the so-called ganglia, hydrocele, etc. Certain of the so-called hematoceles, in which blood is extravasated into closed cavities, form a variety of the cysts of this group.

II. Cysts which originate independently as the result of pathological changes.

1. *Cysts formed by the softening and disintegration of tissue.*—Such cysts may at first be small and have very meagre contents, and no well-defined wall. A wall may finally be present either as an entirely new-formed structure, or the more or less modified capsule of the organ in which they occur may partly or entirely form the wall. The contents of such cysts are usually the more or less altered detritus of the tissue by whose disintegration they are formed. Such cysts are very apt to occur within true tumors, particularly those which are succulent and of rapid growth, since these, as above stated, are very liable to degeneration. Old abscesses may change into well-defined cysts of this kind.

2. *Cysts formed around Foreign Bodies.*—The inflammatory reaction induced by the presence of foreign bodies of various kinds, parasites, masses of extravasated blood, etc., frequently result in the formation of well-defined encapsulated cysts.

3. *Cysts formed by a new growth of tissue in whose spaces various kinds of fluid accumulate.*—These spaces may or may not be lined with epithelium, and have something of the glandular character. Such forms are exemplified in some of the compound ovarian cysts—the so-called ovarian cystomata.

4. *Congenital Cysts.*—These are of various forms, and their mode of origin is in most cases but imperfectly understood. The so-called dermoid cysts of the subcutaneous tissue and ovary are marked examples of this class. Certain congenital cysts of the kidney and other internal organs are conveniently grouped in this class, although it is quite proba-

ble that some of them at least originate during foetal life in one or other of the above-described ways, and hence are not essentially different in nature from some of the cysts of other classes.

There are certain enlargements of the lymph-glands or nodes which are in reality hyperplasias, sometimes inflammatory in character, and sometimes not, and which are often grouped among the tumors as *lymphomata*. They are not, strictly speaking, true tumors, and will be considered under the lesions of the lymph nodes.

In the same group are often classed the enlargements of the lymph-glands in leukæmia and in other general diseases, which will be treated in another part of this book. Another group of tumors, sometimes called lymphomata, are in reality sarcomata, and these will be described under the latter heading.

There is also a group of nodular new formations, the so-called *Infective Granulomata*, which are sometimes classed among the tumors. These are found in tuberculosis, leprosy, syphilis, lupus, glanders, and actino-mycosis. They seem, however, to be more closely allied to inflammatory new formations than to true tumors, and as our knowledge regarding them increases, seem more and more to be dependent upon the irritation caused by the presence of vegetable parasites. (See section devoted to General Diseases.)

*Nomenclature of Complex Tumors.*—The simple occurrence of more than one kind of tissue in a tumor does not make it a complex or mixed tumor. It is only when a special kind of tissue occurs in sufficient quantity to be of definite significance, or is of such a nature as to render its presence, in any amount, of importance, that we recognize its presence in the name. The name of mixed tumors is usually formed by joining the names of the tissues to be recognized. Thus a combination of fibroma and sarcoma is called fibro-sarcoma; the general rule of construction being that the name of the more important tissue shall serve as the substantive which that of the less important one qualifies. It should be remembered, however, that the more important tissue is not always the one which is present in greatest amount. Thus, owing to the great clinical significance of carcinomatous tissue, a very large fibroma with a small quantity of cancer tissue intermingled, would be a *fibro-carcinoma* and not a carcino-fibroma.

*Preservation.*—In general, tumors, like all tissues for microscopical study, should be cut into small pieces before immersing them in the preservative fluids, and the sooner they can be placed in these after removal, the better will be the preservation. In some cases much may be learned from large sections of tumors together with their surrounding tissues. In this case the proper part of the tumor must be preserved whole, and is best hardened in strong alcohol. For the ordinary routine hardening of tumors, Müller's fluid is probably the best agent; the hardening being completed in the usual way with strong alcohol (see p. 41). In



many cases an interstitial injection of one-per-cent aqueous solution of osmic acid, or a mixture of this with equal parts of alcohol and water, and subsequent immersion in alcohol, secures a very perfect preservation of the cells.

When it is desired to study the living cells of tumors—and much may be learned in this way—fragments should be teased in one-half-per-cent salt solution and examined on a warm stage.

## SECTION II.—SPECIAL FORMS OF TUMORS.

### FIBROMA.

The fibromata are composed of fibrillar connective tissue, which, as in the physiological type, is sometimes dense and firm, *Fibroma durum*, and sometimes loose in texture and soft, *Fibroma molle*. They are usually sharply circumscribed and are frequently encapsulated, but they may be diffuse, and merge imperceptibly into the surrounding tissue. Some fibromata consist almost entirely of intercellular substance, containing

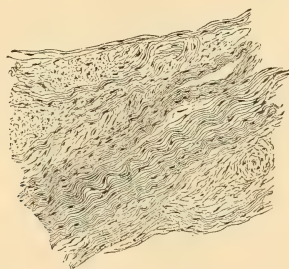


FIG. 26.—FIBROMA OF ABDOMINAL WALL.

This is one of the denser varieties; some of the bands of connective-tissue fibres are cut transversely, others longitudinally.  $\times 500$  and reduced.

but few flattened or spindle-shaped cells; others contain very many variously shaped cells. The denser varieties usually contain but few blood-vessels, although they are occasionally quite vascular. Many of the softer varieties are very vascular. Nerves also are occasionally seen. The course and arrangement of the fibres in these tumors is usually quite irregular, often crossing and interlacing in a most complex manner. The fibromata are usually of slow growth, but exceptionally they grow very rapidly. They are benign tumors, but by pressure on important organs, by ulceration, or by changing into other varieties of tissue, they may become of serious import. Pure fibromata do not form metastases, but they are often multiple, and when so are frequently congenital. They may, like most tumors, exhibit local recurrence when not fully removed. They are frequently very small and insignificant, but on the other hand, may grow to an enormous size.

They are quite frequently combined with other kinds of tissue to form complex tumors. The looser softer varieties not infrequently become

cedematous, when they may closely resemble myxomata. They are liable to calcification, and to fatty and mucous degeneration. By metaplasia they may partially change to form fibro-chondroma, fibro-lipoma, fibrosarcoma, or fibro-osteoma. The latter transformation frequently occurs when they form in the periosteum. Developing as they do in the connective tissue, they occur in the most various parts of the body: in the skin and subcutaneous tissue; in intermuscular tissue and fasciæ; in periosteum; in the nerve-sheaths and intrafascicular connective tissue; in the dura mater, the interstitial tissue of organs and in the mucous membranes. Many of the so-called polypi of the mucous membranes; some psammomata; certain forms of warts and common papillomata, are forms of fibroma.

Occasionally in the ducts of glands, fibrous polypi grow to an enormous extent, their epithelial covering keeping pace, in growth, with their development until they form very large, irregular, loose-textured tumors, which often finally ulcerate. Such forms are seen in the mammary gland, where they are frequently mistaken for carcinomata. They are called *Intracanalicular Fibromata*. It is often difficult to distinguish between genuine fibromata and inflammatory connective-tissue hyperplasia, such as elephantiasis, and perhaps the fuller knowledge of the future will show that the distinctions are not as definite as we are now disposed to believe.

#### MYXOMA.

Mucous tissue is essentially an embryonic tissue, for in the normal adult it is present only in a very imperfect and atypical form in the vit-

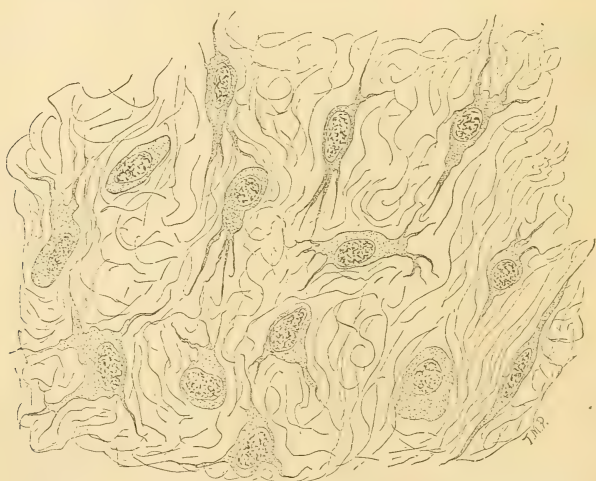


FIG. 27.—MYXOMA OF SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE OF BACK,  $\times 600$  and reduced one-half.

reous of the eye, and perhaps exceptionally in small amount about the heart, kidneys, and medulla of bone.

The myxomata are thus essentially embryonic-tissue tumors. These tumors consist, in their most typical forms, of a homogeneous or finely fibrillated, soft gelatinous basement substance, in which are embedded a variable number of spheroidal, fusiform, branching, and often anastomosing cells. They may contain few or many blood-vessels and nerves. By the addition of acetic acid mucin may be precipitated from the basement substance. The very soft forms which contain comparatively few cells and much translucent basement substance, are called *Myxoma gelatinosum* or *M. molle*. The presence of many cells renders them more consistent and gives them a whiter and more opaque appearance; such forms are called *M. medullare*.

Pure myxomata are not very common. The myxomata are very apt to be combined with fibrillar connective tissue as *fibro-myxoma*; or with fat tissue—*lipo-myxoma*; and they very frequently become sarcomatous, or take part in the formation of very complex tumors. They may be diffuse or encapsulated with fibrillar connective tissue; they are frequently very large, and may be multiple. Owing to the character of the basement substance, the blood-vessels not infrequently rupture, giving rise to larger or smaller hemorrhages within the tumor, or to the formation of cysts. The cells are liable to undergo fatty degeneration.

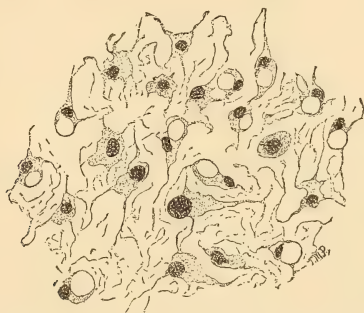


FIG. 28.—MYXOMA GROWING INTO ABDOMINAL CAVITY,  $\times 450$ .  
Some of the cells show accumulation of fat in the bodies.

Composed as they are of a type of tissue from which fat-tissue is developed in the embryo, the relations of these tumors to fat-tissue are very intimate. They are most frequently developed in, and probably directly from fat-tissue, and are very often combined with it as *lipo-myxoma*. They are also found in the subcutaneous, submucous, and subserous tissue, in the marrow and periosteum; in the brain and cord; in the sheaths and intrafascicular tissue of peripheral nerves; in intermuscular septa, and in the interstitial tissue of glands, such as the mamma and parotid. The myxomata are in general benign; yet they are very prone, especially the lipomatous forms, to local recurrence. They sometimes grow very rapidly, and sometimes, though very rarely, form metastases.



In the not infrequent combination with sarcoma, they may exhibit the most marked malignancy. Many of the polypi of mucous membranes are myxomata, and to this class of growths belong the so-called hydatid moles which sometimes develop in the villi of the chorion.

Œdematous, loose, and cellular forms of fibrillar connective tissue so closely resemble some of the forms of mucous tissue that certain observers consider them as identical. So prone are many tumors to undergo mucous degeneration, and so frequent are the combinations of the myxomata with other forms of tumors that it is often difficult, sometimes impossible, to say whether the mucous tissue in a given composite tumor is primary or secondary.

#### SARCOMA.

These tumors are formed on the type of connective tissue, but they are, as a rule, largely composed of cells; the basement substance, though a constant and important factor, being much less conspicuous than in adult connective tissue. They more closely resemble, in general, the developing connective tissue of the embryo, or the granulation tissue of inflammation. They are therefore conveniently described as presenting the type of embryonal tissue. The prominent and characteristic cells of the sarcomata are most varied in size and shape. They may be fusiform or spindle-shaped, spheroidal, branched; they may be multinuclear and very large, or they may be very small and spheroidal, resembling leucocytes. The fibrillar basement substance may be present in such small quantity as to entirely escape a superficial observation, covered as it may be by the abundant cells; or it may be so abundant as to give the tumor the general appearance of a fibroma. It may be intimately intermingled with the cells in fascicles, or it may be in large open-meshed networks, giving to the tumor an alveolar appearance. The cells, however, always stand in an intimate relationship to the basement substance which they sometimes reveal by fibrillar processes continuous with it. Blood-vessels also form a constant and important structural element in these tumors, being in some of them so predominating a factor that they give structural outline and general character to the growth. They, too, as in the normal connective tissue, are intimately associated with the basement substance and with the tumor-cells.

A single form of cells is often so predominant as to furnish a suitable name for the tumor, but in many cases the cell-form varies greatly in the same growth. It may be said in general that there is a tendency to reproduce in these tumors some of the special characteristics of the tissues in which they originate. Thus, sarcomata of the bones are apt to be osteo-sarcomata; those of pigmented tissue, like the choroid, are apt to be pigmented sarcomata. It will be more convenient for our present

purpose to briefly describe the more common forms one after another, than to attempt any systematic classification of them.

It should be remembered, however, that the various forms are not sharply specific in character, but are apt to merge into one another and to intermingle in various ways.

Sarcomata are most frequently found in the skin, subcutaneous tissue, faciæ, subserous connective tissue, the marrow or periosteum, and in the choroid. They may also occur, though more rarely, in the dura mater; brain and cord; lymph nodes; in the adventitia of blood-vessels and in nerve-sheaths; in submucous tissue; in the uterus, and in the kidney. In the liver and lungs and heart they may occur by metastasis.

They are more apt to occur at an early period in life than later. The cellular character, the rapid growth, the vascularity and succulence of many forms; the marked tendency to local recurrence, and the formation of metastases, stamp the sarcomata as malignant tumors. But in this they vary greatly; while some of the forms belong in every sense to the most malignant of tumors, others grow slowly, are very dense, and may remain localized and harmless for years. Their tendencies in this respect will be mentioned under the special forms.

Intimately related as they are to the blood-vessels, metastasis is more apt to occur through the blood than through the lymph channels, and consequently adjacent lymph-glands are much less apt to be involved than in some other forms of tumor, notably the carcinomata.



FIG. 29.—LARGE SPINDLE-CELLED SARCOMA OF HUMERUS.  $\times 500$ .

*Spindle-celled Sarcoma.*—The cells in these tumors may be large—*large spindle-celled S.*; or they may be small—*small spindle-celled S.* They may consist largely of cells, or may contain so much intercellular fibrous tissue as to be appropriately called *fibro-sarcoma*. The cells are frequently arranged in fascicles which surround the blood-vessels, and these fascicles may cross and interlace. These tumors are, as a rule, denser and firmer and less malignant than other forms of sarcoma, but

to this there are many exceptions. They may be encapsulated or infiltrating. To this class belong the growths formerly described as fibro-

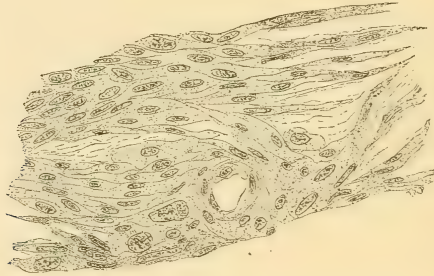


FIG. 30.—SMALL SPINDLE-CELLED SARCOMA OF FOREARM,  $\times 500$ .

plastic tumors, and recurrent fibroids. They frequently occur in the periosteum, subcutaneous tissue in muscle, in the uterus, and in various glands; notably in the mamma, testicle, thyroid, etc. These forms are among the most frequent of the sarcomata.

*Round-celled Sarcoma.*—Of these there are two classes—1, *small round-celled sarcomata* and *large round-celled sarcomata*.

1. The small round-celled sarcomata consist of cells of about the size and appearance of lymph-cells, and may have much or little intercellular substance, which may be irregularly disposed or arranged in large meshes resembling alveoli. In many cases so small is the quantity of intercellular substance that it is difficult of detection without special modes of preparation. These tumors are apt to contain many blood-vessels and

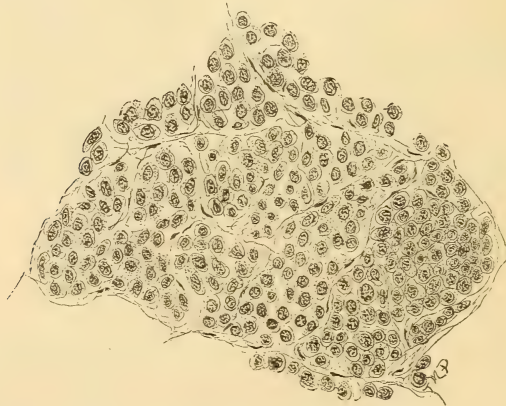


FIG. 31.—SMALL ROUND-CELLED SARCOMA OF LIVER,  $\times 400$ .

be very soft and succulent. Their growth is sometimes rapid and they are often very malignant.



They most frequently occur in the connective tissue of the muscles and fasciæ, in bone, and in lymph-nodes (*lympho-sarcoma*). They also occur in the internal organs, not infrequently in the brain, associated with glioma as *glio-sarcoma*.

2. In the large round-celled sarcomata the cells vary in size, but are usually very much larger than in the last variety. Their nuclei are usu-

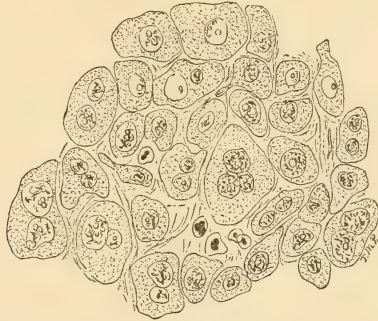


FIG. 32.—LARGE ROUND-CELLED SARCOMA OF LEG,  $\times 350$ .

ally large and contain prominent nucleoli. They, too, are often very vascular, and contain a variable quantity of basement substance. They are occasionally alveolar in character. They are as a rule less soft and malignant than the small-celled varieties.

The round-celled sarcomata were formerly supposed, on account of their macroscopical and clinical resemblance to some of the soft forms of carcinoma, to belong to these tumors and were called medullary cancers.

*Melano-Sarcoma*.—These tumors consist most frequently of spindle-cells of various sizes, although cells of other shapes frequently occur in them. They are characterized by the presence in the cells, and less fre-



FIG. 33.—MELANO-SARCOMA FROM SUBMAXILLARY REGION,  $\times 500$  and reduced one-half.

quently in the intercellular substance, of larger and smaller particles of brown or black pigment. The pigment is usually quite irregularly distributed in patches or streaks, and is located chiefly in the cell-body.

They arise most frequently in the skin and in the choroid. Pigmented moles of the skin often form their starting-points. They belong to the most malignant of tumors. They very readily form metastatic tumors in various parts of the body, which are, like the parent tumor, pigmented.

Various forms of tumors may contain brownish pigment deposited in them, by the degeneration of the hemoglobin from extravasated blood; these should not be mistaken for melanotic sarcomata.

*Myeloid or Giant-celled Sarcoma.*—Tumors of this class are usually formed chiefly of spheroidal or fusiform cells of variable size, but their characteristic feature is the presence of larger and smaller multinuclear cells, called giant-cells. These are closely intermingled with the other cells, and may be very abundant or very few in number. Giant-cells



FIG. 34.—GIANT-CELLED SARCOMA OF BONE (TIBIA),  $\times 500$ .

may occasionally occur in other tumors, but are most abundant and characteristic in these. They are chiefly formed in connection with bone, and may commence in the marrow or in the periosteum. They are sometimes very soft and vascular, and subject to interstitial hemorrhages. Some of these vascular sarcomata were formerly classed together with other kinds of vascular tumors as fungus hematodes. Some of the forms of *epulis* are giant-celled sarcomata.

When these tumors originate in the marrow of the long bones, which is a favorite place for them, they are apt to cause resorption of the bone, and although the tumor may be for a long time inclosed by a shell of new-formed bone, which enlarges with the enlarging tumor, it usually, sooner

or later, breaks through this and infiltrates adjacent tissues. They are liable to form metastases and frequently grow to a very great size. The periosteal forms are apt to be firmer in texture, and are prone to the development of irregular masses of new bone within them, thus forming one of the varieties of osteo-sarcoma.

*Osteo-sarcoma.*—These are spindle or round celled tumors, usually, but not always, connected with bone, in which irregular masses of bone tissue are present. The bone is usually of irregular atypical structure; the regular lamellation and typical Haversian canals being usually absent. They may form metastases which present similar characters.

Calcification, which should be distinguished from ossification, may occur in various forms of sarcoma.

*Angio-Sarcoma.*—In many of the sarcomata in various parts of the body, the blood-vessels form so prominent and important a feature as to give special character to the growth, not alone by their size and general prominence, but sometimes by the peculiar arrangement which their

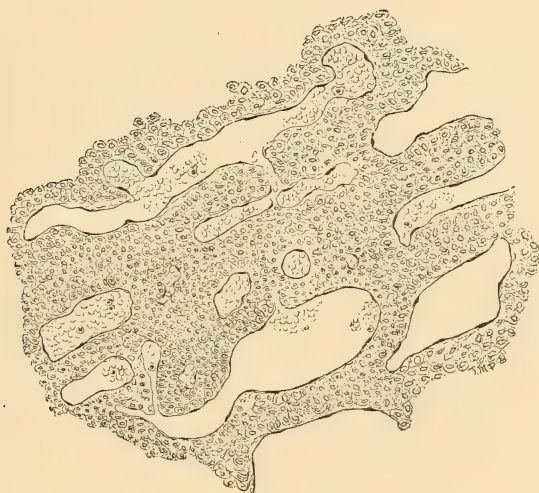


FIG. 35.—ANGIO-SARCOMA OF LIVER.

The thin-walled blood-vessels around which the tumor-cells are formed are dilated in places.

presence gives to the cells. While in most of the sarcomata the blood-vessels have a very important influence in determining the topography of the tumor, in most of the denser, and in many of the softer varieties, this influence is not easily traced. In many forms, however, particularly those which are soft and very cellular, the cells are closely grouped around the vessels as if they were developed in their adventitia, and had formed close sheaths around them. The masses of cells thus formed, with a blood-vessel for a centre, may be closely packed together in long strings with more or less frequent anastomoses (Fig. 35), or they may be



arranged in rounded groups giving to the tumor an alveolar appearance.

In other cases, the blood-vessels may appear as characteristic factors simply on account of their size or relative abundance.

Sometimes the walls of the blood-vessels and the adjacent tissues, in these as in other forms of tumors, undergo a peculiar hyaline degeneration, giving to the whole or to parts of the tumor a more or less gelatinous appearance. Such tumors are not very common, and are frequently grouped in an ill-defined class called *cyliodroma*.

*Alveolar Sarcoma*.—Sometimes, as above stated, the basement substance of the sarcomata, particularly in some of the round-celled varieties, is quite abundant and arranged in a wide-meshed net, in the meshes of which the cells lie. These spaces are called alveoli, and this variety of structure has acquired importance from the general resemblance which these tumors have to the well-defined and characteristic alveolar structure which many of the carcinomata exhibit. It is true that occasionally the resemblance is very close indeed, but usually the sarcomata present a more or less intimate relation between the cells and basement substance. The cells usually do not simply lie in the cavities, but are often attached to the intercellular substance, which not seldom sends finer trabeculæ into the alveoli between the cells. Sometimes a careful shaking of sections in water is necessary to reveal the characters of the reticulum.



FIG. 36.—MYXO-SARCOMA OF PHARYNX,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

The cells, moreover, are usually, though not always, distinctive in character. This form of tumor is, in some cases at least, determined, as above stated, by the new-formation and peculiar arrangement of the blood-vessels. Tumors of this kind are not common, but may occur in the skin, lymph-nodes, bones, and pia-mater. They are usually very malignant.

In addition to the above more or less well-defined forms of sarcoma, there exist various modifications which have received special names. Thus sarcomata in which cysts form, either by the softening of tissue by degeneration, or by the dilatation of gland-ducts by pressure, or by the new-formation of tissue in gland-ducts or alveoli which dilate with the growth of the tumor, have received the name of *cysto-sarcomata*.

Mucous degeneration is frequent in the various forms of sarcoma. A combination of myxoma and sarcoma—myxo-sarcoma—is common (see Fig. 36).

Combinations of sarcoma with fat-tissue, *lipo-sarcoma*; with glandular



FIG. 37.—ADENO-SARCOMA OF PAROTID,  $\times 600$  and reduced.

structures, *adeno-sarcoma*; with cartilage, *chondro-sarcoma*; with muscle tissue, *myo-sarcoma*; and with various other tissues, are of frequent occurrence. Some forms of *psammoma* or “brain sand” found chiefly in the dura-mater are *fibro-sarcomata* which have undergone calcification, the lime being deposited in lamellated masses of various shapes within them.

Some of the soft papillomata and warts, and occasionally the polypi of the mucous membranes, belong to the type of sarcoma or myxo-sarcoma.

The so-called *chloromata*, which have been found in a variety of places in the body, but are rare, are apparently forms of sarcoma. Chloroma is characterized by a greenish color the nature of which is not known.

Sometimes in various forms of sarcoma, as in other tumors, the endothelial cells lining the lymph-spaces appear to proliferate, giving rise to a variety of rounded, elongated, or reticular structures, which somewhat resemble a typical gland formation. Such tumors are sometimes called *adenoid sarcomata*, but they require more careful and extended study

before they can be definitely classified. Some of them belong to the tumors of the next class.

#### ENDOTHELIOMA.

Under the name of endotheliomata are grouped a number of tumors which on the one hand are closely related to the sarcomata in genesis, and in some cases in appearance, while on the other hand some of them so closely resemble some forms of carcinoma as to be difficult of distinction from them. The endotheliomata originate in that form of connective-tissue cells called endothelium, and seem to develop by a proliferation of these. Sometimes the cells of the endotheliomata resemble closely the normal endothelium; sometimes, however, they differ considerably from them, being occasionally very large, often thick and irregular in shape, and even nearly cylindrical or cuboidal. They are associated with a more or less abundant vascular stroma which may be alveolar in formation. In this case, as in alveolar sarcoma, it may often be seen that the cells have an intimate relationship to the trabeculæ of

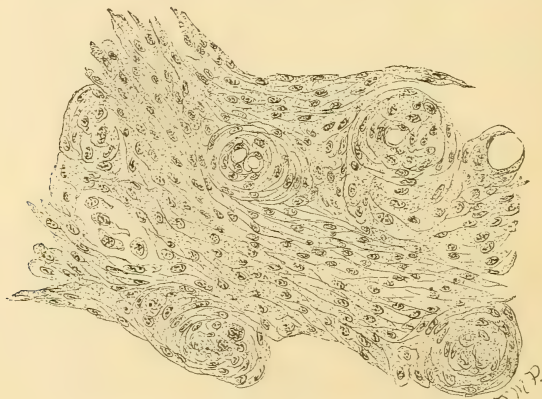


FIG. 38.—ENDOTHELIOMA OF DURA MATER,  $\times 300$ .

the stroma. Sometimes the cells of the endotheliomata are packed together in dense concentric masses, which may have a glistening appearance, and such tumors are sometimes called *cholesteatomata*. Although, for the most part, the peculiar glistening appearance of these tumors is due to the closely packed thin cells which compose them, they not infrequently contain crystals of cholestearin, sometimes in large quantities, which may share in producing their characteristic appearance. But the cholestearin may be absent or present in small amount.

The endotheliomata may occur of considerable size and be nodular, or they may be multiple, numerous small tumors being scattered over the surface of the part in which they grow; they may even form a thicker or thinner pellicle over surfaces, or cause adhesions between



adjacent organs. They may form metastases. They occur in the dura mater and pia mater, in the pleura and peritoneum, and have been described in the lymph-nodes, ovary, liver, brain, and testicle.<sup>1</sup>

#### LIPOMA.

Lipomata are tumors formed of fat-tissue. The fat-tissue occurs in lobules and is similar to normal fat, except that the cells and lobules are usually larger. There may be little connective tissue in the tumors, when they are very soft, almost fluctuating—*lipoma molle*—or there may be so much as to give the tumor considerable firmness—*fibro-lipoma*. They may be in part transformed into mucous tissue—*myxo-lipoma*. Cartilage not infrequently develops in them, or they may undergo partial calcification.

Occasionally the blood-vessels are very abundant and dilated—*lipoma telangiectoides*. They are usually sharply circumscribed, but may infiltrate surrounding tissues. They are not infrequently pediculated. They sometimes grow to enormous size, and may ulcerate.

They are usually isolated, but may be multiple. They are the most common of tumors, occurring usually in the subcutaneous or other fat-tissue. They may occur in the mucous membrane of the gastrointestinal canal, in the peritoneum, more rarely in the dura mater, kidney, liver, and lungs. They are benign tumors, not forming metastases, but they may be deleterious by ulceration or gangrene, and when not fully removed may exhibit local recurrence.

#### CHONDROMA.

These tumors, composed of either of the physiological forms of cartilage, are usually hard, but sometimes quite soft. The cells do not present the same uniformity in size, shape, number, and relative position that they do in normal cartilage. Sometimes they are very large, spheroidal, and grouped in masses, and again small and far apart. They are frequently fusiform or branching. Fibrillar connective tissue in varying quantity is usually present in the chondromata, either as a capsule or running in bands between the nodules of cartilage, or passing in fascicles into them (Fig. 19). The cartilage may change to mucous tissue, forming

---

<sup>1</sup>This class of tumors is unsatisfactory, for, as will be seen, we have no very definite morphological characteristics which cover all cases, and their relations to other tumors are so close that we often need to know the seat of the growth and something of its genesis before we can arrive even at a measurably definite determination of it, and even then we may fail. This indefinite state of affairs arises from the fact that we do not yet know enough about the normal relationships between endothelial and other connective-tissue cells; and, furthermore, we do not yet know exactly to what extent the progeny of one class of cells may grow to resemble or become identical with those of another class.

*myxo-chondroma* (Fig. 40); the cells may undergo fatty degeneration or they may calcify or ossify. Chondromata frequently form a part of mixed and complex tumors.



FIG. 39.—CHONDROMA OF SUBCUTANEOUS CONNECTIVE TISSUE,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

They may form in connection with bone or cartilage, and are often traceable to irregularities in foetal development. Or they may occur in soft parts where cartilage is not normally present, as in the parotid, testicle, mamma, and ovaries, where they are apt to be mixed with other tissues; or in subcutaneous connective tissue and fasciæ.



FIG. 40.—MYXO-CHONDROMA OF CERVICAL REGION,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

They are in general benign tumors, but metastases sometimes occur, most frequently in the lungs, sometimes in the heart.

Small hyperplastic growths on the surfaces of cartilage are called *ecchondroses*.

#### OSTEOMA.

The formation of bone in the body in abnormal places occurs quite frequently and under a great variety of conditions. It is on this account

not easy to define the term osteoma, and it is frequently difficult to determine whether or not a given mass of new-formed bone is an osteoma or not. Bone tissue often occurs in tumors of the connective-tissue group as a secondary or complicating structure—*osteo-fibroma*, *osteochondroma*, *osteo-sarcoma*, etc. It may occur in muscles as a result of certain exercises, or as a result of a peculiar inflammatory process (see lesions of the muscles), or it may occur in connection with chronic inflammation in a variety of tissues. A circumscribed mass of abnormal bone, not of inflammatory origin, may be called an osteoma. Small masses of new-formed bone of various shape, projecting from a bony surface and frequently of inflammatory origin, are usually called *osteophytes*. Bony tumors projecting from the surface of bones are frequently called *exostoses*.

An osteoma may be loose in texture, consisting of bone tissue similar to cancellous tissue, or it may be denser, resembling compact bone tissue, or it may be very hard and dense like ivory, so-called *ivory exostoses*. The difference between these forms lies chiefly in the varying number and size of the vascular and medullary spaces which they contain.

Osteomata may develop in connection with the bone or periosteum, which is most frequently the case, or independently of bone, in soft parts.

New-formed bone has been found in the soft parts of the body, in the brain substance, dura mater and pia mater, in the pleura, diaphragm, and pericardium; in the skin, choroid, air passages, lungs and penis, and in other places. To what extent some of these bone formations may have been due to inflammatory action it is not possible to say, and it is quite probable that the fuller knowledge of the future may show relationships between the development of certain tumors and some forms of chronic inflammation which we do not now recognize.

The growth of the osteomata is, as a rule, slow. They are benign tumors, and are not infrequently multiple.

#### GLIOMA.

The gliomata are developed in connection with the characteristic connective-tissue frame-work of nerve-tissue, the neuroglia, which in structure many, though usually not all of its cells closely resemble. Small cells with inconspicuous bodies and numerous delicate branching processes are most characteristic; but in connection with these there is usually a greater or less number of small spheroidal cells with proportionally large nuclei. It is usually necessary to shake sections in water or carefully tease fragments of the tumor in order to see the characteristic neuroglia or so-called 'spider' cells (Fig. 41). These tumors may contain very numerous and frequently dilated thin-walled blood-vessels. They may be very soft or moderately hard; and especially when occurring in the substance of the



brain, are frequently not sharply outlined against the adjacent normal tissue. They usually occur singly, and are comparatively slow in growth.

They are very apt to be complicated with other tumor-tissue forming *glioma-myxoma*, *glio-sarcoma*, etc. Owing to the abundance of thin-walled blood-vessels and the softness of the growth, they are liable to interstitial hemorrhages, and may then, when occurring in the brain, readily be mistaken for ordinary apoplectic clots. They are liable to fatty degenera-

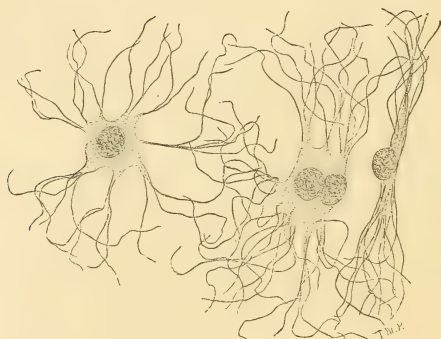


FIG. 41.—NEUROGLIA OR 'SPIDER' CELLS, FROM GLIOMA OF BRAIN. Teased.  $\times 500$ .

tion. They usually occur in the brain, spinal cord, and in the optic and other cerebral nerves. The so-called gliomata of the retina are usually small spheroidal-celled sarcomata.

Pure gliomata are benign tumors, though in their most common combination with sarcoma they may be very malignant. Their usual situation, however, is such as to make them almost always significant, although technically they are benign tumors.

#### MYOMA.

Tumors composed of muscular tissue are of two kinds, following the two physiological types of muscle-tissue, the non-striated and the striated.

I. *Myoma leiocellulare* or *Leiomyoma*.—The characteristic elements of these tumors are fusiform, smooth muscle-fibres, with elongated or rod-shaped nuclei. These are packed closely together, frequently interlacing and running in various directions, and are intermingled with a variable quantity of more or less vascular fibrillar connective-tissue (Fig. 42). When, as is not infrequently the case, the connective-tissue elements are present in large amount, the tumor is called *fibro-myoma*. It is not always easy in sections to distinguish between these tumors and certain cellular fibromata, but the characteristic shape of the isolated cells and their nuclei, together with their uniformity in size, will usually suffice. These tumors are frequently infiltrated with lime salts, and owing to their density and

lack of blood-vessels they not infrequently degenerate, forming cysts or becoming gangrenous. They may occur single or multiple, are usually of slow growth, may be large or small, and are benign. They may occur wherever smooth muscle-tissue exists. They are most frequently found in the uterus, where they are often multiple. They may occur in the wall of the gastro-intestinal canal, and have been seen in the bladder and in the skin of the nipple and scrotum. The so-called hypertrophies of the prostate, so frequent in advanced life, are usually leiomyomata of the interstitial muscle-tissue of that gland.



FIG. 42.—MYOMA OF UTERUS. (Leiomyoma.)  $\times 350$ .

II. *Myoma striocellulare* or *Rhabdomyoma*.—In these rare tumors striated muscle-fibres are the characteristic elements. They very rarely compose a great part of the tumor, but are intermingled with other elements, fibrillar connective tissue, spindle-shaped and spheroidal cells of various forms, which often appear to be incompletely developed muscle-cells. They are not infrequently associated with sarcomatous tissue. Blood-vessels and sometimes nerves are also present. The muscle-fibres differ, as a rule, from normal striated muscle-fibres in their arrangement, which is usually quite irregular, and also in size, being in general smaller than normal fibres, although varying greatly. The sarcolemma is either absent or incompletely developed. These tumors are usually small or of moderate size, and are supposed to originate from inclusions of cells destined to form muscle-tissue in places where they do not belong.

In the heart and certain other muscular parts, small circumscribed masses of striated muscle-tissue have been described, and are sometimes called *homologous rhabdomyomata*. But genuine heterologous rhabdomyomata are, in almost all cases thus far recorded, confined to the genito-urinary organs, kidney, ovary, and testicles. The writer (T.M.P.) has described an exceptional case of rhabdomyoma occurring in the parotid gland. These tumors, when not associated with other and malignant tumors, are benign, and are of much greater theoretical than practical interest.

## NEUROMA.

A true neuroma is a tumor containing new-formed nerve-tissue. Such tumors are comparatively rare. Tumors developed in the connective tissue of nerves and composed usually of fibrous or mucous tissue are common, and are frequently called neuromata, but they should be called fibromata or myxomata, etc., of the nerves or *false neuromata*. The true neuromata are of two kinds, *ganglionic* or *cellular neuromata* and *fibrillar neuromata*, depending upon the character of nerve-tissue which they contain. The ganglionic neuromata are found associated with other structures in certain of the teratomata in the ovaries, testicles, and in the sacral region; they also occur in the gray matter of the brain.

The fibrillar neuromata are, according to Virchow, of two kinds, *myelinic* and *amyelinic*, depending upon whether the nerve-fibres which they contain are medullated or not. The *neuroma myelinicum* is the more common and the best understood. The medullated nerve-fibres in these tumors are associated with fibrillar connective tissue, and are usually curled and intertwined in a most intricate manner. They occur either single or multiple on the peripheral nerves. They may occur in considerable numbers as nodular tumors on the branches of a single nerve-trunk, or they may form an irregular, diffuse, nodulated enlargement of the nerve-branches, *plexiform neuroma*. These neuromata may or may not be painful. They not infrequently form at the cut ends of the nerves in amputation stumps. They are benign tumors, never forming metastases.

The *false neuromata* are myxomata, or fibromata, or sometimes myxosarcomata of the nerve-sheaths or intrafascicular connective tissue, and may occur singly or multiple. In the latter case they may affect the branches of a single nerve trunk or they may be found on nearly all the cerebro-spinal peripheral nerves. The writer (T.M.P.) has described a case in which over eleven hundred and eighty-two distinct tumors were found distributed over nearly all the peripheral nerves of the body (see lesions of the peripheral nerves). The nerve-fibres in these tumors may be crowded apart by the new growth and considerably atrophied; or, in cases in which the tumor is composed of soft tissue, as in myxoma or the soft fibroma, they may pass through or around the tumor entirely unchanged. The multiple false neuromata are in many cases congenital.

## ANGIOMA.

Angiomata are tumors consisting in large part or entirely of new-formed blood-vessels or blood-cavities. In many tumors of various kinds, the new-formed or the old blood-vessels may be very abundant or prominent by reason of their dilatations; the blood-vessels of otherwise normal tissues may also be largely dilated, thus simulating vascular tumors.



These are, however, not true angiomas, although sometimes reckoned among them, and in many cases closely allied to them. Such are the so-called arterial varix, or cirroid aneurisms, and hemorrhoids. *True angiomas* are of two kinds:

I. Those formed largely of capillary blood-vessels with either thin or thickened walls, embedded in a more or less abundant connective-tissue

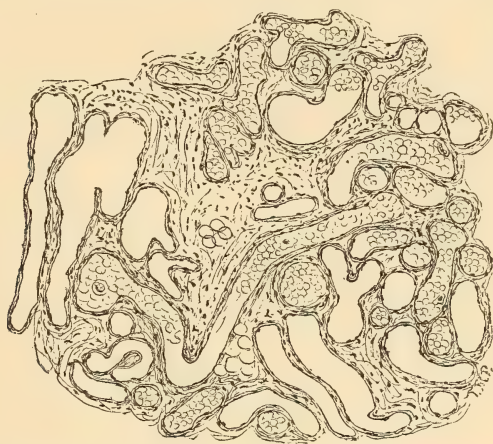


FIG. 43.—ANGIOMA TELANGIECTOIDES (Vascular Nævus) from skin over scapula of child.

stroma. These are called *simple angiomas* or *angioma telangiectoides*. The walls of the vessels in these tumors are frequently dilated or pouched, and usually form a tangle of curled and intertwined vessels. They occur most frequently in the skin or subcutaneous tissues, usually about the

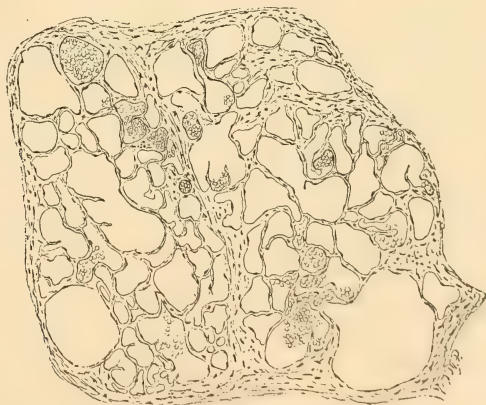


FIG. 44.—ANGIOMA CAVERNOSA OF LIVER.

face, and may project above the general surface or be on a level with it. Such are the so-called *vascular naevi* or *strawberry marks*, which are usually congenital. They are sometimes sharply circumscribed, and some-

times merge imperceptibly into the surrounding skin. They sometimes occur in the mucous membranes, in the mamma, bones, and brain. They are benign tumors, never forming metastases, but may be associated with sarcomata.

II. The second form of angioma, called *angioma cavernosa*, consists largely of a series of intercommunicating irregular-shaped larger and smaller blood-spaces lined with endothelium, and surrounded by a variable quantity of fibrillar connective tissue, which may contain smooth muscle-cells (Fig. 44). They resemble the erectile tissue of the corpora cavernosa of the penis and clitoris. They are apparently formed by a dilatation of old and new-formed capillaries and veins. They are sometimes erectile, and sometimes pulsating and are not infrequently multiple. They may be seated in the skin and subcutaneous tissue, forming the so-called projecting naevi or in internal organs. They are often found in the liver and less frequently in bone, the brain, spleen, uterus, kidney, intestines, bladder, and muscles. They are usually of little significance, though they may give rise to hemorrhages.

#### LYMPHANGIOMA.

These tumors consist of dilated lymph-channels, which either preserve approximately the general shape of the original lymph-vessels, or are distinctly cavernous in character or even cystic. They probably originate in part in new-formed, in part in old lymph-channels. A strict distinction between tumors formed by a dilatation of preformed and new-formed lymph-channels is not possible, owing to the very primitive character of some of the ultimate lymph-spaces, and our lack of knowledge of their exact relations to adjacent parts.

In the lymphangiomata there may be much or little connective tissue between the dilated channels, which are usually filled with a translucent or milky fluid resembling, and probably identical with the normal lymph. These tumors are usually congenital, but are sometimes acquired. They usually occur in the skin as soft, sometimes considerably, sometimes but slightly elevated tumors, and may occur in the tongue—some forms of so-called macroglossia. They are benign tumors, but may rupture, giving rise to a serious lymphorrhœa.

#### TUMORS IN WHICH EPITHELIAL CELLS ARE PREDOMINANT OR CHARACTERISTIC ELEMENTS.—EPITHELIAL TUMORS.

##### I. *Adenoma*.

##### II. *Carcinoma*.

*General Considerations*.—While the tumors thus far described in detail are formed on the type of tissues which originate in the so-called middle embryonic layer or mesoblast; the epithelial tumors are characterized by elements which originate either in the external or internal

layer, the epiblast or hypoblast. We have accordingly two series of criteria by which to describe and identify them; first, morphological, and second, histogenetic criteria.

While in the main, in the normal body, the general distinctions between epithelial and other tissues are fairly well marked, there are still particular cases, especially those in which epithelial tissues are in process of physiological growth or rejuvenation, in which the distinctions are quite ill defined. When we remember the rapid growth of many tumors, the tendency to incomplete formation of their cells, their diverse seats, and the various complicating conditions under which they originate and develop, it does not seem strange that the exact limitations of this class of tumors are not easy to fix, nor that they seem sometimes to merge into one another and into tumor-tissues belonging to other classes. If epithelial cells under all circumstances had a definite and characteristic structure, or if, on the other hand, we could always know whether a given cell-group originated in epithelium or not, the matter of distinguishing between tumors of this and other classes would be simple and easy enough. As it is, in some cases both morphological and histogenetic criteria fail us, and the clinical history and gross appearance are not characteristic. Such cases, which are indeed rare, but which do sometimes occur, suggest to us the possibility that the desirability of accurate classification has led us into seeking distinctions which Nature herself has not sharply drawn. While these difficulties in special cases must be acknowledged, the distinctions are in the main definite enough, and very useful both for clinical and scientific purposes.

Epithelial tumors always contain, in addition to the more or less characteristic cellular elements, a connective-tissue stroma, which gives them support and carries the vessels. This stroma may be sparse or abundant, may contain few or many cells, is sometimes arranged in irregular fascicles or bands, and very frequently forms the walls of well-defined variously shaped spaces or cavities called *alveoli*, in which the epithelial cells lie. The epithelial cells, in most cases, lie along the walls of the alveoli without an intimate connection with them, as is the case in the alveolar sarcomata. They are, moreover, packed together without more intercellular substance than the usual cementing material common to epithelial cell masses. In this lack of fibrillar intercellular substance within the alveoli, and in the loose relationship between the cells and the alveolar walls, lie in many cases the chief morphological distinctions between certain carcinomata and alveolar sarcomata.

In certain of the epithelial tumors, there is a reproduction of typical gland-tissue of various kinds, depending upon the seat and conditions of growth of the tumor. Such tumors are called *adenomata*. A simple hypertrophy of a gland or an increase in its size by excessive growth of its interstitial tissue do not constitute an adenoma. There must be an



actual new formation of typical gland-tissue. This is not always or frequently of exactly the same character as the gland-tissue in which it originates, and always exhibits a certain lack of conformity to the type, in structure and mode of growth. The alveoli and ducts usually have a lumen and sometimes a membrana propria, but the cells may differ in shape from one another and from those of the gland from which they spring.

Epithelial tumors in which there is no conformity to a glandular type, but a lawless growth of various kinds of more or less typical epithelial cells in the meshes of an old or new formed connective-tissue stroma, are called *carcinomata*.

It will readily be seen that there must be a border region between the adenomata and carcinomata where conformity to the glandular type merges into the lawlessness of growth characteristic of carcinomata. In this border region, a certain degree of individual bias must be permitted in assigning a name to the new growth. In some cases a sharp distinction cannot be made, or the tumor may share in the characteristics of both, and then we very properly make use of the term *adeno-carcinoma* or *carcino-adenoma*.

#### I. ADENOMA.

The structure of the cellular elements of these tumors and their arrangement into acini and ducts vary even more than do those of the nor-

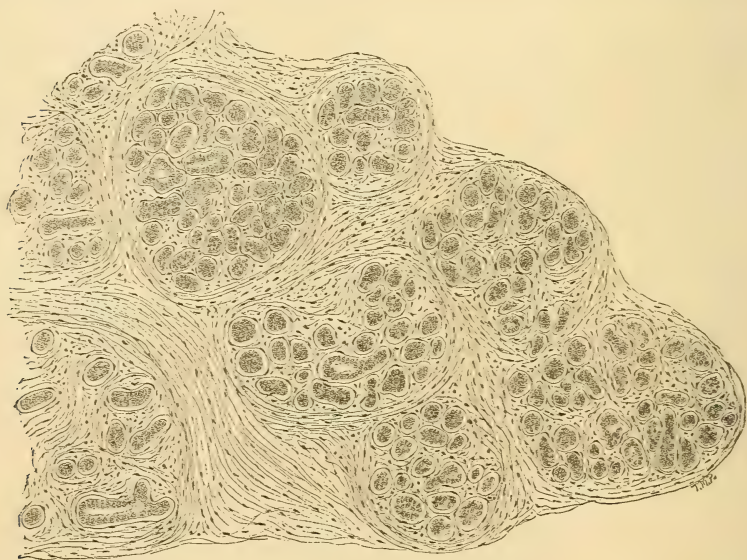


FIG. 45.—ADENOMA OF MAMMA,  $\times 100$ .

mal glands whose types they follow. The acini usually possess a more or less well-defined lumen and membrana propria. The adenomata

sometimes merge into the surrounding tissue, or are continuous with the gland-tissue in which they originate; sometimes they are distinct in outline, and encapsulated. The interstitial tissue is sometimes abundant, sometimes sparse, and may contain few or many cells. The irregularities of their growth often lead to the stoppage of the lumina of their ducts and the formation of cysts. They may undergo mucous metamorphosis, and may become sarcomatous.

Adenomata occur in the mamma, ovary, liver, kidney, thyroid, salivary, and lachrymal glands; in the mucous membrane of the nose, pharynx, stomach, intestine, and uterus, and occasionally in the sebaceous and sweat glands of the skin. The so-called multilocular cystomata of the ovary are among the most important of the adenomata. There are numerous papillary and polypoid growths, in gland-ducts and on mucous membranes, in which there is an actual new formation of gland epithelium, but this is usually secondary to a primary growth beneath the epithelial layer, of some other tissue, such as fibrous or mucous tissue, and the new growth of gland epithelium simply keeps pace with the growth of the latter, to which it serves as an investment. Such growths are sometimes classed among the adenomata, but do not, strictly speaking, belong there.

The adenomata are in general benign tumors, being slow of growth and localized, but there are very important exceptions. Some of the adenomata of the stomach and intestines belong to the most malignant



FIG. 46.—ADENOMA OF STOMACH (a form which is on the border-line of carcinoma).  $\times 300$  and reduced.

of tumors in rapidity of local extension, in the formation of metastases, and the development of cachexia. Certain of the adenomata of the

mamma and thyroid are also very malignant. It should be remarked, however, that, as a rule, the malignant adenomata are those which, in structure, lie close upon the border-line between tumors of this class and carcinomata, and by such observers as incline to lay more stress upon clinical than morphological distinctions, they are usually classed among the latter.

#### CARCINOMA.

These tumors are composed, as above stated, of a connective-tissue stroma, forming more or less well-defined communicating spaces or alveoli, in which lie variously shaped epithelial cells, arranged in an atypical manner. The stroma, containing few or many cells, may be, especially in the advancing portions of the tumor, composed largely of the old connective tissue of the part. It may, however, be entirely new formed. The cells which lie in the spaces or alveoli bear sometimes a very close, sometimes but a very general resemblance to epithelium.

It was formerly believed that new epithelium might be formed, both from old epithelial cells and from the connective-tissue cells, and possibly from white blood-cells, and among many observers this belief still exists, and has never been disproved. Still, within the last twenty years, the opinion that new epithelial cells in tumors arise exclusively from old epithelium has found general acceptance, and for very good reasons. No one has actually seen an epithelial cell originate under the microscope, and until this can be done, our beliefs must rest upon indirect observations. In the first place, all the epithelial structures in the embryo originate in connection with the epiblast or hypoblast, that is, in the layers which are largely characterized by the presence of epithelium. In regeneration, after an injury in the adult, a study of the successive phases of the process shows that new epithelium is always formed in continuity with the old, and apparently by a proliferation of old epithelial cells. Epithelial tumors are almost exclusively found in parts normally containing epithelium, and frequently the new growth can be distinctly seen to be continuous with the old cells.

The occurrence of primary epithelial tumors in parts of the body in which epithelium does not normally occur, as in bone and the lymph nodes, has been recorded, but these may have been metastatic tumors, in which the primary tumor was small and overlooked, or they may have been displaced embryonic germs which, according to Cohnheim's hypothesis, would explain their heterologous occurrence. These possibilities of error should be taken into the account in the apparently exceptional cases, and it is to be remarked that these are becoming less and less as our knowledge increases and our technical facilities for research improve.

A considerable number of the tumors formerly described as heterologous primary carcinomata are now known to be formed by proliferation



of endothelium, and hence to belong to another class, although closely resembling the carcinomata in structure.

A great practical difficulty in the description, and to beginners, in the recognition of the carcinomata and their varieties, lies in the great diversity in shape which their cells present. It should be always borne in mind that the shape of cells depends in part upon their inherited tendencies in growth which we cannot see under the microscope, but to a greater degree upon the varying conditions of nutriment and pressure to which they are exposed during life. In the normal body, these conditions conform to a certain standard, so that cells of a given kind at a given stage of development are approximately similar.

In tumors, however, the lawlessness and lack of fixed conditions in growth is such that we may have many young and atypical so-called in-

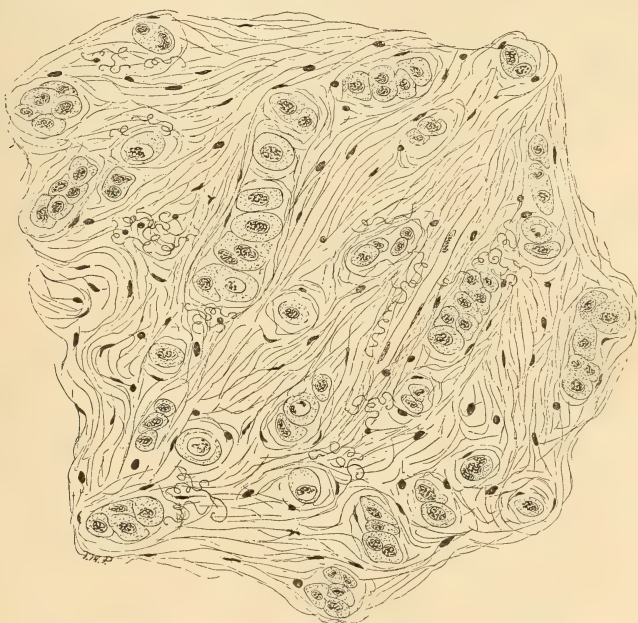


FIG 47.—CANCER-CELLS INFILTRATING THE TISSUE IN THE VICINITY OF A TUMOR. From Carcinoma Mammæ.  $\times 450$ .

different forms of cells; while even the adult forms may depart widely from normal shapes. Thus, in cylindrical-celled carcinomata, there are many fully developed cells which are never cylindrical; there are many others not fully developed which are quite indifferent in form, looking just like many other young cells, cells which are not, but which are destined to become epithelium. Finally, we have the cells produced by ordinary inflammatory processes about and within the tumor, which acts like an irritating foreign body. Thus it is that there is no characteristic cancer-cell, as was formerly supposed. Some of them are typical and

some not, and the more typical ones may look just like normal epithelial cells, and the atypical ones just like simple inflammatory cells, or young connective-tissue cells, or white blood-cells. It is always in the topography, together with the general characters of the cells and the situation of the growth, that we must seek for the evidences of its nature.

The carcinomata are very prone to local extension, the advancing tumor-cells in the periphery making their way through the lymph-spaces and forming new foci (Fig. 47). Metastasis is of frequent occurrence in some forms, and takes place chiefly, though not exclusively, through the

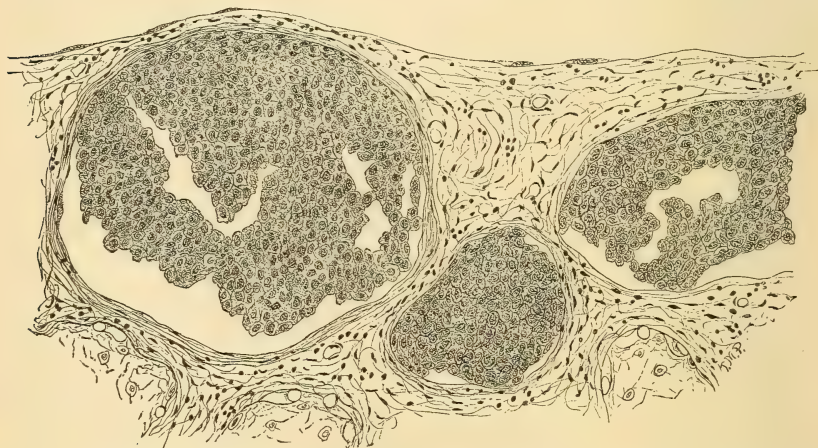


FIG. 48.—METASTATIC CARCINOMA.—Masses of Cancer-cells growing in the Lymph-vessels of the Pleura. The Primary Tumor was in the Liver.  $\times 150$  and reduced.

lymph-vessels, frequently involving adjacent or remote lymph-nodes. The secondary tumors are in the main similar in general structure to the primary foci, but may vary from them in vascularity and the abundance of the stroma, or in the shape of the cells. The carcinomata are, as a rule, malignant tumors, but the different forms vary much in this respect. They are liable to fatty, colloid, mucous, and amyloid degeneration, and are especially prone to ulceration, to hemorrhage, and simple inflammation. They may become partially calcified, and are not infrequently combined with other forms of tissue in the mixed tumors.

They are more frequent in middle and old age than in the young, but they may occur at any age.

*Forms of Carcinoma.*—In certain cases of carcinoma which occur in the skin and in some mucous membranes, the cells present the structure and general characters of the epithelium of the part in which they occur, and since here the tendency of the cells as they approach the surface is to become flattened or squamous, these tumors are called *squamous* or *flat-celled carcinomata*, or simply *Epitheliomata*.

In another class of tumors such as frequently occur in the gastro-

intestinal canal and uterus, the cells are more or less cylindrical in shape, forming a palisade-like lining to the irregular alveoli; such tumors are called *Cylindrical-Celled Carcinomata*, although here again many of the cells are not cylindrical at all, but may have a great variety of forms.

There is a third and very common form of tumor in which the epithelial cells have no constant characteristic shape, but vary as much as do the cell-forms in the various glands of the body. Such tumors are conveniently classed together as *gland-celled carcinoma* or *carcinoma simplex*.

In addition to these forms, there are several others which depend for their characteristics upon various metamorphoses or degenerations, or upon the preponderance of one or other of the anatomical constituents of the growth. It will be most convenient to give a brief description of these various kinds, one after another, with the understanding that they are not absolute specific forms, but are simply varieties which it is convenient to recognize for clinical as well as anatomical purposes.

*Flat-celled Carcinoma* or *Epithelioma*.—These tumors occur in the skin and in the mucous membranes which are covered with squamous epithelium. The cells present all of the various forms which normally



FIG. 49.—EPITHELIOMA OF NECK.

Shows epithelial pearls, spined cells, and reticular masses of variously shaped epithelial cells.  $\times$  about 400 and reduced.

exist in these parts; the cuboidal and polyhedral cells of the rete Malpighii as well as the more superficial flattened forms (Fig. 49). Frequently the spined cells or so-called "prickle cells" are largely reproduced. Having to a certain extent the same life history as the cells in which they



originate, many of the tumor-cells become dry, thin, and horny, like the epidermis cells, as they grow older, and since their growth and changes often occur within the old lymph-spaces of the affected tissue, or in the new-formed alveoli, the cells are sometimes packed together in spheroidal concentric masses called "epithelial pearls," which may sometimes be seen

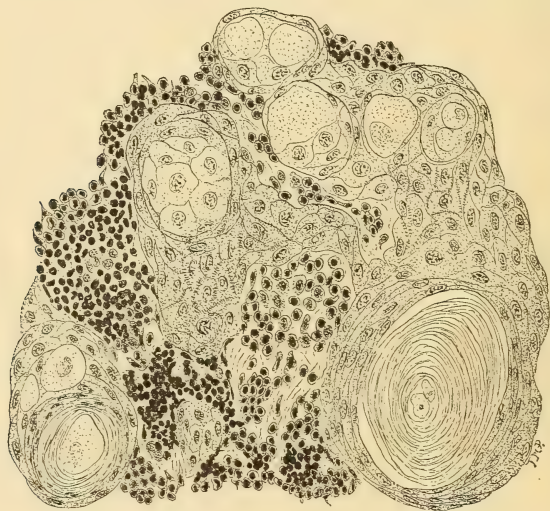


FIG. 50.—EPITHELIOMA OF AXILLARY LYMPH-GLAND.

Fig. 51. This metastatic tumor was secondary to a large epithelioma of the back of the hand, Fig. 51. The small cells with darker nuclei are the cells of the lymph-gland.  $\times 300$ .

with the naked eye upon or near the surface of the growth (Fig. 50). The new cell masses may be large or small, may be separated by much or little



FIG. 51.—EPITHELIOMA OF BACK OF HAND.

The flat tumor occupied nearly the entire back of the hand, and was ulcerating at the centre. The figure shows the edge of the tumor and a portion of the ulcer. The papillæ of the skin over the edge of the growth are hypertrophied, and the tissue about it infiltrated with small spheroidal cells.  $\times 15$  and reduced.



FIG. 52.—A SMALL EPITHELIOMA OF THE SIDE OF THE NOSE,  $\times 80$ .



FIG. 53.—A PORTION OF THE ABOVE TUMOR MORE HIGHLY MAGNIFIED,  $\times 550$ .



stroma; often form reticular masses, and may infiltrate the tissues deeply or remain near the surface; or may project above the surface forming wart-like or papillary growths. These tumors frequently ulcerate on the surface.

They are most apt to occur in the skin, especially in those parts in which it becomes continuous with mucous membranes—lips, external nasal openings, eyelids, labia, and glans penis; and are frequent in the mouth, œsophagus, vagina, and about the cervix uteri.

There are also carcinomata of the skin composed of cuboidal cells arranged in tubules or masses, which do not follow the type of the epithelium of the skin, but rather that of the sweat-glands or sebaceous glands. These tumors are found most frequently on the nose and eyelids (Figs. 52 and 53).

Epitheliomata are apt to recur if not thoroughly removed, and may form metastases, but in general they are the least malignant of the carcinomata. The prognosis is in most cases good if there is early and complete removal.

*Cylindrical-celled Carcinoma.*—These tumors, closely allied to some

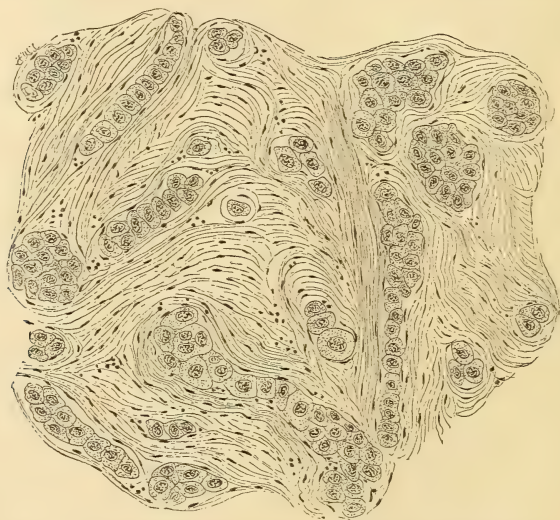


FIG. 54.—CARCINOMA MAMMÆ (Scirrhous Variety).  $\times 400$  and reduced.

forms of adenoma, occur in the stomach, intestines, and uterus. The cells may be only in part cylindrical, the remainder having various shapes, and all being loosely or closely packed in larger or smaller alveoli. They may have much or little stroma. They merge imperceptibly into the next class:

*Gland-celled Carcinoma, or Carcinoma simplex.*—These, which are by far the most frequent of the carcinomata of internal parts, are characterized by the alveolar structure and by the absence of any special characteristic shape in the cells, which may be spheroidal, polyhedral, fusiform,



or cuboidal. They may or may not resemble the epithelium of the gland in which they originate. They are usually nodular tumors, and may be hard or soft. If the stroma is abundant and dense, and preponderates over the cellular elements, the tumor is usually hard, and is called *scirrhus* or *fibro-carcinoma* (Fig. 54). If, on the other hand, the cellular elements largely preponderate, the tumor is usually soft, and if it do not contain too many blood-vessels, may have a general resemblance to brain-tissue.

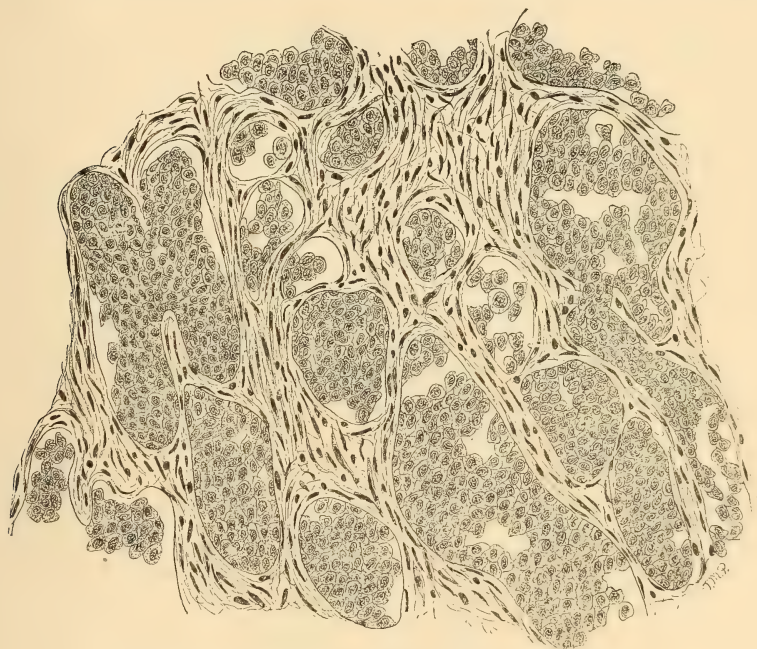


FIG. 55.—MEDULLARY CARCINOMA OF STOMACH (Carcinoma Molle).

and is then called *encephaloid* or *medullary cancer*; or better, *Carcinoma molle* (Fig. 55). These are among the most malignant of the cancers. The intercellular tissue may become so abundant as to nearly obliterate the cellular elements, but it is doubtful if carcinoma ever undergoes spontaneous cure in this way. These tumors may be hard in one portion and soft in another. They may contain very many blood-vessels, *C. telangiectoides*. They occur as primary tumors in the mamma, liver, thyroid, salivary, and prostate glands, in the pancreas, kidney, testicle, and ovary.

*Colloid Carcinoma*.—The cells of certain cancers, especially of the gastro-intestinal canal, may suffer a more or less complete infiltration with a translucent material somewhat resembling gelatin, and called colloid, whose nature is not well understood. Sometimes this infiltration is only partial, when the protoplasm of the cells may be more or less encroached upon by the translucent droplets of the colloid material; but in other cases over large areas the cells are partially or entirely destroyed,

and replaced by the new material, so that the alveoli of the tumor are distended by it, and their walls appear very distinct in the midst of the colloid substance (Fig. 56). In such cases the alveolar structure of the tumor is sometimes very evident to the naked eye, and these tumors are therefore often called *alveolar carcinoma*. Sometimes only a part of the tumor is affected in this way.



FIG. 56.—COLLOID CARCINOMA OF RECTUM.

*Carcinoma myxomatodes*.—The cellular elements of carcinomata may suffer mucous softening, and thus larger and smaller cysts containing a mucous fluid are sometimes formed. To this form of metamorphosed

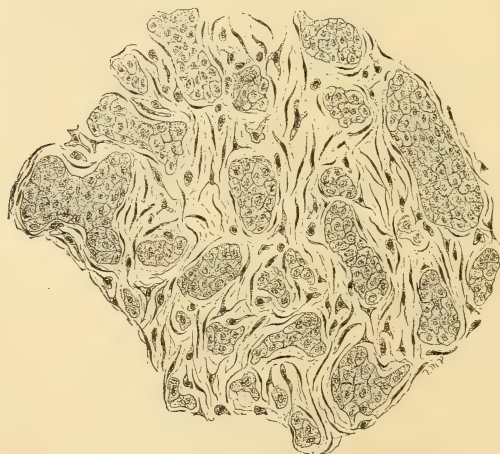


FIG. 57.—CARCINOMA MYXOMATODES OF MAMMA.

tumor the above name is sometimes applied, but it more properly belongs to cancers in which the stroma is composed of mucous tissue (Fig. 57). Such

tumors are most frequently found in the gastro-intestinal canal and mamma.

*Melano-carcinoma*.—Tumors of this class are rare, and are characterized by the presence of a variable quantity of black or brown pigment particles either in the stroma or the cells. They are usually soft and malignant, and most frequently occur in the skin.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bibliography*.—The most extensive and important work on tumors, containing a vast store of information, is that of Rudolph Virchow, "Die krankhaften Geschwülste." It is not completed and is somewhat old, but is still invaluable as a work of reference. The section on tumors in v. Pitha and Billroth's work on surgery ("Handbuch der Allgemeinen u. speciellen Chirurgie"), which comprises the first section of the second volume, by Dr. Lücke, is very complete. A valuable bibliography and digest of recent observations on tumors will be found in the last edition (1882) of Birch-Hirschfeld's work on Pathological Anatomy ("Lehrbuch der Pathologischen Anatomie"), vol. i.





PART III.

MORBID ANATOMY OF THE ORGANS.





## THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

---

### THE MEMBRANES OF THE BRAIN.

#### *The Dura Mater.*

The dura mater is a dense connective-tissue membrane, which serves the double purpose of a periosteum for the inner surface of the cranial bones, and of an investing membrane for the brain. It is itself but poorly supplied with blood-vessels, but it contains the large venous sinuses which carry the blood from the brain. Lesions of the dura mater, therefore, are apt to be associated with lesions of the cranial bones, of the pia mater, or of the venous sinuses.

In young children the dura mater adheres closely to the inner surface of the cranial bones, in adults it is more readily detached, and in old persons it is again more adherent. Low grades of chronic inflammation of the external layers of the dura mater also render it more adherent to the bones.

HEMORRHAGES.—We find extravasations of blood between the dura mater and the cranial bones, in the substance of the membrane, and between the dura mater and the pia mater.

The hemorrhages in the substance of the dura mater are small and of little consequence.

The hemorrhages between the dura mater and the pia mater occur with chronic pachymeningitis, or are derived from the vessels of the pia mater.

The hemorrhages between the dura mater and the cranial bones are produced by blows and injuries of the head. They are often of considerable size, separate the membrane from the bones, and may compress the brain. They are often associated with laceration of the brain, and hemorrhages between the dura mater and pia mater.

The pressure on the head of the infant in labor may produce, in addition to the extravasations of blood between the bones and the pericranium, additional extravasation between the bones and the dura mater.

*Thrombosis of the venous sinuses* is not uncommon. Any inflamma-

tion of the dura mater is liable to produce it; injuries and inflammations of the brain and pia mater, of the cranial bones, of the middle ear, and of the scalp, may also produce thrombosis. The changes in the blood produced by the exhausting and infectious diseases may produce thrombosis of the venous sinuses as they do of the veins in other parts of the body. There are also rare cases in which such a thrombosis is developed without discoverable cause in persons previously healthy, and produces marked symptoms and death.

Some of these thrombi are firm, of white or red color, and apparently produce no secondary lesions.

Others are of firm consistence, but they produce softening with small hemorrhages of portions of the brain. In these cases the thrombus extends from the venous sinus into one of its veins, and the portion of brain belonging to this vein is softened and hemorrhagic. Such a softening of the brain is often attended with inflammation of the pia mater.

In other cases, the thrombi are soft and puriform, fragments of them become detached and lodge as infectious emboli in the arteries in different parts of the body.

*Inflammation* of the dura mater is called *pacchymeningitis*, and this may involve the external layers of the membrane, *pacchymeningitis externa*, or the internal layers, *pacchymeningitis interna*. It may furthermore be either acute or chronic. The tissues of the substance of the dura mater participate to a greater or less degree in these changes, but the chief lesions are upon the surfaces.

Acute *pacchymeningitis externa* is usually secondary to injuries or diseases of the cranial bones; thus fractures of the skull, either depressed or not, otitis, caries, suppurative inflammation of the internal and middle ear and mastoid cells may produce it. The dura mater is usually congested, thickened, and softened, and may present small ecchymoses. The inflammation is usually suppurative, and pus may accumulate between the membrane and the bone, or in the substance of the membrane. The areas of inflammation are not usually extensive. It sometimes induces thrombosis of the venous sinuses, and sometimes gangrene of the dura mater occurs. The inflammation may extend to the inner surface of the dura mater, to the pia mater and brain, or it may remain localized and undergo resolution.

Acute *pacchymeningitis interna* may be secondary to inflammation of the external surface, or it may occur as a complication in pyæmia, puerperal fever, chronic diffuse nephritis, in the exanthemata and erysipelas, or idiopathically. There is a general or circumscribed production of fibrin and pus, so that the internal surface of the membrane is lined with a layer of soft, yellow exudation.

Simple *chronic pacchymeningitis* consists in the formation of new connective tissue in the dura mater, by which it becomes thicker, and in

many cases abnormally adherent to the bones of the skull. This thickening may be general or circumscribed, and may involve the entire thickness of the membrane. Not infrequently, when the external layers are especially involved, firm adhesions to the skull occur, with ossification of the outer layers, so that shreds of the membrane containing little masses of bone (osteophytes) remain sticking to the skull when the membrane is stripped off.

There is an important form of chronic inflammation of the internal layer of the dura mater, called *pacchymeningitis interna hæmorrhagica* characterized by the formation of layers of new delicate connective tissue with numerous very thin-walled blood-vessels from which the blood is prone to escape. The membrane may at first appear as a delicate fibrinous pellicle, with small red spots scattered through it, or it may look like a simple reddish or brown staining of the inner surface of the

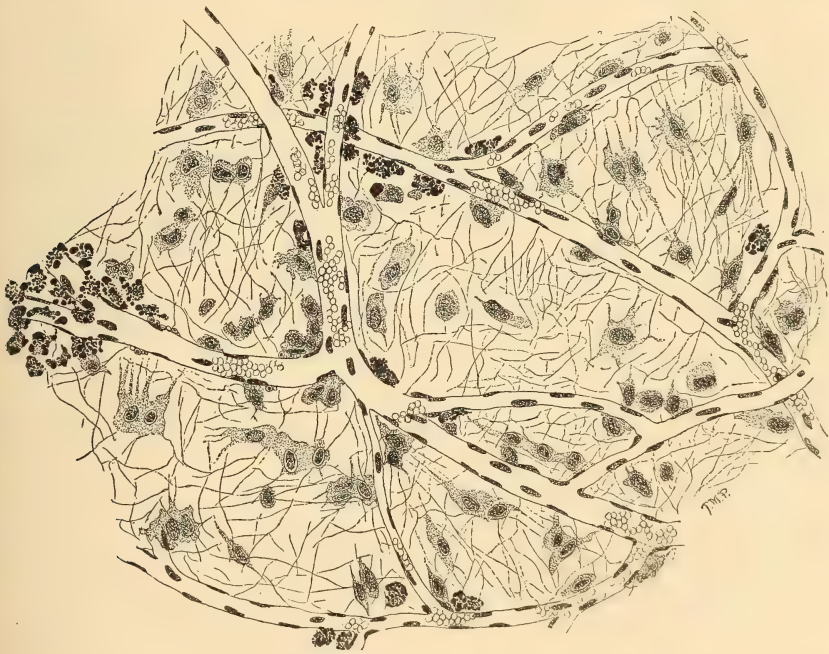


FIG. 58.—CHRONIC PACCHYMENINGITIS INTERNA HÆMORRHAGICA,  $\times 100$ .

dura mater. Microscopical examination shows this membrane to consist of numerous blood-vessels, mostly capillaries with very thin walls, which may be distended or pouched, and which have grown out from the vessels of the dura mater (Fig. 58). Between the vessels is a homogeneous or slightly differentiated basement substance, containing a variable number of spheroidal, fusiform, or branching cells. Red blood-cells in variable quantity, and blood pigment in various forms, frequently enclosed in the new cells



and small calcareous concretions (brain-sand) (Fig. 59) also lie in the intervascular spaces. In more advanced stages the new membrane may become greatly thickened, its outermost layers being changed into dense fibrous tissue with obliteration of the vessels; while the more recently formed layers are similar in structure to those at first developed. Considerable blood usually escapes from the vessels of the new membrane by diapedesis, in all stages of its formation, and the vessels are also very liable to rupture, giving rise to extensive hemorrhages either into the substance of the membrane, or between it and the pia mater. Sometimes masses of new

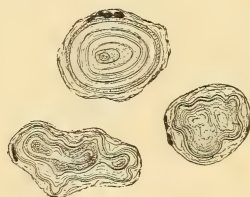


FIG. 59.—BRAIN-SAND FROM PACCHYMEINGITIS INTERNA,  $\times$  about 350.

tissue and blood, from a half an inch to an inch or more in thickness, are in this way formed, greatly compressing the brain. These new membranes are most frequently formed over the convexity of the brain, but may extend over nearly the entire surface of the dura mater. Sometimes, when old, the entire membrane, densely pigmented and firm, lies loosely beneath the dura mater without compressing the brain or giving any clinical indication of its presence. The membrane may induce chronic changes in the pia mater, with or without accompanying changes in the cortical portion of the brain.

Rarely, serum accumulates between the layers of the new membrane, and in this way cysts of large size may be formed. In rare cases, diffuse suppuration of the entire new membrane occurs.

The slighter degrees of this form of inflammation may occasion no symptoms during life. They are not infrequently found in persons suffering from various chronic brain lesions and from chronic alcoholism, but they may occur unassociated with complicating lesions. The more advanced forms of the lesion are frequently found in idiots, epileptics, etc.

*Tubercular pacchymeningitis* may occur secondarily to that form of inflammation in the pia mater or the bones; or as a part of general miliary tuberculosis. The tubercles may be situated on either surface of the membrane or in its substance, and may be single or aggregated, forming large masses.

*Syphilitic pacchymeningitis* manifests itself by the formation of so-called gummy tumors either upon the external or internal surface of the dura mater. These tumors may be single or multiple, and

vary greatly in size. They may be accompanied by simple inflammatory changes in the dura mater in their vicinity. They may undergo suppuration with the formation of abscess, the inflammation may extend to the pia mater, inducing simple or syphilitic meningitis and adhesions between the dura mater and pia mater. The gummata may, on the other hand, when occurring on the outer surface of the membrane, cause absorption and perforation of the bones of the skull.

*Tumors.*—The most common tumors of the dura mater are *sarcomata* and of these the spindle-celled forms are of more, the round and polyhedral celled of less frequent occurrence. They may grow from either surface of the membrane. Some of the round and polyhedral celled forms are soft and very vascular, and are apt to involve the neighboring pia mater and brain-tissue, or the bones of the skull, which they may perforate. They sometimes project through the opening in the skull in fungous bleeding masses.

*Psammomata* are small globular tumors, often multiple and pediculated, growing from the inner surface of the dura mater. They are usually composed of tissue sarcomatous in character, and contain variously shaped calcareous concretions similar in appearance to the so-called brain-sand.

*Endotheliomata.*—These tumors may grow inward or outward, causing pressure on the brain or absorption and perforation of the bones; they often attain considerable size. Some of these tumors somewhat resemble certain forms of epitheliomata, and have often been described as primary carcinomata.

*Fibromata* and *Lipomata* occur rarely in the dura mater and are of small size.

Small *Chondromata* are sometimes found connected with the dura mater at the base of the brain.

*Osteomata.*—In addition to the formation of osteophytes in chronic external pachymeningitis, plates, and, more rarely, globular masses of bone may be formed in the dura mater, unconnected with the bones of the skull. They are most frequently found in the falx cerebri, but may occur elsewhere. The new bone may be dense or loose in texture, and usually produces no symptoms.

#### THE PIA MATER.

The external surface of the brain is invested by a connective-tissue membrane which covers the convolutions, dips down into the sulci, and extends into the ventricles. This membrane is abundantly supplied with blood-vessels, and from it numerous vessels extend into the brain, so that any disturbance in the circulation of the blood in the pia mater involves a disturbance in the circulation of the blood in the brain also.

The connective tissue which makes up the pia mater is arranged in a

series of membranes and fibres reinforced by elastic tissue, so arranged as to form a spongy membrane containing numerous cavities, more or less filled with fluid. These cavities are continuous with the perivascular spaces which surround the vessels that pass from the pia mater into the brain.

The outer layers of the pia mater are the most compact, and are covered on their outer surface by a continuous layer of endothelial cells. This external layer of the pia mater is often described as a separate membrane called the 'arachnoid,' but it is really only part of the pia.

The deeper layers of the pia contain the blood-vessels. The membranes and fibres which compose the pia mater are partly coated with cells which have irregular and delicate cell-bodies, and large distinct nuclei.

In all inflammations of the pia mater the inflammatory products regularly collect in the spaces within it.

Along the borders of the longitudinal fissure and, more rarely, on the under surface of the brain, are a number of small, white, firm, irregular bodies—the Pacchionian bodies. They vary in their size, their number, and in the extent of the surface of the hemispheres covered by them. They may perforate the dura mater, or, more rarely, the wall of the longitudinal sinus, and may produce erosions of the skull-bones. They are composed of fibrous tissue and may undergo fatty or calcareous degeneration. As they are so commonly found and are not known to be of any pathological significance, they may almost be regarded as normal structures; at any rate, we do not know what causes them or their variations in size and number.

The pia mater is frequently thickened, opaque, and white, either in diffuse patches or, more commonly, along the course of the vessels. In other cases, single or multiple small white spots, of the size of a pin's head or smaller, may be seen in the membrane, not appreciably elevated above the surface, but due to localized thickening. These slight opacities of the pia mater are commonly believed to be dependent upon repeated congestions of the membrane or upon chronic meningitis, but there is no evidence that this is always the case. They are most frequently found in old persons, but may exist at any age, and do not necessarily indicate the pre-existence of disease, although similar appearances are common in the chronic insane and in drunkards.

The amount of blood contained in the vessels of the pia mater after death varies greatly, and is by no means a reliable indication of the amount present during life. In general anemia, the vessels of the pia mater may contain little blood, but, on the other hand, they sometimes seem to contain a relatively larger amount than other parts of the body. In œdema of the brain and pia mater, the vessels of the latter may contain but a small amount of blood.



The pia mater may be *hyperæmic* in early stages of meningitis, after death from delirium tremens, or following epileptic convulsions, from various infectious diseases, certain poisons, the presence of tumors or exudations pressing on the veins, as well as from general and local diseases of the circulatory apparatus. But whether they are overfilled or comparatively empty after death seems to depend upon the position in which the body has lain; upon the time which has elapsed between death and the examination, upon the rapidity with which the blood coagulates, and upon conditions entirely unknown to us.

*Œdema*.—The amount of serum beneath the pia mater and infiltrating its tissue is very variable in amount. It may accumulate as a result of atrophy of the brain substance or of venous hyperæmia, and sometimes is, and sometimes is not, accompanied by œdema of the brain substance. It may be diffuse or localized. It is not infrequent to find in hospital patients suffering from chronic nephritis, cardiac or pulmonary disease, or chronic alcoholism, a very considerable amount of serum in this situation, and yet the patient has been free from cerebral symptoms. In other cases again, this same serous effusion affords the only explanation of grave cerebral symptoms. It is necessary to be very careful in judging of the importance of this accumulation of fluid.

It should always be borne in mind that an accumulation of fluid beneath and in the meshes of the pia mater may occur as a result of post-mortem changes.

*Hemorrhage*.—This may occur either into the space between the dura mater and pia mater—*intermeningeal hemorrhage*—or in the meshes of the pia or between the latter and the brain. It may be due to injury, to rupture of aneurisms, or otherwise diseased blood-vessels, to thromboses of the venous sinuses, or to causes which we are unable to ascertain. Hemorrhages, without known cause, not infrequently occur in the substance of the pia mater in young children, but in adults they are apt to be the result of injury. Multiple ecchymoses, however, in the substance of the pia mater sometimes occur in infectious diseases and also in acute inflammation of the pia mater. Hemorrhages in the brain substance may lead to the accumulation of blood beneath or in the meshes of the pia mater. Intermeningeal hemorrhage in infants as a result of injury during birth is not uncommon. Small, and sometimes considerable, extravasations of blood may occur from diapedesis, and sometimes as a result of chronic congestion, degenerated blood pigment collects along the walls of the vessels. The extravasated blood in meningeal hemorrhage, if small in quantity, may be largely absorbed, leaving a greater or smaller accumulation of pigment at the seat of the hemorrhage, and such pigmentations may last for a long time.

*Inflammation* of the pia mater is called lepto-meningitis, or simply

meningitis. We distinguish acute, chronic, tubercular, and syphilitic meningitis.

*Acute meningitis* occurs most frequently as the characteristic lesion of epidemic cerebro-spinal meningitis; it is a not very infrequent complication of pneumonia, Bright's disease, typhus and typhoid fever, and the exanthemata; it is secondary to injuries and inflammation of the cranial bones, of the dura mater, and of the middle ear, and it is sometimes an idiopathic lesion.

In any case of acute meningitis, the inflammation is apt to extend downwards and involve the pia mater of the cord. It may also involve the ependyma of the ventricles, and cause the distention of these cavities with serum. This latter condition belongs especially young children.

There are two anatomical varieties of acute meningitis, which give, however, exactly the same clinical symptoms.

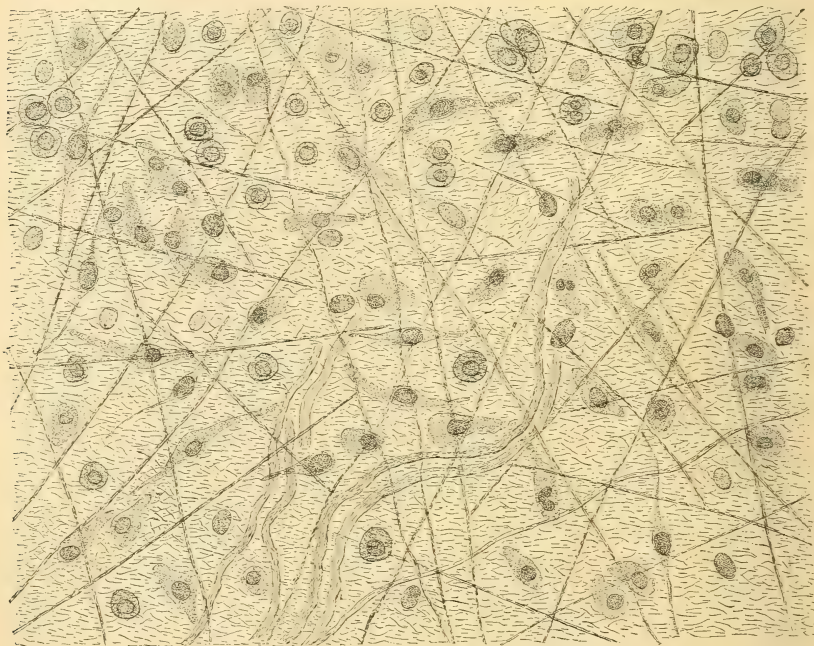


FIG. 60.—CELLULAR MENINGITIS,  $\times 850$  and reduced.

(1) *Acute cellular meningitis*.—The pia mater is somewhat congested, its surface is dry and lustreless, and it is somewhat opaque. These changes in the gross appearance of the membrane are not marked, and are easily overlooked, but the minute changes are more decided. There is an abundant production of cells somewhat resembling the cells which

coat the surfaces of the membranes and fibres which make up the pia mater. This cell-growth is general, involving the pia mater over most of the surface of the brain. The inflammation, then, is one which results in the production, not of fibrin, serum, or pus, but of new connective-tissue cells. This form of meningitis is of frequent occurrence, and is attended with the ordinary clinical symptoms of acute meningitis.

(2) *Simple acute meningitis* of the exudative form is characterized by the accumulation, chiefly in the meshes of the pia mater and along the walls of the blood-vessels, of variable quantities of serum, fibrin, and pus. Sometimes one, sometimes another of these exudations preponderates, giving rise to serous, fibrinous, or purulent forms of the inflammation. The absolute quantities, too, of the exudations vary greatly. In some cases death may be caused with so slight a formation of exudation that, to the naked eye, the pia mater may look quite normal, or perhaps only moderately hyperæmic or œdematous; the microscope, however, in these cases, will reveal pus-cells in small numbers, and sometimes flakes of fibrin in the meshes and along the walls of the vessels. In other cases, turbid serum in the meshes of the membrane is all that can be seen, and the microscope shows the turbidity to be due to pus-cells or a small amount of fibrin. Again, either with or without marked œdema of the pia mater, yellowish stripes are seen along the sides of the veins, some-



FIG. 61.—ACUTE PURULENT MENINGITIS,  $\times 24$ .

*a*, Convolutions of cerebrum; *b*, pia mater heavily infiltrated with pus; *c*, blood-vessels entering brain from pia, and surrounded by a zone of pus cells; *d*, congested blood-vessels of pia mater; *e*, smaller blood-vessels of pia, around which pus cells are collected in dense masses.

times appearing like faint turbid streaks, and at others, dense, opaque, thick, and wide, and almost concealing the vessels. These are due to the accumulation of pus-cells and fibrin in large quantities along the vessel, and they are best seen and most abundant around the larger veins which run along over the sulci. In still other cases, the infiltration with pus



and fibrin is so dense, and thick, and general that the brain-tissue, convolutions, and most of the vessels of the pia mater themselves are concealed by it. This is usually of a greenish-yellow color, and is sometimes so thick as to form a sort of cast of the brain-surface at the seat of the lesion (Fig. 61). Sometimes extravasated red blood-cells are mingled with the other exudations as the result of diapedesis. Microscopical examination shows numerous white blood-cells sticking in the walls of the veins and capillaries, or the vessels may be blocked with them. It is evident that a large part of the pus-cells originate by emigration. The connective-tissue cells of the pia mater may be detached from their places or degenerated. In some cases there are considerable accumulations of pus between the pia mater and the brain-substance and along the vessels which enter the latter. More rarely pus is found upon the free surface of the membrane. The brain-substance may be compressed by the accumulated exudation, so that the convolutions are flattened. The cortical portion of the brain may be simply infiltrated with serum—œdematous—or it may undergo degenerative changes, or it may be the seat of punctate

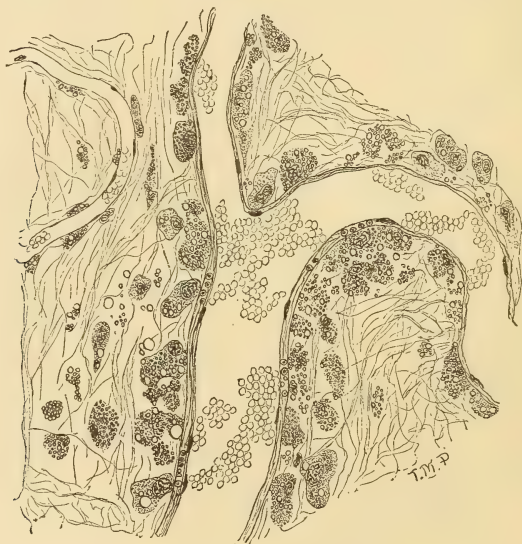


FIG. 62.—FATTY DEGENERATION OF CELLS ALONG BLOOD-VESSELS OF PIA MATER AFTER EXUDATIVE MENINGITIS,  $\times 300$  and reduced.

From the pia mater of a child 5 years old.

hemorrhages. Not infrequently the inflammation extends to the ventricles, which may contain purulent serum, and to the pia mater of the cord. This form of inflammation is most frequent on the convexity of the brain, but may extend, or even be confined to the base. It may be localized, but frequently extends widely over the surfaces of the hemispheres.

When recovery from acute exudative meningitis occurs, there may be fatty degeneration of the cells which have accumulated in the pia mater, particularly along the vessels (Fig. 62), and this may produce white patches in the membrane and threads along the blood-vessels, which resemble the appearance of an accumulation of exudation in the acute stage. Fatty degeneration of the blood-vessels and cells of the pia mater may also occur without acute inflammatory changes.

Sometimes in children and young adults, the inflammatory changes in the ventricles persist for days and weeks after the subsidence of the inflammation of the pia mater.

*Chronic meningitis.*—Either the pia mater at the base of the brain alone may be inflamed (basilar meningitis), or the pia mater over the convexity alone, or the entire pia mater, or circumscribed patches of the membrane. The pia mater is thickened and opaque, the thickening being sometimes very considerable. There is a formation of new connective tissue and a production of pus, fibrin, and serum; the relative quantity of these inflammatory products vary in different cases. Firm and sometimes extensive adhesions may be formed between the dura mater and the pia mater. Not infrequently the cortical portions of the brain participate in the morbid process, and we find infiltration of small spheroidal cells around the blood-vessels, thickening of the walls of the vessels, and degenerative changes and atrophy of the nerve-tissue. New connective tissue may also form in the brain-substance, which may become closely adherent to the pia mater. The ventricles of the brain also may contain an increased amount of serum, and may be dilated, and the ependyma may be thickened and roughened. This form of inflammation may be the result of injury or disease of the cranial bones, or secondary to



FIG. 63.—MILIARY TUBERCLE OF THE PIA MATER OF A CHILD,  $\times 70$ .  
Undergoing Cheesy Degeneration at its centre.

chronic pachymeningitis, or to inflammation of the brain-substance. It may occur in the vicinity of tumors of the brain or meninges. It may be a complication of chronic diffuse nephritis or the result of chronic alcoholic poisoning. It may occur in marked form in the general paralysis of the insane.

*Tubercular meningitis.*—This is especially characterized by the formation in the pia mater of miliary tubercles, associated with more or less well-marked exudative inflammation. It may occur in adults and

in children, but is more common in the latter. The dura mater may be unchanged, or its inner surface may be besprinkled with miliary tubercles. The pia mater may or may not be congested; it may look dry on the surface or it may be œdematous. Usually the brain seems to fill the cerebral cavity to an unusual degree, and the convolutions are flattened. If the pia mater be œdematous, the serum may be clear or turbid with pus and fibrin. The membrane may present any of the general appearances of exudative meningitis. But always in addition to these, and sometimes without them, miliary tubercles, either widely scattered or in great numbers, may be seen, usually more abundant over the sulci than elsewhere. They are usually more abundant at the base of the brain than on the convexity, and are frequently confined to the base. Some of the tubercles are so small as to be scarcely visible or entirely invisible

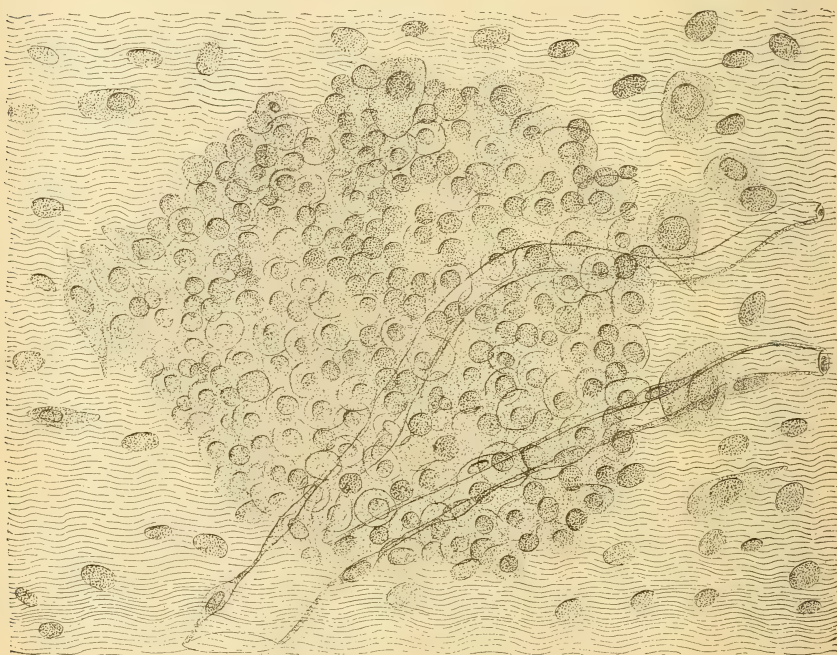


FIG. 64.—A MILIARY TUBERCLE OF THE PIA MATER,  $\times 850$  and reduced.  
Composed of a simple aggregation of cells.

to the naked eye, others are as large as a pin's head or larger. They are usually most abundant along the blood-vessels, but may occur elsewhere. They may be formed in the membranous prolongations of the pia mater which dip into the sulci, around the vessels which enter the brain-substance, in the choroid plexus and ependyma of the ventricles, and may exist in the spinal cord.

The miliary tubercles do not all have the same structure. Some of



them are simply small aggregations of round cells within the perivascular sheaths of the smaller arteries. Others are composed of small masses of polyhedral and round cells without any basement substance between



FIG. 65.—A MILIARY TUBERCLE,  $\times 170$  and reduced.

Formed of tubercle tissue and situated around a small artery, which is the seat of endarteritis.

them, and without any relation to the blood-vessels. Many others have the ordinary structure of tubercle tissue, basement substance, polyhedral cells, and giant cells. These tubercles are usually situated around or near a blood-vessel, and this blood-vessel is apt to be at the same time the seat of an obliterating endarteritis. This form of tubercle is also prone to cheesy degeneration (see Fig. 63.)

In children the ventricles are usually more or less distended by an accumulation of transparent or turbid serum, and the walls of the ventricles may be studded with miliary tubercles (see Figs. 66 and 67). In



FIG. 66.—MILIARY TUBERCLES OF THE EPENDYMA OF THE LATERAL VENTRICLES,  $\times 70$  and reduced.

adults the ventricles are less frequently involved. The brain-tissue around the ventricles is often softened. The central canal of the spinal cord may also be dilated. It is the dilatation of the ventricles which causes the flattening of the convolutions, and the flattening is usually in direct pro-

portion to the amount of accumulated fluid. Miliary tubercles in the choroid of the eye are present in a considerable proportion of cases.

The cortex of the brain may be hyperæmic, and punctate hæmorrhages may be present in the cortex and in the pia mater.

In almost all cases of tubercular meningitis, there is tubercular inflammation in other parts of the body.

In adults, as in children, while the tubercular inflammation is always

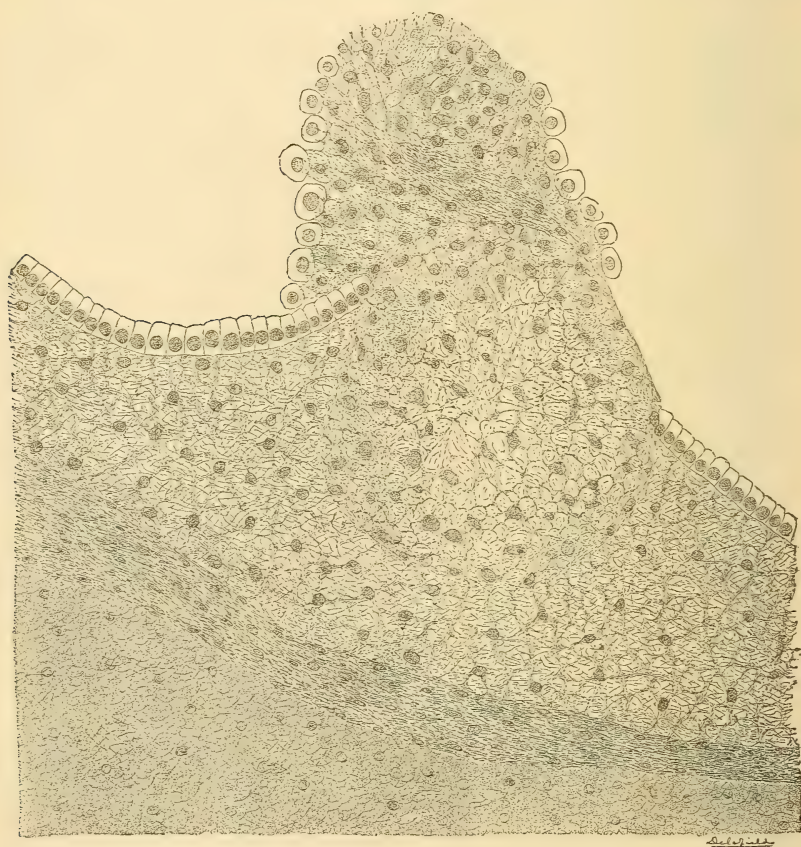


FIG. 67.—A MILIARY TUBERCLE OF THE EPENDYMA OF THE LATERAL VENTRICLE, more highly magnified,  $\times 500$  and reduced.

present, the accompanying simple inflammation may be very slight or extensive, and the degree to which it develops does not seem to depend upon the abundance of the miliary tubercles. Owing to the frequency of the dilatation of the ventricles with serum in children, the disease is often called *acute hydrocephalus*.

In both children and adults, the tubercular inflammation may produce

large masses of tubercular tissue, which undergo cheesy degeneration, in the pia mater and the brain tissue.

*Syphilitic Meningitis*.—In this form of inflammation, which is usually circumscribed, there is a development of gummy tumors of variable size, frequently associated with simple inflammation of the membrane, either with the formation of serum fibrin and pus, or with the development of new connective tissue and the consequent thickening of the membrane. The gummata may form in the pia mater covering the convexity, or at the base of the brain. They may grow outwards involving the dura mater, or inwards encroaching upon or involving the brain-tissue. Although usually circumscribed, the syphilitic inflammation may occur as a diffuse thickening of the membrane. The syphilitic nodules, including the gummata and new-formed connective tissue are often very small, but may be as large as a hen's egg.

*Tumors*.—Aside from the Pacchionian bodies, which are sometimes so large as to simulate tumors, the most common forms of primary tumors are *sarcomata* and *endotheliomata* (cholesteatomata). Small *fibromata*, *lipomata*, *angiomata*, and *myxomata* occur, but are rare. *Lymphangiomatous cysts* sometimes occur in the pia mater, and various forms of *carcinoma* may occur as secondary tumors. The pia mater is frequently involved in tumors growing from the dura mater or the brain substance.

Variously shaped *pigment cells* not infrequently occur in the pia mater, either scattered or sometimes in considerable masses; they seem to have little pathological significance. Not infrequently thin plates of new-formed *bone* are found in the pia mater, associated with a thickening of the membrane.

*Parasites*.—*Cysticercus* has been observed in the pia mater.

## THE VENTRICLES OF THE BRAIN.

### THE EPENDYMA AND CHOROID PLEXUS.

As the lymph-spaces of the pia mater and the ventricles of the brain are in communication, it might be supposed that they would share alike in the accumulation of fluids. This, however, is not the case. The membranes of the brain may be highly oedematous, while the ventricles contain about the normal quantity of fluid; or, on the other hand, the ventricles may be widely dilated and the pia mater unusually dry. Many of these varying conditions may be understood by remembering that the skull and spinal canal form a closed cavity, and that accumulations of fluid in one part must be at the expense of some material occupying other parts, either blood, serum, or brain-tissue. It is not always easy to see, however, exactly how the compensation occurs.

There may be an unusual amount of fluid in the ventricles of the brain as a result of post-mortem change; in connection with senile or



other atrophy of the brain; or in the general vascular changes which lead to œdema of the brain; in connection with inflammation of the meninges, or of the ependyma; or under conditions which we do not understand, as in some cases of congenital and acquired hydrocephalus. Accumulations of fluid in the ventricles are often called *internal hydrocephalus*, to distinguish them from accumulations in the meninges—*external hydrocephalus*.

*Acute inflammation of the Ependyma (Acute Ependymitis).*—In this condition, which may occur by itself, but is usually associated with inflammation of other parts of the brain, the ependyma is congested, the vessels are more prominent than usual, and are often tortuous. The ependyma and the adjacent brain-tissue may be thickened and infiltrated with pus-cells, and the surface of the ependyma covered with fibrin and pus in variable quantity. The cavity of the ventricles may contain purulent serum. Small hemorrhages may also be present in the tissue of the ependyma. This, as well as other forms of inflammation, is more common in the lateral ventricles than in the others, but not infrequently involves the fourth ventricle. The choroid plexus may participate in the inflammatory changes of the ependyma. Tubercular inflammation of the ependyma is, as above-mentioned, a not infrequent accompaniment of tubercular meningitis.

*Chronic Inflammation of the Ependyma (Chronic Ependymitis).*—This lesion, which is much more common than simple acute inflammation of the ependyma, occurs under a variety of conditions, and its nature and causation are in general very obscure. The ependyma is thicker, whiter, and more opaque than normal, so that the vessels may be nearly or quite invisible. The thickening may occur in patches or diffusely, and the surface of the ependyma may be smooth, or roughened and granular. On microscopical examination the surface of the ependyma may be covered with the usual epithelium, but the new connective tissue which forms beneath it often raises it up in places, causing the roughness of the surface. The new tissue is usually rather loose in texture and may contain many small spheroidal cells, but it may be dense in texture and contain few cells. The brain-tissue beneath the thickened ependyma may be softened or infiltrated with cells. The sides of the ventricles may be grown together in places by the adhesion of the thickened and roughened ependyma. The ventricles usually contain more serum than normal, and sometimes this accumulation is so great as to cause an enormous dilatation of them. While these are in general the prominent lesions in chronic inflammation of the ependyma, the cases vary greatly in the degree to which these changes are developed.

The accumulation of fluid, and the dilatation of the ventricles being the most marked feature in all this class of lesions, they are often called *chronic hydrocephalus*, and indeed in many cases we have no evidence

that the change in the ependyma is an important or even an actual primary factor.

We may, for convenience of study, consider three classes of cases of chronic hydrocephalus: first, congenital hydrocephalus in young children; second, secondary hydrocephalus in children and adults; third, primary hydrocephalus in adults.

1. *Congenital Hydrocephalus*.—The lesion may be in an advanced stage at the time of birth, or it may be scarcely evident or but moderately developed. It may progress rapidly, and cause the early death of the child, or it may develop gradually or come to a stand-still. In the more marked forms of the disease, the ventricles are widely dilated and filled with serum, which is usually transparent. Not only the lateral ventricles, but also the third and fifth may be involved, the fourth is less apt to participate in the lesion, although it is sometimes dilated, as well as the central canal of the cord.

The distention, especially of the lateral ventricles, may be so great that the brain-tissue over the vertex is crowded up into a thin layer beneath the dura mater, or it may be entirely destroyed. When the dilatation of the ventricles is considerable, the convolutions are flattened (see Fig. 68),

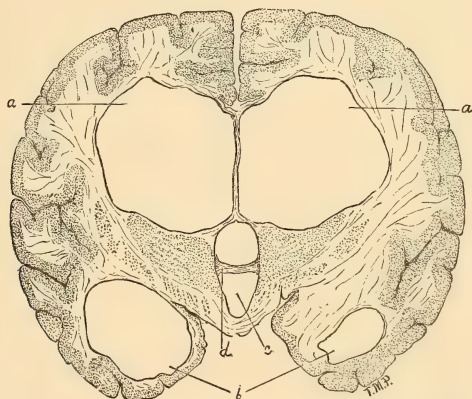


FIG. 68.—CONGENITAL HYDROCEPHALUS—Child, half natural size.

a, a, Dilated lateral ventricles; b, cornua unequally dilated; c, third ventricle; d, middle commissure.

and may be almost entirely obliterated. The skull-bones may be thin and bulging over the forehead and vertex; the fontanelles and sutures widely open. The ependyma in these cases is usually thick and rough, but it may be softened, and the blood-vessels may be dilated. The basal portions of the brain may be flattened, but are usually much less affected than the upper portions. The brain-tissue is usually soft and anæmic.

2. *Secondary Hydrocephalus*.—This may occur in children and adults, and may be a result of epidemic cerebro-spinal meningitis, or of acute meningitis, or of chronic meningitis. It sometimes occurs in chronic

alcoholic poisoning, and in general paralysis of the insane. The amount of dilatation of the ventricles varies greatly in these cases, but it is never so great as in congenital hydrocephalus, and is not accompanied by the changes in the shape of the skull which form so prominent a feature in the latter disease, since the bones are firmer and the sutures united. In this form of chronic hydrocephalus, the changes in the ependyma above described are usually more or less well marked, and they may be associated with the production of fibrin and pus.

3. *Primary Hydrocephalus in Adults*.—The conditions leading to this form of lesion are not understood. It is apt to occur in persons over thirty years of age. Sometimes one, sometimes both lateral ventricles are dilated. The dilatation is usually moderate, sometimes very slight, and never as great as in congenital hydrocephalus. The ventricles usually contain transparent serum, and the ependyma is thickened and roughened. In some cases it will be the only lesion found to account for the death of the patient.

*Tumors*.—The new formation of connective tissue in the ependyma, although usually diffuse, may be circumscribed and form small projecting connective-tissue nodules, which may be reckoned among the *fibromata*. Small fibromata are sometimes detached from the walls of the ventricles and lie free in the cavity. Small *lipomata*, *angiomata*, and also *sarcomata* occur rarely. *Chondromata* and *angiomata* may occur in the choroid plexus, and the latter are sometimes as large as a hen's egg. The choroid plexus is not infrequently the seat of transparent *cysts* usually of small size; they may contain a clear fluid or colloid material, or droplets of fat or calcareous particles. A small *dermoid cyst* containing hairs has been described. These cysts have no special pathological significance.

Primary *carcinomata* are sometimes found in the ventricles.

The calcareous bodies called *brain-sand*<sup>1</sup> occur frequently in the choroid plexus (see Fig. 59), and *corpora amylacea* may occur here and beneath the ependyma.

Cysticercus and echinococcus cysts are sometimes found free in the fluid of the ventricles.

#### PINEAL GLAND AND PITUITARY BODY.

*Pineal gland*.—The lesions of this structure are not very common or important. It may participate in inflammatory changes involving neighboring structures. It may become hypertrophied and dense, and has thus attained the size of a walnut. Small cysts may form in it, and of very frequent occurrence is a considerable increase in the amount of

---

<sup>1</sup> The little hard masses called *brain-sand* consist of aggregations of small particles of carbonate and phosphate of lime, with a very small amount of phosphate of ammonia and magnesia. With these there is more or less organic matter.



brain-sand which is usually found there in moderate quantity under normal conditions.

*The Pituitary Body.*—This body may share in inflammatory changes occurring in its vicinity, or may be the seat of tubercular and syphilitic inflammation. The most important of the tumors which may originate in this structure are *adenomata*, usually cystic in character; these may be as large as a hen's egg. *Carcinomata* and *sarcomata* may occur, forming tumors of considerable size. Small *lipomata* and a *teratoma* have been described.

## THE BRAIN.

### THROMBOSIS AND EMBOLISM.

In studying the occurrence and effects of thrombosis and embolism in the brain, certain peculiarities of the circulation should be borne in mind. The arteries of the brain are in part terminal arteries (see p. 53), in part such as have anastomoses among their branches. Thus the arteries which are distributed to the cortical regions form abundant anastomoses in the pia mater and are very small when they enter the brain, while those which are distributed to the basal region, and which supply the basal ganglia, are larger and do not, beyond the circle of Willis, form anastomoses with one another. Thus it is that occlusions of the arteries supplying the basal ganglia are of much more serious import, aside from the importance of the parts involved, than those passing to the cortex.

*Thrombi* may form in the arteries as a result of any degenerative or inflammatory process in the wall of the vessel leading to a roughening or death of its intima, or from pressure upon the vessel from without, or they may occur in vessels in whose walls we can detect no primary lesion. The most common causes are atheroma or simple endarteritis. Thrombi may also form around an embolus which does not entirely occlude the vessel.

Emboli of the cerebral arteries most commonly arise from acute or chronic endocarditis or cardiac thrombi; they may arise from aneurisms or atheroma of the aorta, from the carotid or vertebral arteries or from the pulmonary veins. The materials constituting emboli vary greatly, depending on their mode of origin (see p. 52). The effects on the brain-tissue of emboli and thrombi of the arteries are essentially the same in their main features. In some cases, however, in which large emboli, usually from endocarditis, suddenly block up a large vessel, the individual may die almost instantly without other apparent lesion than the stoppage of the vessel.

In general the first effect of the occlusion of an artery is to deprive the region to which it is distributed of blood. In arteries whose branches anastomose, as in the cortex of the brain, the affected area is soon supplied with blood by the establishment of a collateral circulation. In terminal

arteries, on the other hand, the blocking of the vessel is followed, as a rule, by degenerative changes and softening, in the brain-tissue. The appearances which these degenerated areas present vary greatly, depending upon the stage of the degeneration and the amount of blood which may be extravasated. Dense infiltrations of the brain-tissue with blood, as in hemorrhagic infarctions from emboli in other parts of the body, do not usually occur, although considerable blood may be extravasated. Areas of softening in which there is little extravasation of blood are usually white or yellow in color (*white or yellow softening*). When much blood is present, the process is frequently called *red softening*. The tissue in the affected area gradually softens and may become diffluent. Microscopically, the softened tissue is seen to consist of more or less fluid with broken-down brain-tissue, fragments of nerve-fibres, droplets of myelin, nerve-cells, shreds of neuroglia tissue and blood-vessels, and red and white

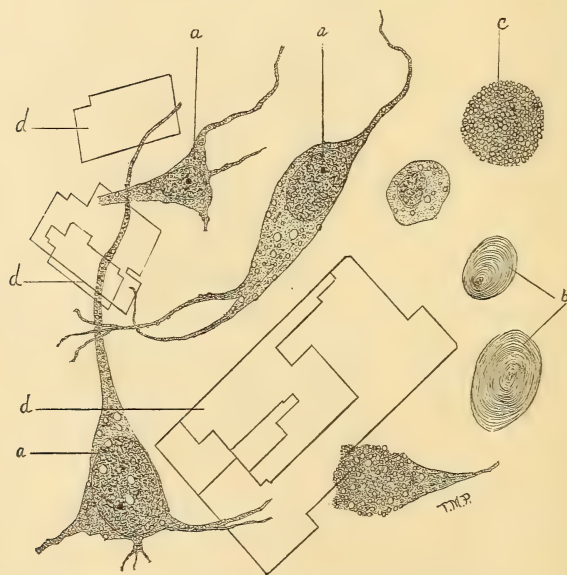


FIG. 69.—DEGENERATED CELLS, CHOLESTEARIN CRYSTALS AND CORPORA AMYLACEA FROM BRAIN-TISSUE IN EMBOLIC SOFTENING.

a, Fatty ganglion cells; b, corpora amylacea; c, cell containing very large number of fat-droplets (compound granular, or Gluge's corpuscle); d, cholestearin crystals.

blood-cells. Then evidences of degeneration are seen, in the presence of fat granules and droplets, larger and smaller cells densely crowded with droplets of fat (so-called *Gluge's corpuscles* or *compound granular corpuscles*). (See Fig. 69.) Various kinds of cells and cell-fragments, more or less granular and fatty, and also corpora amylacea, blood-pigment, fat-crystals and cholestearin crystals may be found. The walls of the blood-vessels may also be in a condition of fatty degeneration (Fig. 70). The

color of the softened mass will of course depend upon the relative amounts of these elements.

The tissue may remain for a long time in the soft condition, or it may be absorbed and replaced by a connective-tissue cicatrix, which may be



FIG. 70.—BLOOD-VESSELS FROM AN AREA OF EMBOLIC SOFTENING OF BRAIN.

The walls of the vessels, particularly the endothelial cells, contain fat droplets and granules.

more or less pigmented; or a wall of connective tissue may form about it, converting it into a well-defined cyst, with or without pigmented walls; or the mass may dry and form a dense structureless nodule. Acute inflammatory changes may occur about the dead tissue. In cases of infectious emboli, numerous abscesses may be formed in addition to their mechanical action.

Thrombi are most frequent in the internal carotids, less so in the middle cerebral, basilar, and vertebrals. They may occur, but still less frequently, in other cerebral arteries. Emboli are most common in the middle cerebral artery, next in the internal carotid, and then in the basilar. The relative frequency with which embolism occurs in the middle cerebral artery is attributable to the directness with which the blood passes into this artery from the heart. The great significance attaching to embolism of the middle cerebral artery is evident when we remember that its branches are terminal arteries, and are distributed to such important structures as the lenticular and caudate nucleus, the internal capsule, and the optic thalamus.

*Hyperæmia and Anæmia.*—The appearance of the brain-tissue after death does not always furnish reliable indications of its blood-contents during life, though they are perhaps more to be depended on than the appearance of the meninges.

Some of the more common conditions determining *hyperæmia* which are mentioned above as influencing the meninges, apply also to the substance of the brain. In sections of hyperæmic brains, the small blood-points from the cut ends of small vessels are more numerous and con-



spicuous than under normal conditions, and the brain-tissue, particularly the gray matter, may have a diffuse red color. If excessive, the convolutions may be somewhat flattened, and the brain-tissue and pia mater may be œdematous, and the ventricles contain fluid. The congestion of the vessels may be general or localized.

*Anæmia* of the brain may be either local or general. It may depend upon a general anæmia or upon general disturbances of the circulation, such as mitral stenosis or regurgitation, or upon local interference with the arterial blood-supply, such as complete or partial obstruction of the arteries from thrombi, emboli, inflammatory changes, spasmodic contractions, etc., or from tumors, exudations, and blood extravasations pressing upon the vessels from without. In œdema of the meninges and in the presence of internal hydrocephalus, the brain-tissue is apt to be anæmic. The brain-tissue in anæmia looks whiter than usual, the contrast between the gray and white matter is less marked, and the small blood-points usually seen on section from divided vessels may be very inconspicuous or almost entirely absent.

*Edema* of the brain-tissue may accompany either hyperæmia or anæmia, and seems in most cases, though not always, to be dependent upon conditions which induce these alterations in the blood content of the brain. In some cases of marked impoverishment of the blood, a so-called *hydræmic œdema* of the brain is found. Very marked œdema of the brain may exist without any accompanying brain symptoms. On the other hand, persons may die comatose; this is seen with especial frequency in acute and chronic alcohol poisoning, but may occur under other conditions, and the post-mortem examination reveals nothing but œdema of the brain-tissue, either with or without œdema of the pia mater.

*Hemorrhage*.—Hemorrhages in the substance of the brain may be very small and punctate, and are then usually called *capillary hemorrhages*, or they may result in the collection in the brain-tissue of masses of blood of considerable size, which are called *apoplectic foci* or clots. These forms of hemorrhage may be associated, or a number of capillary hemorrhages may join to form an extensive clot.

*Capillary hemorrhages* may look on section of the brain like the severed ends of hyperæmic blood-vessels, or the tissue about them may be more or less tinged with blood. Microscopically, the peri-vascular spaces will be found distended with blood, which may have escaped into them, and more or less broken down the brain-tissue. They may occur singly, but are frequently multiple, so that the brain-tissue is besprinkled with blood-points. Degeneration of the extravasated blood may give rise in later stages to reddish or brown or yellowish circumscribed discoloration of the brain-tissue, due to granules and crystals of blood-pigment intermingled with broken-down brain-tissue, with more or less fatty degeneration of its elements. Capillary hemorrhages may be due to fatty de-

generation of the vessels leading to rupture; or the extravasation may be due to diapedesis; or it may depend upon conditions which we do not understand. They frequently occur in the vicinity of apoplectic clots and tumors; they may be due to thrombosis of the veins, or of the sinuses of the dura mater; they not infrequently occur in acute encephalitis, in congestive hyperæmia, in acute mania, and in delirium tremens, and they may be associated with general diseases such as scurvy, purpura hæmorrhagica, typhus fever, pyæmia, ulcerative endocarditis, etc.; they may be associated with embolic softening.

*Apoplectic foci* may result from the coalescence of numerous capillary hemorrhages: from injury, or from rupture of diseased arteries, either with or without changes in the blood pressure. Hemorrhages from injury to the skull may occur as well without as with fracture, and may be situated over the vertex as well as at the base of the brain, and will vary in extent and seat, depending upon the character and point of the injury and the size of the vessels involved. The so-called spontaneous hemorrhages other than those of capillary origin, which give rise to masses of blood and broken-down brain-tissue, may vary in size from that of a pea to those occupying a large part of a hemisphere. They are due in a very considerable proportion of cases to the rupture of small arterial aneurisms, but may arise from weakening of the walls of the arteries, from arteritis, atheroma, or fatty degeneration. These latter forms of disease doubtless give rise in most cases to the formation of the aneurisms whose rupture is in so many cases the immediate cause of the hemorrhage. Aneurisms of the cerebral arteries may be as large as a pea or hazel-nut, but those most frequently met with and causing apoplexy are usually small—called miliary aneurisms—and may be microscopic in size, varying from this up to that of a large pin's head or larger. They may be sacculate or fusiform, and frequently exist in considerable numbers. They may occur in any of the small arteries of the brain, but are said to be most frequent on the branches of the middle cerebral artery. It is asserted that the bursting of miliary aneurisms is the nearly if not quite exclusive cause of the formation of spontaneous apoplectic clots, but this we do not believe to be true. As to the immediate cause of rupture, either of aneurisms or otherwise diseased blood-vessels in the brain, we are in many cases entirely ignorant. In some cases it seems to be due to an increased arterial tension in such diseases of the heart as induce this change, as in the cardiac hypertrophy which may accompany some forms of chronic diffuse nephritis; or it may result from unusual exertion or mental excitement; but, as above stated, in many cases the immediate inciting cause is not evident.

The most frequent seat of hemorrhage is in the opto-striate bodies and the brain-tissue in their vicinity, and here they occur most often in the parts supplied by the branches of the middle cerebral artery.

Hemorrhages frequently seriously affect other portions of the brain than those immediately supplied by the ruptured vessels. Thus hemorrhages in the cortical substance or beneath the pia mater may force their way deep into the brain-substance; or in hemorrhage in the brain-substance the blood may burst into the ventricles or work its way into the intermeningeal space, and either at the seat of its occurrence, or in the situations into which it is forced, it may give rise to serious compression of the brain. Portions of the brain containing large extravasations may be enlarged, the tissue anæmic from pressure, the convolutions flattened, and the surface dry. As the blood is poured out, the brain-tissue is usually torn and lacerated, so that the apoplectic clot usually consists of detritus of brain-tissue intermingled with blood. If, however, the blood is poured out from a single vessel, the lacerated brain-tissue may be pressed aside, and the greater portion of the red mass may consist of pure blood-clot.

The appearances presented by hemorrhages in the brain vary greatly, depending upon the time which has elapsed since their occurrence. If life continue, the œdema which usually soon occurs in the vicinity of the hemorrhage disappears, and the clot becomes drier and firmer; gradually the blood undergoes the usual series of changes seen in extravasation: the hæmoglobin decomposes, forming granules and crystals of blood pigment, the blood-cells and fibrin undergo degeneration and absorption; the detritus of brain-tissue undergoes fatty degeneration. As these alterations occur, the color changes to reddish-brown, orange, or yellow, and the adjacent brain-tissue may be discolored by imbibition.

Inflammatory reaction may occur in the vicinity, either leading to the formation of a more or less pigmented cicatrix, or to a cyst with yellowish fluid contents and a fibrous, more or less pigmented wall. The process of degeneration and absorption of the blood and broken-down brain-tissue and their replacement by a cyst or by a cicatrix is a slow one, and the cysts and cicatrices may resemble those formed at the seat of embolic softening. Not infrequently we find in the brain of a person dead from recent apoplexy, the remains of old clots presenting some one of the above-described stages of absorption. The apoplectic cysts and cicatrices persist for a long time after their formation.

*Secondary Degenerations.*—Lesions of parts of the brain which involve the destruction of brain-tissue containing certain systems of motor-nerves, owing, it is believed, to the separation of these nerves from their trophic centres, are regularly followed after a time by degenerative changes in these nerves below the seat of lesion. It is particularly lesions in the central convolutions, the internal capsule, portions of the corona radiata, and the pes pedunculi, which destroy the motor-fibres passing through these parts, and are followed by degenerative changes in the fibres below. The most important and frequent lesions followed by this effect are those



involving the anterior two-thirds or three-fourths of the internal capsule. It will suffice merely to mention these changes here, as they are considered more in detail in the section devoted to lesions of the spinal cord.

#### INFLAMMATION OF THE BRAIN (ENCEPHALITIS).

It has been already mentioned that the brain-tissue about hemorrhages and areas of embolic and thrombotic softening may undergo inflammatory changes leading to the formation of new connective tissue. There is a class of cases in which localized areas of the brain undergo softening, with more or less extravasation of red and white blood-cells and hyperæmia of the blood-vessels, so that the softened material consists, as seen under the microscope, of detritus of brain-tissue in a condition of fatty degeneration, with more or less pus-cells or pigment. When such areas are red in color from intermingled blood-cells or pigment, the condition is called *red inflammatory softening*. When fatty degeneration prevails, and the red blood-cells or their derivatives are not abundant, the softened area looks yellow or yellowish-white, and this is often called *yellow inflammatory softening*. The origin of these processes is very obscure, and their inflammatory nature not well defined.

*Abscess of the Brain.*—In another class of cases the inflammatory character of the lesion is well defined, and manifests itself chiefly by the formation of pus and the development of abscesses. These abscesses may be single or multiple, and may be situated in any part of the brain. They may be small or they may be from one to two inches in diameter, and are sometimes so large as to occupy nearly the whole of a cerebral lobe. They may be sharply circumscribed, or the walls may merge imperceptibly into the adjacent brain-tissue. In the early stages of the formation of some abscesses, there is simply a dense infiltration of a circumscribed area of brain-tissue with pus-cells, and the part then presents very much the appearance of brain in the condition of yellow softening. The brain-tissue after a time may break down and degenerate, and we may then have a diffuent, yellowish mass consisting of fluid, degenerated and disintegrated nerve-elements, Gluge's corpuscles, and pus-cells, more or less fatty, and cholestearin crystals. The brain-tissue about the diffuent mass may be denser than usual, and more or less infiltrated with pus; or shreds of tissue may hang off into the cavity. A connective-tissue wall may form around the abscess, and the brain-tissue about this may be dense or very soft. Old abscesses with connective tissue-walls may resemble cysts formed from hemorrhage or softening, and may contain but a small amount of clear or turbid serum. When occurring near the meninges or the ventricles, abscesses may rupture, and the adjacent ventricles or the pia mater may become infiltrated with pus. When occurring near the surfaces of the brain, they may set up purulent inflammation of

the pia mater, or this membrane may become thickened and adherent over them.

Abscesses of the brain may occur from direct injury or laceration of the brain, or without fracture, or direct wound, as the result of severe jarring as in a fall on the head. Next to injury, inflammation of the bones of the skull, particularly of the temporal bone from otitis media, most frequently leads to abscesses of the brain; though not infrequently they are formed as a result of otitis media without involvement of the bone. In some cases, abscesses of the brain seem to be secondary to purulent or septic inflammations in other parts of the body, as in pyæmia, ulcerative endocarditis, gangrene of the lungs, cerebro-spinal meningitis, etc., and are doubtless embolic in their origin. In many cases we are not able to assign a cause for the formation of abscesses in the brain; this is especially the case in the abscesses of the cerebellum.

Very frequently in acute meningitis there is an infiltration of pus-cells along the walls of the vessels which enter the brain from the pia mater; and under a variety of conditions which we do not understand, as in some cases of typhoid fever, delirium tremens, erysipelas, and under many other conditions, there are numerous and sometimes very large numbers of leucocytes scattered through the substance of the brain, sometimes around the ganglion-cells, sometimes along the vessels in the peri-vascular sheaths.

*Chronic interstitial encephalitis—sclerosis.*—This lesion of the brain-tissue may occur diffusely, occupying an entire lobe, or more or less of the whole brain, or in circumscribed small areas. It consists essentially in an increase of the connective-tissue elements, the neuroglia, and an atrophy of the nerve elements, particularly the ganglion-cells, and the medullary sheaths of the nerves. With these changes are usually associated the formation of Gluge's corpuscles, corpora amylacea, granular and fatty degeneration of the nerve-elements, and thickening and proliferation of cells of the walls of the blood-vessels. The areas of sclerosis may be very dense and hard, or gelatinous in consistency.

The diffuse form of sclerosis is most frequently seen in the brains of drunkards and in general paralysis of the insane.

The circumscribed form of sclerosis, *multiple sclerosis (sclérose en plaque)*, is much more common than the diffuse form, and may occur in the brain alone, or may be associated with a similar lesion in the spinal cord. It is almost entirely confined to the medullary substance, and the areas of sclerosis vary in size from that of a pea to that of an almond. They may be few or numerous, they may be white, grayish, or grayish-red in color, and are usually, but not always, sharply outlined against the unaltered brain-tissue. Although in many cases the increase in the connective-tissue elements seems to be the primary lesion, and the degeneration of the nerve-elements secondary to this, it is quite possible that in

some cases the increase in connective tissue may be secondary to a degeneration of the nerve-elements from loss of nutrition, or from other causes.

#### WOUNDS OF THE BRAIN.

The brain may be directly wounded by a foreign body, or indirectly by fragments of bone driven into it, or it may be lacerated by severe concussion without fracture or solution of continuity of the skull. It is very difficult to estimate the degree of injury which must cause death, since persons frequently die from slight, and may recover from very severe wounds of the brain. In incised wounds of the brain, more or less hemorrhage occurs at the seat of lesion, and the brain-tissue in the vicinity soon undergoes degenerative changes. These may be comparatively slight or extensive. Inflammatory reaction may occur in the vicinity, and the adjacent brain-tissue as well as the hemorrhagic and degenerated area become infiltrated with pus-cells. After a time the injured and degenerated area may become surrounded by new-formed connective tissue, and the decomposed extravasated blood and detritus of brain-tissue, more or less fatty, may be absorbed, and thus after a time the part heals by a more or less pigmented cicatrix. The healing is in most cases very slow and may occupy months or even years. The pia mater may participate to a marked degree in the inflammatory healing process. Abscesses may form near the seat of injury.

After wounds which involve the removal of portions of the cranial bones, it is not uncommon after a few days to see a bleeding fungous mass project through the opening. This mass, sometimes wrongly called *hernia cerebri*, consists of degenerated brain-tissue, blood, and granulation-tissue, with more or less pus. The brain-tissue below it is degenerated, broken-down, soft and purulent, and there is often abscess in the adjacent brain-tissue. Such wounds may finally heal by the absorption of the broken-down brain-tissue and blood, and its substitution by granulation tissue.

Lacerations of the brain-tissue without fracture may appear shortly after the injury as simple more or less circumscribed areas of capillary hemorrhage; the brain-tissue about these may degenerate, pus may form, and abscesses be developed; or the degenerated and lacerated tissue may be gradually replaced by granulation-tissue which finally forms a cicatrix. The process of degeneration and softening and of healing in such lacerations of brain-tissue may occur very slowly indeed, even occupying years, and not infrequently the degenerative changes are very extensive and progressive. In many cases, of course, the injury is so extensive or involves such important parts of the organ, that very little or no inflammatory or degenerative change takes place before the occurrence of death.

*Encephalitis in the new-born.*—This condition, first described by Vir-



chow, is said to consist in the formation of circumscribed collections of cells of various sizes containing many fat-granules (granular corpuscles) and forming yellowish masses from one mm. to six mm. in diameter, in the brain-tissue. A more diffuse occurrence of granular corpuscles is also described, but this is said by some observers to be physiological. The nature of this lesion is but little understood, and is still the subject of controversy.

*Holes or cysts in the brain.*—Larger and smaller holes may be found in the brain-tissue from dilatation of the perivascular lymph-spaces, or well-formed cysts may exist from hemorrhage, inflammatory softening, hydatids, etc. There are, however, cases in which one or several holes of varying size are found in the brain which cannot be determined to have either of the above modes of origin. They may lie deep in the brain-substance or close under the pia mater, or may communicate with the ventricles. This condition is sometimes called *porencephalie*, and may co-exist with various mental aberrations, hydrocephalus, etc.<sup>1</sup>

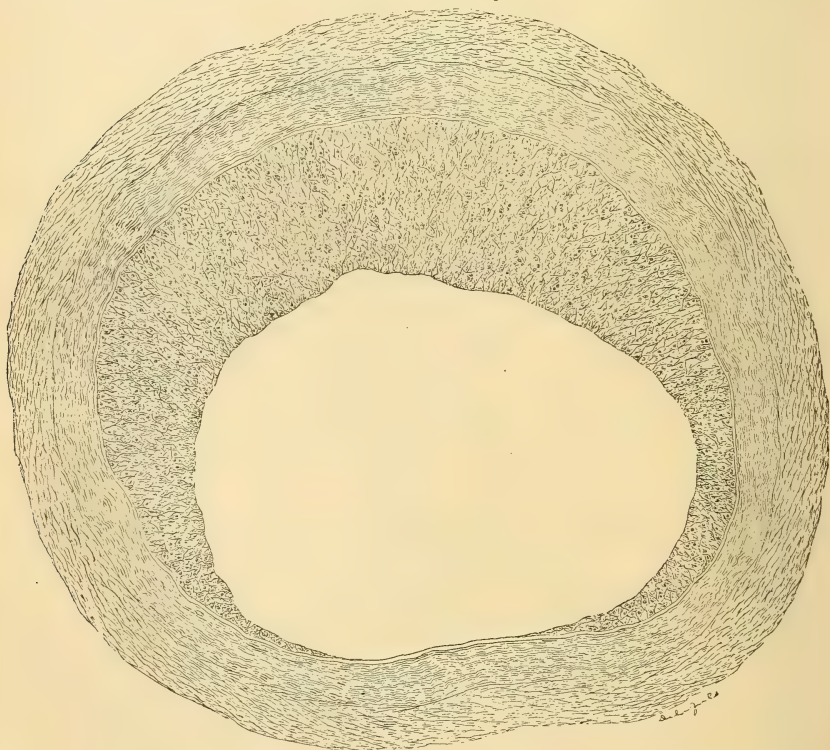


FIG. 71.—SYPHILITIC OBLITERATING ENDARTERITIS OF A CEREBRAL ARTERY,  $\times 50$  and reduced.

<sup>1</sup> Consult Kundrat : "Die Porencephalie," Graz, 1882, and Savage and White: "On the Causes of Holes in the Brain," Trans. London Path. Soc., Vol. 34, p. 1, 1883.

*Syphilitic inflammation of the brain* sometimes results in the formation of so-called gummy tumors. These are most frequently found near the periphery of the brain, not infrequently connected with the meninges, and may be sharply circumscribed. The central portion of the tumor is usually in a condition of cheesy degeneration, and in the periphery we see fibrous tissue or a dense infiltration of small spheroidal cells.

Syphilitic inflammation of the brain very frequently occurs in a diffuse form, characterized by the formation of a gelatinous grayish tissue consisting of a more or less homogeneous, or granular basement substance with numerous small spheroidal cells. The nerve-elements are atrophied. Obliterating endarteritis may occur as a result of syphilitic poisoning (Fig. 71).

*Tubercular inflammation* of the brain substance usually manifests itself in the formation of circumscribed masses of new tissue from five mm. to six mm. in diameter, or larger. These may be single or multiple, are most common in young persons, and very frequently occur in the cerebellum. They are apt to occur in connection with tubercular inflammation of



FIG. 72.—SOLITARY TUBERCLE OF CEREBELLUM,  $\times 10$ .

*a*, Tubercle granula with giant-cells; *b*, tubercle granula without giant-cells; *c*, diffuse tubercle tissue; *d*, central cheesy mass; *e*, nerve tissue of the cerebellum.

other organs. They are frequently called *solitary tubercles*, and usually consist of a dense central cheesy mass, around which is a grayish zone containing tubercle granula, numerous small spheroidal cells, with occasionally larger polyhedral cells and giant-cells (Fig. 72). They do not as a

rule seem to be formed by an aggregation of miliary tubercles, although these may be present in the periphery. Tubercle bacilli have been found in these solitary tubercles.

Conglomerate and scattered miliary tubercles of the ordinary form sometimes occur in the brain, usually in connection with tubercular inflammation of the meninges or ependyma.

#### LESIONS OF THE BRAIN IN CHRONIC PARALYSIS OF THE INSANE.

The changes in this disease are in the main those of chronic diffuse encephalitis, but the appearances vary greatly and depend to some extent upon whether the brain is examined in early or late stage of the disease. According to Meyer, in the early stages of the disease, the convolutions, particularly of the anterior cerebral lobes, are swollen, the gray matter congested and softened in places. The brain-tissue is more or less infiltrated with leucocytes. Fatty degeneration of the walls of the capillaries and punctate hemorrhages are also common.

In later stages of the disease, a great variety of changes may be observed: hemorrhagic pachymeningitis, thickening of the dura mater, and close adhesions to the skull; thickening and opacities of the pia mater, adhesions of the latter to the dura mater and to the brain-tissue. The brain-tissue is apt to be atrophied, and the ventricles dilated and filled with fluid. The pia mater may be œdematous, the ependyma thickened and roughened. On microscopical examination, the neuroglia is found to be increased in amount, the ganglion-cells shrunken and sometimes pigmented; the nerve-fibres may also be atrophied, and the blood-vessels in a condition of fatty or hyalin degeneration. There may be an accumulation of fatty and granular cells along the walls of the blood-vessels. Secondary degenerations in the spinal cord are not infrequently observed.

It is very difficult to make positive and definite statements regarding many such lesions of the brain as those just indicated, or in general of brain lesions whose nature must be revealed by microscopical study, because our technical procedures in the study of the brain, even in normal conditions, are still quite unsatisfactory and incomplete. The brain-tissue is so delicate and liable to post-mortem changes, and the effects of different preservative agents are so liable to variations, that great caution is necessary in arriving at conclusions regarding the minuter lesions affecting the nerve-tissue of the brain.

#### HYPERTROPHY AND ATROPHY OF THE BRAIN.

*True hypertrophy* of the brain is rare and probably always congenital. An increase in the size of the brain from the proliferation of the neuroglia sometimes occurs in children either before or after birth, less frequently in youth, and very seldom in adults. The white substance of the hemispheres is increased in amount. If it takes place before the ossifica-



tion of the cranium, the bones are separated at the sutures and fontanelles; if after this, the inner table of the skull may be eroded and thinned. When the cranium is opened, the dura mater appears tense and anæmic, the convolutions of the brain are flattened, the brain-substance is firm and anæmic, the ventricles are small, the ganglia and cerebellum are either of normal size or compressed.

The disease is usually very chronic, and destroys life with symptoms of compression of the brain. There may, however, be acute exacerbations.

*Atrophy.*—This may occur as a senile change; or in adults, in chronic alcohol, opium, or lead poisoning, in chronic insanity, and in chronic meningitis. In children who are much reduced by chronic diseases, atrophy of the brain may accompany atrophy of the rest of the body.

The atrophy affects principally the cerebral hemispheres, and may be uniform or more marked in some parts than in others. The convolutions are small, the sulci broad, the ventricles usually dilated, the brain-tissue firm, the gray matter discolored: the white substance grayish in color; the blood-vessels may be dilated. The basal ganglia may be small. Serum accumulates in the pia mater and the ventricles; the pia mater, and often the skull become thickened: the brain-tissue may be cedematous or contain small hemorrhages. The nerve-elements of the brain-tissue are those most involved in the atrophy.

*Pigmentation.*—This may occur in any portion of the brain or its meninges from the decomposition of extravasated blood. In persons affected by malaria, the gray matter of the brain has sometimes an unusually dark or even blackish appearance. This color is due to the presence of black pigment granules within the capillary blood-vessels. The obstruction to the vessels by masses of these pigment granules may cause capillary apoplexies. The pigment may also be found in the walls, and in the lumina of the vessels of the pia mater.

Pigmented patches of congenital origin are not infrequently seen in the pia mater. They may be due to the presence of branching pigmented cells.

### *Tumors of the Brain.*

The most common tumors of the brain are *gliomata*. They are most frequently found in the cerebrum, and may be small or large. They may be sharply circumscribed or merge imperceptibly into the brain-substance. They may be white and hard, or gray and soft or gelatinous. The softer forms consist largely of neuroglia cells (Fig. 41), the harder forms contain fewer cells and numerous interlacing fibrils. The blood-vessels of the gliomata are often widely dilated. They are frequently the seat of hemorrhages and may soften and break down, and may then resemble apoplectic clots. They are liable to undergo fatty and cheesy degeneration.

Not infrequently the gliomata are combined with sarcomata, forming *glio-sarcomata*.

Sarcomata of various forms occur in the brain as primary tumors.

Circumscribed masses of dilated blood-vessels, *angiomata*, are not infrequently met with in the brain.

*Myxoma*, *fibroma*, *lipoma*, and *osteoma* are among the rarer forms of brain tumors.

*Endotheliomata* (*cholesteatomata*), in the form of glistening white tumors, sometimes attain a large size.

*Sarcomata* and *Carcinomata* not infrequently occur in the brain as secondary tumors. *Dermoid* and other *Cysts* occur, but are rare.

Small masses of the gray matter of the brain sometimes occur in the medullary portions of the brain, and localized hyperplasias of gray matter have been described in the form of rounded nodules projecting from the free surface of the brain or into the ventricles.

#### PARASITES.

*Cysticercus* and more rarely *Echinococci* are found in the brain.

#### MALFORMATIONS.

*Cyclopia*.—This malformation consists in an arrest of development affecting the cerebrum, which, instead of separating into two hemispheres, remains single, with one ventricle, and the rudiments of the eyes usually become joined and form one eye. This single eye is in the middle of the face, near the place of the root of the nose, in a single orbit. Over this is an irregular body representing the nose. The rest of the face is well formed. Or the eye-ball may be wanting entirely, or there are two eyes joined together, or, more seldom, two separate eyes. The orbit is surrounded by rudiments of four eye-lids. The frontal bone is single, the nasal bones undeveloped; the ethmoid, vomer, and turbinated bones are absent. The optic nerve is double, single, or absent. There may be hydrocephalus. Such children are incapable of prolonged existence.

*Anencephalia*.—This malformation may be of various degrees. The brain may be entirely absent, and the base of the cranium is covered with a thick membrane, into which the nerves pass. Or the membranes may form a sort of cyst containing blood and serum, or portions of brain. Of the cranial bones, only those which form the base of the skull are present (*Acrania*). The scalp, usually, partly or entirely fails over the opening in the skull; the eyes stand prominently out, and the forehead slopes sharply backward. This malformation may occur in otherwise well-developed children.

*Hydrocephalus*.—This lesion has been already considered above. It is probable that in some cases *hydrocephalus internus* is due to a primary *partial anencephalia*, and that the accumulation of fluid

is of secondary occurrence. In rare cases, only part of one lateral ventricle is hydrocephalic, giving to the head a protuberance on one side. The viability of the fœtus depends upon the degree of the hydrocephalus. *Hydrocephalus externus* is an accumulation of serum beneath the pia mater, or, according to some authors, between the pia and dura mater. It causes dilatation of the cranium and compression of the brain. It is of very rare occurrence, and may also be secondary to partial anencephalia.

*Cephalocele* or *Brain Hernia*.—When abnormal openings exist in the skull from malformation, the contents of the cerebral cavity are apt to protrude in the form of larger or smaller sacs. This may occur in cases of well-marked anencephalia, or in cases in which the brain is well developed. The protruding sac formed of the meninges may or may not be covered with skin. If the contents of the sac are simply fluid, the lesion is called *hydromeningocele*; if composed of brain substance, *encephalocele*; if the sac contain both fluid and brain substance, it is called *hydrencephalocele*. The sacs may be very small or as large as a child's head. They may protrude from the top of the skull in acrania. They most frequently protrude through openings in the occipital bone, often hanging down in large sacs upon the neck; also at the root of the nose, along the line of the sutures, at the base of the skull, and elsewhere.

*Microcephalia*.—This is an abnormally small size of the brain, with a correspondingly small cranium. The diminution in size affects principally the cerebral hemispheres, though the other parts of the brain are also small. The convolutions are few and simple, the cavities often dilated with serum; on the membranes, there may be traces of inflammation. The cranium is small, the face large, the rest of the body small. The malformation is in some cases caused by inflammation or dropsy of the brain during fœtal life. It is endemic in some countries, but single cases may occur anywhere. The fœtus is viable. Absence or incomplete development of portions of the brain may occur, not only in idiots, but in persons whose minds are perfect.



## THE SPINAL CORD.

---

### THE MEMBRANES OF THE SPINAL CORD.

#### A.—THE DURA MATER SPINALIS.

The dura mater spinalis, unlike that of the brain, does not serve as periosteum to the bones forming the cavity, so that the lesions of the two membranes differ somewhat. *Hemorrhage* may occur as the result of injury between the dura mater and periosteum, or it may occur in tetanus, as a result of circulatory changes induced by muscular spasm, or in the asphyxia of new-born children. Small hemorrhages on the surfaces of the membrane may occur, as the result of inflammation.

Serous fluid may accumulate outside of the dura mater, as a result of post-mortem changes, or in connection with circulatory or inflammatory changes in the membranes.

#### *Inflammation.*

*Acute external Pacchymeningitis* is almost always secondary to disease or injury of the spinal column; and may result in collections of pus between the dura mater and periosteum, usually most abundant posteriorly. *Hemorrhagic pacchymeningitis* occurs in the dura mater spinalis, with the formation of products similar to those observed in the brain, in the chronic insane, and in drunkards. *Simple chronic pacchymeningitis interna*, with the formation of new connective tissue containing brain-sand, is not infrequent. The new tissue may form minute projections or roughness of the surface or, when more abundant, the *psammomata*. *Tubercular inflammation* of the dura mater spinalis may occur in connection with tubercular meningitis, or secondary to tubercular inflammation of the vertebræ.

*Tumors.*—*Fibromata*, *lipomata*, *chondromata*, *myxomata*, *endotheliomata* occur in the dura mater spinalis as primary tumors. *Carcinomata* and *sarcomata* may occur as secondary tumors. Small plates of new-formed bone are rarely found in the dura mater spinalis.

*Parasites.*—*Echinococcus* developing outside of the spinal canal may

perforate the dura mater ; or the cysts may lie between the dura mater and the pia mater.

It is obvious that even small tumors in the spinal canal may give rise to serious results from compression.

#### B.—THE PIA MATER SPINALIS.

It is almost impossible in most cases in the pia mater, as well as in the dura mater spinalis, and in the spinal cord, to judge with certainty from the appearances after death of the blood content of the vessels, of these parts during life. The same is true of abnormal quantities of serum found after death. The veins of the pia mater, especially in the posterior region, may be greatly distended with blood after death, without pre-existing disease; and the intermeningeal space may contain much fluid under the same condition.

*Hemorrhages* may occur from injury in connection with severe convulsions, or general diseases such as the hemorrhagic diathesis, scurvy, small-pox, etc. The hemorrhages under these conditions, except from injury, are not usually extensive. But in some cases of injury, or cerebral apoplexy; from the bursting of aneurisms of the basilar or vertebral arteries; or in cases in which we cannot find a cause, a very large quantity of blood may collect between the dura and pia mater, and in the meshes of or beneath the latter.

*Inflammation.*—*Acute exudative spinal meningitis* occurs under essentially the same conditions and with essentially the same post-mortem appearances as acute cerebral meningitis, though it is less frequent. The exudations are apt to be most abundant in the posterior portions. It may be associated with a similar inflammation of the pia mater cerebri, and the inner surface of the dura mater may be involved. The disease may be circumscribed, but usually affects the entire length of the membrane.

*Tubercular Inflammation* is usually most marked, when associated with a similar condition of the pia mater cerebri, in the upper portions of the cord; but it may extend over the entire membrane. The conditions under which it occurs and the character of the lesions are similar in both. *Chronic Spinal Meningitis* is not infrequent, manifesting itself in the formation of larger or smaller patches of new connective tissue or thickenings of the pia mater. The pia and dura mater may thus be firmly united in places by adhesions, or the pia mater may become closely adherent to the substance of the cord.

Not very infrequently large numbers of pigment-cells are found in the pia mater spinalis, sometimes giving it a distinct gray or blackish color.

*Tumors.*—Small plates of *cartilage* and *bone* are sometimes found in pia mater.

*Fibromata, myxomata, sarcomata, and endotheliomata* have been found.

*Parasites*.—*Cysticercus* sometimes occurs in the meshes of the pia mater.

#### THE SPINAL CORD.

*Hemorrhage*.—This is much less frequent than in the brain, but may occur either as *capillary apoplexy* or as larger *apoplectic clots*. Capillary hemorrhages, similar in appearance to those of the brain, may occur as the result of injury, or near areas of softening or tumors, or may accompany severe convulsions, as in tetanus. Apoplectic clots, which are comparatively rare in the spinal cord, are usually small, commonly not more than one ctm. in diameter, and are similar in their appearances and in the changes subsequent to their formation, to those of the brain. They are usually the result of injury; but may occur spontaneously, probably in most cases as a result of inflammation, and are then most apt to occur in the gray matter. Sometimes, however, hemorrhagic foci are found in the spinal cord without traumatism or evidence of inflammatory change.

#### INJURIES.

The spinal cord may be compressed or lacerated by penetrating wounds, by fracture, or dislocation of the vertebræ, or by concussion, without injury to the vertebræ. The spinal cord is found simply disintegrated, or there may be much hemorrhage and the disintegrated nerve-tissue be mixed with blood. If life continue, the nerve elements may degenerate, Gluge's corpuscles, and free fat-droplets may form; blood-pigment may be formed, and when inflammation supervenes, more or less pus may be intermingled with the degenerated detritus. There may be marked changes in the minute structure of the cord without any change being evident to the naked eye.

#### SECONDARY DEGENERATIONS IN THE SPINAL CORD.

When nerve-fibres of certain parts of the brain and of the spinal cord are divided or destroyed from any cause, that portion of them which becomes separated from its trophic centres degenerates. After a time—frequently two to four weeks—the medullary sheath and axis-cylinder disintegrate, becoming granular and fatty. These products of degeneration may be in part absorbed at once, or may collect in cells, forming the so-called compound granular corpuscles. After a still longer time—sometimes several months—the degenerated areas become gray in color, from the absorption of the degenerated myelin, harder, and somewhat shrunken. These changes are partly due to the formation of new connective tissue which takes the place of the degenerated nerve-fibres.

Since the affected portion of nerve-tissue becomes gray or translucent



after the myelin is broken down and absorbed, and the new connective tissue is formed, this is often called *Gray Degeneration*; or as the degenerated areas are harder than normal, it is sometimes termed *Sclerosis*.

Now it is found that this secondary degeneration takes place in the direction in which the fibres conduct—in centripetal or sensory fibres, upwards; in centrifugal or motor-fibres, downwards. Thus, we have *Descending Gray Degeneration (Descending Sclerosis)*, and *Ascending Gray Degeneration (Ascending Sclerosis)*.

*Descending Gray Degeneration.*—This change affects only the motor nerve-fibres, and may reach but a short distance from the seat of lesion, or may extend for a long distance, depending upon whether the severed fibres run a short or long course before reaching their termination, *i. e.*, passing into ganglionic centres. Lesions of the brain, such as embolic softenings and apoplectic clots, which destroy or interrupt any of the motor nerve-fibres originating in the central convolutions, may be followed by gray degeneration of the portion of the fibres situated peripherally to the lesion. These fibres pass through the corona radiata, anterior portion of the internal capsule, pes pedunculi, pons, and thence to the anterior pyramids where most of them decussate and pass to the posterior part of the lateral columns of the opposite side. Those which do not decussate form a narrow band at the inner part of the anterior columns of the same side, constituting the *columnns of Türck*. These fibres which convey motor impulses from the brain to the cord form a system called the *pyramidal tract*. There are also motor fibres in the anterior columns, forming the so-called *anterior root zones*, which maintain communications between different portions of the gray matter, and which are short.

Now a lesion in the brain or medulla, destroying the continuity of the motor nerve-fibres of the pyramidal tract, will be followed by areas of gray degeneration in the posterior part of the lateral column of the opposite side, and in a narrow band near the anterior longitudinal fissure of the same side. A lesion below the medulla, involving the fibres of the pyramidal tract, will be followed by degeneration of the fibres on the same side below the point of lesion. Lesions involving the fibres of the anterior root zones will be followed by degenerations which extend but a short distance, since these fibres soon communicate with their centres in the gray matter. If a part only of the fibres in any of these regions are interrupted, the amount of degeneration is proportionately small.

*Ascending Gray Degeneration.*—Any lesion interrupting the course of the sensory nerve-fibres in the cord is followed by degeneration of the central ends of the involved fibres, and increase of connective tissue about them. These fibres are in part situated in the posterior columns, and form communications between different parts of the gray matter—*posterior root zones*, and hence have not great length. Other sensory

fibres are grouped in a narrow band near the posterior longitudinal fissure, forming the *columns of Goll*, while another set, forming the so-called *direct cerebellar tract*, is situated in the periphery of the posterior part of the lateral columns.

A lesion of the cord involving the severance or destruction of these centripetal fibres will be followed by gray degeneration of the entire posterior columns and the cerebellar tract for a short distance above the lesion. The fibres of the posterior root zone being short, however, the degeneration will, at a short distance above the lesion, become limited to the columns of Goll, and the direct cerebellar tract in the lateral columns. The degeneration may be traced along the columns of Goll to the restiform bodies, and in the cerebellar tract to the cerebellum. Lesions involving the entire thickness of the cord will produce bilateral degenerations.

It should be borne in mind, in looking for these secondary lesions, that they are not developed until considerable time has elapsed since the primary lesion, and that, when small areas are involved, they are usually inconspicuous. In any event, the lesions are apt to be more evident to the naked eye in specimens hardened in chromic fluids than when fresh, and microscopical examination is often necessary for their recognition.

## INFLAMMATION.

### ACUTE MYELITIS.

This lesion of the spinal cord, which is sometimes distinctly inflammatory in character and sometimes of a rather degenerative nature, is usually confined to a comparatively limited longitudinal extent of the cord, and hence is sometimes called *transverse myelitis*. When the cord is removed and laid upon the table, if the lesion is marked, a flattening of the cord at its seat may be observed; or on passing the finger gently along the organ, the affected segment will be found softer than the rest of the cord. On making a section through the diseased portion, the nerve-tissue may be white or red or yellowish or grayish; it may be quite firm, but is usually more or less softened and sometimes almost diffuent.<sup>1</sup>

Microscopical examination shows different appearances depending upon the stage of the inflammatory or degenerative process. There may be much blood, or, if the lesion has existed for some time, blood pigment; also fragments of more or less degenerated nerve-fibres and cells (Fig. 73), myelin droplets, free fat-granules and larger and smaller cells filled with fat-granules (Gluge's corpuscles), pus-cells, granular matter, neuroglia

---

<sup>1</sup> It should be remembered that a mechanical injury to the cord in removal, such as crushing or bruising, may reduce the injured portion to a pulpy consistency and thus produce appearances somewhat similar to those of some forms of inflammatory softening.

cells, and sometimes corpora amylacea. The various combinations of these elements give rise to the different gross appearances which the diseased part presents. In earlier stages of the lesion, the blood-vessels may be dilated, the nerve-fibres and cells swollen; or the walls of the blood-vessels may be thickened or fatty.

The lesion is apt to commence in the gray matter or at its edge, and then extend first laterally and afterwards upwards and downwards.



FIG. 73.—DEGENERATED TISSUE FROM ACUTE MYELITIS,  $\times 400$  and reduced.

In a certain number of cases, the degenerated material may be absorbed and a cicatrix or cyst formed. In the least extensive forms of the lesion, there is apparently a regeneration of the nerve-fibres, and a restoration of the functions of the cord.

Secondary degeneration, both ascending and descending, may occur in this form of myelitis, varying in extent according to the size of the primary lesion.

*Acute disseminated Myelitis* runs a rapid course, and proves fatal in a short time. The inflammation involves nearly the whole length of the cord, but is more intense in some places than in others. The cord is swollen and congested, it is infiltrated with pus-cells, the connective-tissue framework is swollen, and the nerve-elements are degenerated.

*Poliomyelitis anterior (Myelitis of the anterior horns).*—This name is applied to a group of cases which are characterized by clinical symptoms indicating changes in the anterior gray cornua. The disease occurs both in children and in adults, and varies in the severity, acuteness, and duration of its symptoms. In many cases there is complete recovery, and then we must suppose that the changes in the nervous tissue were not destructive in their character. In other cases, the symptoms are more permanent, indicating a destructive lesion. The lesions are not as yet well established by actual observation. From the autopsies so far recorded, we learn that the lesion is most frequent at the lumbar and cervical enlargements of the cord, but may occur anywhere, and is often in scattered patches. There is degeneration, shrinkage, pigmentation, and atrophy of the ganglion-cells in the anterior gray cornua. There



may be an increase of connective tissue in the gray cornua, and in the anterior and lateral columns. There may be degeneration and destruction of a considerable part of the anterior cornua; there may be atrophy of the anterior nerve-roots.

#### CHRONIC MYELITIS.

*Chronic Interstitial Myelitis.*—Under this heading are embraced a variety of lesions which probably differ from one another somewhat in the nature of the changes involved, but more in the seat of the disease. We shall consider without special classification the most important forms.

*Chronic Transverse Myelitis.*—In certain cases of pressure on the spinal cord from a tumor or from displacement of the bones of the vertebral column, etc., instead of becoming softened or undergoing acute inflammatory changes, the cord becomes the seat of a localized formation of new connective tissue with consecutive atrophy of more or less of the nerve-elements in the gray and white matter. The cord becomes in this way harder, and sometimes shrunken at the seat of lesion, and grayish in color. This change may be followed by ascending and descending gray degeneration.

*Multiple Sclerosis.*—This lesion, similar in its nature to multiple sclerosis of the brain, and often occurring with it, seems to belong, like other chronic inflammations of the cord considered in this section, to the group of chronic interstitial inflammations. It consists in the formation, in more or less numerous, scattered, circumscribed areas, of new connective tissue, apparently derived from the neuroglia. The formation of new connective tissue is accompanied by degeneration and atrophy of the nerve-fibres and ganglion-cells. Whether the formation of new connective tissue is primary and the atrophy of the nerve-elements secondary, or *vice versa*, it is difficult to say. The new connective tissue consists of the characteristic branching neuroglia-cells surrounded by a more or less dense network of fine fibrillæ, many if not most of which seem to be branches of the neuroglia-cells. Corpora amylacea and sometimes fat-droplets, either free or contained in cells, may be present in the sclerosed areas.

The areas of sclerosis may involve both gray and white matter, and may be very small or large. If very small or in early stages of formation, they may not be recognizable by the naked eye, but when visible they are grayish, translucent, and firmer than the surrounding tissue, and may or may not present a depressed surface; they sometimes project above the general level. The cause of this, as of other forms of so-called idiopathic interstitial myelitis, is very obscure.

*Posterior Spinal Sclerosis (Locomotor Ataxia).*—This lesion (Fig. 74) consists essentially in a degeneration and atrophy of the nerve-fibres and an increase of connective tissue in the posterior columns of the spinal cord.

Not infrequently the posterior portion of the lateral columns, the posterior roots and cornua are also involved. Exceptionally a large part of the lateral columns is involved, and also the anterior cornua. The change

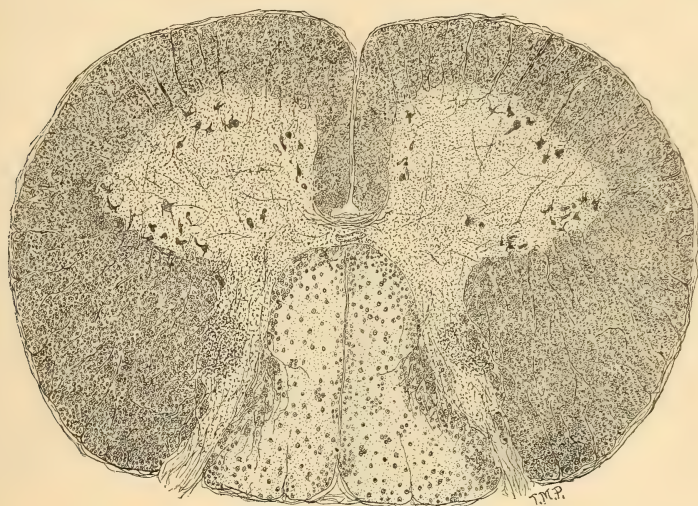


FIG. 74.—POSTERIOR-SPINAL SCLEROSIS—Upper Dorsal Region,  $\times$  about 8.

The specimen was stained by Weigert's fuchsin method. (See methods of microscopical study of central nervous system.)

usually commences in that portion of the posterior columns bordering on the posterior cornua, but may involve, as above stated, the adjacent

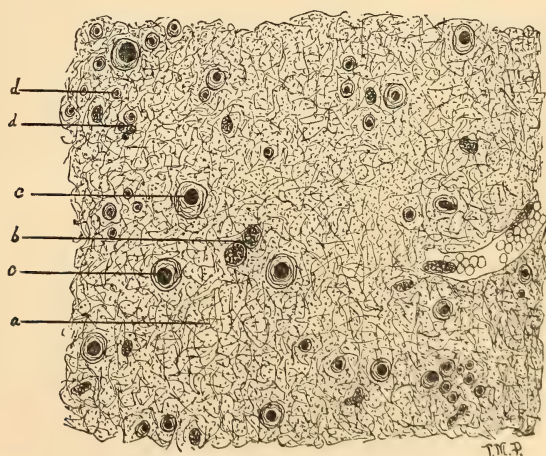


FIG. 75.—POSTERIOR SPINAL SCLEROSIS.

Portion of sclerosed area shown in Fig. 74, more highly magnified.

parts. It is usually most marked in the lower dorsal and lumbar regions. The sclerosis may extend upward to the restiform bodies, but

in the cervical region it is apt to be confined largely to the columns of Goll, although there are exceptions to this.

When the lesion is well developed, the pia mater over the affected area is usually thickened and adherent to the cord. In its early stages there may be no change evident to the naked eye; but when advanced, the posterior columns may appear somewhat depressed, and grayish and firmer than the rest of the cord. The microscopical appearances vary, depending upon the stage and extent of the lesion. The walls of the blood-vessels may be thickened; there is more or less new connective tissue consisting of neuroglia cells and very numerous interlacing, delicate fibrils. There may be numerous corpora amylacea and fat-granules either free or collected in cells. The nerve-fibres may be numerous, but separated more or less widely by the new connective tissue, or they may be very few in number and irregularly scattered through the new tissue (Fig. 75). The atrophy may involve the fibres of the posterior nerve-roots and cornua, and even the ganglion-cells of the latter.

According to the recent researches of Linauer,<sup>1</sup> the columns of Clarke in the dorsal region show in this disease a very constant and marked diminution in the number of delicate fibrils which under normal conditions surround the ganglion-cells.

In the rare cases in which the sclerosis extends to the lateral columns and to the anterior cornua, the minute characters of the lesions are the same.

There are other less important and less well understood forms of sclerosis of the white matter and degenerative or inflammatory changes in the gray matter of the cord; but so far as we know, the character of the lesions is essentially the same as those above described, except in their distribution. They are associated either with paralysis or changes in the muscles, and the secondary changes are for the most part better known than the primary alterations in the cord. Such lesions, which the scope of this book does not permit us to enter into, are *lateral sclerosis*, *peripheral sclerosis*, the lesions involving *muscular atrophy*, etc.

*Solitary tubercles* and *gummata* may occur in the spinal cord, but are not common. *Cysts* may occur as a result of softening, or from unknown causes. Sometimes very long narrow canals are found in the spinal cord, even reaching nearly its whole length. Some of these are evidently the dilated central canal, as they are lined with epithelium. Others, however, have been found behind the central canal, and their mode of origin is unknown.

*Tumors*.—Tumors of the spinal cord are not very common, much less so than tumors of the meninges. *Fibromata*, *gliomata*, *sarcomata*, and *neuromata* have been described as primary tumors. *Carcinomata*, as

---

<sup>1</sup>Fortschritte der Medicin, Bd. ii., No. 4, 1884.



secondary tumors, may occur. Tumors, of the meninges are apt to secondarily involve the cord.

A remarkable form of new growth on the cord has been shown to one of us (Delafield) by Dr. E. C. Seguin. The patient was a woman, thirty years of age. Two years before her death she received a severe blow on the back of the head. After this, first one side and then all the limbs became paralyzed. From this condition she recovered sufficiently to walk; but after a short time she again grew worse, and both arms and legs were paralyzed and contracted. She died of bronchitis. At the autopsy there were found two tumors on the spinal cord within the dura mater.

The upper tumor was on the anterior face of the cord just below the decussation of the medulla. It was of ovoid shape, and of the size of a pigeon's egg. It was composed of branched connective tissue with many round cells.

The lower tumor was on the posterior face of the cord, at the upper part of the lumbar enlargement. It was of the size and shape of a large, flattened cherry. It was composed of portions of two spinal cords fused together, with their long axes parallel to that of the normal cord. There were four patches of gray matter, having the shape of the cornua, containing ganglion-cells, and joined two and two by regular gray commissures, in each of which was a central canal. The gray portions were surrounded by tissue resembling the normal white substance of the cord.

#### MALFORMATIONS.

The spinal cord may be double either in circumscribed portions, or over a large part of its extent. It may be unusually long or short, or it may be absent altogether (*amyelia*). This usually occurs with anencephalia. Under these conditions a long connective-tissue sac filled with more or less fluid may occupy the spinal canal.

*Hydrorrhachis interna*.—This abnormality consists in the dilatation of the central canal of the spinal cord by fluid. This may be moderate, or so extreme that but little of the substance of the cord is left, as a thin shell around the central cavity.

*Hydrorrhachis externa*.—In this lesion there is an accumulation of fluid between the meninges of the cord, causing more or less atrophy of the latter.

*Hydromyelocele*—*Spina bifida*.—In the majority of cases, hydrorrhachis is accompanied by a more or less complete lack of closure of the spinal canal posteriorly, so that the collections of fluid within, pouch outward through the opening, in the form of a sac. The sac may be covered by skin, or this may be absent, either from the beginning or as a result of thinning and rupture. The walls of the sac may consist of the dura mater and pia mater, or, in cases of hydrorrhachis externa, of the dura mater alone; when both are present, they are usually more or less fused together. Inside of the membranes of the sac, there may be a shell of distended nerve-tissue of the cord, or the spinal cord may be split posteriorly and the sides crowded sideways; or there may be a rudimentary fragment of the cord suspended in the sac or attached to

the walls; or the cord may be but little changed and remain inside the spinal canal. The openings in the spinal canal may be due to the complete or partial absence of the vertebral arches, or more rarely the sac may protrude through openings between the completely formed arches. Spina bifida most frequently occurs in the lumbar and sacral regions, but it may occur in the dorsal or cervical regions; or the canal may be open over its entire length. Very rarely it is open on the anterior surface. The protruding sac may be very small or as large as a child's head. The fluid in the sac is usually clear, but may be turbid from flocculi of degenerated nerve-tissue.

#### THE PERIPHERAL NERVES.

*Changes in Nerves after Division.*—When nerves are divided or a portion destroyed by injury, the nutrition of certain parts of the fibres is interfered with, apparently because of their separation from their trophic centres, and they suffer degeneration; but after a time, if the conditions be favorable, they may undergo regeneration and restitution of function. The trophic centres of motor or efferent nerves are in the anterior cornua of the spinal cord, while those of the afferent or sensory nerves are in the spinal ganglia. As the degeneration of the nerve-fibres occurs in that part which is severed from their trophic centres, it follows that any division of motor-nerve fibres outside of the spinal cord will be followed by degeneration of the entire separated portion of the nerve, while a division of the sensory fibres between the ganglion and the spinal cord will be followed by degeneration of the spinal end, but not of the peripheral portion. In any mixed nerve outside of the spinal canal a division will be followed by degeneration of all the fibres, both motor and sensory. The degeneration not only affects the entire severed portion, but it occurs at nearly the same time in all parts. The degeneration consists in the breaking up of the medullary sheaths into variously shaped droplets, and the decomposition of these, with the formation of fat, which may remain for some time either free or inclosed in cells, and finally be absorbed. The axis cylinder, too, is, in many cases at least, more or less completely destroyed. The neurilemma and its nuclei do not seem usually to undergo degeneration, but may persist and form part of the regenerated nerve when restitution occurs.

After a variable time, if the conditions are favorable, the divided ends of the nerve may be united and a regeneration or new formation of nerves in or about the severed portions may occur, so that the function may be resumed. Considerable time is required, frequently months, for the completion of the regenerative process. Degeneration of the nerves not only follows mechanical injuries, such as incision, crushing or tearing, and compression, as from a tumor or dislocation of the bones; but it may result from disease of the special nerve-centres with which the

nerves communicate; from inflammation of the nerves themselves; or from causes which are unknown to us, as in certain forms of lead-poisoning, etc.

*Acute Neuritis.*—Primary acute inflammation of the nerves may occur as the result of injury, or it may be secondary to an inflammatory process in its vicinity, although, owing to the dense, lamellar sheaths and the special blood supply, the nerve-trunks may escape participation in even very severe inflammatory processes in surrounding tissues. The inflamed nerve may be red and swollen and infiltrated with serum and pus-cells. The process may undergo resolution or terminate in gangrene and destruction of the nerve, or it may become chronic and result in the formation of new connective tissue.

*Chronic Neuritis.*—This is essentially a chronic interstitial inflammation resulting in an increase of connective tissue in the nerve-sheath and intra-fascicular bands. As a result of this, the nerve-fibres undergo atrophy from pressure; the medullary sheath, and finally the axis-cylinder, being in more or less of the fibres partially or completely destroyed.

*Syphilitic and Tubercular Inflammation* of the nerves is not common except at their central ends, in connection with similar inflammations of the meninges, or when they are secondarily involved in connection with these inflammations in neighboring tissues.

*Leprous Inflammation.*—This consists in the formation within the nerve of masses of new-formed tissue somewhat resembling granulation tissue, in whose cells multitudes of characteristic bacilli are uniformly found.<sup>1</sup> It constitutes the variety of leprosy known as *lepra anæsthetica*.



FIG. 76.—MULTIPLE FIBROMATA (FALSE NEUROMATA) OF PNEUMOGASTRIC NERVE, one-quarter natural size.<sup>2</sup>

*Tumors.*—The tumors of the nerves are such as consist largely of, or contain new-formed nerve-tissue—*true neuromata*; and the so-called *false neuromata* (Figs. 76 and 77), which are for the most part *fibromata* or *myxomata* of the connective tissue of the nerve. *Myxo-sarcomata* are less common, and *primary sarcomata* rare. The nerves may be secondarily involved in *sarcomata* or *carcinomata*, though not infre-

<sup>1</sup> See Leprosy.

<sup>2</sup> This drawing is made from a specimen taken from a case described in the *American Journal of Medical Sciences*, July, 1880, in which over 1182 tumors were found in the body. Fig. 77 shows the minute structure of the more typical of the tumors.



quently nerves pass through these tumors without being in the least involved in their peculiar structure.

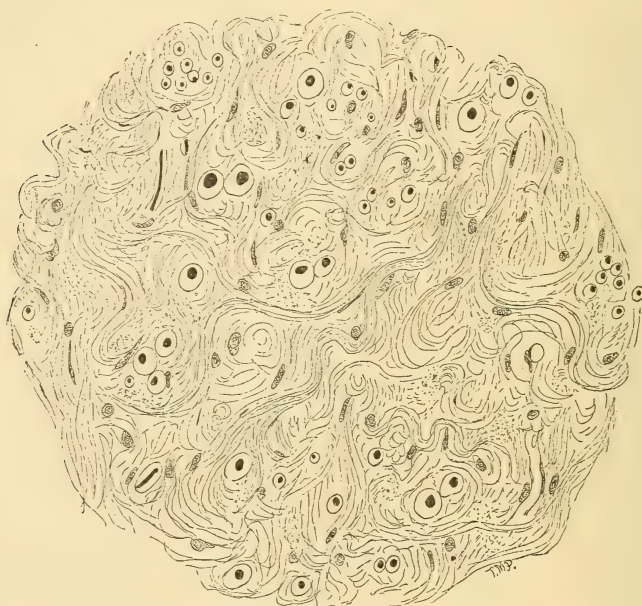


FIG. 77.—FIBROMA (FALSE NEUROMA) OF LUMBAR NERVE,  $\times 200$ .

The fibrous tissue was loose in texture and in places cedematous, so that it considerably resembled mucous tissue.

#### METHODS OF PREPARATION OF NERVE-TISSUE FOR MICROSCOPICAL STUDY.

The general methods of hardening have been already given on p. 41. For minute study there is no one method of staining and mounting upon which we can rely exclusively for the study of all lesions. A preliminary examination of areas of *inflammatory softening* or of the disintegrated tissue in *apoplectic clots*, or of the new-formed tissue in *chronic hemorrhagic pachymeningitis interna* may be made by teasing portions of the affected tissues in one-half-per-cent salt solution. Or the tissues in these lesions or in any others in which fatty degeneration is suspected may be placed for twenty-four hours in one-per-cent aqueous solution of osmic acid, and then washed and teased in glycerin. In this way the myelin and the fat will be stained brown or black. Secondary and other degenerations of medullated nerves may be studied by soaking the nerves for twenty-four hours in one-per-cent solution of osmic acid, and then staining with picro-carmin and teasing and mounting in glycerin. Suppurative inflammation of the central nervous system and the membranes, or the connective-tissue changes in general, may be studied in

sections from the tissues hardened in Müller's fluid and alcohol, stained double with hæmatoxylin and eosin (see p. 44), and mounted in Canada balsam.

A very valuable method for the study of any of the forms of chronic interstitial inflammation of the central nervous system, with associated atrophy of the nerve-fibres; or for the identification of nerve-fibres in true neuromata, or other tumors containing nerves, is the *acid fuchsin staining of Weigert*. The following is the mode of procedure in staining by this method. The tissues must be well hardened in Müller's fluid. Alcohol may be used to complete the hardening. The staining agent is the so-called acid fuchsin, which is rosanilin, in which one atom of H is replaced by the radicle  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$ . It is really a sulphate of rosanilin. Thin sections of nerve-tissues are stained for from one to twenty-four hours in a saturated aqueous solution of the fuchsin. They are then rinsed for an instant in water—each section should be handled separately—and then dipped for an instant in a saturated alcoholic solution of caustic potash, diluted with alcohol in the proportion of 1 to 10. The exposure to the alkali should be brief, the sections being merely dipped in and moved to and fro two or three times. A too long exposure will result in the complete removal of the color from the specimen and the failure of the operation. The sections are immediately transferred to a dish of pure water, which is changed two or three times to insure complete removal of the alkali. They are now dehydrated with alcohol, cleared up with oil of cloves, and mounted in balsam. The nuclei may be stained by hæmatoxylin before dehydration. The structural outlines are rendered more distinct and the color intensified by dipping the sections for an instant, after the removal of the potash, in a mixture of hydrochloric acid and water, 1 to 5. In sections prepared in this way, the connective-tissue elements are of a grayish or violet color, with indistinct outlines. The nerve-fibres are of a light or deep distinct red. The nerve-cells are not much stained, but usually stand out with distinctness.

The rationale of the process is as follows. The fuchsin stains the tissues diffusely, all of the structural elements being colored alike red. The potash removes the color from all of the structural elements, but with different degrees of rapidity, the nerve-fibres holding it more tenaciously than other elements, so that if the action of the alkali be stopped at the right moment, the differentiation is secured.

It is necessary to use a particular preparation of the acid fuchsin for obtaining these results: namely, that known as the acid fuchsin S. of the Baden anilin factory. This may be obtained from Meyrowitz Bros., cor. Fourth avenue and 23d street, New York.

This method is well suited for showing the nerve-fibres, and their courses in normal nerve-tissues.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Another most excellent method of demonstrating the nerve-fibres in the cen-

To demonstrate the presence of miliary aneurisms in or about apoplectic clots, it is usually necessary to macerate the brain-tissue in water until the nerve elements disintegrate, and they may then be washed away under a stream of water, leaving the blood-vessels with their aneurisms exposed.

---

tral nervous system, both in health and disease, may be found described by Weigert in "*Fortschritte der Medicin*," Bd. 2, No. 6, 1884. By this method the nerve-fibres are stained black, while the remaining elements are of a yellowish or brown color.



## THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM.

---

### THE LARYNX AND TRACHEA.

#### MALFORMATIONS.

The larynx and trachea may be entirely absent in acephalic monsters. The larynx may be abnormally large or small. The epiglottis also may be too large, or too small, or may be cleft. There may be communications between the trachea and the œsophagus, and then the pharynx generally ends in a cul-de-sac and the œsophagus opens into the trachea. There may be imperfect closure of the original branchial arches, so that there are fissures in the skin leading into fistulæ which open into the pharynx or trachea. The fissure in the skin is small, and is situated about an inch above the sterno-clavicular articulation, usually on one or both sides, more rarely in the middle line. Individual cartilages, as the epiglottis, or one or more rings of the trachea may be absent, or there may be supernumerary rings. The trachea may divide into three main bronchi instead of two, and in that case two bronchi are given off to the right lung and one to the left. The trachea may be on the left side of the œsophagus, or behind it.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Acute Catarrhal Laryngitis.*—This occurs as an idiopathic inflammation, as a complication of the exanthemata and the infectious diseases, and is produced by the inhalation of irritating vapors and of hot steam and smoke. The inflammation varies in its intensity in different cases. The mucous membrane is at first congested, swollen, and dry; then the mucous glands become more active and an increased quantity of mucus is produced. There is an increase in the desquamation of the superficial epithelial cells, and in the production of the deep cells. A few pus-cells are found in the mucus and in the stroma of the mucous membrane. For some reason inflammation of the larynx is frequently attended with spasm of its muscles, thus producing attacks of suffocation. In severe cases œdema of the glottis is developed.

After death, the congestion of the mucous membrane frequently disappears altogether.

*Chronic Catarrhal Laryngitis.*—There is a thickening and increase of the connective-tissue stroma of the mucous membrane. The epithelial cells are deformed, and may desquamate so as to form superficial ulcers. The mucous glands are swollen and prominent or may be inflamed and form ulcers. The inflammation may extend to the perichondrium of the cartilages.

*Croupous laryngitis* occurs most frequently as the lesion of diphtheria; it may also complicate the exanthemata and the infectious diseases, or be due to the inhalation of steam or smoke, or it may occur as an idiopathic inflammation.

The mucous membrane is swollen and congested. Its surface is coated with a layer of fibrin and pus, and its stroma is infiltrated with fibrin and pus. The epithelial cells may die and fall off with the false membrane. The quantity of fibrin and pus produced varies in the different cases.

*Inflammation of the submucous connective tissue* occurs as:

(1) *Œdema glottidis.* Here we find the epiglottis swollen, and from its base two bags of serum, formed of the aryteno-epiglottidean folds, extend backward. This œdema is often sufficient to close the larynx and cause death. It accompanies acute catarrhal laryngitis, small-pox, typhoid fever, syphilitic and tuberculous ulcerations, facial erysipelas, and perichondritis.

(2) *Purulent inflammation* may attack the same parts which are implicated in œdema glottidis, and cause death in the same way.

*Perichondritis.*—Inflammation of the perichondrium of the cartilages of the larynx may be idiopathic or secondary to inflammations of the mucous membrane, especially tubercular and syphilitic inflammation. It usually attacks first the cricoid cartilage, and extends later to the other cartilages. The inflammation causes the production of pus and separation of the perichondrium from the cartilage, with the death of the latter. The cartilage is usually found ossified, sometimes carious, sometimes degenerated and softened without ossification. The pus spreads to the submucous tissue, collects in abscesses, and may cause death by suffocation, or may perforate the mucous membrane. When the inflammation extends outward, abscesses and sinuses form on the outside of the larynx, and may perforate through the skin of the neck. Portions of the necrosed cartilages may find their way into the cavity of the larynx and be coughed out, or may become fixed in the rima glottidis and cause suffocation, or may pass into the bronchi. In other cases, the portions of cartilage may be discharged outward through openings in the skin.

*Syphilitic Laryngitis.*—Constitutional syphilis shows itself very fre-

quently in the larynx. It produces here simple catarrhal inflammation, either acute or chronic. The chronic inflammations are attended with the production of superficial and deep ulcers, irregular hypertrophy of the stroma of the mucous membrane and perichondritis. Sometimes mucous patches or condylomata are found.

*Tubercular Laryngitis* presents us with lesions due partly to chronic catarrhal inflammation and partly to the formation of tubercle tissue. The chronic inflammation causes changes in the epithelium, superficial ulcers, hypertrophy and ulceration of the mucous glands, hypertrophy of the stroma, and perichondritis. The tubercle tissue is formed in the stroma, close under the epithelium. It degenerates and softens in the usual way, and so produces large ulcers. Tubercular laryngitis is, as a rule, associated with pulmonary phthisis.

#### TUMORS.

*Retention Cysts* of the mucous glands of the larynx may reach such a size as to form sacs projecting into its cavity.

*Papilloma* is the most frequent form of tumor of the larynx. The tumors grow most frequently from the vocal cords. They consist of a connective-tissue stroma arranged so as to form papillæ covered with epithelium.

*Fibromata*, *Lipomata*, *Myxomata*, and *Angiomata* are occasionally met with.

*Chondromata* grow from the normal cartilages and are usually multiple and sessile. They may project into the cavity of the larynx.

*Sarcomata* of the larynx have been seen in a considerable number of cases. They occur both in children and in adults. They are composed of fusiform or round cells, with a stroma which varies in quantity in the different cases.

*Carcinomata* may invade the larynx from the tongue or the pharynx, or may originate in it. They are composed of flat epithelial cells packed together in the usual way.

In the trachea, tumors are of rare occurrence, but occasional examples of growths similar to those in the larynx have been met with.

#### THE LUNGS.

The lungs are composed of a connective-tissue stroma containing blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves. This stroma is so arranged as to inclose rounded and irregular spaces—the air-vesicles and air-passages; to form a continuous membrane on the surface of the lung—the pulmonary pleura; bands which divide up the lung into lobules—the septa; and tubes by which the air enters the air-passages and air-vesicles—the bronchi. Each lung, therefore, is made up of bronchi, air-passages, air-vesicles, pulmonary pleura, blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.



The lungs thus formed are contained within the thorax, each in its separate cavity. The walls of these cavities are formed by the ribs and muscles, the diaphragm, and the mediastinum. Everywhere the cavities are lined by a connective-tissue membrane—the pleura. According to its position, we distinguish the costal, the diaphragmatic, and the mediastinal pleura.

The entire structure of the lungs, and with them the costal, diaphragmatic, and mediastinal pleura, may be the seat of morbid changes. Or the different parts of the lung: the bronchi, the septa and pulmonary pleura, the air-passages and vesicles, or the blood-vessels, may be diseased separately or in various combination. Or the costal, diaphragmatic, and mediastinal pleura may alone be changed.

So we have to describe separately the lesions of the pleura, the bronchi, the parenchyma of the lung, and its interstitial tissue, although these lesions are often associated.

## THE PLEURA.

### HYDROTHORAX.

Non-inflammatory accumulations of clear serum in the pleural cavities are of frequent occurrence. They are produced by the same causes which effect dropsy in other parts of the body—lesions of the heart, liver, and kidneys, and changes the circulation, and in the composition of the blood.

If the amount of serum is small, it is of little consequence; if it is large it may compress the lower lobes of the lungs and interfere with respiration.

There may be changes in the endothelium of the parietal pleura. Instead of the regular endothelium, large and small flat cells of irregular shape are found.

### HEMORRHAGE.

Extravasations of blood in the substance of the pleura are found in persons who have died after suffering from the infectious diseases; and as the result of injuries to the wall of the thorax.

Blood in large quantity in the pleural cavities is found after rupture of aneurisms, of the heart and pericardium.

Bloody serum in the pleural cavities is not often found with ordinary pleurisy. But with tubercular pleurisy and traumatic pleurisy it is not infrequently present.

### INFLAMMATION.

The inflammations of the pleura are all spoken of by the common name of pleurisy.

All the different inflammations of the lung are capable of being ac-

accompanied by pleurisies, which begin in the pulmonary pleura and extend to the costal.

Besides these, however, there are many pleurisies which belong primarily to the costal pleura and extend from there to the pulmonary pleura.

Such pleurisies occur as idiopathic inflammations, as complications of various diseases, as the result of injuries, or are produced by the inflammation of adjacent parts.

We can distinguish:

1. Pleurisy with the production of fibrin.
2. Pleurisy with the production of fibrin and serum.
3. Pleurisy with the production of fibrin, serum, and pus.
4. Chronic pleurisy with the formation of adhesions.
5. Tubercular pleurisy.

All the varieties of pleurisy can best be studied in the lesions which are developed in and on the costal pleura. The lesions can be observed in the human subject, and can be produced artificially in the lower animals. It is in these artificial pleurisies especially that we are able to see the early changes produced by the inflammation, and to watch the process step by step.

The free surface of the costal pleura is covered with a single layer of flat cells—the endothelium. The pleura itself is formed of planes of connective tissue, reinforced by elastic fibres. Connective-tissue cells with large bodies and branching processes are present in considerable numbers, being most abundant in the layers beneath the endothelium. In the connective tissue are embedded blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.

#### 1. *Pleurisy with the production of fibrin. Dry Pleurisy. Acute Pleurisy.*

This form of pleurisy is apt to involve circumscribed areas of the costal, mediastinal, diaphragmatic, or pulmonary pleura, less frequently the entire pleura of one side of the chest. While the inflammation is going on, the affected portion of pleura is coated with fibrin, the surface of the opposite portion of pleura is coated in the same way, and bands of fibrin join the two together. After the inflammation has run its course, we find the affected portion of pleura thickened by the formation of new connective tissue, while bands of connective tissue extend between the opposed pleural surfaces.

As an exceptional condition there is inflammation of the entire pleura of one side, with the production of such an enormous amount of fibrin as to compress the lung and cause death.

#### 2. *Pleurisy with the production of fibrin and serum. Pleurisy with Effusion. Subacute Pleurisy.*

This is the most common form of pleurisy. As a rule, it involves the greater part of the pleura of one side of the chest. Sometimes, however,

the pleura of both sides of the chest is involved, and then the pericardium also is often inflamed.

While the inflammation is in progress, the surface of the affected pleura is coated with fibrin, and bands of fibrin stretch between the parietal and pulmonary pleura. In the pleural cavity is serum in variable quantity. This serum is clear, or turbid from the presence of pus-cells and flocculi of fibrin. The lung is compressed in different degrees and positions according to the quantity of the serum, and the character of the adhesions.

If the patients recover, the serum is absorbed, the fibrin disappears, and there are left behind connective-tissue thickenings of the pleura and adhesions.

These two forms of pleurisy, although different in their clinical histories, are yet anatomically essentially the same. In both of them we find a regular sequence of changes. First, the production of fibrin and a few pus-cells, either with or without serum. Second, a gradual absorption of the serum and fibrin. Lastly, the formation of permanent new connective tissue in the form of adhesions or of thickenings of the pleura. Throughout the whole process the tissue of the pleura is but little changed, the products of inflammation, although they originate in the tissue of the pleura, do not infiltrate it, but make their way to its surface, there accumulate, and there undergo their different changes. Variations from the regular course of the inflammation are effected by the excessive formation either of the fibrin, the pus, or the serum, and by the manner in which these inflammatory products are absorbed.

If we endeavor to follow out the successive changes by which the fibrin, pus and serum make their appearance and then disappear, and the way in which permanent new connective tissue takes their place, we encounter several difficulties. It is impossible to obtain autopsies which will give the lesions belonging to each successive day of the disease; the pleura does not really show well, if the patient has been dead more than two or three hours before the autopsy; and in most cases the inflammation is too intense, its products are too abundant to be easily studied.

To obviate these difficulties we must resort to the lower animals. By injecting a solution of chloride of zinc into the pleural cavities of dogs, we can excite pleurisies exactly resembling those which we see in the human subject. By varying the amount of fluid injected, we can obtain pleurisies of different degrees of intensity. By using a number of animals, we can observe the course of the inflammation from hour to hour, and from day to day.

In such an artificial pleurisy the first change is congestion. The pleura is of a uniform bright red color, its surface moist and shining. There is, as yet, no serum and no fibrin. Already, however, the endothelial cells have fallen off in patches, the superficial connective-tissue



cells are swollen and increased in number, and a few pus-cells are present. These are all the changes for from half an hour to six hours after the irritant has been applied to the pleura.

The next step in the inflammatory process is the production of serum and fibrin. The serum collects in the bottom of the pleural cavity, the fibrin coats the pleura. As the fibrin is produced the pleura loses its natural moist and shining appearance. The fibrin appears first in the form of little granules, knobs, and threads between the edges of the endothelial cells and overlying them. A few pus-cells are entangled in the fibrin, and infiltrated in the superficial layers of the pleura. The swell-



FIG. 78.—AN ARTIFICIAL PLEURISY OF TWENTY-FOUR HOURS' DURATION,  $\times 750$  and reduced. Swelling and growth of the connective-tissue cells in the pleura.

ing and new growth of the connective-tissue cells are now well marked. The bodies of the branching cells are swollen, and small polygonal, nucleated cells, arranged in rows between the fibres of the basement substance, make their appearance. By the end of twenty-four hours these changes are fully developed (Fig. 78).

After this the production of fibrin, serum and new connective-tissue cells continues, and by the third or fourth day the new connective-tissue cells are present, not only in the superficial layers of the pleura, but also in the layer of fibrin coating its surface and forming adhesions.

By the fourth or fifth day, the cells in the fibrin are still more numerous, blood-vessels make their appearance, which can be injected from the arteries of the pleura (Fig. 79).

After this the serum is gradually absorbed. The layer of fibrin and cells on the surface of the pleura exhibits a constant decrease of fibrin

and increase of cells, and becomes more intimately connected with the surface of the pleura.

By the fourteenth day the fibrin has disappeared, and a basement substance has been formed between the cells. Of the new cells the superficial ones are changed into endothelium, the deeper ones into branching



FIG. 79.—ARTIFICIAL PLEURISY ON THE FIFTH DAY,  $\times 750$  and reduced.  
The layer of new tissue on the surface of the pleura.

cells. The changes in the adhesions between the pulmonary and costal pleura are the same as those in the layer of fibrin coating the costal pleura.

The lesions of human pleurisy seem to be essentially the same as those of the artificial pleurisy just described. But the inflammatory products are formed in larger quantities, a much longer time is required for their absorption, and the formation of new connective tissue follows more slowly.

In these forms of pleurisy, therefore, two distinct processes take place.

1. The blood-vessels are congested, and through their walls transude the plasma of the blood and a few white blood-globules.

2. The superficial connective-tissue cells are increased in size and number.

The products of the first of these processes, the fibrin and serum, are regularly reabsorbed.

The product of the second of these processes, the new connective-tissue cells, regularly increases until a layer of new connective tissue is formed.

The natural termination of such a pleurisy is the recovery of the patient with thickenings of the pleura and adhesions.

The irregular terminations are : the death of the patient, the protracted existence of the fibrin and serum, and the change of the character of the inflammation so that pus is produced.

### 3. *Pleurisy with the production of fibrin, serum, and pus. Empyema.*

This form of pleurisy may occur under several different conditions.

1. The inflammation is at the very outset of severe character with the formation of pus.

2. A pleurisy with the production of fibrin and serum, either gradually or suddenly, changes its character, and pus is formed.

3. Phthisical areas of softening, or abscesses of the lung, abscesses in the wall of the thorax, or in the liver, or in the abdomen rupture into a pleural cavity and set up an empyema.

4. The inflammation may be not only purulent, but also gangrenous in character. The fluid in the pleural cavity, the fibrin and pus coating the pleura, and the pleura itself may putrefy, with the production of bacteria and the evolution of gases. This may take place either in a closed pleura or in one which has been opened.

5. If there is an opening into a pleural cavity, either through the lung or through the wall of the thorax, there is air in the pleural cavity in addition to the inflammatory products. Such a condition is called *pyo-pneumothorax*.

In all these different cases the pleural cavity is partly or completely filled with purulent fluid, and the lung is either compressed against the vertebral column, or partly adherent to the chest-wall. Sometimes, however, the purulent fluid is shut in by adhesions, either between parts of the lung and the thoracic wall, or between the lung and the diaphragm, or between the lung and the pericardium, or between the lobes of the lung.

The fluid in the pleural cavity is usually a thin, purulent serum, composed of serum, pus-globules, endothelial cells, and pieces of fibrin. But sometimes this fluid is very thick and viscid.

In empyema in its earlier stages, the lesions are the same as those in pleurisy with effusion, with the addition of pus in the serum, the fibrin, and the superficial layers of the pleura.



In children, the inflammation may remain in this condition for a long time, but in adults other changes in the pleura are soon developed.

These changes consist in the growth of a large number of small polygonal and round cells, the basement substance is split up, and the pleura is changed into a tissue resembling granulation tissue.

The pleura is thus considerably thickened. Its surface is coated with fibrin and pus, or is bare like the surface of an ulcer.

In this condition the pleura may remain for months or years; its inner layers formed of granulation tissue, its outer layers of dense connective tissue.

Sometimes the cell-growth is more active, necrotic changes are added, and so there is a conversion of portions of the pleura into pus. Such a suppuration may extend from the pleura to the fasciæ, the muscles, the skin, the diaphragm, or the lungs. Thus the pus may find an exit through the wall of the thorax, into the peritoneal cavity, or into the lungs.

If the empyema becomes gangrenous, the pleural cavity contains foul gases, the purulent serum is dirty and stinking, and swarms with bacteria. The fibrin coating the pleura is of green or brown color. Portions of the pleura itself may also become gangrenous.

In old cases, the thickening of the pleura may reach an enormous degree, and it may become calcified. The perichondrium of the cartilages and the periosteum of the ribs may become inflamed, with necrosis of the cartilages and ribs, or a production of new bone.

Empyema is, therefore, a very much more serious lesion than the two forms of pleurisy just described. The lesions involve not merely the surface of the pleura, but its entire thickness. When the pleura has thus been converted into granulation tissue it is hardly possible for it to return to a normal condition.

It is important to remember that in children the changes in the pleura itself are less profound, and that in adults they become more and more marked; according to the duration of the disease.

#### 4. *Chronic Pleurisy, with the formation of adhesions.*

This form of pleurisy may follow one of the varieties of pleurisy just described, it may be associated with emphysema and chronic phthisis, or it may occur by itself.

After death the pulmonary and costal pleura are found thickened, and joined together by numerous adhesions. These changes may involve only a part, or the whole of the pleura on one or both sides of the chest.

The thickened pleura is covered with endothelial cells which are increased in size and number; the connective-tissue cells in the pleura are also increased in number, and the blood-vessels are more numerous.

The adhesions are formed of connective tissue resembling that of the costal pleura, containing blood-vessels and covered with endothelium.

### 5. *Tubercular Pleurisy.*

In acute general tuberculosis, miliary tubercles are often present in the pleura. In acute and chronic phthisis, besides the fibrin, pus, serum, and new connective tissue so often produced, there may also be miliary tubercles, or larger flat, cheesy nodules.

There are, however, cases of tubercular pleurisy which have the characters of a local tubercular inflammation. Tubercles are either absent altogether from the rest of the body, or of secondary importance to the pleurisy.

This form of pleurisy involves the pleura of one side of the thorax only.

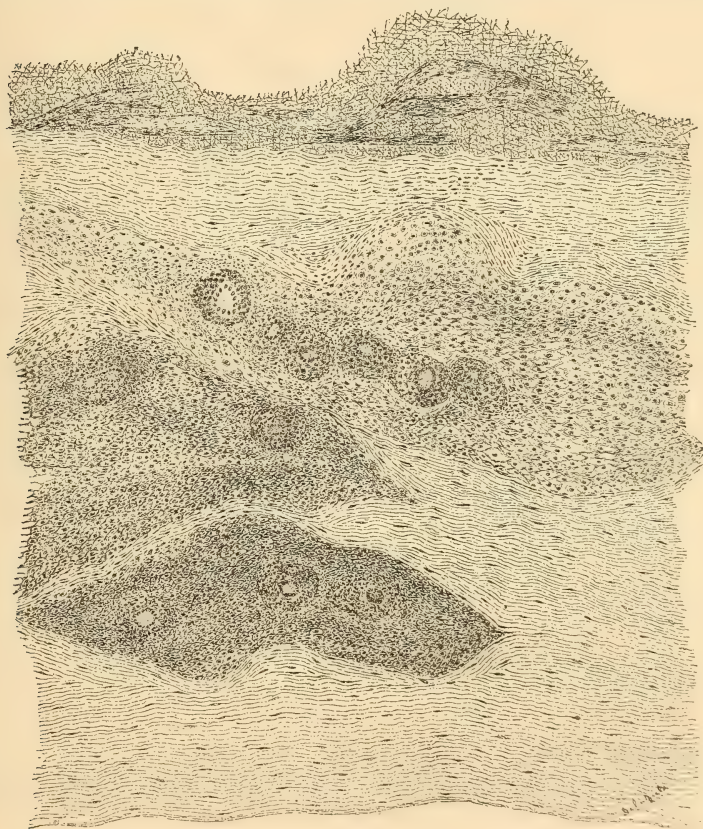


FIG. 80.—TUBERCULAR PLEURISY,  $\times 90$  and reduced.  
A vertical section of the costal pleura.

It may be rapidly developed, the patient dying at the end of two weeks; or it may continue for months. It seems to be very fatal.

The inflammation may be confined to the costal pleura, or may involve also the diaphragmatic and pulmonary pleura. The gross appearance of the lesion varies.

1. The pleura is thickened, its surface is bare of fibrin; it is of a bright-red color from the congestion of the blood-vessels, and this red surface is mottled with white dots—the miliary tubercles. In the pleural cavity is bloody serum.

2. The pleura is thickened, it is thickly coated with fibrin, no tubercles are visible to the naked eye; the pleural cavity contains clear serum.

3. The pleura is thickened and the pleural cavity contains purulent serum.

In all the cases, the changes in the pleura itself are essentially the same. The thickened pleura is infiltrated with new connective-tissue cells. Scattered through its entire thickness are tubercle granula, either single or joined together by diffuse tubercle tissue. The smaller blood-vessels show a growth of their endothelial cells.

#### *New Growths.*

*Fibroma.*—Little white or pigmented fibromata of the size of a pin's head are often present in the pulmonary pleura.

Larger fibrous tumors are formed in the deeper layers of the costal pleura, and project into the pleural cavity. They may become detached and are then found loose in the pleural cavity (Lebert).

*Lipoma.*—Fatty tumors are formed beneath the costal pleura, and project into the pleural cavity (Lebert).

*Carcinomata, Sarcomata, and Lymphomata* are usually secondary to similar tumors in other parts of the body.

A peculiar form of primary new growth in the pleura has been described by several observers.<sup>1</sup> It is associated with a pleurisy, with the production of fibrin and serum. There is a diffuse thickening of the costal pleura, or circumscribed nodules of different sizes.

The new growth seems to begin in the lymphatics of the pleura, which are distended with flat, nucleated cells.

I (Delafield) have seen two of these cases. The first case was a woman, fifty-three years old, who was ill with the symptoms of pleurisy, with effusion, for four months. After death, the left pleural cavity was found to be full of bloody, purulent serum. The costal pleura was moderately thickened and coated with a layer of fibrin and pus. Beneath the fibrin and pus was a thin layer of granulation tissue. In this tissue and in the pleura were anastomosing tubules filled with flat, nucleated cells. The tubules looked like lymphatics.

The second case was a man, sixty-three years old, who had the symptoms of pleurisy with effusion, for four months. After death, the right pleural cavity was found half full of bloody serum. The costal, diaphragmatic, and pulmonary pleura were coated with fibrin, and con-

<sup>1</sup> Birch-Hirschfeld, *Path. Anat.*, p. 768. E. Wagner, *Arch. d. Heilkunde*, xi. R. Schulz, *Arch. d. Heilkunde*, xv. Thierfelder, *Atl. d. path. Hist.*, 4 Lief.



tained numerous white nodules, some of them as large as a pigeon's egg. These nodules were formed of a connective-tissue stroma inclosing irregular spaces and tubules filled with flat, nucleated cells.

It is very difficult to class these tumors; whether to call them by the name of Carcinoma, Sarcoma, or Endothelioma is not easy to say.

## THE BRONCHI.

### *Inflammation.*

*Acute Catarrhal Bronchitis* is a disease of very common occurrence, but one which seldom proves fatal. Our knowledge of its lesions is derived from severe cases, from cases which are complicated by other diseases, and from the symptoms which we observe during life.

The inflammation involves regularly the trachea and the larger and medium-sized bronchi, less frequently the smaller bronchi also. As a rule, the bronchi in both lungs are equally affected.

The first change seems to consist in a congestion and swelling of the mucous membrane, with an arrest of the functions of the mucous glands. This is attended with pain over the chest, a feeling of oppression, sometimes spasmodic dyspnoea, and a dry cough. After this, the mucous glands resume their functions with increased activity, the congestion diminishes, there is an increased desquamation of epithelium, an increased formation of the deeper epithelial cells, and a moderate emigration of white blood-globules. Sometimes the red blood-globules also escape from the vessels. The patient now has less pain and oppression, the cough is accompanied with an expectoration of mucus mixed with epithelium, pus, and sometimes blood.

After death the only lesions visible are the increased amount of mucus, the growth of new epithelium, a few pus-globules infiltrating the stroma, and the general congestion of the mucous membrane. The whole process is a superficial one, not producing any changes in the walls of the bronchi beneath the mucous membrane.

When the inflammation involves the smaller bronchi also, they may be full of pus, but their walls are unchanged.

The filling of the small bronchi may result in the collapse of the groups of air-vesicles to which they lead, and thus are produced areas of atelectasis, which may be further changed by inflammatory processes.

### *Acute, intense, general Bronchitis, Capillary Bronchitis.*

This is for convenience described here as a separate lesion, although it is really almost always a broncho-pneumonia, from the extension of the inflammation to the air-vesicles.

The trachea, and most of the bronchi are inflamed. In the trachea and larger bronchi the inflammation is simply catarrhal, but in the smaller bronchi there are other changes. Their walls are thickened and

infiltrated with cells, their cavities may be dilated, the air-vesicles surrounding these bronchi are intensely congested or contain fibrin and pus. Areas of atelectasis may be produced by the plugging of small bronchi. The entire lung is large, heavy, and congested, and there may be fibrin on the pulmonary pleura.

Such a general bronchitis is a very serious lesion, often causing death. It is usually complicated by peri-bronchitic pneumonia and often by diffuse pneumonia.

*Chronic catarrhal Bronchitis.*—This form of bronchitis may be the sequel of one or more attacks of acute bronchitis. More frequently it is associated with emphysema, heart disease, interstitial pneumonia, phthisis, pleuritic adhesions, or the inhalation of irritating substances.

There is, in most cases, a constant production of mucus, pus, and serum in considerable quantities, and these inflammatory products may have a very foul odor. Less frequently these products are very scanty—dry catarrh.

In examining the bronchi in these cases after death, we are often struck by the want of proportion between the symptoms and the lesions. The same bronchi, which during life were constantly producing large quantities of inflammatory products and injuring the patient's health, after death may be but little changed from the normal. In other cases, however, the lesions are more marked.

The bronchi contain mucus and pus, they may be congested, their walls are often trabeculated. The epithelium is deformed and desquamating, with a production of new cells in the deeper layers. The mucous glands are enlarged. The connective-tissue stroma is thickened and infiltrated with cells. There may be cylindrical dilatation of one or more bronchi. Very frequently the epithelial cells of the air-vesicles and air-passages are increased in size and number.

*Acute croupous Bronchitis* occurs as a lesion of diphtheria, as associated with croupous laryngitis, as the result of the inhalation of hot steam, with lobar pneumonia, and sometimes as an idiopathic disease.

The bronchi are lined or filled with a mass of fibrin, pus, and desquamated epithelium. Fibrin and pus may also be found beneath the epithelium and infiltrated in the stroma.

*Chronic croupous Bronchitis* is attended with the formation in one or more bronchi of masses of fibrin which are expectorated by the patient in the form of branching casts of the bronchi. The disease is a very chronic one, and is often associated with phthisis. After death the bronchi are said to be found but little altered from the normal.

#### *Bronchiectasia.*

Dilatation of the bronchi presents itself under three forms: the cylindrical, the fusiform, and the sacculated.

The cylindrical dilatation is a uniform enlargement of one or more bronchi for a considerable part of their lengths. It is found in bronchi of every size, but most frequently in the medium sized.

The fusiform dilatation is a mere variety of the cylindrical. The bronchus is uniformly dilated for a short distance, and then resumes its natural size. Several such dilatations may be found in the same bronchus.

The sacculated dilatations form the largest cavities. These cavities communicate with one side of the bronchus, the peripheral portion of the bronchus may be obliterated. The bronchus leading to the cavity may be of normal size, or dilated, or stenosed, or even completely obliterated. Such sacculated dilatations may reach a very large size, and may communicate with each other.

Any inflammatory process which involves the thickness of the wall of a bronchus seems to be capable of producing dilatation of that bronchus.

In acute general bronchitis and broncho-pneumonia in children, cylindrical dilatation of a number of the medium-sized bronchi is often produced.

In the persistent broncho-pneumonia of children, such dilatations reach a still greater development.

In acute and chronic phthisis, tubercular inflammation gives rise to sacculated dilatations, which expand with time and are made still larger by the destruction of the adjacent lung tissue.

Chronic bronchitis may lead to cylindrical or sacculated dilatations, sometimes of great size.

The walls of these dilatations may preserve the characters of the wall of the bronchus more or less altered by inflammation, or these characters may be altogether lost. The dilatations may contain mucus and pus, or they may be empty.

#### *New Growths.*

*Ossification* of the walls of the bronchi is sometimes found.

*Lipoma* in the submucous connective tissue has been described by Rokitsansky.

*Carcinoma* of the walls of the bronchi may occur as a secondary lesion, but as a primary growth it is very rare.

Langhans<sup>1</sup> describes a primary carcinoma of the lower end of the trachea, and the large bronchi in a man forty years old. The lower end of the trachea and the large bronchi showed a general thickening of their walls with flat tumors projecting inwards. The new growth was composed of a stroma inclosing cavities filled with cells. The cells were small, nucleated, polygonal or cylindrical in shape and packed closely together. Apparently the new growth originated in the mucous glands.

---

<sup>1</sup> Virchow Arch., liii., p. 470.



I (Delafield) have seen one case of new growth of the lower end of the trachea and large bronchi, which I hardly know how to name. The patient was a woman, twenty-seven years old, who suffered for seven months from cough, constantly increasing dyspnœa, and progressive emaciation. After death, the wall of the lower end of the trachea was found to be thickened. Its inner surface was studded with minute papillary outgrowths. The epithelial cells were increased in size and number, and in some places were replaced for considerable spaces by a regular layer of pavement epithelium. The mucous glands were hypertrophied. The wall of the trachea from the basement membrane to the cartilages was thickened by new connective tissue.

The walls of the large bronchi were very much thickened and their cavities nearly obliterated. The entire wall was thickened with new connective tissue. The epithelial layer was thickened, and in places replaced by patches of pavement epithelium. The mucous glands were enlarged.

*Sarcomata* of the walls of the bronchi occur as secondary growths, and as prolongations of similar growths in the mediastinum.

Primary sarcoma of the bronchi seems to be rare.

Hesse<sup>1</sup> describes a form of lympho-sarcoma, forming nodules around the bronchi, as of common occurrence among the miners in some cobalt and nickel mines.

#### THE LUNGS.

##### *Malformations.*

One or both lungs may be entirely wanting, or only partially developed. In some of the cases with only one lung the patients have grown up to adult life.

A peculiar degeneration, by which the lung is converted into a number of sacs containing air and serum, the sacs communicating with the bronchi, has been seen in a few instances.

The lobes may be subdivided by deep fissures. An accessory lobe, separated from the lung, between the base of the left lung and the diaphragm has been described by Rokitsansky.

There may be hernia of the lung, with absence of part of the wall of the thorax.

There may be transposition of the lungs, with similar changes in the position of the heart and the abdominal viscera.

##### *Injuries. Perforations.*

Severe contusions of the thorax may produce rupture of the lungs, with extravasation of blood into the pleural cavities.

The lungs may be wounded by a fractured rib, and by penetrating

---

<sup>1</sup> Arch. f. Heilkunde, xix., p. 160.

weapons and projectiles. Such injuries often produce bleeding into the lung tissue and inflammatory changes. The lungs, however, exhibit a considerable degree of tolerance for such injuries, and the patients often recover.

Collections of pus in the pleural cavities, the mediastinum, the liver, the spleen, the kidneys, and the peritoneal cavity may perforate the lungs.

### *Congestion and Œdema.*

These two conditions are regularly associated with each other in the lungs, although one or the other of them may preponderate in different cases.

A moderate degree of congestion and œdema of the posterior portions of the lungs is often found as a result of post-mortem changes.

In persons who have been comatose from any cause for some hours before death, congestion and œdema of the lungs are regularly developed.

With disease of the heart, kidneys and lungs, the congestion, and especially the œdema, may be excessive. The lungs may be so completely infiltrated with serum as to be unaërated. Such a solid œdema of the lungs is sufficient of itself to cause death. It has been asserted by Welch<sup>1</sup> that the cause of such an excessive œdema is a paralysis of the left side of the heart, while the force of the right heart is unimpaired. Such an explanation seems to be plausible.

Patients confined to bed for a considerable length of time may develop congestion of the dependent portions of the lungs—*hypostatic congestion*. The affected portion of lung is shrunken, congested, and imperfectly aërated.

### *Hemorrhage.*

Extravasations of blood within the air-cavities are found with the general diseases which produce a disposition to bleeding in different parts of the body.

Blood from the bronchi or from cavities may be inspired into the air-vesicles.

Valvular lesions of the heart, especially of the mitral valve, are often accompanied by the production of hemorrhagic infarctions in the lungs. These infarctions are circumscribed, of rounded or wedge-shaped form, from the size of a walnut to that of an orange. They are of dark-red color, unaërated, the air-passages distended with blood, and are often surrounded by a zone of pneumonia. They may be situated in any part of the lungs, but are most common in the lower lobes. When they are near the surface of the lungs, a circumscribed pleurisy is often produced.

Such infarctions may produce death; they may become gangrenous.

---

<sup>1</sup> Virchow's Archiv, 72.

or the blood may become absorbed, or they may be gradually changed into a smaller mass of pigmented fibrous tissue.

It is probable that these infarctions are produced either by thrombosis of branches of the pulmonary artery, or by rupture of the capillaries.

Infarctions of smaller size, and with more disposition to be surrounded by inflammatory changes, are produced by emboli from the right side of the heart, and from thrombi in the veins of pyæmic patients. These infarctions are usually situated near the surface of the lung.

Hemorrhages with rupture of the lung-tissue are produced by severe contusions, by penetrating wounds, and by the rupture of aneurisms.

### *Emphysema.*

Emphysema is of two kinds—vesicular and interlobular.

1. *Vesicular Emphysema* is a permanent dilatation of the air-passages and vesicles of the lung.

A temporary dilatation of the air-passages and vesicles may be produced in a variety of ways. The bronchi may be partially obstructed, so that the air does not readily escape, and the lungs are found unnaturally inflated after death. Part of the lungs may be rendered solid by pneumonia, œdema, or compression; and the rest of the lung is dilated. For some reason, death may take place with the lungs excessively dilated, and this condition remains after death. None of these conditions constitute true emphysema.

Permanent dilatation of groups of air-vesicles often accompanies chronic phthisis and is then one of the lesions of that disease.

In true emphysema, the lesions are diffuse, involving the whole of both lungs. The lungs are large, often overlapping the heart and liver, sometimes pushing down the diaphragm. The air-vesicles and air-passages are so much dilated that they are readily seen with the naked eye, or several of them may be fused together, so as to form cavities of some size. The lungs may be pale and anæmic, or congested, or œdematous.

The walls of the air-vesicles are often thinned, and this atrophy may go on to complete absorption of the walls, so that a number of vesicles are converted into a common cavity. But, instead of these changes, the walls of the vesicles may remain of normal thickness, or may even be thickened. It is said that the capillaries in the walls of the vesicles become obliterated and degenerated, but this is certainly not always the case. We have frequently made complete artificial injections of the vessels and found all the capillaries intact, although sometimes small and with the spaces between them increased in size. There must, however, always be some mechanical obstruction to the circulation of the blood through emphysematous lungs, as evidenced by the venous congestion which is produced in other parts of the body.

The bronchi are regularly the seat of chronic catarrhal inflammation.



Thickening of the pulmonary pleura, pleuritic adhesions, and bands of fibrous tissue penetrating the lung are often found; and chronic miliary tuberculosis is not infrequently added to the other lesions.

When there is much bronchitis, a chronic pneumonia often exists, with the production of new epithelial cells on the walls of the vesicles; not, however, in sufficient numbers to fill their cavities.

The secondary lesions of emphysema are very important; they are due to the difficult passage of the blood through the lungs.

The capillaries of the pia mater may be dilated and tortuous, the pia itself thickened, and an increased amount of serum present beneath the pia.

The right ventricle of the heart may be dilated, with or without hypertrophy. The liver and the kidneys may be in the condition of chronic congestion.

Very often we find, as associated lesions, chronic endocarditis, endarteritis, cirrhosis of the liver, and atrophied kidneys.

*Interlobular emphysema* is not usually a lesion of much importance. It occurs most frequently with whooping cough. In rare cases, there is rupture of the pulmonary plura and pneumothorax, or the air may pass into the mediastinum, and from thence into the neck, producing general subcutaneous emphysema.

A remarkable case of interlobular emphysema and inflammation of the interlobular septa in a child after whooping-cough is described by Dr. W. P. Northrup.<sup>1</sup>

#### *Atelectasis.*

A collapsed and unaërated condition of portions of lung-tissue is either congenital or acquired.

(1.) In congenital atelectasis, portions of the lung are firm, non-crepitant, of a dark-blue or purple color, depressed and smooth on section. These portions can usually be artificially inflated, and then cannot be distinguished from the surrounding pulmonary tissue. This condition is produced by the inability of the child after birth to fully inflate its lungs, either from want of sufficient vitality or from obstruction of the bronchi. If the child lives for some time and the collapsed lobules are not inflated, they become hard and dense.

(2.) In young children, the smaller bronchi may become obstructed by the inflammatory products of bronchitis, and the corresponding air-vesicles will then collapse. We then find scattered through the lungs collapsed lobules like those in the new-born child. Inflammatory changes may be subsequently developed in the collapsed lobules.

(3.) In adults, large or small portions of lung-tissue may become col-

---

<sup>1</sup> American Journal of Medical Sciences, July, 1883.

lapsed as the result of bronchitis, of stenosis of a large bronchus, of compression of a bronchus, of paralysis of the pneumogastric, of compression of the lungs by fluid or by new growths, and of long-continued feebleness of the act of respiration.

### *Gangrene of the Lungs.*

It is customary to distinguish two forms of gangrene of the lung: the circumscribed and the diffuse; yet both can occur together.

Circumscribed gangrene occurs in the form of one or more rounded or irregular masses of variable size. The gangrenous portion of lung is at first brown and dry. The surrounding lung-tissue is congested, or œdematous, or infiltrated with blood, or inflamed. If the gangrenous focus is near the pleura, the latter will be coated with fibrin. Gradually the gangrenous portion of lung assumes a dirty-green color and a putrid odor. It becomes soft, broken down, and separated from the surrounding lung. The blood-vessels may be obliterated by thrombi, or eroded, so that there are profuse hemorrhages.

Such a gangrenous process may extend to the adjacent lung tissue, or a zone of gray or red hepatization or of connective tissue may be formed.

The fluid from the gangrenous lung may pass into the bronchi and be expectorated; or it may run from one bronchus into another, and set up new gangrenous foci, or a diffuse gangrene.

The pulmonary pleura may be perforated, and a gangrenous pleurisy produced.

Diffused gangrene may follow the circumscribed form; it may complicate lobar pneumonia, or occur as an idiopathic condition. A large part of a lobe or of an entire lung becomes greenish, putrid, and soft, and the pulmonary pleura is inflamed. There may be hemorrhages from eroded vessels. There may be general septicæmia.

### *Inflammation.*

The word 'Pneumonia' is employed as a general term, to designate all the inflammations of the lungs. Anatomically, there are five varieties of pneumonia: intra-alveolar pneumonia, interstitial pneumonia, broncho-pneumonia, syphilitic pneumonia, and tubercular pneumonia. The terms croupous and catarrhal should not be applied to designate any of the inflammations of the lung-tissue.

For practical purposes, it is more convenient to divide the cases of pneumonia into clinical groups. We will, therefore, describe:

Lobar pneumonia.

Secondary and complicating pneumonia.

The pneumonia of heart disease.

Broncho-pneumonia.

Interstitial pneumonia.

Syphilitic pneumonia.  
 Acute miliary tuberculosis.  
 Chronic miliary tuberculosis.  
 Acute phthisis.  
 Chronic phthisis.

### *I. Acute Lobar Pneumonia.*

The inflammatory process is from the first a diffuse one, involving the greater part of one or more lobes. The situation of the inflammation can be seen from the following figures compiled by Juergensen from 6,666 cases:

Right lung, 53.7%.	Left lung, 38.23%.
Upper lobe, 12.15%.	Upper lobe, 6.96%.
Middle lobe, 1.77%.	Lower lobe, 22.73%.
Lower lobe, 22.14%.	Whole lung, 8.54%.
Whole lung, 9.35%.	
Both lungs, 8.07%.	
Both upper lobes, 1.09%.	
Both lower lobes, 3.34%.	

In rare cases, nearly the whole of both lungs will become inflamed at the very onset of the disease.

The inflammatory process involves regularly the air-vesicles, the air-passages, the bronchi, the interstitial connective tissue, and the pulmonary pleura. It passes through four stages: congestion, red hepatization, gray hepatization, and resolution.

(1) *Congestion*.—The affected portion of lung is somewhat swollen and dense, congested, and œdematous. The air-spaces contain granules, reticulated fibrin, pus-cells, red blood-cells, and epithelial cells. The quantity of these inflammatory products, however, is very small—not sufficient to fill the air-spaces. The epithelial cells on the walls of the air-vesicles are swollen, the capillary plexus contains a large number of white blood-cells.

This first stage of congestion lasts usually only a few hours; from clinical experience it seems probable that it may last for one or two days. It is succeeded by

(2) *Red Hepatization*.—The affected portion of lung is now completely solid and unaërated. It is also increased in size, often so much increased as to compress the uninflamed lobe of the same lung, to push downward the diaphragm, or to give the surface of the lung an imprint of the ribs. The cut surface of the lung is of a uniform red color, or mottled with hemorrhagic spots. When fresh, it is dry and granular; as decomposition commences, it is covered with a thick, reddish fluid. The granules are plugs of inflammatory matter contained in the air-spaces.



The pulmonary pleura is coated with fibrin, and there may be a little serum in the pleural cavity.

The air-vesicles and air-passages are distended with fibrin, pus, epithelium, and red blood-globules (Fig. 81). The fibrin is coagulated in the form of a network or of granules; it is most abundant in the most severe

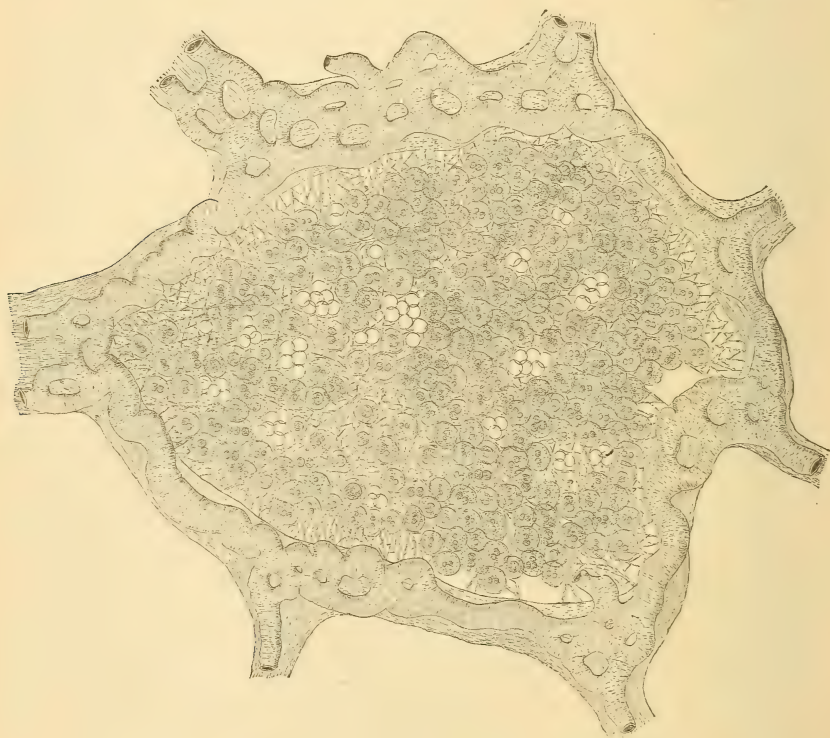


FIG. 81.—LOBAR PNEUMONIA, RED HEPATIZATION,  $\times 850$  and reduced.  
A single air-vesicle with its blood-vessels artificially injected.

cases. The pus-cells are numerous, the epithelial cells but few. The small bronchi are filled with pus and fibrin. The larger bronchi are lined or filled with fibrin and pus, or their mucous membrane is congested and coated with mucus. The interstitial connective tissue is infiltrated with fibrin and pus.

In my own experience, about one-fourth of all the fatal cases have died in the stage of red hepatization at periods varying between twenty-four hours and eleven days.

(3) *Gray Hepatization*.—Red hepatization gradually changes into gray hepatization, not uniformly, but in such a way that the lung is first mottled red and gray, and then completely gray.

The surface of a section of the lung is usually dry, as in red hepatiza-

tion, but in some cases, even within one hour after death, there is an abundant exudation of grumous fluid. This depends upon the small amount of fibrin and the large amount of pus, not upon an infiltration of the lung-tissue with pus.

The change in the color of the lung is due to the diminished congestion and the loss of color of the extravasated red blood-globules.

The products of inflammation within the air-spaces are the same as in red hepatization, but they are more closely packed together, the walls of the vesicles are more compressed, the epithelial cells and pus-cells are swollen and infiltrated with granules and small fat-globules.

I have found the condition of mottled red and gray hepatization in about one-half the fatal cases at from the second to the eighteenth day of the disease; the condition of complete gray hepatization, in about one-fourth of the cases, from the fourth to the twenty-fifth day of the disease.

(4) *Resolution*.—If the patients recover, the lung passes from the condition of gray hepatization into that of resolution. In this condition the lung seldom comes under observation, but occasionally the patients die from some complicating condition.

In such cases of commencing resolution, we find that the disappearance of the inflammatory products occurs in many separate places, so that the lung is mottled with areas of complete and incomplete hepatization, and aerated lung tissue. The fibrin seems to be absorbed, the pus and epithelium to degenerate; and partly by expectoration, partly by absorption, the air-spaces become cleared of all inflammatory products.

In the regular cases, the walls of the bronchi and of the air-spaces remain unchanged, so that when the patients have recovered, and the products of inflammation have been absorbed, the lungs return to a normal condition.

#### *Modifications of the Inflammatory Process.*

(1) The lung may remain in the condition of gray hepatization for several weeks without any attempt at resolution. It then becomes very firm, dry and white. The air-vesicles remain filled with fibrin, pus, and epithelium.

(2) In lungs which are already the seat of emphysema and chronic bronchitis, lobar pneumonia is characterized by the presence of an unusual number of epithelial cells.

(3) The quantity of fibrin produced may be so great that the walls of the vesicles are compressed, the blood ceases to circulate in them, and even an artificial injection does not fill the vessels.

In rare cases, such a compression of the vessels is followed by the death of small portions of lung-tissue. These necrotic portions become separated from the surrounding lung, which is infiltrated with pus and in this way abscesses are formed.

(4) The pus-cells may not only be present within the air-spaces, but they may also infiltrate to a moderate extent the walls of the air-vesicles.

(5) In rare cases the air-vesicles, instead of being filled with the ordinary inflammatory products, contain organized connective tissue with basement substance and cells, and new blood-vessels which can be artificially injected.

(6) The inflammation of the larger bronchi may be unusually devel-



FIG. 82.—ACUTE LOBAR PNEUMONIA WITH THE PRODUCTION OF ORGANIZED TISSUE IN THE AIR-SPACES,  $\times 130$  and reduced.

Section of a number of air-vesicles containing organized tissue.

oped; either catarrhal inflammation with the production of a large amount of mucus, or croupous inflammation with large cords of fibrin.

(7) The inflammation of the pleura may be unduly developed, either during the progress of the pneumonia, or while it is subsiding. Both the pulmonary and costal pleura are then coated with fibrin, and there is a considerable amount of serum in the pleural cavity.

(8) There may be gangrene of portions of the inflamed lungs.

The presence of a characteristic form of micrococci in lobar pneumonia has been determined by numerous observers. First described by Klebs,<sup>1</sup> they have been observed by Eberth,<sup>2</sup> Koch,<sup>3</sup> Friedländer,<sup>4</sup> Leyden,

<sup>1</sup> Klebs, *Arch. f. exp. Path.*, 1877, Bd. iv., p. 420.

<sup>2</sup> Eberth, *Deutsch. Arch. f. klin. Med.*, Bd. 28, 1881.

<sup>3</sup> Koch, *Mitt. a. d. k. Gesundheits-Amt*, Bd. I., p. 1, 1881.

<sup>4</sup> Friedländer, *Virch. Archiv*, Bd. 87, 1882; also, *Fortschritte der Medicin*, Bd. I., No. 22, 1883; Bd. II., No. 10, 1884.



and many others. According to Friedländer, whose researches on this subject have been most exact and extensive, these micrococci are constantly present in the lungs in the earlier stages of the disease, sometimes in very large numbers. They are spheroidal or ellipsoidal in shape, some of them nearly  $1\ \mu$  in the longest diameter, frequently are joined together

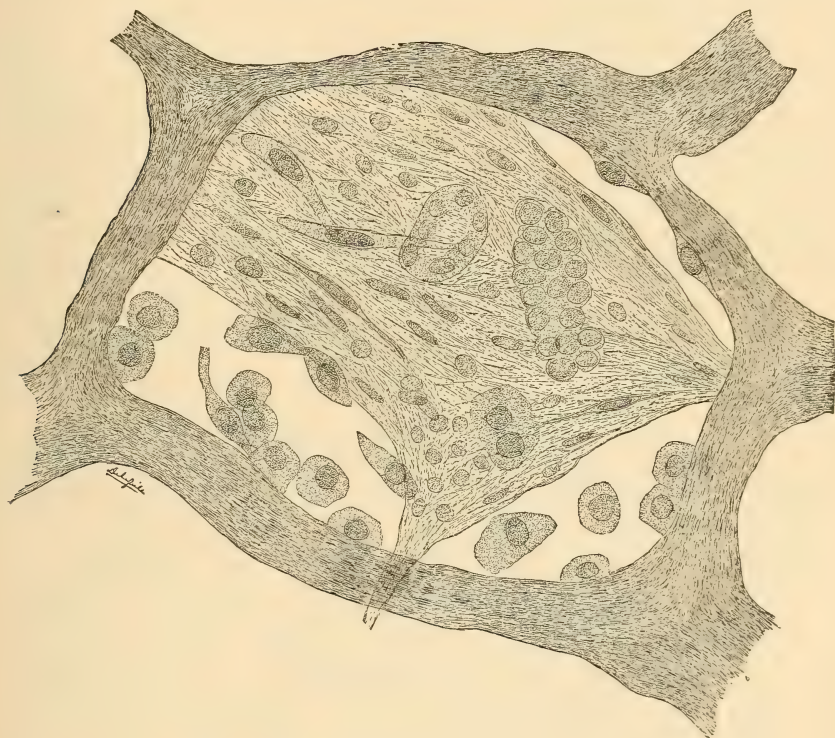


FIG. 83.—ORGANIZED TISSUE IN AN AIR-VESICLE,  $\times 850$  and reduced.

in pairs, sometimes in chains of three or four. They are sometimes, but not always, surrounded by a broad mucin-like capsule. They are found not only in the exudation in the lung after death, but they may be detected in the sputum,<sup>1</sup> and have been found by Günther and Leyden<sup>2</sup> in the sanguinolent fluid drawn from the consolidated lung *intra vitam*, with an hypodermic needle.

Pure cultures of the micrococci have been made, especially by Friedländer, who found that they grew in characteristic form in gelatinized bouillon.

<sup>1</sup> Ziehl, Centrbl. f. d. med. Wiss., 1883, No. 25, and 1884, No. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Günther and Leyden, Deutsch. med. Wochenschr., Bd. 9, p. 4, 1883.

Inoculation of the pure cultures in Friedländer's experiments gave markedly different effects in different animals. Injections of the pure cultures, diffused through distilled water, into the lungs of thirty-two mice regularly produced death in from eighteen to twenty-eight hours. After death the pleural cavities contained turbid fluid, the lungs were red, nearly empty of air, and contained scattered areas of red consolidation. The spleen was swollen dark red, other organs normal. The characteristic micrococci were found in the fluid in the pleural cavity, in the exudation, in the lung, and in the blood. In dogs and guinea-pigs, the results were inconstant and not so pronounced, while in rabbits the inoculations were negative. There was considerable difference in the size of the micrococci as found in man and in animals as a result of the inoculation of pure cultures.

While the above experiments and observations would tend to confirm the belief in the infectious nature of lobar pneumonia, we cannot consider them as yet sufficiently definite and extensive to prove it.<sup>1</sup>

The micrococci may be stained in anilin-gentian-violet solution, differentiated by dilute iodine solution by Gram's method (see p. 90), and mounted in balsam. This method is applicable both to sections of tissue, and to fluids dried on to the cover-glass.

Ziehl recommends, for the staining of the pneumonia micrococcus in sputum, an aqueous solution of gentian-violet, and the examination of the stained specimen in water.

## *II. Secondary and Complicating Pneumonia.*

Inflammation of the lungs occurs frequently as a complicating condition with lesions of the brain and spinal cord, with pyæmia, with the continued fevers, after injuries and surgical operations, and in patients who are confined to bed for a long time from any cause.

The pneumonia developed in these cases may follow one of two different types.

(1) Part of the lung, usually the posterior portion, is congested, leathery, only partly aerated, and mottled by irregular patches of red or gray hepatization which have no relation to the bronchi. In the hepatized portions of lung, the air-spaces are filled with pus and fibrin.

(2) The inflammation has the characters of a broncho-pneumonia. The small bronchi are filled with pus, their epithelium is altered, their

---

<sup>1</sup> Considerable bibliography regarding the infectious nature of pneumonia may be found in an article on the subject by Mendelson in *Zeitschrift für klin. Med.*, Bd. 7, p. 178, 1884. See also the discovery of pneumonia micrococci beneath the floors of a prison hospital in which many cases of pneumonia had developed. Emmerich, *Fortschritte der Medicin*, Bd. 2, No. 5, 1884.

walls are infiltrated with pus, and around each bronchus is a zone of air-vesicles filled with pus and fibrin. The lung is mottled with little whitish nodules, corresponding to the bronchi and the peri-bronchitic zones, and between these there may be a diffuse hepatization.

### III. *The Pneumonia of Heart Disease.*

Lesions of the aortic and mitral valves, and dilatation of the left ventricle, often produce a diffuse, chronic inflammation of both lungs of a peculiar character. This condition is often called pigment induration or brown induration, but it is really a chronic pneumonia.

The lungs are diminished in size, and of a peculiar yellowish-pink color, mottled with spots of black or brown pigment. They are not congested, but are of a dry, leathery consistence; or portions of them may be in the condition of a smooth red hepatization. The appearance of these lungs may be modified by the presence of hemorrhagic infarctions; by the pre-existence of emphysema; or by œdema.

Minute examination of these lungs shows four separate pathological conditions.

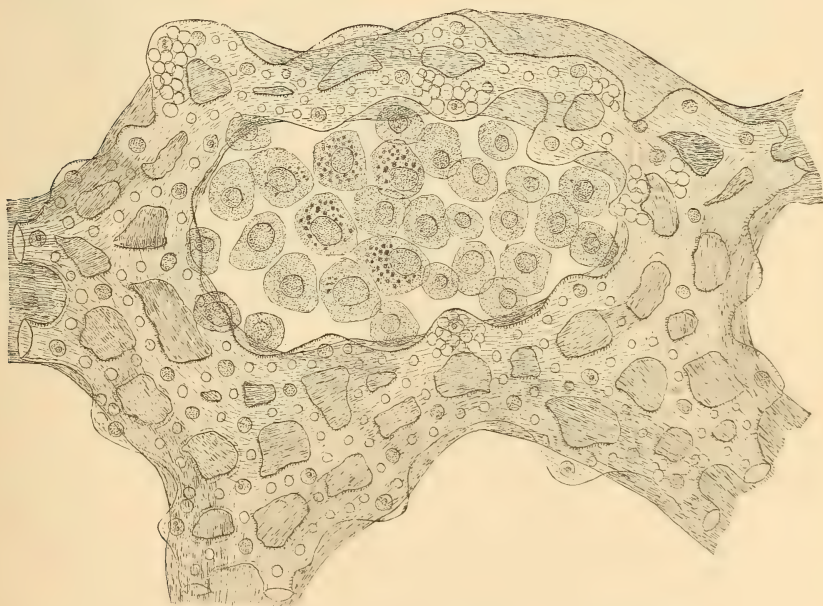


FIG. 84.—THE PNEUMONIA OF HEART DISEASE,  $\times 850$  and reduced.  
An air-vesicle from a child's lung.

(1) A change in the capillaries in the walls of the air-spaces. These capillaries are dilated and tortuous, so that they project into the cavities of the vesicles. The degree of the dilatation varies in the different lungs; in some it is very marked, in others but slight.



(2) A thickening of the walls of the air-spaces due partly to the dilatation of the capillaries, partly to a growth of smooth muscle, and partly to a growth of connective tissue. The degree of the thickening varies very much in different cases.

(3) A formation of black or brown pigment in the shape of granules and small masses. This is deposited in the walls of the vesicles, in the interstitial connective tissue, and in the new cells within the vesicles.

(4) A formation of cells within the air-spaces. The walls of the vesicles are coated with a layer of flat, nucleated cells. Similar cells, or swollen and granular cells, are present in the cavities of the vesicles. If these cells are numerous, the cavities of the vesicles are filled, and there results a smooth, red hepatization.

#### *IV. Broncho-Pneumonia.*

Whenever the parenchyma of the lung is inflamed, there is regularly some degree of bronchitis present, so that, strictly speaking, every pneumonia is a broncho-pneumonia. In most of such cases the changes in the bronchi are superficial. Mucus, pus, or fibrin are found on the surface of the mucous membrane, the epithelial cells undergo various changes, the mucous glands are swollen, the blood-vessels are congested, but the wall of the bronchus is not changed except by the infiltration of a few pus-cells.

There are cases, however, in which these superficial changes are accompanied by inflammation of the entire wall of the bronchus; an inflammation which extends directly outwards and involves the air-vesicles surrounding each bronchus. Such an inflammation involves nearly all the bronchi of both lungs, being most intense in the smaller bronchi. The size and number of the zones of peri-bronchitic pneumonia vary; and the condition of the lung may be farther complicated by the existence of a diffuse pneumonia which has no direct relation to the bronchitis.

Broncho-pneumonia of this character is very common in children under five years old, as an idiopathic condition and as a complication of other diseases. It is, in fact, the regular pneumonia of childhood, lobar pneumonia being comparatively rare. In adults such a broncho-pneumonia is not very common.

Cases of this kind in which the pneumonia is of small extent are often called "capillary bronchitis."

The trachea and the larger bronchi are congested and coated with mucus. The smaller bronchi contain pus, their walls are thickened and infiltrated with cells, and they may be dilated. Around many of the small bronchi are narrow zones of congestion or hepatization. The rest of the lungs is congested and œdematous.

Or the zones of peri-bronchitic pneumonia are larger, so that a

section of the lung is mottled with little whitish nodules, each nodule corresponding to a cut bronchus surrounded by its zone of pneumonia.

Or between these zones of peri-bronchitic pneumonia are areas of diffuse hepatization which render portions of the lung completely solid (Fig. 85).



FIG. 85.—BRONCHO-PNEUMONIA IN A CHILD,  $\times 750$  and reduced.  
Air-vesicles in the diffuse hepatization.

Or there may be areas of atelectasis corresponding to occluded bronchi.

There is often a thin layer of fibrin on the pulmonary pleura. The bronchial glands are the seat of simple or tubercular inflammation.

The dilatation of the bronchi is not constant. When present, it is of the cylindrical character and involves the medium-sized bronchi for a considerable part of their length. Such dilated bronchi are each of them surrounded by a narrow zone of pneumonia; the intervening lung-tissue may be still aerated or hepatized.

In these peri-bronchitic zones of pneumonia, the thickening and cellular infiltration which exist in the walls of the bronchi extend also to the

walls of the air-spaces (Fig. 86). These walls are thickened and infiltrated with cells, while the cavities of the vesicles are filled with pus and epithelium, or with tissue resembling granulation tissue. In the diffuse hepatization, the air-vesicles are filled with epithelium, pus, and fibrin in varying proportion and quantity; the walls of the air-spaces remain unchanged.

The portions of lung which are not hepatized are congested and œdematous. The cavities of the vesicles are diminished by the enlarged capillaries, the epithelium is swollen, and in many vesicles a few pus or epithelial cells are to be found.

Such a broncho-pneumonia differs from the ordinary lobar pneumonia very decidedly. The inflammatory process is not a superficial one, result-



FIG. 86.—BRONCHO-PNEUMONIA IN AN ADULT,  $\times 850$  and reduced.  
An air-vesicle containing organized tissue in a zone of peribronchitic pneumonia.

ing only in filling the bronchi and air-spaces with inflammatory products, but it affects also the tissue of the lung, infiltrating the walls of the bronchi and of the air-spaces.

This interstitial character of the inflammation seems to be the reason why the disease is often protracted and sometimes succeeded by a chronic inflammation. This chronic condition we will call '*Persistent Broncho-Pneumonia.*'



The original acute broncho-pneumonia is succeeded by a chronic inflammation involving especially the interstitial tissue.

This inflammation may involve only some of the smaller bronchi and small zones of vesicles around them, and then a section of the lung will seem to be studded with fibrous nodules. Or all the bronchi of some part of the lung will be inflamed, the peri-bronchitic zones of pneumonia will become continuous, and so part of a lobe or an entire lobe becomes converted into a dense mass of connective tissue. The air-vesicles are obliterated by the new connective tissue, the interlobular septa and the pulmonary pleura are thickened, and the inflamed bronchi may be dilated. The blood-vessels, however, are, for the most part, not obliterated, so that the lung does not become necrotic or degenerated, although occasionally areas of cheesy degeneration exist.

#### V. *Interstitial Pneumonia.*

This term is applied to a chronic form of inflammation involving the walls of the air-spaces and of the bronchi, the connective septa, and the walls of the blood-vessels. Permanent new connective tissue, dense and often pigmented, is produced in these situations. The cavities of the air-spaces are deformed and obliterated, and the epithelial cells on

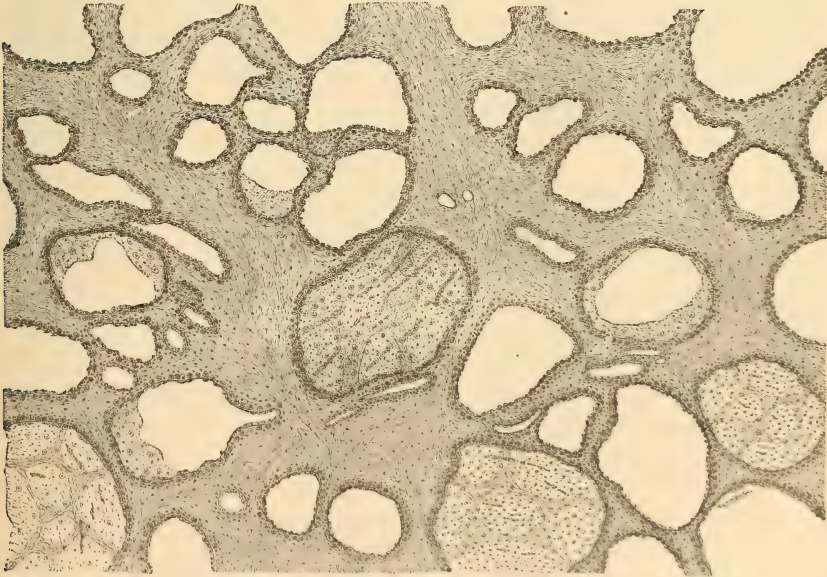


FIG. 87.—INTERSTITIAL PNEUMONIA OF CHRONIC PHTHISIS.  $\times 90$  and reduced.

their walls are increased in size and number (Fig. 87). The pulmonary pleura is often thickened and the bronchi dilated.

Such an interstitial pneumonia forms part of the lesions of broncho-

pneumonia, of syphilitic pneumonia, and of phthisis. It is often associated with emphysema, with chronic bronchitis, and with pleuritic adhesions. It may be produced by the inhalation of coal-dust and other irritative substances.

Suppurative interstitial pneumonia is sometimes produced in cases of septicæmia. The pulmonary pleura is coated with fibrin, the bronchi contain pus, portions of the lung are hepatized, and the interlobular septa are infiltrated with pus.

### *VI. Syphilitic Pneumonia.*

Persons suffering from inherited or acquired syphilis sometimes develop inflammations of the lungs which seem to be due to the syphilitic infection. The lungs may then be affected in several different ways.



FIG. 88.—INTERSTITIAL SYPHILITIC PNEUMONIA,  $\times 170$  and reduced.

1. There is an interstitial pneumonia beginning around the larger bronchi and blood-vessels at the root of the lung, and extending to the walls of the air-spaces and interstitial connective tissue, so that the central portions of one or both lungs are converted into a dense mass of connective tissue (Fig. 88).

2. There is an interstitial pneumonia, with the formation of gummy tumors.

3. There is an inflammation of the wall of the trachea and of the larger bronchi. There are ulcers in the mucous membrane, their walls are very much thickened, and their cavities are narrowed.

4. There are circumscribed areas of interstitial inflammation around the smaller bronchi, forming small, hard, peri-bronchitic nodules.

5. There is a diffuse hepatization involving lobules, or an entire lobe. The affected portion of the lung is white or grayish. The walls of the air-vesicles are infiltrated with cells, and their cavities are filled with epithelial cells.

6. There may be a broncho-pneumonia, like the ordinary broncho-pneumonia of children; or a lobar pneumonia, like that of adults.

7. There may be an obliterating endarteritis of branches of the pulmonary artery, with the formation of white infarctions surrounded by zones of connective tissue.<sup>1</sup>

### *VII. Acute Miliary Tuberculosis.*

The acute development of miliary tubercles in the lungs is usually only part of general tuberculosis, although the lesion may be most extensive in the lungs.

Both lungs are usually involved, but the distribution, number, size, and character of the miliary tubercles differ in different cases.

The larger bronchi are the seat of catarrhal inflammation; the lung-tissue is congested; the air-spaces contain epithelium, pus, and fibrin in small quantity.

The tubercles are found in the parenchyma of the lung, in the connective tissue forming the septa, along and in the walls of the bronchi and blood-vessels, and in the pulmonary pleura.

They are scattered singly through the lungs, or aggregated in groups. They may be separated by considerable interspaces, or so close together that the lung is rendered nearly solid. Some are so small and transparent that they can hardly be seen with the naked eye; others are larger and more opaque. In children's lungs, large masses are found of the same structure as miliary tubercles.

When we examine miliary tubercles as they exist in different lungs, it becomes evident that they are not all of the same structure. We find:

1. Miliary tubercles composed entirely of amorphous granular matter, with a few shrunken cells and an external zone of pus-cells. These cannot be said to have any definite anatomical structure. In some of them, the outlines of the walls of the air-spaces are still visible; in others, they are lost in the cheesy mass.

2. Miliary tubercles composed of a group of air-spaces of which the walls are infiltrated and the cavities filled (Fig. 89). The walls of the air-spaces are infiltrated with granulation tissue or tubercle tissue; as the in-

<sup>1</sup> Hiller, Charité-Annalen, 1884, p. 184.



filtration progresses, the blood-vessels are obliterated. Such an infiltration may involve symmetrically the whole of the wall of an air-space, or only a portion of the wall. The cavities of the air-spaces are filled with tubercle-tissue, or with epithelium, fibrin, and pus.

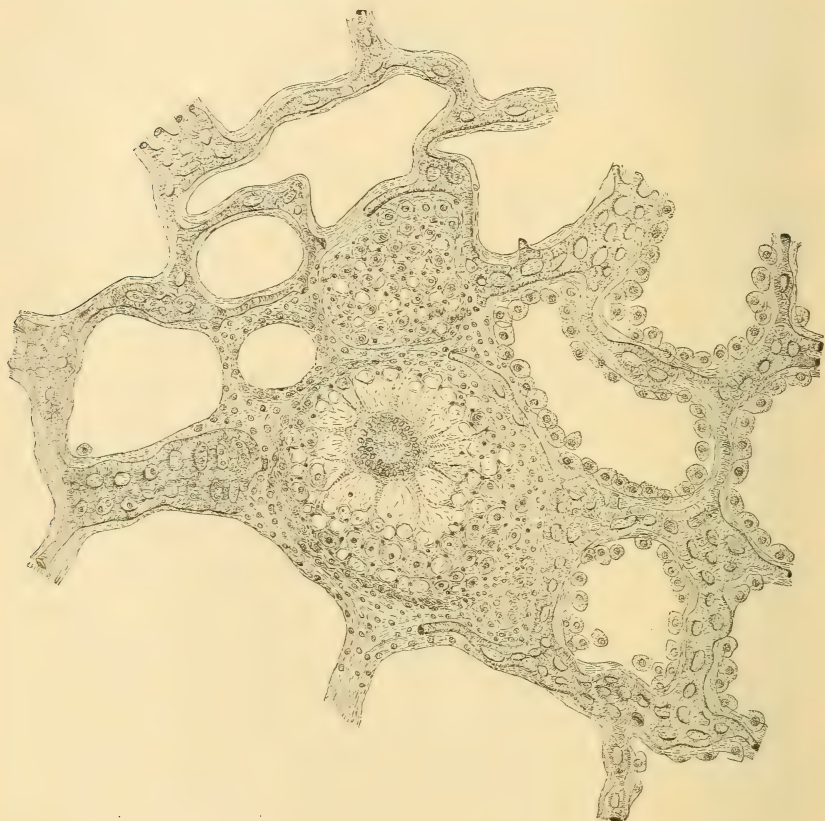


FIG. 89.—A MILIARY TUBERCLE,  $\times 300$  and reduced, Involving only two air-vesicles, of which the walls are infiltrated and the cavities filled with tubercle-tissue.

In some of these tubercles, the tubercle-tissue, both in the walls of the air-spaces and in their cavities, is well developed (Fig. 90); then they look like little tumors replacing the lung-tissue. In others, the outlines of the walls of the vesicles are preserved, granulation tissue predominates, the cavities of the vesicles contain pus, epithelium, fibrin, and less tubercle-tissue (Fig. 91); then the tubercles look like little areas of a composite hepatization.

In adults such tubercles are small, but in children they may reach a large size.

3. Miliary tubercles, formed by the infiltration of the wall of a bron-

chiole or air passage with tubercle-tissue, or granulation tissue. This infiltration is apt to involve only one side of the bronchiole or air passage. It may be confined to this or it may extend to the walls of the adjacent vesicles. These vesicles may remain empty, they may be dilated,

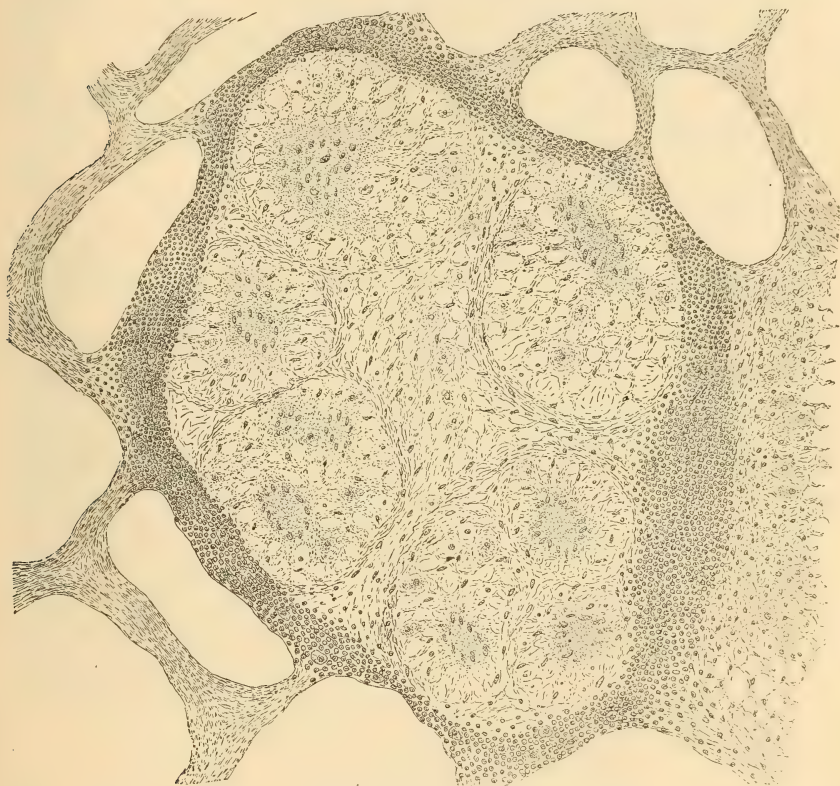


FIG. 90.—A MILIARY TUBERCLE,  $\times 300$  and reduced,  
Formed of several air-vesicles filled with tubercle-tissue and surrounded by a zone of granulation tissue.

or they may be filled with tubercle-tissue or with epithelium, fibrin, and pus.

4. Miliary tubercles, formed by the infiltration of the walls of small bronchi with tubercle-tissue or granulation tissue. The infiltration often extends to the surrounding air-spaces so as to form tubercles of large size.

In all these miliary tubercles, there is often cheesy degeneration of the central portions.

Tubercle bacilli can be demonstrated in most of these miliary tubercles, especially in those which have undergone cheesy degeneration (Fig. 92).



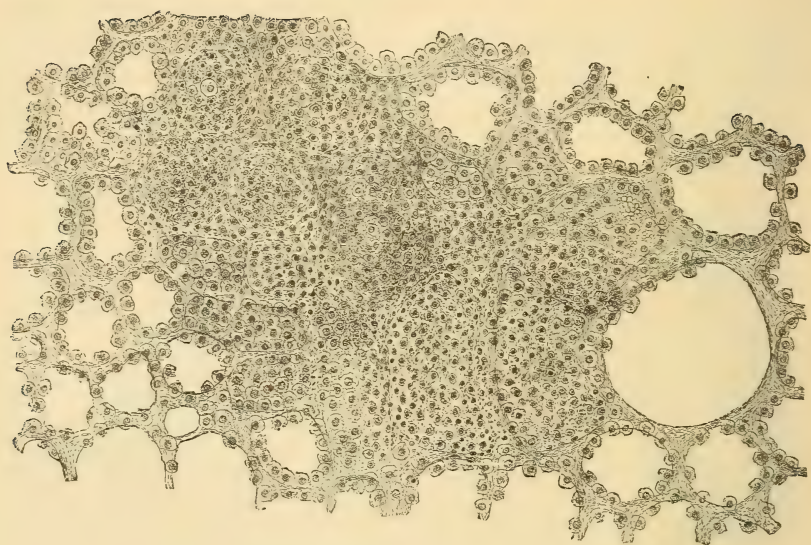


FIG. 91.—A MILIARY TUBERCLE,  $\times 300$  and reduced,  
Formed of a number of air-vesicles, some containing tubercle-tissue, others pus and epithelium.



FIG. 92.—MILIARY TUBERCLE IN LUNG OF CHILD,  $\times 600$  and reduced,  
Showing the *Bacillus tuberculosis* in the contents of the air-vesicles and in their thickened walls.  
(The size of the bacilli relative to other elements is slightly exaggerated.)



*VIII. Chronic Miliary Tuberculosis.*

This form of tuberculosis is in most cases a local lesion limited to the lungs. Or if other parts of the body—the larynx, the intestines, and the peritoneum—are involved, the lung lesion is still the primary one.

There are two sets of cases of chronic miliary tuberculosis.

1. Miliary tubercles scattered singly through the lungs (Fig. 93).

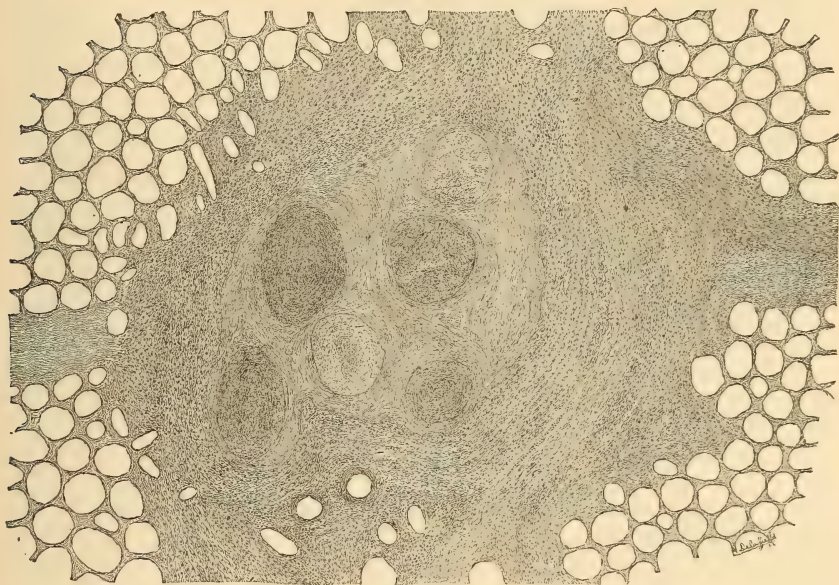


FIG. 93.—AN OLD MILIARY TUBERCLE,  $\times 90$  and reduced, converted into fibrous tissue.

They may be few or numerous; in both lungs, or only in part of one lung. The lungs are regularly the seat of emphysema and chronic bronchitis, sometimes of bronchiectasæ.

2. Miliary tubercles aggregated in groups and accompanied by a diffuse growth of tubercle tissue or connective tissue (Fig. 94). These tubercles also may be confined to the apex of one lung, or may involve a large part of both lungs. Bronchiectasæ, often of large size, are very commonly present. The rest of the lung is frequently emphysematous, and the bronchi are the seat of chronic catarrhal inflammation.

In both these forms of chronic miliary tuberculosis, there are often developed, as secondary lesions, tubercles in the larynx, pleura, peritoneum, liver, spleen, kidneys, and small intestine. In some cases these secondary tubercular lesions are of more importance than the primary lesion of the lung.

The miliary tubercles are hard and dense. They are formed in the

same situations as acute miliary tubercles, and have the same diversity of shape.

Some are formed entirely of dense connective tissue.

Some are formed of well-developed tubercle tissue, which infiltrates the walls of the air spaces and fills their cavities.

Some look as if they had originally been formed of tubercle tissue which had afterwards undergone cheesy degeneration, or been replaced by granulation tissue or connective tissue.

The diffuse consolidation of the lung between the tubercles is effected partly by a simple, partly by a tubercular interstitial pneumonia.

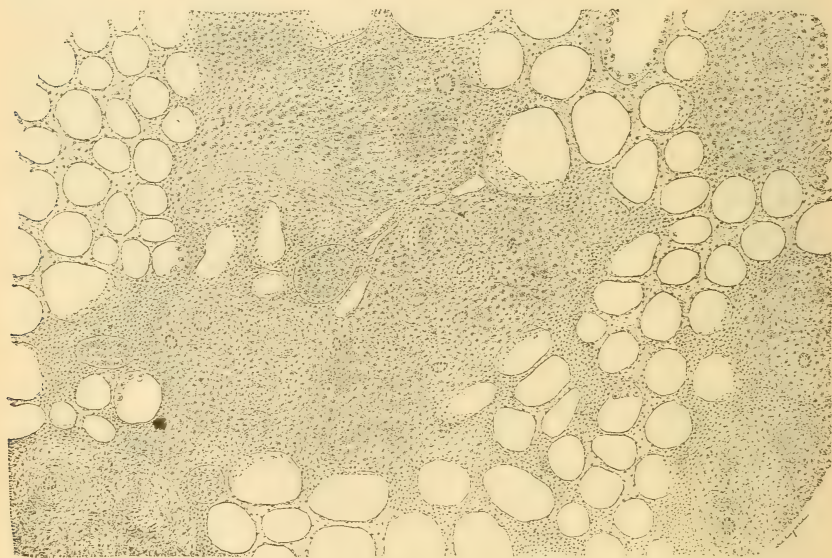


FIG. 94.—AN AGGREGATION OF MILIARY TUBERCLES,  $\times 90$  and reduced.

The new connective tissue is formed in the walls of the air-spaces, the bronchi, and the blood-vessels, and in the interlobular septa and pulmonary pleura. Much of it is a dense, fibrillated tissue with few cells, but well supplied with blood-vessels. In other places it is like granulation tissue. It is often pigmented. The air-spaces are compressed, deformed, and obliterated by the pressure of the new tissue (Fig. 95).

The tubercle tissue both infiltrates the walls of the vesicles and fills their cavities. It either projects into the cavities as outgrowths from their walls, or is formed within them. It contains very few vessels.

The combination of these processes results in the solidification of portions of the lung. These portions are contracted and dense. They are made up of miliary tubercles, diffuse tubercle, granulation tissue, and connective tissue.

The cavities so often found in these lungs are sacculated or cylindri-



cal bronchiectasiæ, apparently due to a cellular infiltration of the walls of the bronchi as in broncho-pneumonia.

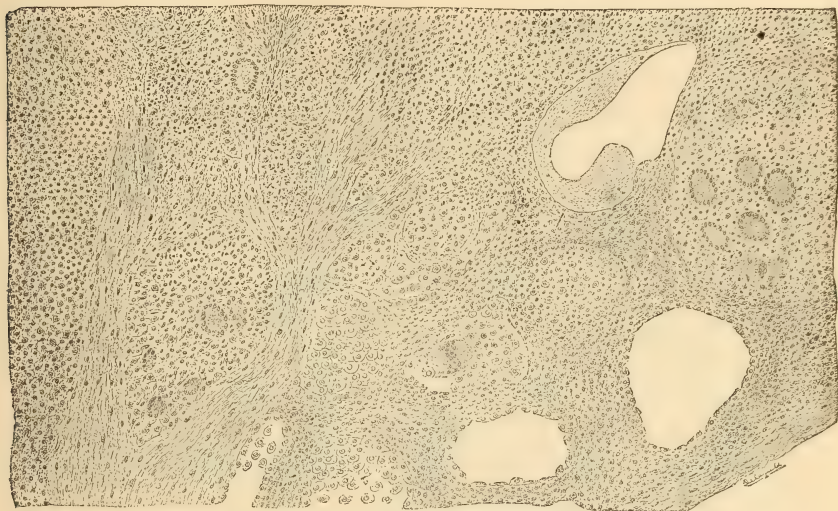


FIG. 95.—DIFFUSE TUBERCULAR INFLAMMATION,  $\times 300$  and reduced, producing diffuse consolidation of the lung.

### IX. *Acute Phthisis.*

This term is used to designate a lesion of the lungs of a very composite character. The air-spaces, the bronchi and the blood-vessels are the seat of a variety of tubercular and inflammatory changes which result in the consolidation of a considerable part of the lung.

After death we find a part of one or of both lungs consolidated, but this consolidation is not of a uniform appearance. Much of it looks like ordinary red hepatization, or the hepatization is of a peculiar grayish color, different from that of lobar pneumonia. In this diffuse hepatization are other portions of solidified lung of different appearance. They are of white or yellow color, denser than the surrounding hepatization, or softened at their centres. These white nodules are of various size and shape. The smallest are hardly larger than an air-vesicle, the largest include a considerable portion of a lobe. Their size and shape are made more evident by an artificial injection of the blood-vessels, for while the vessels of the diffuse hepatization are easily filled, those of the nodules are not.

Some of these white nodules are scattered irregularly through the lung like miliary tubercles. Some are situated around the smaller bronchi. Some correspond to a single air-passage or a group of air-passages. Some are large, and look like a diffuse infiltration, but are really made up of a number of small nodules close together.



In some cases, these nodules soften, break down, and form cavities.

The bronchi of the affected lung are also changed. They may be congested and coated with mucus; they may be filled with pus, epithelium, and fibrin, which sometimes undergo cheesy degeneration; they may be the seat of cylindrical or sacculated dilatation.

We must consider separately the diffuse hepatization, the nodules, and the bronchi.

(1) The diffuse hepatization. This is of a red color, but smoother than in lobar pneumonia, or gray, or semi-translucent. The walls of the air-spaces are unchanged, their blood-vessels are easily injected. The cavities of the air-spaces are partly or completely filled with inflammatory products—fibrin, pus, epithelium, granules, and a transparent, coagulated substance. The epithelial and pus cells are often swollen and filled with coarse granules.

This diffuse hepatization seems to have no tendency to cheesy degeneration or necrosis. It is capable of resolution if the patient recovers.

(2) The nodules. They vary in their size, their shape, and their structure. They are close together or widely separated. Some are surrounded by diffuse hepatization, others by nearly normal lung. Even those which present the same appearance to the naked eye are not all of the same nature.

(a) The smallest nodules are composed of a single air-passage or air-vesicle filled with tubercle-tissue, while the walls of the air-spaces are not infiltrated.

(b) Other nodules are miliary tubercles, with the variety of position, size, and shape already described.

(c) Nodules formed around the smaller bronchi.

Some of these are of the same character as those in broncho-pneumonia. The cavity of the bronchus is filled with pus, its walls are infiltrated with cells, around it is a zone of air-vesicles filled with pus, epithelium, and fibrin, or new connective tissue.

In others, the peri-bronchitic zone is composed of vesicles filled and infiltrated with tubercle-tissue.

(d) Nodules composed of a group of air-spaces in the condition of coagulation necrosis (Fig. 96). These nodules seem to be of the same character as the so-called white infarctions, and to be produced by the occlusion of small arteries by obliterating endarteritis.

These areas of coagulation necrosis are of variable size; their blood-vessels cannot be injected. The outlines of the walls of the vesicles are visible, but are very thin. The cavities of the air-spaces are filled with coagulated fibrin, or with pale, shrunken epithelial cells and shrivelled nuclei.

Around each area of coagulation necrosis is a zone of air-spaces filled with pus, epithelium, and fibrin, or with tubercle-tissue (Fig. 97).

These areas of coagulation necrosis are dead tissue, which can never return to a natural condition. They may undergo cheesy degeneration, or they may soften, break down, and form cavities.

(3.) The bronchi.



FIG. 96.—AN AREA OF COAGULATION NECROSIS SURROUNDED BY A ZONE OF PNEUMONIA,  $\times 40$  and reduced.

The smaller bronchi may undergo cylindrical dilatation, as in broncho-pneumonia, as the result of a cellular infiltration of their walls.

Or there may be tubercular infiltration, with cheesy degeneration of the walls of either small or larger bronchi. This results in the formation of sacculated bronchiectasæ, produced partly by the dilatation of a bronchus, partly by the destruction of its wall. Such cavities may be rendered still larger by becoming continuous with softened areas of coagulation necrosis.

*X. Chronic Phthisis.*

The lesions of chronic phthisis are essentially the same as those of



acute phthisis, but yet their slow development and long continuance give them a somewhat different character. We may still distinguish the diffuse pneumonia, the nodules, and the changes in the bronchi.

(1) The diffuse pneumonia presents a more complicated and variable character than in acute phthisis.

We find in different lungs and in different parts of the same lung:



FIG. 97.—TUBERCLE TISSUE AROUND AN AREA OF COAGULATION NECROSIS,  $\times 850$  and reduced.

(a) The air-spaces filled with swollen and fatty epithelium (Fig. 98), or with fibrin and pus, while their walls are unchanged and their blood-vessels remain pervious.

(b) The air-spaces are filled and distended with compact fibrin and shrivelled pus and epithelium. Their walls are compressed and thin, or thickened and infiltrated with cells. The blood-vessels can be only very imperfectly injected. This condition may be succeeded by complete cheesy degeneration.

(c) The walls of the vesicles are thickened, their cavities are filled with new connective tissue often containing new vessels (Figs. 99 and 100). This new connective tissue may look like an outgrowth from the wall of the vesicle, or as if it was formed free in its cavity.

(d) There is a diffuse interstitial growth of fibrous tissue and granulation tissue in the walls of the air-spaces, the bronchi and the blood



vessels, and in the septa. By this new tissue the air-spaces are compressed and deformed or completely obliterated (Fig. 101).

(2) The nodules.

These, as in acute phthisis, consist of areas of coagulation necrosis, peri-bronchitic nodules, and miliary tubercles.

The tubercles may preserve their characteristic structure, or undergo cheesy degeneration, or be changed into fibrous tissue.

The areas of coagulation necrosis undergo cheesy degeneration, or

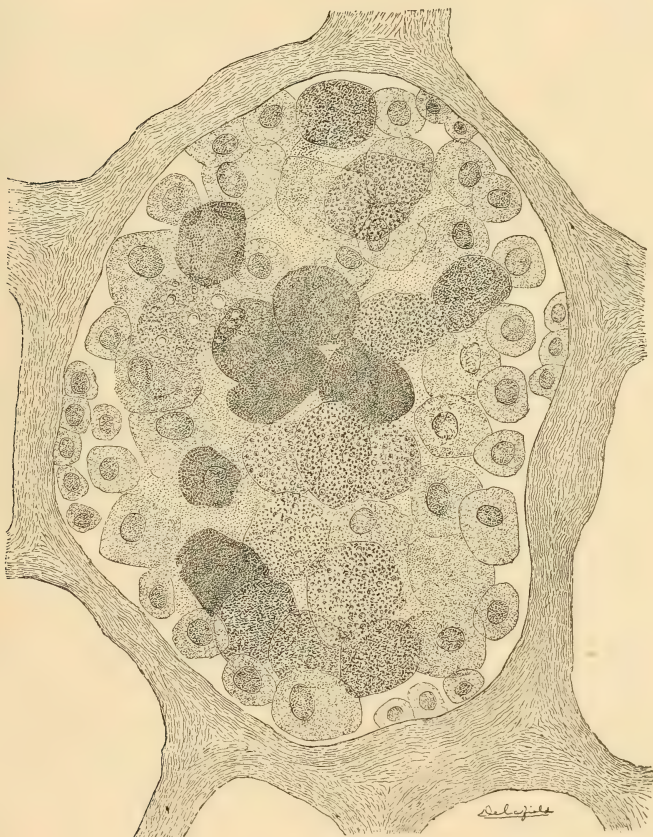


FIG. 98.—CHRONIC PHTHISIS,  $\times 850$ .  
An air-vesicle filled with fatty epithelium.

soften and form cavities. They are surrounded by tubercle tissue, or granulation tissue, or connective tissue.

The peri-bronchitic nodules are much the same as in acute phthisis.

(3) The bronchi.

The changes in the bronchi in chronic phthisis form a very important part of the morbid process.

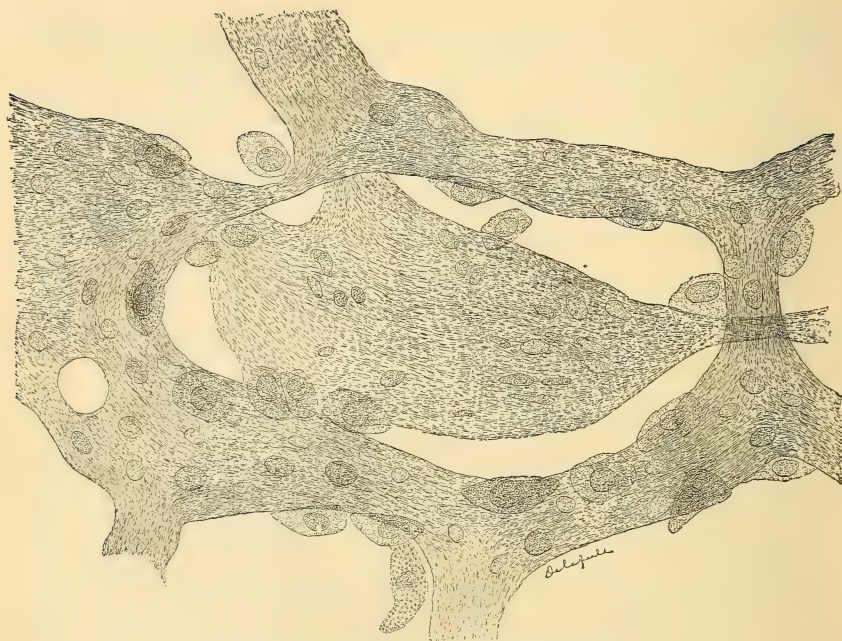


FIG. 99.—CHRONIC PHTHISIS,  $\times 850$  and reduced.  
Growth of connective tissue within an air-vesicle.

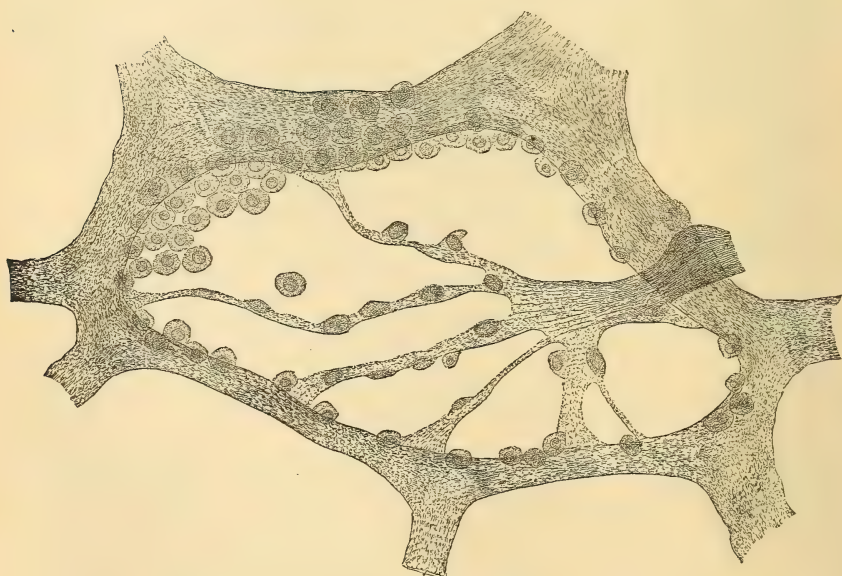


FIG. 100.—CHRONIC PHTHISIS,  $\times 850$  and reduced.  
Growth of connective tissue within an air-vesicle.



(a) The larger bronchi may be the seat of a chronic catarrhal inflammation, accompanied by the production of large quantities of mucus and pus.

(b) The bronchi of all sizes may be inflamed, with the production of new cells in their walls, in addition to the inflammatory changes of their inner surfaces. Such a cellular infiltration of the walls of the bronchi is often followed by dilatation—either fusiform or sacculated.

(c) Tubercle granula and granulation tissue are found in the walls of the bronchi. These tissues may degenerate, soften, and thus form ulcers.

(d) The entire thickness of the wall of a bronchus may become the

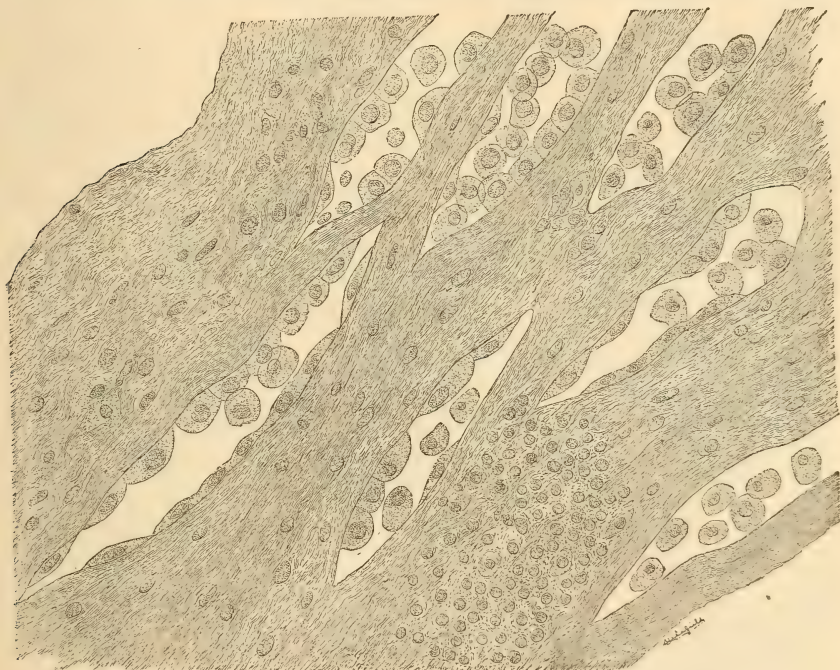


FIG. 101.—INTERSTITIAL PNEUMONIA OF CHRONIC PHTHISIS,  $\times 850$  and reduced.

seat of inflammation of a peculiar character. The surface of the mucous membrane is coated with pus, the epithelial layer can no longer be seen, the wall of the bronchus is infiltrated with cells. The inflammatory products undergo cheesy degeneration, so that we find the inner surface of the bronchus coated with cheesy matter, while its wall is also changed into cheesy matter. Such a condition of the bronchus is usually followed by sacculated dilatation.

The cavities of chronic phthisis, therefore, are formed by the dilatation of inflamed bronchi, by the softening of areas of coagulation necrosis, or by the combination of both these processes.



When cavities are once formed, they are apt to continue and to become larger as the disease goes on. Their walls may be converted into granulation tissue, which ulcerates in some places and proliferates in others; or portions of the wall become necrotic; or all active processes cease and the wall of the cavity is formed of new connective tissue. The lung-tissue between the cavities becomes compressed and altered in various ways. As the cavities increase in size, they touch and open into each other. In this way large portions of the lung may be converted into a dense mass honey-combed with cavities.

#### TUMORS.

*Dermoid Cysts* have been found in the lungs in a few instances.

*Fibromata* have been described by Rokitansky.

*Enchondromata* may occur both as primary and secondary tumors. The primary tumors are small and are believed to originate in the cartilages of the bronchi. The secondary tumors often attain a very large size.

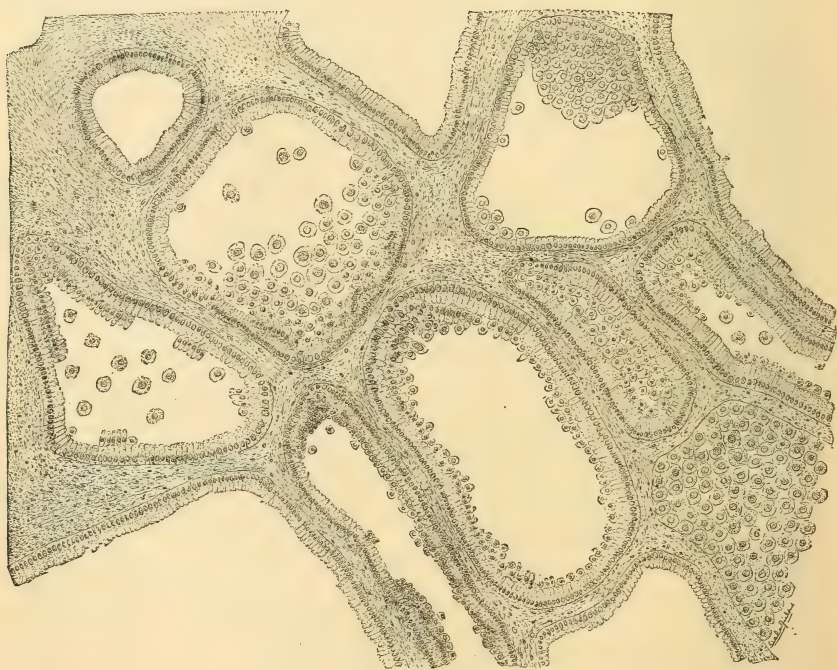


FIG. 102.—PRIMARY CARCINOMA OF THE LUNG,  $\times 300$  and reduced.

*Osteoma* is very rare. A case is described by Luschka.<sup>1</sup>

*Sarcomata* as secondary tumors are of not infrequent occurrence. A primary adeno-sarcoma is described by Weichselbaum.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., x., p. 500.

<sup>2</sup> Virch. Arch., 85, p. 559.

*Lymphomata* are found in cases of leukæmia and pseudo-leukæmia.

*Carcinoma* as a secondary growth may have the form of nodules or of diffuse infiltration. Primary carcinoma of the lung has been described by a number of authors. The new growth (Fig. 102) is in the form of small nodules surrounded by pneumonia. As the result of the new growth and the pneumonia, a considerable part of both lungs may be rendered solid. The bronchial glands are infiltrated and there may be secondary nodules in the pleura.

The new growth seems to originate in the air-spaces. Their walls are thickened, their cavities are lined with cylindrical epithelium, or filled with cylindrical and polygonal cells, some of which undergo colloid degeneration.

Or it may originate in the small bronchi.<sup>1</sup>

### *Parasites.*

*Echinococci* occur in the lungs in their ordinary cystic form. The sacs may suppurate and discharge through the pleura, the bronchi, the wall of the chest, or the diaphragm.

In bronchiectasiæ and in gangenous cavities in the lungs, vegetable parasites of various kinds have been described—both moulds and bacteria.<sup>2</sup>

The *Bacillus tuberculosis* is regularly found in the walls and contents of cavities in acute and chronic phthisis, sometimes in enormous numbers. They are also often present in great numbers in the nodules of tubercular inflammation, particularly when these are softening and beginning to break down to form cavities. See Tuberculosis.

### THE MEDIASTINUM.

The anterior mediastinum is situated in front of the pericardium, between it and the sternum. At its superior part the two layers of pleuræ separate somewhat to inclose the vestiges of the thymus gland; behind the second piece of the sternum they are in contact, but below this the left pleura recedes from its fellow towards the left side, leaving an angular space of some breadth. The *triangularis sterni* muscle bounds this space in front.

The posterior mediastinum, stretching from the pericardium to the bodies of the vertebræ, incloses between its layers the lower part of the windpipe and gullet, the thoracic duct, the descending aorta, the azygos vein, the pneumogastric nerve, and some lymphatic glands.

### INFLAMMATION.

Suppurative inflammation may occur either in the anterior or pos-

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 83, p. 77.

<sup>2</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 66, p. 330.

terior mediastinum. It may be caused by fractures, caries, or necrosis of the sternum and vertebræ, by perforation of the œsophagus, by suppuration of the lymphatic glands, by pleurisy; or may occur without discoverable cause.

The pus may infiltrate the connective tissue, or may form abscesses which may attain a large size. The inflammation may extend to the pleura or the pericardium; the abscesses may displace the heart, the lungs, or the sternum; or they may perforate through the skin, into a pleural cavity, the œsophagus, the trachea, or a bronchus.

#### TUMORS.

The most common form of new growth in the mediastinum is that known by the names of Lymphoma, Lympho-Sarcoma and Lymphadenoma.

These tumors are confined to the mediastinum, or they are associated with similar growths in other parts of the body in the disease called "pseudo-leukæmia."

Persons between the ages of twenty and thirty years seem to be the most liable to the growth, but it is also not uncommon in children.

The growth begins in the lymphatic glands in the mediastinum, and at the root of the lung. It increases at first slowly, then more rapidly and gradually infiltrates the adjoining tissues. In this way the walls of the trachea, bronchi, and aorta, the pericardium, the pleura, and the lung become infiltrated with the growth. The tumor also compresses the surrounding organs.

The growth is composed of a connective-tissue stroma infiltrated with small round cells, the relative quantity of cells and stroma varying in the different cases.

Besides this form of tumor there may also occur in the mediastinum, tumors similar to those which grow in the pleura and behind the peritoneum, tumors which resemble both the sarcomata and carcinomata and which are difficult to classify.

*Teratoma myomatodes*.—Under this name Virchow describes a very remarkable tumor. It grew rapidly in a man, aged twenty-two, of good constitution and physical development. The right pleural cavity was nearly filled with a solid growth. There were similar growths, of smaller size, on the left rib, in the liver, spleen, and kidneys. The mediastinal tumor consisted of two portions, a larger and a smaller. The larger portion consisted of solid tissue, in which were a few cavities. It was very vascular. Part of it was composed of dense fibrous tissue. The greater portion, however, consisted of loose connective-tissue fibres, of fusiform cells, and of large, many-nucleated cells. Some of the fusiform cells were small and of the usual appearance; but many were large, and



presented striations like those of young voluntary muscle. The smaller portion of the tumor looked like a multilocular cystoid. The cysts varied much in size, and contained serum, colloid matter, and blood. Some of the cysts contained a thick, white material, in which were hairs, epidermis scales, ciliated epithelium, and cholesterin. In the fibrous tissue about these cysts were pieces of hyalin cartilage. Near the surface of the tumor the tissue consisted of a fibro-cellular stroma forming alveoli filled with epithelium. The tumor on the third left rib consisted of connective-tissue fibres and cells, muscle-cells, cysts, alveoli filled with epithelium, and a small portion of tissue resembling foetal lung.

## THE VASCULAR SYSTEM.

---

### THE HEART.

### THE PERICARDIUM.

#### INJURIES.

The pericardium may be wounded by penetrating weapons, by gunshot wounds, and by fragments of bone. It may be ruptured by severe contusions of the thorax, and by rapid extravasation of blood into the pericardial sac.

Perforations may be produced by empyema, by mediastinal abscesses, by abscesses of the chest-wall and of the liver, by aneurisms of the aorta, and by suppurative inflammation of the pericardium.

#### DROPSY.

In most post-mortems, we find a little serum, from one-half ounce to one ounce, in the pericardial sac. This serum is usually clear and of a light yellow color; if decomposition has commenced, it may be of a reddish color, or it may be slightly turbid from the falling off of the pericardial epithelium.

Large accumulations of serum are found as part of general dropsy from heart-disease, kidney-disease, etc. The serum is clear and of a light yellow color. Hydro-pericardium is usually moderate in comparison with the accumulations of serum in the other serous cavities; sometimes, however, there is a very large amount of serum, which hinders the movements, and interferes with the nourishment of the heart.

#### HEMORRHAGE.

Extravasations of blood in the cavity of the pericardium are produced by wounds and rupture of the heart, rupture of the aorta and of aneurisms, and occur with pericarditis. Small extravasations in the substance of the pericardium are found with scurvy, purpura, fevers, etc.

## PNEUMONATOSIS.

Air or gas in the pericardium is sometimes found as a post-mortem appearance, accompanied with drying of portions of the pericardium.

Wounds or paracentesis of the pericardium; the perforation of ulcers of the stomach, cavities of the lungs, and ulcers of the œsophagus may admit air into the pericardial cavity. In purulent pericarditis, with foul, decomposing exudation, gases may be evolved.

## INFLAMMATION.

Pericarditis is very rarely a primary lesion. It is most frequently associated with rheumatism and Bright's disease, but is also found with pneumonia, pleurisy, phthisis, endocarditis, pyæmia, and may be produced by injuries.

The inflammations of the pericardium resemble those of the pleura. They usually begin acutely or subacutely, but may become chronic. There is a greater disposition to the escape of blood from the vessels than in pleurisy, so that the inflammatory products are often mixed with blood. The inflammatory process usually begins at the base of the heart and from there extends over the rest of the pericardium.

We may distinguish:

1. *Pericarditis with the production of fibrin.*—In the milder examples of this form of pericarditis, the pericardium is congested, or also studded with minute hemorrhages, its surface is roughened by the deposition of a thin layer of fibrin. In the more severe cases, the entire surface of the pericardium is covered with a thick layer of fibrin, and there are fibrinous adhesions between the visceral and parietal pericardium. If the inflammation continues for any length of time, the pericardium itself becomes thickened and infiltrated with cells, and the wall of the heart may also undergo inflammatory changes.

If the patient recovers, the fibrin may be absorbed, and the pericardium return to its normal condition. Or, instead of this, as the fibrin disappears there is a growth of new connective tissue which forms permanent thickenings and adhesions of the pericardium, which may afterwards become calcified.

2. *Pericarditis with the production of fibrin and a good deal of serum.*—In these cases the pericardium is coated with fibrin, but in addition there is a large effusion of serum into the pericardial sac. This serum accumulates at first between the floor of the pericardium and the lower surface of the heart, and as it increases, distends the pericardial sac in all directions, pushing the heart upwards and forwards. The pericardial sac may be so much distended as to compress the trachea, the left bronchus, the œsophagus, or the aorta. If the patients recover, the serum is absorbed and permanent adhesions and thickenings are left.

3. *Pericarditis with the production of fibrin, serum, and a good deal*



*of pus.*—This variety may have the purulent character from the outset, or it may begin as one of the forms just described, and afterwards assume the purulent character. These latter cases are apt to run a chronic course.

In the chronic cases, the pericardial sac contains a large amount of purulent serum. The pericardium is coated with fibrin and is itself thickened and infiltrated with cells. The walls of the heart may be the seat of interstitial myocarditis. In some cases, the products of inflammation undergo putrefactive changes; in some cases, the serum is absorbed and the fibrin and pus undergo cheesy degeneration; in some cases, extensive connective-tissue adhesions and calcific plates are formed.

4. *Tubercular Pericarditis.*—The varieties of pericarditis already mentioned may be associated with a production of tubercle-tissue in the thickness of the pericardium. Such a tubercular pericarditis may be localized, or may be associated with tubercular inflammation in other parts of the body.

#### TUMORS.

*Fibromata* sometimes are developed in the pericardium. They are often of polypoid form, and from atrophy of the pedicle may become free in the pericardial sac.

*Sarcomata* and *Carcinomata* occur as secondary growths either from continuous infiltration or as metastatic tumors.

*Cysts* of the visceral pericardium have been described.

*Endothelioma.* There may be a growth of flat cells arranged in anastomosing tubules which look like lymphatics, in the pericardium, resembling similar growths in the pleura.

#### THE HEART.

##### MALFORMATIONS.

The malformations of the heart are usually closely connected with malformations of the aorta and pulmonary artery. They depend on arrest of, or abnormal development; on endocarditis, myocarditis, thrombosis, or mechanical causes.

I. The common arterial trunk is only partially, or not at all, separated into aorta and pulmonary artery. The divisions between the heart cavities are at the same time defective.

1. There is one ventricle and no auricle.

2. There is one ventricle and one auricle.

3. There is one ventricle and two auricles; the aorta is alone or incompletely separated from the pulmonary artery.

II. The trunk of the pulmonary artery, or of the aorta, is stenosed or obliterated, and from the obstruction to the current of blood the development of the septa, between the heart cavities, is prevented.

1. The aorta, at its origin, or in the ascending portion of the arch, is stenosed or closed. The pulmonary artery gives off the descending aorta, and supplies the carotids and subclavians. The foramen ovale remains open, or there is no septum between the auricles. The ventricular septum is also usually defective. The right ventricle is hypertrophied.

2. The pulmonary artery is stenosed or closed. Its branches are supplied by the aorta, through the ductus arteriosus. The ventricular septum is defective, the foramen ovale is open, or the auricular septum defective.

III. The malformation affects the aorta and pulmonary artery after they are more fully developed.

1. There is stenosis of the aorta between the left subclavian and ductus arteriosus, or just at the opening of the ductus arteriosus. The descending aorta is then a continuation of the pulmonary artery.

2. The aorta gives off all its branches from the arch, but the descending aorta is a continuation of the pulmonary artery; or the carotids may spring from the aorta, the subclavians from the pulmonary artery.

3. The vessels are transposed; the pulmonary artery arises from the left, the aorta from the right ventricle; the pulmonary veins empty into the left, the venæ cavæ into the right auricle; or the veins also may be transposed. The septa are defective.

IV. The aorta and pulmonary artery are normal, but the cardiac septa are defective.

1. The foramen ovale remains partly open. This condition may continue through life without giving any trouble.

2. The ductus arteriosus may remain open for many years; this also may cause no disturbance.

3. There is a small or large opening in the ventricular septum. This may give rise to no symptoms, unless disease of the heart or lungs be superadded.

V. Either of the auriculo-ventricular orifices may be entirely closed. The foramen ovale remains open, and the ventricular septum is defective.

VI. The valves of the different orifices of the heart may be absent or defective. The arteries or the ventricles are usually defective at the same time.

The aortic and pulmonary valves may consist of two large or four small leaves, instead of the usual three. The edges of the semilunar valves may be fenestrated. These alterations are usually of no significance.

Generally speaking, the existence of openings between the two auricles or the two ventricles, admitting some admixture of venous and arterial blood, produces no marked change in the circulation. If, however, the passage of the current of venous blood into the right heart is in any

way interfered with, the consequences are very serious. Cyanosis is produced, the skin is of a bluish color, the small veins and capillaries are dilated, exudation of serum and hypertrophy of connective tissue takes place, especially in the fingers and toes.

Besides the malformations already mentioned, we may find:

Entire absence of the heart.

Abnormal septa and cordæ tendineæ in the heart cavities.

Abnormal shapes of the heart.

Abnormal positions of the heart.

*a.* There is a smaller or larger defect in the walls of the thorax, so that the heart projects on the outside of the chest; the pericardium is usually absent.

*b.* The diaphragm is absent, and the heart is in the abdominal cavity.

*c.* The heart is in some part of the neck or head; this occurs only in fœtuses very much malformed.

*d.* The heart is transposed, being on the right side.

Very rarely two more or less perfect hearts are found in the same thorax.

#### CHANGES IN POSITION.

Changes in the position of the heart are congenital or acquired. The congenital malpositions have already been mentioned.

The acquired malpositions are caused by:

1. Hypertrophy of the heart; its long axis approaches the horizontal direction.

2. Changes in the thoracic viscera. Emphysema of both lungs pushes the heart downward. Emphysema, pleurisy with effusion, or pneumo-thorax of one side, push the heart to the other side. Pleurisy or chronic pneumonia, producing retraction of one side of the thorax, draws the heart to that side. New growths, aneurisms, and curvatures of the spine displace the heart in various directions.

3. Changes in the abdomen. Accumulations of fluid and new growths in the abdomen, and tympanites, may push the heart upward.

#### WOUNDS AND RUPTURES.

*Wounds* of the heart are produced by penetrating instruments, by bullets, and by fragments of bone. The right ventricle is the more frequently wounded; next, the left; rarely, the auricles.

The wound may penetrate into the cavities of the heart, or only pass partly through its wall, or a bullet, or the broken end of a weapon may be imbedded in the wall. If the wound penetrates into a cavity, and is gaping, death follows instantly, and the pericardium is found filled with blood. If the wound be small and oblique, the blood may escape gradually,



and death may not ensue for several days. In rare cases, adhesions are formed with the pericardium, and the wound cicatrizes. Wounds which do not penetrate may cause death by the inflammation which they excite, or may cicatrize.

Bullets and foreign bodies may become encapsulated in the heart-wall, and remain so for years.

*Ruptures* of the heart-wall occur in various ways.

1. Severe contusions of the thorax may produce rupture, usually of one of the auricles.

2. Spontaneous rupture occurs usually in advanced life. Rupture is most frequent in the left ventricle and, in a considerable proportion of cases, near the apex. There is usually one rupture, but sometimes more. The rupture is usually oblique and larger internally than externally. The heart-wall, near the seat of rupture, may be infiltrated with blood, or blood may infiltrate the subpericardial fat. The heart-wall may be of normal thickness, or thin: it is usually soft and in a condition of fatty infiltration or degeneration. The rupture very frequently takes place when the patient is quiet. Death may be almost instantaneous or may not ensue for several hours.

Fatty degeneration leading to rupture of the heart may be general, or it is frequently circumscribed and due to obliterating endarteritis, atheroma, thrombosis, or embolus of one of the coronary arteries, whereby a portion of the heart-wall is deprived of nourishment, and degenerates. Or rupture of a branch of one of the coronary arteries may induce rupture of the heart-wall. Acute and chronic myocarditis, with or without the formation of abscess or cardiac aneurism, or the presence of tumors in the heart-wall, or hydatids, may lead to the rupture.

3. In very rare cases, rupture is produced by stenosis of the aorta and dilatation of the heart-cavities.

4. Rupture of the papillary muscles and tendons may be produced by fatty degeneration, or inflammatory or ulcerative processes.

#### ATROPHY.

Atrophy of the walls of the heart may be accompanied with no change in the size of its cavities; or with dilatation (the same as passive dilatation); or, more frequently, with diminution in the size of the cavities.

The atrophy involves most frequently all the cavities of the heart, but may be confined to one or more of them.

The muscular tissue appears normal, or brown from the presence of little granules of pigment in the muscular fibres, which are sometimes present in large numbers; or the muscular fibres may undergo fatty degeneration; or there may be an abnormal accumulation of fat beneath the pericardium; or there may be a peculiar gelatinous material beneath the pericardium, this consists of fat which has undergone mucous de-

generation. The heart may be so much atrophied as to weigh four ounces.

The causes of atrophy of the heart are:

1. It is a congenital malformation; the heart of an adult then looks like that of an infant.
2. Any chronic and exhausting disease, repeated hemorrhages, old age, typhus fever, dysentery, etc., may produce atrophy.
3. Chronic pericarditis, with large serous effusion, or with thickening of the pericardium, producing constriction of the coronary arteries.
4. Stenosis, atheroma, calcification, or thrombosis of the coronary arteries may produce partial or total atrophy.
5. Myocarditis, with fatty or fibrous degeneration.
6. Mitral stenosis may cause atrophy of the left ventricle.

#### HYPERTROPHY.

All the cavities of the heart may have their walls hypertrophied, or the thickening may involve one or more. While the wall of a ventricle is thickened, its cavity may retain its normal size—*simple hypertrophy*, or be dilated—*eccentric hypertrophy*; or it may be contracted—*concentric hypertrophy*.

Care should always be exercised in judging of this condition, for a firmly contracted heart seems to have a small cavity and thick walls. The existence of such a condition as concentric hypertrophy is denied by some authors. Eccentric hypertrophy is the most common form. Simple hypertrophy is not common, but may occur in connection with the atrophied kidneys of chronic diffuse nephritis. The muscle-tissue in hypertrophied hearts is firmer and denser than normal, and is apt to have a darker color. Fatty degeneration may, however, be associated with it, giving the walls a lighter appearance. It is probable that the increase of tissue in the hypertrophied heart-wall is the result of increase both in size and number of the muscle-fibres.

Hypertrophy of both ventricles increases both the length and breadth of the heart. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle (alone) increases its length. The apex is then lower and further to the left than usual. Hypertrophy of the right ventricle (alone) increases the breadth of the heart toward the right side; but sometimes the right edge of the heart retains its normal situation, and the apex is displaced to the left. With large hypertrophy of both ventricles, the base of the heart may sink, so that its long axis approaches a horizontal direction.

Hypertrophied hearts may weigh from forty to fifty ounces, or even more.

Hypertrophy of the heart may depend upon a variety of causes:

1. Changes in the valves; either insufficiency or stenosis in the valves

leading from a cavity, and insufficiency in valves leading to a cavity, may induce hypertrophy of its walls.

2. Obstruction to the passage of blood through the arterial system, as in atheroma and other diseases of the intima, congenital or acquired stenosis of vessels, pressure of tumors, etc., on vessels; certain forms of chronic diffuse nephritis, especially atrophied kidneys, lead to hypertrophy of the left ventricle, and sometimes secondarily to hypertrophy of the right ventricle.

3. Obstruction to the passage of blood through the pulmonary artery by stenosis or by certain diseases of the lungs, particularly emphysema and chronic phthisis, may lead to hypertrophy of the right ventricle, and secondarily, of the right auricle and left ventricle.

4. Any cause, whether muscular or nervous, which increases the rapidity and force of the heart's contractions, may produce hypertrophy.

5. Dilatation of the ventricles, from any cause, is frequently followed by hypertrophy.

6. Pericarditis may produce hypertrophy by inducing softening and dilatation of the ventricles, or by leaving adhesions, which obstruct the heart's action. Chronic myocarditis also may lead to hypertrophy.

Finally, for some cases of hypertrophy no satisfactory cause can be found.

It should be borne in mind that an increase in the amount of fat in and about the heart may make the organ appear larger, when there may be actually a considerable decrease in the amount of muscle-tissue.

#### DILATATION.

Dilatation may be combined with hypertrophy—*active dilatation*; or there may be no increase of muscle tissue, but a thinning of the walls proportionate to the dilatation of the cavity—*passive dilatation*.

Either one or all of the heart cavities may be dilated, the auricles most frequently; next the right ventricle; least often the left ventricle. Active dilatation has been considered under hypertrophy.

Passive dilatation may be produced by:

1. Changes in the valves. Mitral or aortic stenosis or insufficiency may produce dilatation of the auricles and right ventricle. Pulmonary stenosis or insufficiency may produce dilatation of the right auricle and right ventricle. Aortic insufficiency, with or without stenosis or mitral insufficiency, may produce dilatation of the left ventricle. Dilatations from these causes are often succeeded and compensated for by hypertrophy of the heart's walls.

2. Changes in the muscular tissue of the heart-walls: Serous infiltration from pericarditis, myocarditis, fatty degeneration and infiltration, atrophy of the muscle-fibres, may all lead to dilatation.



3. A heart which is already hypertrophied may, from degeneration of the muscle, become dilated.

4. Acute exudative inflammations of the lungs and acute pleuritic exudations, by rendering a large number of vessels suddenly impermeable to the blood-current, may produce sudden stasis in the pulmonary artery and dilatation of the right heart.

5. There are curious cases of acute and chronic dilatation of the ventricles, for which no mechanical cause can be found, and which are very fatal.

#### DEGENERATIONS.

*Parenchymatous degeneration.*—This lesion frequently occurs in typhoid and typhus fever, pyæmia, erysipelas, and other infectious diseases, as well as in the exanthemata, as a result of burns, and under a variety of other conditions. It is characterized by the presence in the muscle-fibres of the heart of greater or less numbers of albuminous granules of various sizes, most of them very small. They are not as refractile as fat-droplets, and are insoluble in ether, while swelling up and becoming almost invisible under the influence of acetic acid. Sometimes they are so abundant as to conceal the striations of the fibres. The degeneration is usually quite uniformly diffused through the heart, whose walls are softer than normal and of a grayish color. This lesion may be associated with or followed by fatty degeneration.

*Fatty degeneration.*—This consists in the transformation of portions of the muscle-fibres of the heart into fat, which collects in the fibres in larger and smaller droplets, sometimes few in number, sometimes so abundant as to entirely destroy or conceal the normal striations (Fig. 103). These

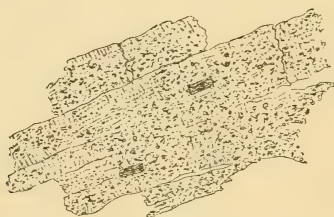


FIG. 103.—FATTY DEGENERATION OF THE HEART MUSCLE, teased.

droplets are soluble in ether, and remain unchanged on treatment with acetic acid. This degeneration is sometimes quite universal, but is more apt to occur in patches, giving the heart muscle a mottled appearance. This mottling may usually be best seen on the papillary muscles. The degenerated areas have a pale-yellowish color, and the muscle-tissue is soft and flabby; but when moderate or slight in degree, the gross appearance may be little changed, and the microscopical examination be necessary for its determination. This degeneration may lead to thinning of the walls or

to rupture of the heart, or to inability to fulfil its functions. It is not infrequently the cause of sudden death.

It may be secondary to hypertrophy of the heart, to inflammation of the heart-muscle, or to pericarditis; to disturbances of the circulation in the coronary arteries by inflammation, atheroma, etc. It may be due to deteriorated conditions of the blood in wasting diseases, excessive hemorrhages, exhausting fevers, leukæmia, etc., or to poisoning with phosphorus and arsenic. It may occur in otherwise apparently healthy persons.

*Lipomatosis* of the heart, which should be clearly distinguished from fatty degeneration, consists of an unusual accumulation of fat, either about the heart or between the muscle-fibres (Fig. 104). The subpericardial fat,

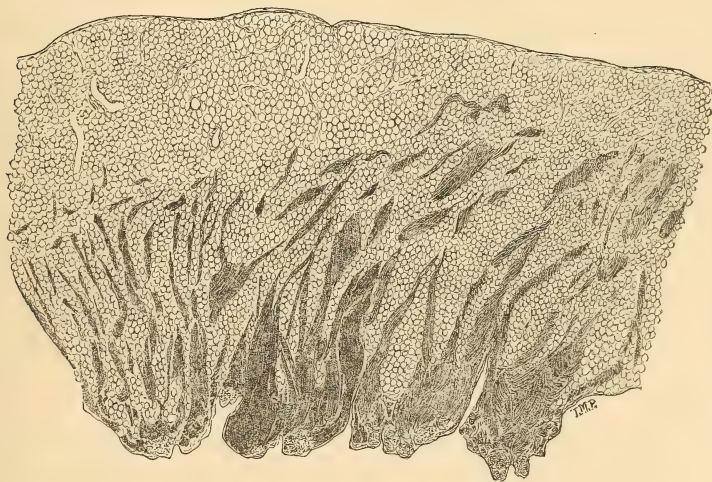


FIG. 104.—LIPOMATOSIS OF HEART,  $\times 6$ .

The lesion is excessive; the heart-muscle being to a large extent atrophied. (The fat-cells are represented, for the sake of clearness, of relatively too large size.)

which may be present in considerable quantity under normal conditions, may be so greatly increased in amount as to form a thick envelope, inclosing nearly the entire organ. Sometimes the accumulation of fat extends into the walls of the heart, between the muscles, causing atrophy of the latter, frequently to a very great extent, so that the function of the heart is seriously interfered with. This occurs sometimes in general obesity, or as a result of chronic pericarditis, or in drunkards, or in debilitated or old persons.

*Mucous degeneration* or transformation of the subpericardial fat is sometimes found in persons much emaciated by chronic disease.

*Amyloid degeneration* of the endocardium or the walls of the blood-vessels and intermuscular connective-tissue septa is a not very infrequent, but usually not very important lesion.

*Calcification* of the products of inflammation in pericarditis, or of connective-tissue membranes in chronic pericarditis, sometimes occurs, and in the latter case the heart may be more or less inclosed by a calcareous shell. The muscle-fibres of the heart-wall may, though rarely, become densely infiltrated with salts of lime.

*Myomalacia*.—When, through obliterating endarteritis, atheroma, thrombosis, or embolus of a branch of the coronary arteries, the blood supply is cut off from a circumscribed portion of the heart-wall, the tissue in the affected area may undergo fatty degeneration leading to rupture. Or instead of extensive fatty degeneration, the muscle-fibres may break down into a granular detritus, and the connective tissue about them suffer retrograde metamorphosis, so that the whole affected area may be soft and yellowish-white, or grayish in color. If, as not infrequently occurs, there is considerable extravasation of blood, the degenerated area may be of a dark-red color. Under these conditions the wall may rupture; or acute inflammatory processes may occur; or the degenerated tissue may be gradually absorbed, and replaced by new connective tissue which gradually grows dense, shrinks, and assumes the characters of cicatricial tissue. This may occur in any part of the heart-wall or in the papillary muscles. When the heart-wall is involved, the new-formed connective tissue may yield to the blood pressure from within, and an aneurism of the heart be formed.

#### INFLAMMATION.

##### *Endocarditis.*

The endocardium is a connective-tissue membrane, which lines the cavities of the heart and forms its valves. Its inner surface is covered with a layer of endothelial cells. It is but poorly supplied with vessels, and the inflammations which attack it are of the cellular variety. The ordinary products of inflammation, pus, fibrin, and serum are scanty or absent altogether. The connective-tissue cells and basement substance are principally concerned in the inflammatory processes. The new tissue thus produced is prone to degeneration and calcification. The roughening of the endocardium due to the inflammation often causes a coagulation of fibrin on the inflamed surface.

In foetal life it is the endocardium of the right heart, in extrauterine life that of the left heart which is regularly inflamed.

The endocardium which forms the valves is that which is most frequently inflamed, but the other portions of it are by no means exempt.

We distinguish:

(1) *Acute endocarditis*, which occurs most frequently with rheumatism. It may attack a heart which was previously healthy, or one in which the lesions of chronic endocarditis already exist.



In some cases the only lesion is a simple swelling of the valves. They are thick and succulent, but their surfaces remain smooth. The basement substance is swollen, and there is a moderate production of new connective-tissue cells.

In other cases, the growth of connective-tissue cells is very much more marked, the basement substance is split up, and little cellular, fungous masses project from the free surface of the endocardium. On these roughened surfaces the fibrin of the blood is deposited, and so vegetations of considerable size may be formed.

In still other cases the cell growth, while in some places it forms vegetations, in other places rapidly degenerates, and thus portions of the valves are destroyed.

In some cases of this disease, the patients recover, and the valves seem to return to a normal condition; in other cases the valves are left permanently damaged; and in still others chronic endocarditis follows the acute form.

(2) *Malignant endocarditis* (acute ulcerative endocarditis) seems to have the characters of an acute infectious disease rather than those of a local inflammation, but for convenience we describe it as a form of endocarditis.

It may occur as an independent disease, or be associated with the puerperal condition, rheumatism, pneumonia, and other diseases.

It may attack hearts previously healthy, or those in which the lesions of chronic endocarditis already exist.

In the endocardium there is a marked cell-growth, and also a degeneration, which in some places produce large vegetations, in others deep destruction of tissue. In this way, the surface of the endocardium is rendered ragged and irregular—an irregularity rendered still more marked by the deposition of fibrin from the blood.

The mitral valve and its chordæ tendineæ seem to be the most frequent seats of this lesion, but other parts of the endocardium are not infrequently affected.

Colonies of micrococci are constantly found in this disease in and upon the vegetations, on the surfaces of the ulcers, in the infiltrated endocardium, or in the vessels of the valves, and to these may be attributed the destructive character of the local process (Fig. 105).

A very frequent accompaniment of acute ulcerative endocarditis is the formation of multiple abscesses in the spleen, kidneys, brain, skin, or abscess in the heart-wall. In these secondary abscesses, colonies of micrococci may usually be found. If they are examined in early stages, masses of micrococci may be found blocking up some of the small arteries, and around these will often be found a more or less circumscribed area of tissue in the condition of coagulation necrosis. These areas with their contained bacteria may act as irritants, and lead to the development of a

purulent inflammation which results in abscess. It is probable that these abscesses in ulcerative endocarditis do not always arise from cardiac emboli, but may precede the heart lesion.

Although very constantly associated with this disease, our knowledge of the micrococci is not yet extensive enough to enable us to assert positively that they are its cause, although the necrotic changes which seem

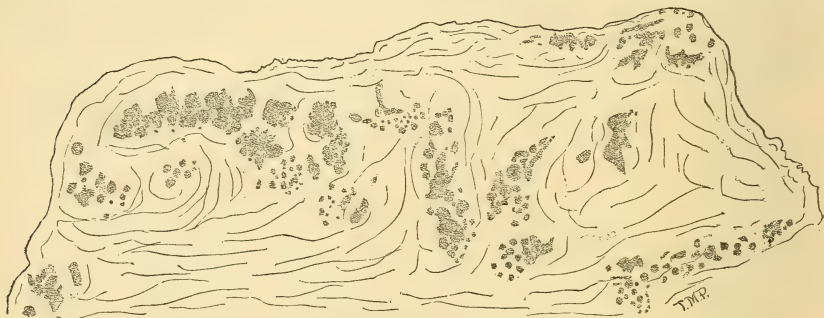


FIG. 105.—MALIGNANT ENDOCARDITIS,  $\times 700$  and reduced.  
Section of vegetation showing colonies of micrococci, stained with fuchsin.

uniformly to occur in tissues in which they have found lodgment as emboli, speak very strongly in favor of this view. Whether or not the micrococci in this disease are identical with those found more or less constantly in numerous other diseases, or in any one of them, cannot be decided at present, in the absence of conclusive culture experiments.<sup>1</sup> (For method of staining these micrococci, see p. 90.)

(3) *Chronic Endocarditis* may succeed acute endocarditis, or the inflammation may be chronic from the outset. It affects most frequently the aortic and mitral valves, and the endocardium of the left auricle and ventricle; similar changes in the right side of the heart being much less frequent.

<sup>1</sup> We have seen a case, reported by Dr. J. Lewis Smith and Dr. W. P. Northrup to the New York Pathological Society, October 22d, 1884, of a child five and one-half years of age, which died after a severe illness, lasting about ten days, whose nature was obscure. The temperature ranged from the normal to  $105^{\circ}$ . At the autopsy, nine hours after death, numerous ecchymoses were found beneath the skin, pleura, and pericardium, sub-pial hemorrhage on both sides of brain, and small extravasations in the liver and spleen. A pyriform polypus about two ctm. long and one ctm. wide hung from the edge of the mitral into the ventricle; smaller vegetations, which seemed to rest on an ulcerated base, were found on the mitral and on the papillary muscles. The vegetations presented the appearances common to ulcerative endocarditis, except that the masses of bacteria, which were clustered in enormous numbers about and in the vegetations, were not micrococci, but were filamentous, being from  $0.7$  to  $1.0 \mu$  long and very slender. They were mostly grouped in twos, end to end, and in some cases in longer chains. Bacilli were not found in other organs. No cultures were made.

There are two main anatomical varieties of chronic endocarditis, which may occur separately or together.

1. The endocardium is thick and dense, its surfaces are smooth or covered with small, hard vegetations or ridges; it is often infiltrated with the salts of lime.

2. There is a growth of connective-tissue cells in the endocardium with a splitting up of the basement substance. Some of the new cells continue to live, others degenerate. By the combination of such a cell-growth and destruction, the endocardium is in some places destroyed, in others changed into projecting vegetations. Fibrin is deposited on the roughened surfaces. After a time, the condition is further complicated by the deposition of the salts of lime in the new tissue and the endocardium. All these changes may extend to the wall of the heart beneath the endocardium.

The most important result of chronic endocarditis is its effect on the heart valves, producing insufficiency and stenosis. The changes in the valves are followed by changes in the walls and cavities of the heart, and disturbances of the circulation throughout the body.

(4) *Tubercular Endocarditis* may occur in connection with tubercular pericarditis or general miliary tuberculosis. The tubercles may be small and single, or grouped in masses, and show the usual degenerative changes.

#### DEGENERATION.

It is not uncommon to find, especially in old persons, changes in the valves, which seem to be simply degenerative. The valves are a little thickened, they are denser than the normal, their tissue is infiltrated with fat and granular matter, or with the salts of lime.

#### *Myocarditis.*

The inflammatory changes in the walls of the heart involve primarily the interstitial tissue and blood-vessels, the muscle-fibres being secondarily affected by atrophic and degenerative changes.

There is a change in the muscle-fibres by which they are broken into rectangular fragments with a collection of granular matter around the nuclei, the entire tissue becoming dense and translucent. This change is sometimes called "parenchymatous myocarditis," but its inflammatory nature is doubtful.

*Interstitial Myocarditis* may be acute and purulent, or chronic with the formation of new connective tissue.

*Acute purulent Myocarditis* may be diffuse, infiltrating the wall of the heart with pus. This occurs as a complication of scarlatina and from unknown causes.

More frequently the purulent inflammation is circumscribed, produc-



ing abscesses. These occur with pyæmia, ulcerative endocarditis, diphtheria, and other infectious diseases. They are of different sizes, and either single or multiple. They seem to be regularly produced by the lodgment of infectious emboli in small vessels. The contents of the abscesses consist of pus, broken down muscle-tissue, and bacteria. These abscesses may open into the pericardial sac and set up a purulent pericarditis; or into a heart-cavity, giving rise to thrombi in the heart and emboli in different parts of the body; or the wall of the heart is weakened by the abscess, so that it ruptures, or an aneurismal sac is formed; or an abscess in the interventricular septum may establish an opening between the ventricles; or the suppurative process may extend upwards and form an abscess in the connective tissue at the base of the heart.

In rare cases, the patients recover, the contents of the abscesses become dry and hard, and inclosed by a wall of fibrous tissue.

*Chronic Interstitial Myocarditis* may be secondary to pericarditis or endocarditis, to obliterating endarteritis of the branches of the coronary artery, or may occur by itself. There is a growth of new connective tissue or of granulation tissue between the muscular fibres, with atrophy and degeneration of the muscle. This growth may be in the form of circumscribed patches, or diffused over a considerable part of the wall of the heart. Such an interstitial inflammation is often followed by dilatation of the cavities of the heart, by the formation of aneurisms of the wall of the heart, and of thrombi in the cavities of the heart.

*Syphilitic Myocarditis* is accompanied by the growth of connective tissue or granulation tissue in the wall of the heart between the muscular fibres, and to this may be added the formation of gummy tumors. The pericardium and endocardium may also be thickened, and pericardial adhesions may be formed.

#### CHANGES IN THE VALVES.

*Fenestration* of the valves is usually a change productive of no bad consequences. It occurs in the aortic and pulmonary valves. The valves are thinner than usual, and close to their free edges are small slits extending from the centre to the attached edges of a leaf.

*Aneurisms* of the valves are produced in two ways:

(1) They are the result of endocarditis. One of the lamellæ of the leaf of a valve is destroyed and the other lamella is converted into a sac filled with blood. These aneurisms are found in the aortic valve, projecting into the ventricle; and in the mitral valve, projecting into the auricle. Not infrequently the wall of the aneurism gives way, so that there is a rupture entirely through the valve.

(2) The entire thickness of a leaf of a valve is converted into a sac filled with blood. This occurs in the aortic, mitral, and tricupsid valves; its cause is unknown.

*Hemorrhage* in the substance of the valves is sometimes found in very young children. It does not appear to have much clinical importance.

#### ANEURISM OF THE HEART.

Sacs filled with blood, situated in the walls of the heart, and communicating with its cavities, are formed in several different ways.

(1) In consequence of inflammatory processes in the endocardium and muscular tissue, a small or large portion of the wall is converted into fibrous tissue. The portion thus changed no longer resists the pressure of the blood from within, and is driven outward. Such a pouch may be a circumscribed sac, communicating with the heart-cavity by a small opening, or may look like a dilatation of part of the ventricle. The wall of such an aneurism becomes thinner as the sac increases in size. It is composed of the endocardium, new fibrous tissue, visceral pericardium, and sometimes the adherent parietal pericardium. The walls may calcify; or rarely they become so thin as to rupture externally or into the right ventricle. The sacs may contain fluid blood or be filled up with fibrin.

Such aneurisms are usually situated in the wall of the left ventricle; rarely in that of the left auricle. If they are in the septum, they may project into the right ventricle. They are usually single; sometimes two or three are found in the same heart.

(2) Fatty degeneration of the heart-wall may reach such a point that the wall yields, and is pouched out into an aneurismal sac.

(3) Endocarditis and myocarditis, or fatty degeneration, may so soften a portion of the heart-wall that the endocardium and part of the muscular tissue is ruptured, and a ragged cavity is formed. This form of aneurism usually does not attain a large size, but soon ruptures externally, and causes the death of the patient.

#### THROMBOSIS OF THE HEART.

It is very common to find after death, in the heart-cavities, yellow, succulent, semi-translucent masses. They are most common and of firmest texture in persons who die of acute inflammatory diseases. They may adhere quite firmly to the walls of the heart, and may extend in long, branching cords into the vessels. They are formed in the last hours of life, and just after death. They have no clinical or pathological importance.

Coagulations of the fibrin of the blood in the heart do, however, occur during life, and may exist for years. If the fibrin adheres to the valves in small masses, these are called vegetations; if it coagulates in the heart cavities in larger bodies, they are called thrombi, or heart polypi.

Such thrombi are found in all the heart-cavities. They form flattened

masses firmly adherent to the endocardium; or rounded bodies in the spaces between the trabeculæ; or have a polypoid shape and are attached by a narrow pedicle, or are free in the cavity.

They are usually found in connection with some valvular lesion, which prevents the free circulation of blood through the heart.

They are firm, dry, and of a whitish color, they may soften and break down at their centres, so as to look like cysts filled with pus, or they may calcify. They are usually entirely unorganized, consisting simply of fibrin.

I, Delafield, have observed one case in which the thrombi were distinctly organized. The patient was a man found dead in the street, concerning whom no history was obtained.

Sometimes sarcomatous and carcinomatous tumors in different parts of the body are accompanied by the formation of thrombi in the heart-cavities which are composed partly of coagulated blood, partly of tissue, like that of the primary tumor.

#### TUMORS.

Primary tumors in the heart are rare; but *sarcomata*, *myxomata*, *fibromata*, and *lipomata* may occur. *Rhabdomyomata*, probably congenital, may occur in the heart-wall as circumscribed nodular masses. A *cavernous* tumor of this kind has been described. Secondary tumors, as a result of metastasis or of continuous growth from adjacent parts, are not very infrequent. These are usually *carcinomata* or *sarcomata*. Secondary *chondromata* have been observed.

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus* sometimes occurs in the heart-wall and may perforate into the cavities. *Cysticercus cellulosæ* has been observed.

#### THE BLOOD-VESSELS.

##### ATROPHY AND HYPERTROPHY.

*Atrophy* of the blood-vessels may involve the entire trunk or some of its elements. It may occur as a part of general malnutrition of the body, or in connection with atrophy of particular organs, or as an accompaniment of various diseases of the vessels themselves.

*Hypertrophy*, which is especially seen in the arteries, may occur in the establishment of a collateral circulation upon the closure of arterial trunks, or it may occur as the result of increased blood-pressure, as in some forms of hypertrophy of the heart.

##### DEGENERATION.

*Fatty degeneration.*—This may occur in the walls of otherwise unaltered vessels, or in those which have undergone a variety of inflamma-



tory or degenerative changes. It may occur either in the intima or media or both, and may be so extensive as to form a very prominent gross lesion, or so little developed as to require the microscope for its recognition. When marked, especially if occurring in the intima of large vessels, smaller and larger spots or stripes or patches may be seen, of a yellowish-white color, usually sharply circumscribed, and sometimes smooth, sometimes roughened on the surface. It is most apt to occur in the aorta, but may be found in any of the vessels. In moderate degrees of the lesion, we find on section that the cells of the intima contain fat-droplets in greater or less number. When further advanced, not only are the cells crowded with fat-droplets, but the intercellular tissue also may be more or less densely infiltrated with them. Sometimes the infiltration is so dense that the tissue breaks down, and there may be an erosion of the surface, forming a so-called fatty ulcer. When the media is involved, the muscle-cells contain fat-droplets. It may lead to the formation of aneurism or to rupture of the vessels.

*Calcification* usually occurs in vessels otherwise diseased, and may involve either the intima or media. It consists in the deposition of salts of lime either in the cells or intercellular substance. The lime may be in the form of larger or smaller granules or in dense translucent plates.

*Amyloid degeneration*, which may affect all the coats of the arteries, but especially the intima and media, will be considered under the lesions of the organs in which it most commonly occurs.

## THE ARTERIES.

### INFLAMMATION.

#### ACUTE ARTERITIS.

Acute inflammation of the walls of the arteries is, in the majority of cases, the result of injury, or of an inflammation in the vicinity of the vessel, or of the lodgment within it of some foreign body of an irritating or infectious nature. The inflammatory process may be largely confined to the inner layers of the vessel—*endarteritis*—or it may commence in the outer layers—*periarteritis*—or it may involve the entire wall.

The blood-vessels in the outer layers may be congested, the tissue oedematous and infiltrated with pus-cells, and the entire wall may become necrotic. The intima, if this layer is involved, loses its natural gloss, looks dull and swollen. It may become infiltrated with pus from the outer layers, and it may become necrotic. Under these conditions thrombi usually form, and in these may occur the various changes which have been already described on p. 52.

## CHRONIC ARTERITIS.

In chronic arteritis, all the coats of the vessel may be involved, but in most cases the lesion is either largely confined to or most marked in the intima—*endarteritis*. The disease may supervene upon an acute inflammation of the artery, or it may be chronic from the beginning. The inflammation may occur in patches or in irregular segments of the vessels, of various lengths, or it may occur diffusely. It may be limited to single arterial trunks, or it may affect more or less all the arteries of the body. Arteries which are the seat of slight degrees of chronic inflammation may appear to the naked eye but slightly, or even not at all changed, or the walls may seem stiffer than usual, and remain widely open when cut across. When the lesion is more marked, whitish patches or areas of distinct thickening of the wall may be seen, which sometimes visibly encroach upon the lumen of the vessel (Fig. 106). Microscopical

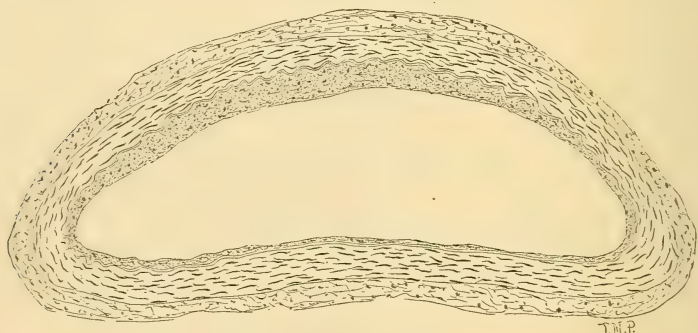


FIG. 106.—CHRONIC ENDARTERITIS,  $\times$  about 15,  
In one of the cerebral arteries. The amount of thickening of the intima is moderate.

examination shows that the thickening of the wall is due to the formation of new connective tissue, mostly in the intima. The new tissue may be soft and gelatinous in character and contain few or many cells; or it may be very dense and hard and contain very few cells. The endothelial layer of the intima may remain intact over the thickened area. Parts of the vessel not distinctly thickened may contain an unusual number of small spheroidal cells. Sometimes the musculosa and adventitia as well as the intima show at the seat of thickening an increase of new connective tissue. The increase of connective tissue in the intima, particularly of smaller arteries, may be so great as to encroach seriously upon the lumina, and even lead to their obliteration—*endarteritis obliterans* (Fig. 107). Obliterating endarteritis is very common in the interstitial inflammation of organs such as the kidney, liver, etc., as a part of the general new formation of connective tissue. Arteries which are the seat of chronic arteritis are not infrequently the seat of secondary acute inflammatory changes, so that, in addition to the formation of con-

nective tissue they may become infiltrated with small spheroidal cells, which may lie singly or in clusters in the various layers, and particularly along the blood-vessels of the adventitia.

Arteries which are the seat of chronic endarteritis are liable to suffer



FIG. 107.—CHRONIC OBLITERATING ENDARTERITIS,  $\times$  about 15.

The lesion is excessive, almost entirely closing the lumen of the vessel. There is in this case a moderate degree of periarteritis.

a series of degenerative changes consisting chiefly of fatty degeneration, calcification, or the breaking down of the degenerated tissue, and the

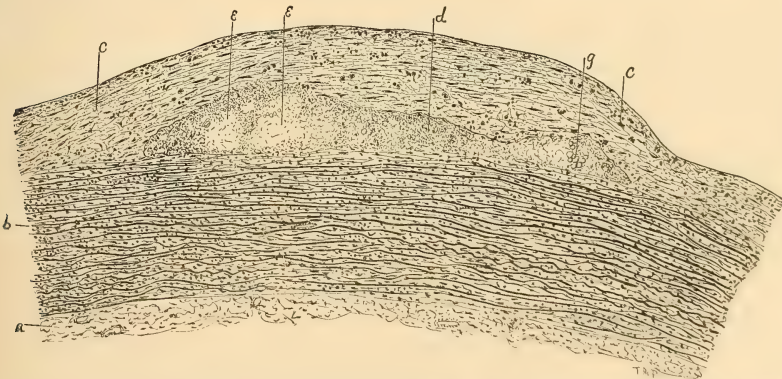


FIG. 108.—ATHEROMA OF THE AORTA, WITH DEGENERATION OF NEW-FORMED TISSUE,  $\times$  about 10.

*a*, Adventitia; *b*, media; *c*, new tissue developed in the intima; *d*, degenerated area; *e*, area of softening; *g*, fat-droplets in softened area.

formation of inclosed softened areas (Fig. 108), or erosions or ulcer-like openings in the intima. To the varied alterations produced in the walls of the arteries by combinations of these inflammatory and degenerative changes the name *atheroma* is frequently applied.



When fatty degeneration supervenes upon chronic endarteritis, the thickened areas may have a light-yellowish color, and the microscopical examination will show a greater or less amount of fat in and between the cells of the intima or the new tissue produced therein. Should the fatty degeneration be extensive, the basement substance and the cells may gradually disintegrate, and larger and smaller irregular cavities may be formed in the walls, filled with fat-droplets and tissue detritus.

These softened areas, sometimes called *atheromatous cysts*, frequently also contain cholestearin, and there may be partial calcification of their contents, or of the tissue of the arterial wall about them. Sometimes the wall of the artery, instead of undergoing simple fatty degeneration, or in connection with this change, becomes in circumscribed localities looser in texture by the conversion of the muscular and connective tissue into a finely fibrillar substance which may persist for some time or break down, forming an atheromatous cyst. These atheromatous cysts may, through a degeneration of the tissue inclosing them, open into the lumen of the vessel, forming the so-called *atheromatous ulcers*. Fragments of tissue from the edges of these ulcers, or from the contents of the cysts, may be carried into the circulation, forming emboli. Fibrinous thrombi are prone to form upon the roughened surface of the intima, or upon the surface of the erosions. Very frequently the calcification is so extensive that large hard calcareous plates are formed in the walls and may project inward, forming roughened surfaces on which thrombi are deposited. Fatty degeneration and calcification of the media and thickening of the adventitia may occur in connection with atheroma of the intima. Sometimes the vessels by these changes become greatly deformed so that over considerable areas the entire wall may be altered, presenting raised and roughened surfaces interspersed with calcareous plates, erosions, thrombi, etc. Chronic endarteritis and atheroma is most common and marked in the aorta, but it may occur in smaller arteries, particularly in the cerebral and coronary arteries.

Arteritis as a result of *syphilis* is of frequent occurrence. This may lead to partial or complete obliteration of the lumen of the vessel by a thickening of the intima (Fig. 71), or it may involve all the arterial coats. Histologically the new tissue formed in syphilitic arteritis is identical in most cases with the product of simple chronic inflammation; but when arteries are involved in the growth of gummy tumors, the cheesy degeneration characteristic of the latter often affects the vessels also. Syphilitic arteritis is apt to affect smaller vessels, and the degenerative changes do not form so prominent a feature as in other forms.

In tubercular inflammation, the walls of the arteries, particularly the smaller ones, may be thickened, and their lumina obliterated.

The results of arteritis vary greatly, depending upon the size and situation of the affected vessel, and the extent and particular form which the

lesion assumes. The vessels may become dilated by a yielding to the blood-pressure of their weakened walls, and aneurisms of various kinds may be thus produced. Thrombi and emboli may be induced by means of the roughened surfaces, common in endarteritis, particularly of the larger vessels. On the other hand, obliterating endarteritis may cause a partial or entire shutting off of the blood-supply to a part, and a more or less serious interference with its nutrition or even its death. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle of the heart may accompany extensive arteritis, as a result of the increased rigidity of the walls of the vessels, or the diminution of their lumina.

It is important to remember that a very slight contraction of arteries which have undergone a considerable degree of obliterating endarteritis may produce, for the time being, the same effect upon the part supplied by them with blood that a permanent occlusion would do. Such an occlusion of the vessels, and cutting off of the blood-supply may be of the greatest significance, even though it be but temporary, if it involve branches of the coronary or cerebral arteries. Although it is not yet proven that temporary contraction of partially occluded arteries is a sufficient or frequent cause of sudden death, there are cases of sudden death with the symptoms of heart-failure or with the symptoms of hemiplegia, in which the only discoverable lesions are obliterating endarteritis, respectively, of the coronary or cerebral arteries. We have seen cases of sudden death occurring with symptoms of hemiplegia, in which there was at some point of the middle cerebral artery considerable, although not complete, obliteration of the vessel, but no evidence of degeneration of the brain-tissue supplied by it.<sup>1</sup>

The causes of chronic arteritis and atheroma are in many cases not understood. It may commence in an acute process, or it may be slow in its development. It is very common in old people, and seems often to be of no particular significance. On the other hand, it may, as we have seen, particularly in the smaller arteries, be associated with syphilis, tuberculosis, or interstitial inflammation of organs.

#### DILATATION AND ANEURISM.

(1) *Cirroid aneurism* consists in the dilatation and lengthening of large or small arteries. The walls of the artery are thinned, the vessel is tortuous, and in places sacculated. These changes are most frequent in small arteries, especially the temporal and occipital; they involve the trunk of the vessel and its branches, or may extend to the capillaries and small veins. They form larger or smaller tumors beneath the skin.

<sup>1</sup> Consult Conheim and v. Schulthess-Rechberg: "Ueber die Folgen d. Kranzarterienverschliessung für das Herz," Virch. Archiv, Bd. 85, p. 503; also Leyden: "Ueber d. Sclerose der Coronar-Arterien u. d. davon abhängigen Krankheitszustände," Zeitsch. f. klin. Med., Bd. vii., pp. 459 and 539.

Rarely they are found in the larger arteries, and even in the aorta.

(2) *The ordinary aneurism* is a dilatation of the coats of the artery over a larger or smaller part of its course. Such dilatations are usually due to chronic endarteritis and atheroma. According to their shape we may distinguish two varieties: the diffuse and the circumscribed.

(a) The diffuse, cylindrical, or fusiform aneurism consists in a uniform dilatation of all the coats of an artery, so that it assumes the shape of a fusiform or cylindrical swelling. In the walls of the dilated portion of the vessel there are often smaller circumscribed dilatations. The wall of the aneurism is atheromatous or calcified; the middle coat may be atrophied. The arch of the aorta is the most common seat of this form of aneurism; but the entire length of the aorta, or parts of any other arteries, may be dilated in the same way.

(b) The circumscribed or sacculated aneurism consists either in a dilatation of the entire circumference of an artery over a short portion of its length, or in a dilatation of only a small portion of one side of the wall, so that the aneurism looks like a swelling attached to one side of the artery. The aneurism commences as a dilatation of all the coats of the vessel; but as soon as it attains any considerable size, the middle coat atrophies, so that the wall is composed of the inner and outer coats; or the inner coat is destroyed by endarteritis, so that the outer coat alone forms the wall of the aneurism. As the aneurism increases in size, it presses upon and causes the destruction of the neighboring tissues and viscera, and portions of these tissues and viscera become incorporated with or take the place of the wall of the aneurism. The cavity of the aneurism is filled with fluid or clotted blood, or with layers of fibrin which adhere closely to its wall. The communication between the aneurism and the artery may be small or large. If arterial branches are given off from the aneurism, they may remain open, or become plugged with fibrin; or their walls are thickened and their cavities narrowed by endarteritis. Death is produced by the pressure and interference of the aneurism with the adjoining viscera, or by rupture. The rupture may allow enough blood to escape to destroy life, or the blood may be held in by the soft parts, and a second false aneurism formed about the original one.

*Dissecting aneurisms* are those in which, owing to a solution of continuity of the inner layers of the artery, the blood gets between the media and adventitia, and forces its way for a greater or less distance between them. Or, it may separate the media into two layers.

#### ANEURISMS OF THE DIFFERENT ARTERIES.

*The aorta* may be dilated over its entire length; or there may be diffuse or circumscribed dilatations at any portion of its course; or there may be several aneurisms situated at different points. The ascending portion of the arch of the aorta may be uniformly dilated in a fusiform



shape; or there may be circumscribed dilatations on its anterior wall; or, more rarely, on its posterior wall. The sacculated aneurisms may be of all sizes, and may rupture within the pericardium; or they may form a cavity in the upper part of the ventricular septum, and communicate by openings into the pulmonary artery and left ventricle; or they may dilate downward between the visceral and parietal pericardium, in front of the heart, pushing that organ backward. They may perforate into the right or left auricle or right ventricle, the superior vena cava, or the pulmonary artery; or they may reach a large size, press on and erode the right side of the sternum and adjoining ribs, project under the skin, and even rupture externally.

The transverse portion of the arch may be dilated in a fusiform shape; or there may be sacculated aneurisms at any point in its wall. The sacculated aneurisms usually reach a considerable size. They press on the sternum and ribs in front, or on the œsophagus, trachea, and bronchi behind. The large arteries given off from the arch may be occluded. They cause death by pressure on the air-passages, the œsophagus, and the vena cava; or may rupture externally or into the œsophagus, trachea, bronchi, or pleural cavities.

On the abdominal aorta we usually find aneurisms sacculated. If they are situated high up, they may project into the pleural cavities; if lower down, into the abdomen. They may compress and displace the viscera, vessels, and nerves, and erode the vertebræ. They may rupture behind the peritoneum, into the peritoneal cavity, the pleural cavities, the inferior vena cava, the lungs, the colon, the pelves of the kidney, or the posterior mediastinum.

*The coronary arteries* may be dilated throughout, or may be the seat of small sacculated aneurisms. These may rupture into the pericardium, or may cause rupture of the heart-wall.

*The pulmonary arteries* are rarely the seat of aneurisms. Diffuse and circumscribed dilatations, however, sometimes occur on the main trunk and on the two principal branches of the artery. They do not usually reach a large size, but may cause death by rupture. General dilatation of all the branches of the pulmonary artery is more common. It is found in connection with stenosis of the mitral valves, and with compression or induration of the lung-tissue.

Of the other arteries of the body, there is hardly any one which may not become the seat of an aneurism, but those of the popliteal artery are most common.

#### STENOSIS.

Stenosis and obliteration of the aorta, at the point of entrance of the ductus arteriosus, has been described in a considerable number of cases.

The situation of the stenosis is either exactly at the entrance of the

ductus arteriosus, or close on either side of this point. The degree of stenosis varies. The aorta may be entirely closed and converted into a solid cord for a length of half an inch; or there may be a circular constriction through which there is a larger or smaller opening. The constriction is uniformly circular; or there is a septum springing from the concave side of the vessel at the opening of the ductus arteriosus; or there is a cicatricial-like contraction of the aorta. The walls of the aorta at this point may be thickened and sclerosed. The ductus arteriosus may be closed or open. Above the constriction the aorta is usually dilated; below it, it is normal, dilated, or stenosed.

Stenosis of the aorta produces hypertrophy of the left ventricle, and, later, of the right ventricle, with venous congestion throughout the body; or there may be a collateral circulation developed between the arteries given off above and below the constriction; or there may be rupture of the aorta, the right ventricle or auricle.

This condition is found at all ages, but is produced during foetal life, or in the first year of extra-uterine life. It is probable that it may be caused after birth by an abnormal closure of the ductus arteriosus. This vessel normally becomes closed without the formation of a thrombus. If a thrombus is formed, it may extend into the aorta and obstruct it; or the ductus arteriosus is filled with a thrombus, but increases for a time in size; afterward, as the thrombus is absorbed, the vessel contracts and draws the walls of the aorta together.

Stenosis of the aorta and of some of the other arteries has been observed in a few rare cases, without any known cause.

Endarteritis, with the production of atheromatous and calcareous patches, may obstruct or entirely obliterate the smaller arteries. This is especially seen in the arteries of the leg, foot, and brain, and in the coronary arteries. The writer (T.M.P.) has seen a case in which the subclavian was completely occluded in this way.

Narrowing of the aorta and of all its branches, with thinning of the arterial coats, is found as a congenital condition. It usually occurs in females, in connection with imperfect development of the whole body.

Stenosis from thrombosis or embolism is treated of elsewhere.

#### RUPTURES AND WOUNDS.

Rupture of arteries is found under the following conditions:

1. Fatty degeneration or endarteritis, with atheromatous changes, may so soften and destroy the inner and middle coats of an artery as to admit of its rupture. The aorta, just above the valves, is the most frequent seat of this lesion. The rupture may run in any direction: its edges are irregular and jagged. The blood may burst through all the coats of the aorta at the same point; or, more frequently, the external coat remains and the blood is infiltrated in the middle coat and between

it and the external coat. In this way, a *dissecting aneurism* is formed, which may extend along the aorta for a considerable distance. After a short time, the external coat usually gives way at some point, and the blood escapes. In rare cases, life is prolonged for some time, the rupture being closed by a new membrane.

We also find ruptures from fatty degeneration and atheroma in the arteries of the brain and lungs; in the coronary arteries, the cœliac axis, the mesenteric arteries, and in the arteries of the extremities.

2. In rare cases, stenosis of a portion of the aorta may cause rupture at some point between the seat of stenosis and the heart.

3. Contusions, wrenchings, and severe falls may rupture the walls of an artery, either partially or completely, producing traumatic or dissecting aneurisms, or completely severing the vessel.

4. Penetrating wounds may injure or entirely sever an artery. If the vessel be large and the injury severe, death from hemorrhage is the usual result. A small artery may become closed, or be the seat of a false aneurism.

In the healing of a wounded artery, two conditions co-operate. The vessel retracts and contracts, and a thrombus is formed within it. The contraction may be alone sufficient to close the vessel; its coats thicken, and the inner surfaces finally are fused together; or the blood coagulates, and forms a thrombus in the vessel near the wound. This thrombus later becomes organized, and the vessel is converted into a fibrous cord.

*Spurious or false aneurisms* are found most frequently connected with vessels of the extremities. When an artery is wounded, the blood escapes into the surrounding soft parts, and a cavity is formed filled with blood and broken-down tissue. This condition may terminate in several ways.

a. The wound in the artery may heal, and the effused blood be absorbed.

b. The effused blood and broken tissues may become gangrenous and the surrounding soft parts be inflamed.

c. A sort of sac-wall may be formed by the soft parts, while the wound of the artery remains open, so that we have an aneurismal sac through which the blood is constantly pouring.

5. If an artery be wounded, and at the same time the vein which accompanies it, we have as the result the conditions called aneurismal varix and varicose aneurism. In aneurismal varix, the artery and vein become adherent at the seat of injury, so that the arterial blood passes directly into the vein. There is a smooth, rounded opening between the two vessels, the vein is dilated into a sac, and the veins emptying into it are dilated and tortuous.

In varicose aneurism, the artery and vein do not communicate directly, but a false aneurismal sac is formed between the vessels, into which the blood is poured before passing into the vein.



Varicose aneurism may also be produced by the spontaneous rupture of an aneurism into a vein. The aneurism presses against the vein, becomes adherent, and finally ruptures into it. This condition has been observed between the aorta and pulmonary artery; the aorta and inferior and superior vena cava; the popliteal artery and vein; the femoral artery and vein; the splenic artery and vena azygos; the internal carotid and sinus cavernosus. Even in cases of perforation by aortic aneurisms, life is usually prolonged for some time.

6. Destructive inflammation or tumors of the surrounding tissues may invade and destroy a portion of the wall of an artery. Thus ulceration of the trachea, bronchi, bronchial glands, and œsophagus, or tumors of these parts, may perforate the aorta; gangrene of the lungs, the pulmonary arteries; ulcer of the stomach, the gastric arteries, etc.

*Tumors.*—Secondary tumors, chiefly carcinomata and sarcomata, may occur in the walls of the arteries by continuous growth from without, involving first the external layers. To these layers they are usually confined, for the density of the inner layers affords such marked resistance to the infiltration of the tumor-cells that they are apt to pass intact through the tumor which grows around them. More frequently, the arteries become secondarily involved in the growth of malignant tumors, by the occurrence, within them, of emboli formed by larger and smaller masses of tumor-cells.

These emboli are usually of small size, and are apt to get into the circulation by growing through the walls of the veins into their lumina. Large emboli from tumors are most apt to occur in the branches of the pulmonary artery. The emboli, formed as they are for the most part by cells capable of growth and proliferation, are apt to soon form connection with the walls of the vessels, and by the growth into them of blood-vessels from the *vasa vasorum* to find the conditions necessary for their development, and they may thus soon involve the entire wall of the vessel, and grow out into adjacent parts.

## THE VEINS.

### DILATATION.

Dilatation of the Veins, or Phlebectasia, presents itself under a variety of forms.

(1) Simple Dilatation.—The vein is uniformly dilated in a cylindrical or fusiform shape; its length is not increased; its walls are of normal thickness, or thinned; the valves increase in size, or are insufficient, or atrophy, or are torn.

(2) Cirroid Dilatation.—The vein is uniformly cylindrically dilated, but is also increased in length, so that it assumes a very tortuous course. The walls are normal, thickened, or thinned.

(3) Varicose Dilatation.—A circumscribed portion of the wall of the vein is dilated so as to form a globular sac. The sac communicates with the vein through a large or small opening. The wall of the sac is formed of the coats of the vein, which preserve their normal thickness, are thickened or thinned; the middle coat may disappear entirely. There may be only one such dilatation, or there may be a number on the same vein, or a number of veins may be affected at the same time. The vein may be otherwise normal, or, more frequently, is dilated in the cirroid form.

(4) Anastomosing Dilatation.—A number of contiguous and anastomosing veins are dilated, both in the cirroid and varicose forms. The vein then looks like a series of cavities separated by thin partitions. The dilatations of the same vein become adherent to each other and to those of the adjoining veins; portions of the wall of the dilated parts may disappear, and we find a number of cavities containing venous blood, and separated from each other by thin partitions. The course of the vein can no longer be followed out.

Spontaneous cure of dilatations of the veins is not common, and usually occurs only in the lesser degrees of the lesion. Most phlebectasiæ increase steadily in size and extent. Very frequently thrombi form in the dilated veins, and either partially or completely fill them, and these in rare cases may become organized, or the clots may dry and become calcified, forming *phleboliths* (see p. 52), and by the formation of new connective tissue in the walls, they may become inclosed in a fibrous capsule with the obliteration of the vessel. The wall of the dilated sac may become so thin that it finally ruptures, and the blood is discharged externally. Sometimes inflammation is set up in the tissues surrounding the vein, and we find both the surrounding tissues and the wall of the vein the seat of purulent infiltration or fibrous thickening. The parts of the body from which the dilated veins draw their blood may exhibit the results of chronic venous congestion, œdema, hyperæmia, and hypertrophy or ulceration.

When occurring in mucous membrane, dilated veins are usually associated with persistent catarrh. There is hardly one of all the veins of the body which may not be dilated. The hemorrhoidal veins, the veins of the leg and thigh; those of the pelvis and pelvic viscera; those of the spermatic cord, scrotum and labia; those of the abdominal wall; those of the neck and arms; are the ones most frequently found in this condition.

The causes of dilatation are principally some mechanical obstruction to the passage of the blood through the veins towards the heart; but changes in the walls of the vessels from inflammation or injury, etc., are not without influence.

#### WOUNDS. RUPTURE.

*Wounds* of the veins usually heal by a simple contraction and an ad-

hesive inflammation of their walls: sometimes by the formation of a thrombus. Rupture of the veins may be produced by severe contusions and crushings of the body, and by violent falls. *Perforation* of a vein may be produced by suppuration of the soft parts, and the invasion of the walls of the vessel; by the pressure of an aneurism or of a new growth; by the thinning of the wall of the vein in phlebectasia.

#### INFLAMMATION.

Inflammation of the veins, *phlebitis*, may involve chiefly the external layers—*periphlebitis*, or the internal—*endophlebitis*, or, as is very frequently the case, the entire wall may be affected. Phlebitis may be caused by the presence of a thrombus, by injuries, or by an inflammation of the surrounding tissues. Thrombosis of the vein, either primary or secondary, is a very constant accompaniment of phlebitis.

*Acute phlebitis* may commence as a suppurative periphlebitis or as a result of inflammatory processes about the vessel. The outer layers of the venous wall are congested, swollen, infiltrated with serum and pus. The inner coats may become infiltrated with pus, they may become necrotic and disintegrate. A thrombus is constantly formed under these conditions, which may for a time stop the circulation, and keep the products of inflammation and degeneration from mixing with the blood, but the thrombus itself is prone to disintegration, and thus the exudations and decomposing fragments of tissue may enter the circulation.

On the other hand, owing to the presence of irritating or infectious material within the vein and the formation of a thrombus, the inflammatory process may be at the commencement an endophlebitis, but usually, if the inflammation be at all severe, the entire wall of the vessel will eventually be involved. The pus-cells in both cases doubtless come from emigration from the vasa vasorum. Acute phlebitis may terminate in the absorption of the thrombus, and the return of the vein to its normal condition; in the obliteration of the vein; or portions of the thrombus may become detached, and find their way as emboli into various parts of the body. The most important results of phlebitis are usually those which depend upon the introduction into the blood of these emboli, or of septic material (see thrombosis and embolism, p. 51, and pyæmia).

Chronic periphlebitis produces thickening, principally of the outer coats of the veins, but the inner coats may also be involved. The surrounding tissue may be also thickened and coalesce with the walls of the vein. There may or may not be thrombosis.

Chronic endophlebitis is a not very common lesion, of the same general character as chronic endarteritis. More or less circumscribed patches of new connective tissue are formed in the inner coats, which may undergo fatty or calcareous degeneration.

*Tubercular inflammation* of the walls of the veins may occur as an



extension of the process from without. This is not infrequent in the pulmonary veins, and Weigert has recently called attention to the fact that in acute miliary tuberculosis the growth of tubercle tissue into the lumina of these veins from tubercular lymph-glands is of frequent occurrence, and readily explains the topography and mode of occurrence of the general disease. The tubercle bacilli which are present in the tubercular tissue growing into the lumen of the veins, find thus an easy distribution.

*Syphilitic inflammation* may involve the walls of the veins either as gummy tumors or as more diffuse thickenings.

#### TUMORS.

Primary tumors of the veins are rare. Small *leiomyomata* have been described in the saphenous and ulnar veins. A *myo-sarcoma* as large as a man's fist has been described, situated in the dilated vena cava inferior. The veins are not infrequently secondarily involved by *sarcomata* and *carcinomata*, and sometimes by *chondromata*. The thin walls of the veins offer comparatively little resistance to the encroachment of malignant tumors which thus gain access to the circulation, and may form metastases in various parts of the body.

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus* is sometimes found in the veins, having either developed there or perforated from without.

Two species of *distoma* (*liver fluke*) occur in man. *D. hepaticum* occurs rarely in man, and while usually found in the bile-ducts, may occur in the vena cava. *D. hæmatobium* is very common in man in Egypt and in other parts of Africa, and usually occurs in the portal vein or its branches, and frequently in other veins.

#### THE CAPILLARIES.

The walls of the capillaries are so thin and so intimately connected with the surrounding tissues that their lesions are studied most appropriately among the diseases of the several organs. Dilatation of the new-formed capillaries in tumors, granulation tissue, etc., and fatty degeneration of their walls, may be mentioned here as readily observed lesions occurring under a variety of conditions. The changes which we assume to occur in the walls of the smaller veins and capillaries in exudative inflammation by reason of which fluids and blood-cells pass through them, are not yet sufficiently understood to be described with definiteness.

#### THE LYMPH-VESSELS.

The smaller lymph-vessels can hardly be treated as independent structures, since their walls are so closely joined with the tissues through

which they pass; the lymph radicles indeed being nothing more than the spaces in the connective tissue in which the variously-shaped connective-tissue cells lie. In the larger lymph-vessels we find a moderate number of more or less independent lesions.

#### INFLAMMATION (*Lymphangitis*).

Inflammation of the larger lymph-vessels is usually secondary, and connected with some wound or injury. Owing, it is believed to the entrance into the lymph-trunk of some septic material or bacteria, the vessels, sometimes for a considerable distance away from the wound, become red, tender, and painful. Under these conditions, the microscopical appearances which the vessels present vary. In some cases the redness disappears after death, and we find no appreciable alteration. In other cases we find the walls of the lymph-vessels more or less densely infiltrated with pus-cells, and the lumen may contain variable quantities of pus and fibrin and desquamated endothelium. The tissue about the vessels may also be infiltrated with serum and pus. These changes may undergo resolution and the vessel be restored to its normal condition; or the vessel-wall and surrounding tissue may die or become involved in abscess; or new connective tissue may form in and about the vessel, sometimes with obliteration of its lumen. The lymph-glands may participate in the inflammatory process.

Inflammation of the lymph-vessels may occur as the result of dissection and other wounds, and the bites of venomous reptiles. It may occur in the uterine lymphatics in the phlegmonous form of puerperal fever, and under other conditions.

*Tubercular Lymphangitis.*—Tubercular inflammation occurs both in large and small lymph-vessels. Miliary tubercles and diffuse tubercle tissue may form in the walls and project into the lumen of the larger trunks; or in the smaller vessels the new growth may entirely fill the lumen, and grow in this, with more or less involvement of the walls. This may occur independently, but it is most frequently seen in connection with tubercular inflammation of adjacent tissues. Thus from tubercular lymph-glands in the vicinity of the thoracic duct there may be a direct extension of the tubercular inflammation, an involvement of the walls of the duct, and a growth of tubercle tissue into its lumen. Such growths in the thoracic duct have been shown by Weigert to be frequent in acute general miliary tuberculosis, and very satisfactorily explain, on the hypothesis of the bacterial origin of the disease, the dissemination of the tubercles. In the vicinity of tubercular ulcers in the intestines, furthermore, we often see the subserous lymph-vessels, which pass from the vicinity of the ulcers, distended with the products of tubercular inflammation, and looking like dense white knobbed cords.

Syphilitic inflammation of the lymph-vessels not infrequently occurs

in the vicinity of syphilitic ulcers in the primary stage. In later stages there may be thickening of the walls of the vessels and the development of gummy tumors in and about them.

#### LYMPHANGIECTASIS.

Dilatation of the lymph-vessels occurs under a variety of conditions. It may be congenital, or it may be due to some hindrance to the flow of lymph onward, as by pressure from any cause, or from the occlusion of the vessels by inflammation, or it may be produced by unknown causes. If the dilated vessels form a circumscribed mass, this is often called a *lymphangioma*. In certain forms of *elephantiasis* and in *macroglossia* the dilatation of the lymph-vessels is an important factor. Its occurrence is not infrequent in the labia, prepuce, and scrotum.

#### TUMORS.

The relation of the endothelium of the lymph-vessels and spaces to endotheliomata has been already mentioned on p. 132.

The dissemination of malignant tumors through the lymph-channels is of frequent occurrence and is particularly marked in the case of carcinoma. In the vicinity of carcinomata, the lymph-vessels are not infrequently crowded with the tumor-cells forming white irregular cords; or small masses of the tumor-cells may be found in the lymph-vessels, either near to or remote from the tumor. White irregular networks are often formed in this way beneath the pleura in carcinoma of the lung (Fig. 48), or beneath the capsule of the liver. Transverse sections of lymph-vessels thus distended show sometimes swelling and detachment of the endothelium and a crowding of the lumen with tumor-cells. Whether or not the endothelium participates in the new formation of the characteristic carcinomatous cells is not known.

#### THE LYMPH-GLANDS.

It is well, in studying the lesions of the lymph-glands, to remember that they are structures so placed in the course of the lymph-vessels that the lymph, in flowing towards the larger central trunks, passes through them, undergoing a sort of filtration, as it percolates through the trabeculæ of the lymph-sinuses. If this simple fact be borne in mind, the diseases of the lymph-glands, which are, in the majority of cases, secondary, are much more readily understood. Particles of pigment which in any way get into the lymph-vessels are carried along until a lymph-gland is reached, and here they are, in part at least, deposited among the trabeculæ of the sinuses, while the lymph passes on and out of the efferent vessels. The same thing occurs when cells from malignant tumors, bacteria of various kinds, etc., gain access to the lymph-vessels, and also, as there is good reason for believing, in the case of many infectious materials which



our present knowledge does not enable us to definitely associate with bacteria. These various materials, filtered out of the lymph by the glands, may act in a variety of ways to produce lesions in them.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Acute Inflammation* of the lymph-glands usually occurs in connection with some inflammatory process in the region from which its lymph is gathered. The glands are, in the majority of cases, swollen, reddened, and softer than normal, and often the seat of smaller and larger hemorrhages. Sometimes one, sometimes several glands of a cluster are affected.

The microscopical examination shows the most prominent change to be a great increase in the number of cells in the follicles and cords, as well as in the lymph-sinuses. These cells are, in part, small and spheroidal, and similar to those normally filling the meshes of the follicles; in part, large polyhedral or variously-shaped cells, with prominent nuclei; the latter cells are most abundant in the lymph-sinuses. In addition to this, there is swelling of the endothelial cells of the reticulum of the sinuses. The blood-vessels may be distended with blood, or there may be blood, in greater or less quantity, free in the sinuses and follicles. The origin of the large number of new cells which may form in a very short time is not yet definitely known. They may be emigrated leucocytes or their derivatives; they may be derivatives of the endothelium of the reticulum; or they may be in some cases, at least in part, cells which have been brought into the gland, through the afferent trunks, from some external inflammatory focus. The capsule of the glands, and not infrequently the connective tissue about them, may also be infiltrated with round cells.

Acute inflammation may terminate in resolution, the new cells disappearing either by fatty or other degeneration, or by being carried off in the lymph, and the gland return to its normal condition. This is the rule in the less intense forms of inflammation. On the other hand, the inflammatory process may become purulent and so intense as to lead to the formation of abscess, usually with a greater or less involvement of the tissue about the gland. There may be at first numerous small abscesses which coalesce to form larger ones. These abscesses—*buboes*—may open externally or internally, or they may become dried and converted into cheesy masses which may calcify and, by a chronic inflammation in their periphery, become inclosed by dense connective tissue. Sometimes, instead of abscess being formed, the tissue of the inflamed glands becomes necrotic and breaks down, inducing more or less severe inflammatory or necrotic changes in the tissues in their vicinity.

In still other cases, acute inflammation of the lymph-glands passes into the chronic form.

Moderate degrees of inflammation in the lymph-glands are very common in connection with various forms of inflammation in neighboring parts. Thus simple pharyngitis, gastro-enteritis, erysipelas, simple purulent inflammation, etc., are often associated with this lesion of the glands. The lymph-glands of children are, as a rule, more easily affected by moderate inflammations in neighboring parts than are those of adults. Purulent inflammation of the lymph-glands is most frequently associated with severer forms of inflammation of adjacent or related parts, especially those of an infectious character, syphilitic inflammation, poisoned wounds, pyæmia, etc. In a certain number of cases, we find bacteria in the inflamed lymph-glands, either singly or in zooglœa colonies, which have presumably something to do with the lesion.

*Chronic Inflammation.*—This is characterized by an increase of the connective-tissue elements of the gland, with a gradual and commensurate disappearance of the lymphoid cells. The reticulum of the follicles and sinuses becomes thickened and fibrous, and in the trabeculæ and capsule new connective tissue is formed until, in advanced cases, the entire gland may be more or less completely converted into a mass of connective tissue. This condition is very frequently seen in the lower tracheal and in the bronchial glands; apparently as a result of the lodgment in them of respired pigment particles; but it may occur in any glands, either as a result of repeated moderate degrees of inflammation, or from causes which we do not know. In some cases, the glands are greatly enlarged, and the new tissue contains many large cells, while in other cases the connective tissue is dense and contains but few cells.

*Pigmentation.*—The pigment which is very frequently found in lymph-glands may be derived from the hæmoglobin of the blood, either in the glands themselves, or in remote parts, or it may be formed of various materials introduced into the body from without, such as the pigments used in tattooing; respired dust particles of various kinds, coal, stone, iron, etc. The pigment particles, which usually first lodge in the lymph-sinuses, may collect here in large quantities, either in the reticulum or the cells lying in its meshes; they may penetrate the follicles and cords and find permanent lodgment there. They usually induce a greater or less degree of chronic inflammation, so that in extreme cases, such as are frequently seen in the bronchial glands, nothing is finally left of the gland but a more or less deeply pigmented mass of dense connective tissue. The function of the gland is of course, in this way, partially or entirely destroyed. The pigment in these cases appears to reach the gland in part by being carried along free in the lymph-current, in part by becoming inclosed in leucocytes and being transported by them. Pigmentation of the glands is most marked in those about the root of the lungs which are frequently of a mottled gray or a black color, but it may occur in the mesenteric and other glands. Under similar conditions, the

diffuse lymphatic structure in the lungs and liver may be similarly pigmented.

*Inflammation of the Lymph-Glands with Cheesy Degeneration.*—This lesion of the lymph-glands, which is distinct from the above-mentioned, comparatively infrequent cheesy degeneration of the contents of old abscesses, commences with changes similar to those above described in simple inflammation. The gland in this condition is swollen, and feels harder than normal; on section it has a uniform, reddish-gray color. Microscopical examination reveals a great increase in the number of parenchyma cells, some small and spheroidal, others larger and polyhedral. Sometimes the larger cells are multinuclear, and not infrequently the reticular framework and the capsule are thickened. As the process advances, the characteristic necrotic changes make their appearance. We may find at first a greater or less number of the cells converted into a strongly refractile material, and the nuclei no longer capable of being stained. Then larger and smaller masses of cells undergo cheesy degeneration with complete destruction of the blood-vessels, reticulum, and the spheroidal and other cells, and their conversion into a granular material. A section through the gland in this condition shows the cut surface mottled with irregular-shaped, larger and smaller opaque white patches, which indicate the areas of cheesy degeneration. These patches may increase in size and coalesce, so that a large part of, or even the entire gland, may be converted into a more or less dense cheesy mass which may be surrounded by the thickened capsule.

In this condition they may remain for a long time, and not infrequently, owing to the involvement of a series of associated glands, either simultaneously or one after another, and the increase of connective tissue about them, we find large irregular nodular masses made up of a congeries of similarly affected glands.

On the other hand, the cheesy material may soften and break down, and by the establishment of purulent and necrotic inflammation about them, abscesses may form, which may open externally. These abscesses may heal; but usually the healing is difficult and slow, and long-continued suppurations, frequently with the development of fistulæ, are very common. Under these conditions, the inflammation may assume a tubercular character. Instead of softening, the cheesy material in the glands may become dry and hard, and undergo calcification.

Cheesy inflammation of the lymph-glands is most common in the cervical, bronchial, and mesenteric groups, but may occur anywhere. It is most apt to occur in badly nourished young persons, who in addition to the lesion of the lymph-glands, are very liable to suffer from chronic inflammations of the mucous membranes, skin, periosteum, joints, and the subcutaneous and other connective tissues. This general condition is known as *scrofula*, and the lesion of the glands is sometimes called *scro-*



*fulous inflammation.* It is not infrequently associated with tubercular inflammation of the glands, either as an independent lesion or as a part of a general tuberculosis, and by some writers tuberculous and scrofulous inflammation of the lymph-glands are considered to be identical. In a considerable proportion of cases, however, of so-called scrofulous inflammation of the lymph-glands, there is no formation of tubercle tissue, and we find no tubercle bacilli, so that we must consider this class of cases as simply inflammatory, with a tendency to cheesy degeneration.

*Tubercular inflammation* may occur in connection with simple inflammatory changes in the lymph-glands, or with the form of inflammation which tends to cheesy degeneration. It may be local, confined to the glands, or it may occur in connection with general acute miliary tuberculosis or with tubercular inflammation of single organs. It may occur in single glands or in several glands of the same group, or in groups situated in different parts of the body. In its simple and acute form, there may be no evident change to the naked eye in the appearance of the glands, or they may be besprinkled with small grayish-white translucent spots. Under these conditions, the glands may be reddened and soft, or swollen and denser than normal. In more advanced forms of the lesion, the tubercles coalesce, and undergo a greater or less degree of cheesy degeneration. Under these conditions, the cheesy areas are evident to the naked eye as more or less sharply circumscribed, opaque whitish areas, frequently surrounded by an irregular, more translucent grayish zone of tubercle tissue, which merges insensibly into the adjacent tissue. The entire gland may become involved, and more or less completely converted into a cheesy mass, in the periphery of which a zone of tubercle tissue may or may not be evident.

Microscopically the small nodules or miliary tubercles are seen to consist of more or less circumscribed collections of small spheroidal, or more frequently larger polyhedral cells, with or without well-defined giant-cells. They usually commence to form in the follicles and lymph-cords of the nodes, and from these may spread and involve the entire surrounding tissue. The cheesy degeneration, which here as elsewhere is apt first to involve the central portions of the tubercles, presents the usual appearances. Tubercle bacilli may be found in the edges of the cheesy areas, or in the tubercle tissue about them.

Simple inflammatory changes regularly occur in the periphery of the tubercles. There is an increase of cells in the lymph sinuses and follicles, and a more or less marked swelling, and apparently a proliferation of the cells of the reticular tissue of the gland. In cases in which the process is chronic, there is often marked increase in the connective tissue of the glands: the reticular tissue becomes dense and fibrous, and the trabeculae and capsule are thickened. The tubercles themselves, instead

of undergoing cheesy degeneration, may become fibrous or be converted into a hyalin material.

The cheesy material may dry and shrink, and become inclosed by a capsule of dense connective tissue and become calcified; or it may soften, and thus cavities be formed in the glands filled with grumous material; or inflammatory changes may be induced in the vicinity of the glands, leading to abscesses. On the other hand, hyperplastic inflammation in the periphery of the affected glands may result in their becoming bound together into a dense nodular mass.

When cheesy degeneration has occurred, to the naked eye tuberculous lymph-glands may not be distinguishable from those in scrofulous inflammation, but in some cases the nodular character of the new tissue around the cheesy centres is evident. The process is usually a slow and chronic one, except when occurring in connection with acute miliary tuberculosis in other parts of the body. It may occur in any of the glands, but is most frequent in those of the bronchial, mesenteric, and cervical regions.

*Syphilitic Inflammation.*—The lesions of the lymph-glands, which occur in connection with syphilitic poisoning, vary greatly, depending upon the stage of the disease. In the primary stages, the lymph-glands in the region of the seat of infection are apt to present the lesions of an ordinary acute inflammation with a tendency to the assumption of the purulent form.

In the secondary stage of the disease, the glands of other regions, neck, elbow, axilla, etc., are frequently swollen and hard. On microscopical examination, there may be an increase of connective tissue in the capsule and trabeculæ, but the chief change is in the accumulation in the follicles and lymph sinuses of larger and smaller spheroidal and polyhedral cells. The reticular tissue may be thickened, and the walls of the blood-vessels infiltrated with cells. In this condition, the glands may remain for a long time, not tending to form abscess; or they may undergo resolution through degeneration and absorption of the cells.

In the tertiary stage of the disease, the glands may be the seat of chronic inflammation characterized by the formation of gummy tumors. Under these conditions, they may form large firm nodular masses by the growing together by new connective tissue of several altered glands. The gross and microscopical characters of gummata of the lymph-glands are in the main similar to those in other parts of the body (see p. 105).

There are important changes in the lymph-glands which occur as local manifestations of general diseases, such as *typhoid fever*, *leprosy*, etc., which will be considered under the heading of these diseases.

*Degenerative changes* in the lymph-glands, with the exception of those above described, are not of great frequency nor significance.

*Atrophy* is a very regular occurrence in old age. In this condition,

the glands are small, hard, and, unless pigmented, white. Microscopical examination shows a marked diminution in the number of parenchyma-cells, while the reticulum and the capsule and trabeculæ may be thickened. There may be an accumulation of fat around the gland in connection with senile atrophy.

It should be remembered, in this connection, that the lymph-glands as well as the lymphatic tissue<sup>1</sup> in general, in children are more voluminous and contain a greater number of parenchyma cells than in adults.

*Amyloid degeneration* of the blood-vessels and reticulum of the lymph-glands occurs under the conditions which favor this change in general. It may occur in connection with amyloid degeneration of other parts of the body, or by itself. It may occur in glands otherwise normal or in those which are the seat of other lesions; thus in simple chronic or tubercular inflammation. It is frequently found in the mesenteric glands in connection with waxy degeneration of the intestinal mucous membrane.

*Hyalin degeneration* of the external layers of the smaller arteries and the capillaries of the lymph-glands and also of the parenchyma cells occurs occasionally in old age or in connection with wasting diseases. The vessels and cells are swollen and converted into a translucent, strongly refractile substance resembling amyloid optically, but not responding to its micro-chemical tests. By the accumulation of this material the uninvolved parenchyma of the glands may be compressed and atrophied.

### *Hyperplasia of the Lymph-glands (Lymphoma).*

In addition to the considerable enlargements of the lymph-glands in inflammation which have been described above, they become enlarged under a variety of conditions which we do not understand. This lack of knowledge of the etiology, together with our ignorance of the function of the lymph-glands, and the morphological similarity or even identity which these enlarged glands present, render it very difficult to decide upon the exact nature of the change, and in many cases to distinguish one form from another.

In the first place, there is a class of cases in which, sometimes slowly, sometimes with great rapidity, the lymph-glands of certain

<sup>1</sup> What we call *lymphatic tissue* embraces not only the lymph-glands and the less complex, but still well-defined structures found in the stomach, intestines, tonsils, and elsewhere, and called lymph-follicles; but also the less well-defined, irregular masses of tissue resembling that of lymph-follicles, which, as Arnold has shown (Virchow's Archiv, Bd. 80, p. 315; Bd. 82, 594; Bd. 83, 289; Bd. 87, p. 114), is widely disseminated in variable amounts in different parts of the body; in the lungs, beneath the pleura and elsewhere; in the liver, kidneys, etc. Although the exact nature of these more diffuse masses of lymphatic tissue is but little understood, as indeed is that of the lymph follicles and glands themselves, there is reason to believe that they are analogous structures and prone to be affected by similar deleterious agencies.



regions, especially the abdominal, axillary, cervical, and inguinal, enlarge not infrequently to an enormous extent. They may be either hard or soft, even almost fluctuating; the individual glands may be distinct or merged into one another. Sometimes the glands in nearly all parts of the body are affected. Microscopically we find that the enlargement is due, in the soft varieties, to an enormous increase of small spheroidal and polyhedral cells, and a growth of the reticular tissue. It is a new formation of lymphatic tissue, but the normal relations of follicles, cords, and lymph-sinuses is not preserved. In the harder varieties, there is a thickening of the reticular tissue in addition to an increase of cells. In very rare cases, portions of the glands may become cheesy. Sometimes larger and smaller hemorrhages occur in the glands, especially in the softer forms. In addition to these changes in the lymph-glands, there is, in a considerable proportion of cases, a new formation of lymphatic tissue in greater or less quantity in other parts of the body, in the spleen, in the gastro-intestinal canal, in the marrow of bones, in the liver, kidneys, etc., and the number of leucocytes in the blood and in other parts of the body is increased. This general condition is known as *leukæmia* and will be considered under the general diseases. The enlarged lymph-glands in this disease may be called, for convenience, *leukæmic lymphomata*.

In the second place, there is a form of disease in many respects, particularly in the lesion of the lymph-glands, identical with leukæmia. There is, however, usually a less prominent involvement of the spleen and other lymphatic structures, and what is more striking, no increase in the number of leucocytes in the blood. This is called *Hodgkin's disease* or *pseudo-leukæmia*, and the enlarged lymph-glands may in this case be called *pseudo-leukæmic lymphomata*. The lesions of the lymph-glands are identical in both diseases, and it is convenient to assign different names to them simply because, for reasons which we do not at all understand, they seem to arise under different conditions, and to be associated with a constant difference in the character of the blood.

*Tumors.*—*Sarcomata* occur in the lymph-glands as primary and secondary tumors, and these may be of various forms: spindle-celled, large and small round-celled, and angio-sarcomata. It is not easy in many cases to distinguish morphologically between the small round-celled sarcomata and the above-described lymphomata. *Fibromata*, *myxomata*, and *chondromata* occur in the lymph-glands, but are rare. Endotheliomata are described, but are not common. *Secondary carcinomata* are of frequent occurrence, the form of the cells and the nature of their growth depending upon the seat and character of the primary tumors (Fig. 50).

*Parasites.*—Aside from various forms of *bacteria* which are not infrequently found in the lymph-glands, thus in diphtheria, splenic fever, typhoid fever, tuberculosis, etc., *filaria*, *trichinæ*, and *pentastomum* have been described.

## THE ALIMENTARY CANAL.

---

### THE MOUTH.

#### MALFORMATIONS.

Malformations of the lip and cheeks are usually associated with defective formation of the bones of the mouth. The entire process is generally due to an arrest of development.

(1) The lower jaw is absent; the upper jaw and hard palate small and imperfectly formed; the temporal bones nearly touch in the median line. The lower part of the face is, therefore, wanting; the mouth is absent, or small and closed posteriorly; the tongue is absent. Such a malformation is rare; the fœtus is not viable.

(2) The face remains in its early fœtal condition of a large cleft; the mouth and nose form one cavity; the orbits may be united in the same cavity. The fœtus is not viable.

(3) There is a cleft in the upper lip, upper jaw, and hard palate. The cleft corresponds to the point of junction of the processes of the superior maxilla with the intermaxillary bone. There may be one cleft or two, one on either side of the intermaxillary bone. The cleft involves the lip alone, or the lip and superior maxilla, or the lip, maxilla, and palate. There may be a single or a double cleft in the palate; and the cleft may involve either the hard or soft palate, or both. If there are two clefts of the lip and maxilla, the portion of lip and bone between them may be small, or entirely absent, so as to leave a large open space. The soft palate may be entirely absent. This is a common malformation, and does not endanger life.

(4) Rarely we find a cleft involving the middle of the lower lip, and sometimes extending into the inferior maxilla.

(5) Either the inferior, the superior, or both maxillary bones may be abnormally small.

(6) The edges of the lips may be partly or completely joined together. The opening of the mouth may be only a round hole.

(7) The lips may be absent or imperfectly developed.

(8) The corners of the mouth may be prolonged by clefts in the cheeks nearly to the ears.

#### HYPERTROPHY.

The skin of the cheeks and lips may be hypertrophied in connection with elephantiasis of the face.

There may be a thickening of the lips alone, so that they appear double. This thickening may be due to an increase of all the anatomical elements of the lips; or there may be an increase and dilatation of the lymphatic vessels, giving to the growth a soft, œdematous character.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Catarrhal Stomatitis* is found most frequently in children. It is produced by a great variety of local and constitutional causes. Of the conditions which are seen during life, the congestion, increased production of mucus, and swelling of the mucous membrane, but little remains after death.

During life, the congestion and swelling of the mucous membrane are well marked. There are often white patches, produced by the death of the superficial epithelial cells. There may be an increased production of mucus, which runs constantly from the mouth, or, instead of this, the entire mucus membrane is unnaturally dry.

The only structural changes which can be demonstrated are the degenerative changes of the epithelial cells and the production of pus-globules, which infiltrate to a moderate degree the stroma of the mucous membrane and appear on its surface.

*Croupous Stomatitis* is produced by local irritants, by extension of the same form of inflammation from the pharynx, and it occurs with the exanthematous fevers and with diphtheria.

Portions of the mucous membrane are swollen, and congested, and covered with a false membrane. This false membrane is composed of a thickened layer of epithelium in the condition of coagulation necrosis, and of fibrin and pus in variable relative quantity. The stroma of the mucous membrane is infiltrated with pus and fibrin, and portions of it may become necrotic.

#### STOMATITIS ULCEROSA.<sup>1</sup> (*Stomacace. Stomatite Ulcero-membraneuse.*)

This form of stomatitis occurs regularly in children between the ages of four and eight years, and in adults between the ages of eighteen and twenty-five years. It is apt to occur in localized epidemics, in hospitals and asylums, and among soldiers and sailors. Some of the forms of mercurial stomatitis seem to be identical with this form of inflammation.

---

<sup>1</sup> Bergeron : "Stomatite ulcerosa." *Union Médicale*, 1859. Bohn: "Mundkrankheiten der Kinder," 1880.



The inflammation begins at the margin of the gums of the lower jaw. The gums are swollen and coated with a grayish, soft matter, composed of bacteria and detritus. Then follows destruction of tissue, the gums are destroyed around the teeth, and these fall out; the inflammation extends to the lips, cheeks, and tongue. The ulcers are coated with a thick, soft, gray membrane. The surrounding soft parts are swollen, and there may be necrosis of the jaws.<sup>1</sup>

#### GANGRENE.

Gangrene of the lips and cheeks, or noma, is most frequent in cachectic children as a consequence of the abuse of mercury. Much more rarely it occurs in adults after typhus and other exhausting diseases. The disease begins in the mucous membrane of the cheeks near one of the corners of the mouth. The mucous membrane becomes black and gangrenous; the gangrene extends rapidly through the entire thickness of the cheek, and produces perforation; it extends laterally in all directions.

*Syphilitic Stomatitis*.—As a result of syphilis, there may be produced either the so-called mucous patches or gummy tumors. In the mucous patches, we find at first the epithelial layer thickened and the papillæ of the stroma swollen and infiltrated with cells. This may be followed by desquamation of the epithelium and ulceration of the stroma.

The deeper gummy tumors may also soften and form ragged ulcers of some size.

*Tubercular Stomatitis* commences with the formation of miliary tubercles or of larger tubercular masses in the stroma of the mucous membrane. These masses soon degenerate, soften, and form ragged ulcers resembling very closely syphilitic ulcers.

#### TUMORS.

*Adenomata* are formed in the mucous membrane covering the mouth, lips, and soft palate. The tumors are rounded, usually small, sometimes as large as a hen's egg. They may be situated in the thickness of the mucous membrane, or project in a polypoid form. They are formed by an hypertrophy of the normal mucous glands. The glandular acini are increased in number and size, the epithelial cells are increased in number and may undergo colloid degeneration.

*Papillomata* occur most frequently at the edges of the lips, but are also found on the gums, the floor of the mouth, and the cheeks. They are formed of hypertrophied papillæ, covered with thickened epidermis. They very often ulcerate.

<sup>1</sup> R. Volkmann, Virch. Arch., Bd. 50, p. 142, describes five cases of inflammation of the mucous glands of the lower lip. The lip was swollen and hard, the mucous glands and their ducts were dilated.

*Carcinomata* are of frequent occurrence. They may be found at any part of the mucous membrane of the mouth, but as a rule begin in the edge of the lower lip.

They may originate in an ulcerating papilloma, or as a flat, superficial growth from the deeper layers of the epithelium, or as deep nodules starting in the mucous glands. They are composed of large masses of epithelial cells, closely packed together, often forming nests, and arranged in anastomosing tubular masses. The stroma surrounding these masses is infiltrated with cells. In a few cases the infiltration of the stroma with small round cells may be very marked, so marked that the epithelial growth may be obscured. The new growth increases in size, ulcerates, infiltrates the adjacent tissues, and may give rise to metastatic tumors.

*Angiomata* are found in the lips. They may be congenital or developed after birth.

*Fibromata*, *Lipomata*, and *Enchondromata* have been seen in a few cases in the lips. When they appear in the mouth they usually grow from the bones.

#### THE TONGUE.

##### MALFORMATIONS.

Absence of the tongue is found in connection with the extreme defects of development of the face already mentioned.

The anterior portion of the tongue may be absent while its base remains. The lower jaw is then small.

The tongue may be partly or completely adherent to the floor of the mouth. The frenulum may be abnormally short, or may extend to the tip of the tongue. In rare cases, the sides of the tongue are adherent; or its upper surface may be adherent to the roof of the mouth.

##### HYPERTROPHY.

Makroglossia, or hypertrophy of the tongue, is almost always a congenital lesion, and is especially common in cretins. The tongue is so large that the cavity of the mouth cannot contain it, it is protruded through the lips and displaces the jaws. The lips may also be hypertrophied in the same way.

There is an hypertrophy of all the anatomical elements which make up the tongue, and in addition to this there may be a dilatation of the lymphatic vessels.

##### INFLAMMATION.

Inflammations of the tongue may be associated with similar changes in the mouth, or may occur by themselves.

*Superficial Inflammation.*—Inflammation involving only the mucous membrane of the tongue may occur as an acute or chronic process.

The acute forms present no marked lesions.

The chronic forms result in an increased production of epithelium and an hypertrophy of the papillæ of the tongue.

A moderate development of such an inflammation is not infrequently associated with derangements of the stomach. The tongue is large, its surface is irregular from the hypertrophy of the papillæ. There may be no change in the epithelium, and then the surface of the tongue is clean and red; or the epithelium is increased and the tongue is covered with a white fur.

More severe forms of the disease also occur, especially with syphilis. The hypertrophied papillæ and increased epithelium then alter very decidedly the appearance of the tongue.

*Parenchymatous Glossitis* may be produced by mercurial poisoning, by injury, or by unknown causes. The tongue is swollen, the muscular and connective portions are congested and infiltrated with serum and pus. The inflammation may stop at this point, or it may go on to the formation of an abscess.

*Syphilitic Inflammation*.—In persons suffering from constitutional syphilis there may be mucous patches on the surface of the tongue; or gummy tumors in its stroma, which often soften and form deep ulcers; or a diffuse, chronic inflammation of the surface of the tongue with hypertrophy of the papillæ.

*Tubercular Glossitis*.—There may be a tubercular inflammation of the connective tissue of the tongue just beneath the epithelial layer, resulting in the formation of tubercle granula and granulation tissue. In this way tumors of some little size are formed, which may remain unchanged for some time, or may degenerate, soften, and form ulcers.

#### TUMORS.

*Cysts*.—The most common forms of cysts are the sacs beneath or partly in the substance of the tongue (ranula). They are formed by dilatation of the ducts of the submaxillary and sublingual glands; or make their appearance in the connective tissue beneath and in the tongue.

*Angioma*.—Cavernous vascular tumors are found in the substance of the tongue and projecting from its surface.

*Lipoma* and *Fibroma* are rare. They form nodules in the substance of the tongue, or project in a polypoid form. Composite tumors, composed largely of fat, are found in the tongue as a congenital condition.

*Lupus* occurs in the form of nodules and ulcers at the base of the tongue.

*Sarcomata* are rare in this situation. I have seen one such tumor in a young child. It formed a nodule as large as a chestnut, and was composed of round and fusiform cells.



*Carcinoma*.—This form of new growth may begin in the tongue or may extend to it from the adjacent tissues. The growth is composed of large, flat epithelial cells packed closely together in anastomosing tubular spaces and surrounded by a connective-tissue stroma.

## THE PHARYNX AND THE ŒSOPHAGUS.

### MALFORMATIONS.

Fistulous openings from the pharynx, running between the muscles, and perforating the skin, have been seen in rare instances. These fistulæ are so small as to have no practical interest.

The œsophagus may be entirely absent, or its lower portion may be present, and joined to the pharynx by a solid cord; or the pharynx, or the lower part of the œsophagus, may be continuous with the trachea; or the entire œsophagus may be represented by a solid cord.

Diverticula of the pharynx, dilatations of the œsophagus, and division of the middle portion of the œsophagus into two branches have all been observed.

### INFLAMMATION.

*Catarrhal and Croupous Pharyngitis* are usually associated with the same forms of inflammation in the mouth, and have the same characters.

*Submucous Pharyngitis* may occur with inflammations of the mucous membrane, with caries of the cervical vertebræ, with inflammation of the cervical and parotid glands, with periostitis of the cranial bones, or may be idiopathic. It may result in swelling and œdema, in induration, or in suppuration. It is most important when it affects the posterior wall of the pharynx, and forms retro-pharyngeal abscesses. Such abscesses may cause death by suffocation.

*Catarrhal Œsophagitis* may be either acute or chronic. The chronic form may produce ulceration, or relaxation and dilatation of the walls, or hypertrophy of the muscular coat.

*Croupous Œsophagitis* is found with croup of the pharynx, and after the exanthemata and other severe diseases.

Irritating and caustic acids and alkalis destroy larger or smaller portions of the mucous membrane. The necrosed portions are of a black or whitish color, surrounded by a zone of intense congestion. If the patient recover, the patches of membrane which have been destroyed slough, fall off, and leave a granulating surface. In this way, dangerous stenosis of the œsophagus may be produced.

Foreign bodies, which are swallowed and become fixed in the œsophagus, cause inflammation of the mucous membrane and of the adjoining soft parts. The inflammation may go on to produce abscesses

around the œsophagus, or to destroy the wall of the canal, and the foreign body finds its way into the trachea, aorta, or pericardium.

Inflammation of the submucous tissue of the œsophagus, apart from the cases just mentioned, is not common. It may cause the formation of abscesses, or of fibrous tissue, which may produce stenosis.

#### ULCERATION.

Ulceration of the pharynx occurs in rare cases as the result of catarrhal inflammation. More frequently it is produced by syphilis, either in the form of superficial ulcers or of deep and extensive destructions of tissue from the softening of gummy tumors.

Lupus also sometimes attacks the upper part of the pharynx, and produces extensive ulceration. Ulceration of the œsophagus is not common, but a few cases of simple perforating ulcer have been described.<sup>1</sup>

Foreign bodies in the œsophagus may perforate its wall, as already mentioned. Perforation of the œsophagus from without may be produced by inflamed bronchial glands, by cavities and gangrene of the lungs, by abscesses in the mediastinum, by abscesses accompanying caries of the vertebræ, and by aneurisms of the aorta. Cases have been described of rupture of the wall of the œsophagus by violent coughing and vomiting, but it seems probable that there was really some previous disease to account for the rupture.

#### DILATATION.<sup>2</sup>

Simple cylindrical dilatation of the œsophagus is usually the result of long-continued stenosis of the œsophagus or of the cardiac end of the stomach; although not nearly all the stenoses are followed by dilatation. These dilatations are formed at first immediately above the stenosis and then extend upwards. Only in rare cases does the dilatation involve the whole length of the tube. The entire wall of the dilated portion of the œsophagus is thickened, and there may be polypoid outgrowths from the mucous membrane.

In rare cases there is cylindrical dilatation of part or of the whole of the œsophagus without a stenosis or any discoverable cause. In these cases the dilatation is usually greatest near the middle of the œsophagus and diminishes upwards and downwards, so that the œsophagus has a fusiform shape. The dilatation may reach a very considerable degree, the walls of the œsophagus are thickened, its mucous membrane may be covered with papillary outgrowths or ulcerated.

*The Sacculated Dilatations* of the œsophagus are of two kinds: those due to pressure, and those due to traction.

<sup>1</sup> Graefe u. Walther, Jour. f. Chir. u. Augenheilk., Bd. 19. Med. Chir. Trans., Vol. 36. Rokitsky, Path. Anat.

<sup>2</sup> Ziemssen, Cyclopædia of Medicine, viii., p. 47.

The dilatations due to pressure are situated in the posterior wall of the pharynx, just at its junction with the œsophagus. The smaller sacs are from the size of a pea to that of a hazel-nut; the larger sacs may reach an enormous size, and hang down between the œsophagus and the vertebral column, the opening into the œsophagus remaining comparatively small. It is supposed that a limited area of the wall of the œsophagus loses its power of resistance against the pressure exercised upon it in each act of swallowing; it then is forced outward by the pressure, and so there is formed first a protrusion and then a sac. When a sac is formed the food enters it, accumulates there, and so the sac becomes larger and larger.

The dilatations due to traction are situated on the anterior wall of the œsophagus, at a point nearly corresponding to the bifurcation of the trachea. They are of funnel-shape with the small end outward. Their length varies from two to twelve millimetres, the width of the opening into the œsophagus is from six to eight millimetres.

These dilatations are due to inflammation of the parts adjoining the œsophagus, especially of the bronchial glands, followed by adhesions to some part of the anterior wall of the œsophagus. These adhesions then contract and draw the wall of the œsophagus outwards, and in this way the dilatations are formed.

At a later time these sacs may perforate into the bronchi, the lungs, the pleural cavity, the pericardium, the aorta or pulmonary artery.

#### STENOSIS.

*Congenital Stenosis.*—Besides the defects of development of the œsophagus which are incompatible with life, there may be a congenital stenosis of some part of it which causes difficulty in swallowing, but yet does not destroy life.

*Stenosis by compression* is not uncommon. Tumors of the neck and mediastinum, and aneurisms of the aorta are the usual causes.

*Stenosis by obstruction.*—Foreign bodies may be lodged in the œsophagus. Tumors may hang down from the pharynx into the œsophagus, or may be situated in the wall of the œsophagus. Inflammation of the œsophagus, due to the ingestion of irritating poisons, produces cicatricial stenoses. A few cases of stenosis due to syphilitic inflammation have been reported.

#### TUMORS.

*The veins* of the œsophagus may be enormously dilated. They may rupture, and so give rise to hemorrhage.<sup>1</sup>

*Cysts.*—Small retention cysts of the follicles of the mucous membrane

---

<sup>1</sup> Bristowe, Trans. London Path. Soc., 1856.



are sometimes found. Van Wyss<sup>1</sup> describes a cyst as large as an apple attached to the posterior wall of the œsophagus, one and one-half inches above the stomach. It was filled with ciliated epithelium.

*Papillomata* of small size may be found in considerable numbers throughout the entire length of the œsophagus, or may occur singly. Large papillary tumors are more rare.

*Fibromata* grow from the periosteum of the bones at the base of the skull, and project into the cavity of the pharynx and posterior nares in the form of large polypoid tumors. Small fibrous tumors are formed in the submucous connective tissue of the œsophagus. Tumors, which attain a very large size, originate in the submucous connective tissue on the anterior wall of the lower part of the pharynx, and as they grow hang down into the œsophagus.

*Lipomata* of small size are sometimes found in the wall of the œsophagus.

*Myomata* composed of smooth muscle may grow in the muscular coat of the œsophagus and attain a considerable size.<sup>2</sup>

*Carcinomata* may originate at any part of the wall of the pharynx and œsophagus. They are composed of flat epithelial cells closely packed together in masses in the usual way. In the œsophagus the new growth begins in the deeper layers of the mucous membrane, and grows so as to encircle the tube for a length of one or more inches. The tumor remains as a flat infiltration, or it ulcerates, or it projects inwards in large fungous masses. The growth may extend up and down the œsophagus and even involve the pharynx or stomach.

The ulcerative process may extend outwards so as to produce perforation into the air passages, the lungs, pleuræ, pericardium, and large blood-vessels.

The new growth may extend outward and infiltrate the surrounding soft parts, so that the œsophagus is surrounded by large, solid, cancerous masses. Metastatic tumors are also sometimes formed.

*Adenoma*.—A polypoid adenoma composed of tubules lined with cylindrical epithelium, and growing from the anterior wall of the œsophagus, has been described by Weigert.<sup>3</sup>

I have seen one tumor, the size of a chestnut, growing in the soft palate, which was composed of a stroma of connective and mucous tissue in which were irregular, anastomosing tubules filled with small, polygonal, nucleated cells. It could be called an adenoma or a carcinoma.

Another composite tumor grew from the mucous membrane of the

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 51, p. 143.

<sup>2</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 43, p. 137. Med. Times and Gazette, Nov. 28th, 1874. Glasgow Med. Journal, Feb., 1873.

<sup>3</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 67, p. 516.

pharynx, behind the left tonsil. It filled the pharynx, below the level of the palate. It had the gross appearance of a myxo-sarcoma, the central portions being very soft. It was composed of connective tissue, mucous tissue, fat, sarcomatous tissue, and irregular tubules lined with small, polygonal epithelial cells. Some of the tubules were distended with masses of hyalin matter. The whole structure resembled that of the tumors so often found in the parotid region, tumors which can be called 'Adenoid Myxo-Sarcomata.'

### *Sarcoma.*

I have seen one case in which there was a diffuse growth involving both the tonsils, the posterior and lateral walls of the pharynx, the base

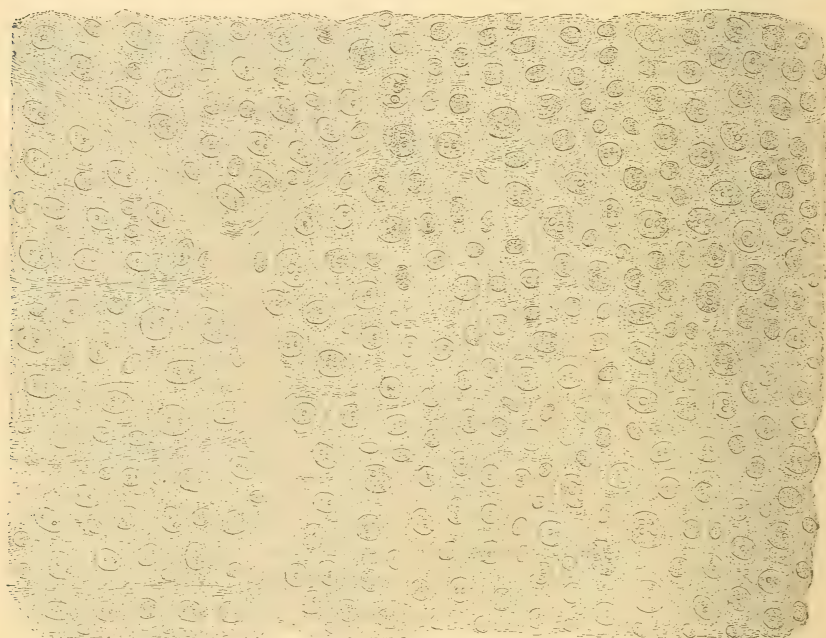


FIG. 109.—DIFFUSE SARCOMA OF THE PHARYNX,  $\times 850$  and reduced.

of the tongue, and the epiglottis. The new growth replaced the mucous membrane, infiltrated the soft parts for a short distance, and projected inwards in polypoid masses. It was composed of small, polygonal, nucleated cells, contained in a very delicate nucleated stroma (Fig. 109).

## THE STOMACH.

### MALFORMATIONS.

Malformations of the stomach are not common. The organ may be entirely wanting in acephalous foetuses. It may be of various degrees of

smallness, sometimes no larger than the duodenum. It may be divided into two halves by a deep constriction in the middle. The pyloric orifice may be stenosed or entirely closed. The stomach may be outside of the abdominal cavity from a hernial protrusion through the diaphragm, or at some point in the abdominal wall. It is found on the right side, instead of the left, when the other viscera are transposed, and the position of the cardiac and pyloric orifices is correspondingly inverted.

#### POST-MORTEM CHANGES.

In adults, the stomach after death is of a grayish or pinkish color, sometimes mottled with red ecchymoses. The mucous membrane is soft, and the epithelium easily brushed off. At the fundus, the food is usually found collected, and here the mucous membrane is the softest. It is very common to find the epithelium removed from the entire fundus of the stomach, so that all that portion of its wall is grayer and thinner, there being a sharp dividing-line between the two portions. Sometimes this post-mortem softening process goes on to destroy all the coats of the stomach, and even the adjoining portion of the diaphragm. In this way, the contents of the stomach may be emptied into the pleural cavity by a large, ragged opening in the stomach and diaphragm. When the softening affects all the coats of the stomach, the softened portion is not sharply limited. The entire thickness of the affected portion of the wall is converted into a gray or yellow semi-transparent jelly, or into a blackish, broken-down pulp.

This softening is most frequent in children, but also occurs in adults, usually in connection with severe and exhausting diseases.

A similar post-mortem softening of the wall of the œsophagus has been described by Moxon.<sup>1</sup>

#### INJURIES.

Perforating wounds of the stomach usually give rise to a fatal peritonitis. It is possible, however, for the wound to heal, or a gastric fistula may be formed.

Rupture of the stomach may be produced by severe blows or falls.

#### HEMORRHAGE.

Small extravasations of blood in the wall of the stomach are frequently found in persons who have died from one of the infectious diseases.

Hemorrhage into the cavity of the stomach may be produced in a variety of ways.

In ulcers of the stomach, there may be bleeding from the small vessels of the ulcer, or from the perforation of a larger artery.

In cancer of the stomach, there may be bleeding from the tumor.

---

<sup>1</sup> Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., 1870, p. 159.



Some cases of chronic gastritis are characterized by general bleeding from the mucous membranes of the stomach.

Cirrhosis of the liver is not infrequently attended with large hemorrhages from the mucous membrane of the stomach.

Small aneurisms of the arteries in the wall of the stomach may rupture internally.

In yellow fever and some of the other infectious diseases, there is hemorrhage into the cavity of the stomach.

Patients may vomit blood during life, and after death no lesion to account for the bleeding be found.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Acute catarrhal gastritis*, as we see it after death, is usually due to the ingestion of irritating substances, or forms part of the lesions of cholera morbus. If we can judge from clinical symptoms, it occurs during life as a temporary condition from a variety of causes.

After death the mucous membrane is found congested and swollen, or the congestion may have disappeared. The mucous membrane is coated with an increased amount of mucus, especially at the pyloric end of the stomach. Sometimes there are a number of minute white dots in the substance of the mucous membrane.

The structural changes in the mucous membrane consist simply in a swelling of the cells of the gastric tubules, a slight infiltration of the stroma with pus-cells, and a swelling of the patches of lymphatic cells. The little white dots, when they are present, are composed of small foci of pus between the gastric tubules, with degeneration and destruction of some of the tubules.

*Chronic catarrhal gastritis* is a very common disease. There is, however, no very close relation between the severity of the symptoms during life, and the extent of the lesions found after death.

In some cases, chronic alcoholism, or the abuse of drugs, or the mode of life of the patient seem to be the causes of the lesion. Chronic phthisis, chronic Bright's disease, cirrhosis of the liver, and fatty liver are often accompanied by chronic gastritis. Organic disease of the heart or pressure on the ascending vena cava produce a form of chronic gastritis characterized by intense general congestion.

After death the stomach is found either empty or still containing food. It is of normal size, or dilated, or small, sometimes hardly larger than the duodenum. Its inner surface is coated with a thick layer of tenacious mucus, most abundant at its pyloric end. The mucous membrane is congested, or white, or slate-colored, or mottled with small white spots. It is of normal thickness, or thinned, or thickened, or there are little polypoid projections from its surface, or there is cystic dilatation of the gastric tubules. The connective tissue and muscular coats remain un-

changed, or they are thinned and relaxed, or they are hypertrophied. The hypertrophy may be diffuse, or it is confined to the pyloric end of the stomach, and may then produce stenosis of the pylorus.

The minute lesions consist principally in changes in the mucous membrane. The cells of the gastric tubules are swollen, degenerated, and broken down. The tubules are atrophied and deformed, or dilated into cysts. The patches of lymphatic tissue about the blind ends of the tubules are increased in size. The connective tissue between the tubules is infiltrated with cells, and increased in quantity.

*Croupous gastritis* is of rare occurrence. It is found in children with croupous inflammation of the pharynx and œsophagus, and is then usually in small patches. In adults, it is almost always secondary to typhus, pyæmia, puerperal fever, cholera, dysentery, the exanthemata, and irritating poisons. The false membrane is in small patches, or may line a large part of the stomach. The disease is usually not diagnosed during life, the symptoms of the primary disease diverting attention from the gastritis.

I have seen one case of idiopathic croupous gastritis in an adult. A man, forty-six years old, was in good health until eight days before his death. At that time he caught cold, had pains over his bowels, tenderness over the liver, constipation, cough with mucous expectoration, temperature  $102\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ , pulse 120. On the day of his death, the 8th day of the disease, the temperature was  $100^{\circ}$ , pulse 112, tongue dry, abdomen tympanitic and tender, and he died in a prolonged attack of syncope. At the autopsy all the viscera were examined. Excepting evidences of bronchitis in the lungs, there were no lesions save in the stomach. About two-thirds of the internal surface of the stomach, including the lesser curvature and anterior and posterior walls, appeared to be covered with a thick false membrane, which did not quite reach to the cardiac or pyloric orifices. Minute examination showed that there was a layer of exudation on the internal surface of the mucous membrane. This exudation consisted of fibrillated fibrin and lymphoid cells, dipping into the mouths of the follicles. Beneath the exudation the mucous membrane was thickened and altered. A large number of lymphoid cells separated the follicles, and even replaced them entirely. The submucous layer was very much thickened by the presence of lymphoid cells, fibrillated fibrin, and fibrous tissue. The muscular coat was separated into layers by groups of lymphoid cells.

Wilks and Moxon<sup>1</sup> mention a similar case in a man with chronic Bright's disease; and a case of both croupous gastritis and colitis with abscess of the liver.

*Suppurative or Phlegmonous Gastritis.*—A formation of circum-

---

<sup>1</sup> Path. Anat., p. 381.

scribed collections of pus may occur in the connective-tissue coat of the stomach, as it does in other parts of the body, in puerperal fever and the infectious diseases.

Idiopathic suppurative gastritis is a disease of rare occurrence. Leube<sup>1</sup> has collected 31 cases, of which 26 were males and 5 females. In some of the cases the inflammation was ascribed to the excessive use of alcohol, in others to a wound in the region of the stomach, in others to some error in diet.

Fagge<sup>2</sup> describes a case in a male of fifty-one years of age, without discoverable cause.

Silcock<sup>3</sup> describes a case in which the gastritis followed the operation of gastrostomy.

I have seen one case occurring in an adult male, without any known cause.

The suppurative inflammation seems to begin in the connective-tissue coat of the stomach. From thence it may extend to the glandular coat and produce perforations, or outward to the muscular and peritoneal coats. In some cases there is added a local or general peritonitis.

The inflammation may involve one or more circumscribed areas and so produce abscesses, or it may be a diffuse process involving the whole extent of the wall of the stomach.

*Toxic Gastritis.*—The mineral acids, the caustic alkalies, arsenic, corrosive sublimate, and the metallic salts, phosphorus, camphor, and all other irritating materials, cause different lesions of the stomach, according to their quantity, their strength, and the length of time that has elapsed before death.

In large quantities, they destroy and convert into a soft, blackened mass both the mucous membrane and the other coats, so that perforation may take place. In smaller quantities, they produce black or white sloughs of the mucous membrane, surrounded by a zone of intense congestion. If death does not soon ensue, the ulcerative and cicatricial processes which follow such sloughs, may contract and deform the stomach in various ways.

If the poisons are of less strength, they produce a diffused congestion of the mucous membrane, with catarrhal or croupous exudation on its surface, and serous infiltration of the submucous coat (see chapter on poisons).

#### ULCERS OF THE STOMACH.

1. *The Chronic perforating Ulcer.*—This form of ulcer is often seen; according to Brinton, in five per cent of persons dying from all causes.

<sup>1</sup> Leube, Ziemssen's Cyclopædia, vii., p. 157.

<sup>2</sup> Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., 1875, p. 81.

<sup>3</sup> Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., 1883, p. 90.



It occurs in females nearly twice as frequently as in males. As regards the age, Brinton concludes that the liability of an individual to become the subject of gastric ulcer gradually rises, from what is nearly a zero at the age of ten, to a high rate, which it maintains through the period of middle life; at the end of which period it again ascends, to reach its maximum at the extreme age of ninety. Lebert gives one hundred and ninety-eight cases in which the ulcers were found at the autopsy, as follows:

AGE.	NUMBER OF CASES.	AGE.	NUMBER OF CASES.
15 to 20 years.....	20	50 to 60 years. . . . .	29
20 to 30 years. . . . .	48	60 to 70 years.....	19
30 to 40 years.....	28	70 to 80 years.....	5
40 to 50 years . . . . .	43		

Hauser<sup>1</sup> gives thirty autopsies from Erlangen of ulcers which were still open, as follows:

AGE.	NUMBER OF CASES.	AGE.	NUMBER OF CASES.
20 to 30 years.....	3	50 to 60 years.....	7
30 to 40 years.....	3	60 to 70 years.....	8
40 to 50 years.....	3	70 to 80 years.....	6

Moore<sup>2</sup> gives the following table of the fatal cases of ulcer of the stomach occurring at St. Bartholemew's Hospital from 1867-1879:

SEX.	AGE.	POSITION.	CAUSE OF DEATH.
M.	36	Near pylorus.....	Perforation.
M.	19	Greater curve near pylorus...	Hemorrhage.
M.	47	Near pylorus.....	Exhaustion.
M.	47	Pylorus.....	Phthisis.
M.	41	" .....	" .....
M.	52	" .....	Exhaustion.
M.	46	Lesser curve near pylorus. . .	Perforation.
F.	47	" .....	Sinus in liver to lung.
M.	57	Cardiac end .....	Hemorrhage.
M.	19	Near pylorus.....	Perforation.
M.	40	" .....	" .....
F.	46	Posterior wall .....	" .....

Goodhardt<sup>3</sup> describes an ulcer of the stomach which proved fatal from hemorrhage in an infant at birth.

The situation of these ulcers, according to Brinton, is as follows: in 43 per cent, the posterior surface; in 27, the lesser curvature; in 16, the pyloric extremity; in 6, both the anterior and posterior surface; in 5,

<sup>1</sup> Das chron. Magengesch., 1883.

<sup>2</sup> Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., 1880, p. 110.

<sup>3</sup> Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., 1881, p. 79.

the anterior surface only; in 2, the greater curvature; in 2, the cardiac pouch. Thus about 86 ulcers in every 100 occupy the posterior surface, the lesser curvature, and the pyloric sac.

As regards the number of ulcers, two or more are present in about 21 per cent; there may be two, three, four, or even five ulcers. In cases of multiple ulcers, the ulcers are often developed successively.

In size the ulcers vary from one-quarter of an inch to five or six inches.

They are usually of circular shape, sometimes oval, sometimes two or more are fused together.

The perforation is largest in the mucous membrane. It may remain confined to this, or extend outwards and involve the connective tissue, muscular and peritoneal coats, its diameter becoming smaller as it advances. The ulcer looks like a clean hole punched out of the wall of the stomach. Its floor shows no active inflammatory changes. Its edges may be in the same condition, or they may be thickened by the growth of connective tissue and cells. The rest of the mucous membrane of the stomach is apt to be in a condition of chronic catarrhal inflammation.

The ulcer may perforate directly through the wall of the stomach, and the contents of the latter are discharged into the peritoneal cavity. Or adhesions are formed between the wall of the stomach and the neighboring viscera, so that the bottom of the ulcer is closed. Or, if the liver, the intestines, or the abdominal wall become adherent, they may be invaded by the ulcerative process, and cavities or fistulæ are formed communicating with the stomach. Or, if the adhesions are incomplete, a local peritonitis and collections of pus may be developed.

During the progress of the ulcer, there may be repeated small hemorrhages from the erosion of small blood-vessels; or large hemorrhages from the erosion of large arteries.

In many cases these ulcers cicatrize, and such a cicatrization may produce various deformities of the stomach.

It is very difficult to understand how these ulcers are produced. It seems probable that the nutrition of a circumscribed part of the wall of the stomach is interfered with, and that this portion is then destroyed by the action of the gastric juice. But we are still ignorant of the way in which the obliteration of the arteries is effected. It has indeed been demonstrated in animals that an artificial embolism of the branches of the gastric arteries will produce ulcers of the stomach; and in the human stomach we occasionally meet with cases of embolism of the branches of the gastric artery and ulcers. But the clinical history of most cases of ulcer of the stomach will not correspond with such a method of causation. A chronic obliterating endarteritis would seem to be a more probable cause.

*Hemorrhagic erosions* occur as rounded spots or narrow streaks, formed by a loss of substance of the mucous membrane. The mucous

membrane at these points is congested, soft, and covered by small blood-clots. The destruction of the mucous membrane is usually superficial, but may involve its entire thickness. The number of these erosions may be so great that the entire internal surface of the stomach is studded with them. They give rise to repeated hemorrhages, and are accompanied by catarrhal inflammation of the rest of the mucous membrane.

They occur at all periods of life, even in infants. Their usual seat is the pyloric portion of the stomach.

They may be idiopathic. Usually, however, they occur in connection with some serious general disease.

*Follicular ulcers* somewhat resembling the ulcers of the small intestine are occasionally met with. They are produced by changes in the aggregations of lymphatic tissue, which are situated about the blind ends of the gastric tubules.

#### DILATATION.

Very considerable degrees of dilatation of the stomach are found at autopsies without stenosis of the pylorus, or any other mechanical cause to account for them. It is usually difficult to determine how long these dilatations have existed and how much effect they have in causing death. Nine such cases are recorded by Goodhart.<sup>1</sup>

*Acute dilatation* of the stomach with vomiting of very large quantities of thin fluid has been observed in a few cases.<sup>2</sup> It is a very curious condition, the dilatation of the stomach being developed suddenly and without discoverable cause.

Of the mechanical causes which produce dilatation of the stomach, stenosis of the pylorus is the most common. Such a stenosis may be effected by a tumor, by chronic inflammation and thickening, and by the cicatrization of ulcers. Less frequently obstructions of the small and large intestines act in the same way.

Some forms of chronic gastritis are attended with dilatation of the stomach without stenosis.

In rare cases circumscribed, sacculated dilatations are produced by the presence of foreign bodies—portions of wood, metal, etc.

#### TUMORS.

*Papilloma*.—It has already been mentioned, that in some cases of chronic gastritis, there are small, polypoid hypertrophies of the mucous membrane. Besides these, we find polypoid tumors which may reach a considerable size. They are composed of a connective-tissue

<sup>1</sup> Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., 1883, p. 88.

<sup>2</sup> Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., Vol. iv. and Vol. xxxiv., p. 82. Hughes Bennett. Practice of Medicine. Fagge, Guy's Hospital Reports, Vol. xviii., p. 1. Andral, Clinique Médicale.



stroma arranged so as to form tufts covered with cylindrical epithelium. In some cases, there are also tubules lined with cylindrical epithelium so that the tumor has partly the structure of an adenoma. *Fibromata* of small size are sometimes found in the connective-tissue coat. *Lipomata* are formed in the submucous connective tissue in the shape of rounded or polypoid tumors. They usually project inwards, but sometimes outward beneath the peritoneum. They may also appear in the form of numerous yellow nodules beneath the mucous membrane.

*Myomata* occur in the form of rounded tumors which originate in the muscular coat, but may gradually separate themselves from it and project inwards or outwards. The submucous myomata are at first small tumors lying loosely attached in the submucous tissue. As they grow larger they push the mucous membrane inward and take the shape of polypoid tumors. *Lymphomata* in the wall of the stomach are seen in some cases of leukæmia.

*Sarcomata* are said to occur in the wall of the stomach in rare instances. It must be admitted that in some of the tumors of the wall of stomach, which are ordinarily called cancerous, the structure is not well defined and it is possible that some of them are sarcomata.

A myo-sarcoma growing outwards from the greater curvature of the stomach is described by Brodowski.<sup>1</sup> The tumor weighed twelve pounds. It was composed largely of smooth muscle-cells. There was a secondary tumor in the liver.

*Adenoma*.—It has been already mentioned that in some of the papillary tumors of the mucous membrane there is a considerable growth of tubules lined with cylindrical epithelium.

Besides these, we find in the submucous coat circumscribed tumors composed of tubules like those of the gastric mucous membrane.

Small tumors resembling the pancreas have also been seen in the submucous and subserous coats.

*Carcinoma* of the stomach is almost always primary. But very few secondary cases have been recorded.<sup>2</sup>

Primary carcinoma of the stomach is of the colloid variety, or common cancer, or cancer with cylindrical epithelial cells, or it is pigmented.

Colloid cancer is composed of a connective-tissue stroma, arranged so as to form cavities of different sizes, which contain colloid matter and polygonal cells. It infiltrates first the submucous connective tissue and then extends inwards and outwards. In this way, there is formed a diffuse thickening of the pyloric end of the stomach rather than a circumscribed tumor. Sometimes the whole of the wall of the stomach is

---

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 67, p. 227.

<sup>2</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 38 and 86, p. 159. Trans. Path. Soc., London, 1876, p. 264.

changed in this way. Secondary tumors are usually situated in the peritoneum.

Carcinoma with cylindrical epithelial cells. These tumors are formed of a connective-tissue stroma, which may contain numerous round cells, and of tubules lined with cylindrical epithelium, like that of the mucous membrane of the stomach. In these tumors the new growth seems to begin in the gastric tubules. As the arrangement of the tubules is more or less regular, these tumors may be called adenomata or carcinomata (see Fig. 46, p. 143).

Common cancer is formed of a connective-tissue stroma, inclosing rounded and tubular spaces filled with small, polygonal nucleated cells. In some cases this structure is well marked; in others, the stroma is abundant and filled with round cells, the spaces are very small, and the epithelial cells few. It may then be difficult to distinguish between inflammatory thickening, sarcoma, and carcinoma.

Both these forms of carcinoma, common cancer and cancer with cylindrical cells, run the same course as regards their gross appearance, their situation, and their development of metastatic tumors.

About sixty per cent of these tumors are situated at the pyloric end of the stomach, on the lesser curvature or on the posterior wall. The cardiac end of the stomach, the greater curvature, or nearly the entire wall of the stomach may also be the seats of the new growth, but not as frequently.

The new growth usually follows one or other of three types:

(1) There is a circumscribed, flat tumor formed in the deeper layers of the mucous membrane and pushing this membrane inwards. After a time, the mucous membrane over the centre of the tumor dies, the destructive process involves the tumor also, and so an ulcer with thickened edges is formed. In some cases the new growth extends laterally and outward, while the central destruction still continues; then the ulcers reach a large size, their walls and floor are thick, and peritoneal adhesions are formed over them. In other cases the ulcer perforates completely through the wall of the stomach, unless the opening is closed by adhesions to the neighboring viscera.

(2) Large rounded tumors are formed, often several inches in diameter, which project into the cavity of the stomach.

(3) There is a diffuse, flat infiltration of the deep layers of the mucous coat, of the connective-tissue coat, and, sometimes, of the muscular coat, which does not ulcerate and hardly forms a tumor. This infiltration may be confined to the pyloric end of the stomach, or may involve nearly the whole of its wall.

There is in most of the cases a good deal of chronic catarrhal inflammation of the mucous membrane.

If the pylorus is obstructed, the stomach is often dilated.

The new growth may extend from the stomach to the œsophagus, but it very seldom involves the duodenum.

Metastatic tumors are very common. The liver, the lymphatic glands, and the peritoneum are the parts most frequently affected, but such metastases have been seen in nearly every part of the body.

#### DEGENERATIONS.

*Calcification* of the mucous membrane of the stomach sometimes occurs as a metastatic process in connection with extensive diseases of the bones.

*Waxy Degeneration* sometimes involves the blood-vessels of the mucous membrane.

### THE INTESTINES.

#### MALFORMATIONS.

*Diverticula* of the intestines occur in several different ways:

(1) The abdominal walls are cleft asunder at the navel. The ileum opens through this cleft by a narrow aperture in its wall. The lower portions of the ileum and the colon are small or entirely closed.

(2) There is an opening in the abdominal wall as before, but there is not a direct opening into the ileum. There is a long diverticulum of the ileum, with an open end projecting into the opening in the abdominal wall.

(3) The abdominal wall is closed. There is a diverticulum of the ileum connected with the navel by a solid cord.

(4) There is an unattached diverticulum of the intestine. This is much the most common form. The diverticula occur only in the lower part of the ileum. They usually spring from the convex surface of the intestine, more rarely from its attached border. In the latter case, they are joined to the mesentery by a fold of peritoneum. The diverticulum forms a pouch, one to six inches long, of about the same diameter as the intestine, smallest at its free extremity.

Such diverticula never interfere with the functions of the intestines. They sometimes form part of a hernia. If they remain attached by a fibrous cord to the navel, this cord may be the cause of incarceration of a portion of the intestines.

Cloacæ consist in the union of the rectum, bladder, and organs of generation in a common outlet.

(1) *Simple Cloacæ* are: (a) Complete, and consist in the common opening of the urethra or ureters, the vagina, and the rectum into the closed bladder, or into a sinus opening outward, which represents either the vagina or the rectum. (b) Incomplete. The rectum opens into the vagina, the bladder, or the urethra, while the lower part of the rectum is closed or absent.



(2) *Cloacæ combined with cleft bladder.* (a) The simple cleavage of the intestines is combined with cleft bladder. The anterior abdominal wall from the umbilicus to the symphysis, the symphysis, and the anterior wall of the bladder are absent; the gap is filled with a membrane which represents the posterior wall of the bladder. Onto this membrane open the ileum, ureters, and vagina. (b) The intestine is perfectly formed, but the rectum opens into a common sinus with the ureters and vagina; or the ureters open into the cleft bladder, and the rectum and external genitals are united; or the ureters open into the rectum, and the latter terminates normally.

(3) *Cloacæ combined with abdominal hernia.* There is a hernial sac containing all the abdominal viscera. At the lower end of the sac is an opening leading into a sinus in which open the lower end of the ileum, the bladder or urethra, and the ureters. The rectum is absent.

*Atresia Ani* consists in a deficient development of the colon or rectum. The entire colon may be absent; the rectum may be absent, or represented by a solid cord; or the upper or lower part of the colon may be absent, or separated by a solid cord.

More rarely, blind terminations of the small intestines are found, and sometimes a narrowing so complete as to close the canal.

The intestines are also found abnormally shortened in various degrees.

#### INCARCERATION.

(1) The most common form is that in which a portion of intestine is strangulated by a fibrous band. Such fibrous bands are produced by peritonitis, or are remains of foetal growth. They pass from the intestines to the abdominal wall, or from one part of the intestines to another. The intestine becomes in some way caught under one of these bands, and is compressed by it. The stricture thus produced may cause a gradual accumulation of fæces in the intestine above it, and may last for a long time before death ensues. In other cases, the stricture interferes at once with the circulation of the blood; the intestine is intensely congested, becomes gangrenous, and death takes place with the symptoms of general peritonitis.

(2) A portion of intestine becomes caught in some abnormal opening in the mesentery or omentum, or in the foramen of Winslow, or between the two layers of the mesentery. We have seen a case in which twelve feet of intestine had passed through a small opening in the mesentery.

(3) A coil of intestine makes half a turn at its base, so that the two sides of the loops cross at its base. In this way, the lumen of the intestine is completely closed, and the vessels are compressed, so that congestion, peritonitis, and gangrene result. This form of incarceration

is most frequent in the ascending colon. In the small intestine it only occurs when the gut is fixed by old adhesions.

(4) A portion of the intestine, with its mesentery, makes one or more complete turns on itself, closing the canal, and compressing the vessels.

(5) A portion of the intestine makes a half or entire turn about its long axis. This is very rare, and only occurs in the colon.

(6) The mesentery of a part of the intestine is long and loose, in consequence of a dragging down of the intestine by a hernia or by habitual constipation. The portion of intestine thus permitted to hang down is habitually filled with feces, and by its pressure on some other part of the intestine produces an incomplete stricture.

#### INTUSSUSCEPTION.

This change of position consists in the invagination of one portion of intestine in another portion. Usually this takes place in the direction of the peristaltic movements, from above downward; more rarely, in the opposite direction.

The parts are found in the following condition: There are three portions of intestine, one within the other. The inner portion is continuous with the intestines above the intussusception; its peritoneal coat faces outward. The outer portion is continuous with the intestine below; its peritoneal coat also faces outward. The inner portion is turned inside out, its mucous membrane is in contact with the mucous membrane of the outer portion. In rare cases, the intussusception is complicated by the invagination of a second portion of intestine in the inner tube, and even by a third intussusception into the second one. These changes occur both in the large and small intestine; most frequently the lower part of the ileum is invaginated in the colon. The invaginated portion may be from a few inches to several feet in length. The lesion is most frequently found in early childhood.

The intussusception, by the dragging and folding of the mesentery which it produces, causes an intense congestion of the parts, and even large hemorrhages between the coats of the intestine. The congestion may induce fatal peritonitis, or gangrene of the intestine, or chronic inflammation and adhesions, and the patient lives for a considerable time with symptoms of stricture. In other cases, the invaginated portion of intestine sloughs, the outer and inner portion become adherent, and the patient recovers, with or without some degree of stricture.

Besides this grave form of intussusception, we often find, especially in children, one or more small invaginations not attended with congestion or inflammation. These are formed during the death agony, or immediately after death.

## TRANSPOSITION.

The position of the intestines may be the opposite to that which is usually found. The transposition may affect all the abdominal viscera, or only a single viscus is transposed.

## WOUNDS, RUPTURES.

Penetrating wounds of the intestine usually prove rapidly fatal, either from shock or from peritonitis. Sometimes, however, the wound becomes closed by the formation of adhesions with the neighboring parts. Sometimes the wound in the intestines becomes adherent at the position of the wound in the abdominal wall, and an intestinal fistula is formed.

Rupture of the small intestine is not infrequently produced by severe blows on the anterior abdominal wall. It is noticeable that such blows may not produce any marks or ecchymoses of the skin. Such ruptures usually prove fatal very soon, but sometimes the patient lives several days, and the edges of the rupture undergo inflammatory changes.

Strictures of the intestine are sometimes followed by rupture of the dilated intestine at some point above the stricture.

## THE SMALL INTESTINE.

## INFLAMMATION.

*Acute Catarrhal Inflammation* of the greater part of the small intestine is developed as part of the lesion of cholera morbus, and after the ingestion of irritant poisons.

Acute inflammation of the duodenum accompanies gastritis, and occurs as an idiopathic condition.

Acute inflammation of the ileum occurs as an idiopathic condition, and accompanies inflammation of the colon and of the solitary and agminated glands.

In many of these cases we infer the existence of the inflammation from the clinical symptoms.

After death, the most marked lesions are the increased production of mucus and the congestion. In very severe cases the inflammation may extend to the peritoneal coat.

*Chronic Catarrhal Inflammation* of the small intestine accompanies heart disease, phthisis, emphysema, cirrhosis of the liver, and Bright's disease. The intestine is coated with an increased amount of mucus, it is often congested, there may be a general thickening of all its coats.

*Croupous Inflammation* is produced by irritant poisons; it is associated with croupous colitis, and it occurs as an idiopathic disease. The mucous membrane is coated with fibrin, its stroma is infiltrated with fibrin and pus, and this infiltration extends to the connective tissue, muscular and peritoneal coats.



*Suppurative inflammation* of the submucous connective-tissue coat is said to occur in rare cases. It is usually metastatic. It takes the form of purulent foci of variable extent, which perforate either inward or outward.

#### THE SOLITARY AND AGMINATED GLANDS.

It is not uncommon to find in healthy adults who have died from accidental causes, a considerable swelling of the solitary and agminated glands of the ileum without any reason which we can discover to account for this swelling.

Extensive burns of the skin may be followed by a very marked swelling of the solitary and agminated glands.

In persons who have died from the infectious diseases it is not uncommon to find these glands swollen.

In children, swelling of these glands, often followed by softening and the formation of ulcers, accompanies many of the catarrhal inflammations of the large and small intestine.

In pulmonary phthisis we very frequently find changes in the solitary and agminated glands of the small intestine, less frequently in the solitary glands of the colon. The changes seem to be of the same character as those which take place in tubercular inflammation of lymphatic glands in other parts of the body.

The glands become swollen, their elements are multiplied, tubercle granula are formed, the central portions of the glands become cheesy. The cheesy degeneration extends, it is followed by softening and by death of the mucous membrane over the glands, the softened tissue is discharged into the intestine, and ulcers are formed with overhanging edges. After this, the ulcer shows no tendency to heal, but on the contrary, becomes larger, usually extending laterally so as sometimes to nearly encircle the gut. After death, we find, in different patients, these ulcers in all their stages of development. They vary much as to the proportion between the tubercular and the ordinary inflammatory changes. In some the tubercle granula are numerous, in others they are few or even absent altogether. The tubercle bacilli are very constantly found in them. There is also usually a tubercular inflammation of the peritoneum over the ulcers, and sometimes of the lymphatics and glands of the mesentery. Although these ulcers often reach a large size, it is but very seldom that they perforate into the peritoneal cavity.

*Ulcers of the Duodenum.*—A few cases have been recorded in which extensive burns of the skin have been followed within a few days by the formation of deep ulcers of the duodenum. It is still uncertain how these ulcers are produced.

Chronic perforating ulcers, resembling the chronic ulcers of the

stomach, are found in the duodenum. They are associated with similar ulcers in the stomach or occur by themselves.

Some curious ulcers of the upper part of the small intestine are described by Israel.<sup>1</sup> There were five ulcers, from two and one-half to ten centimetres long, encircling the intestine, with irregular, granulating surfaces.

#### EMBOLI.

Emboli have been found in the superior mesenteric artery in a number of cases; in the inferior mesenteric artery they are less frequent. They produce an intense venous congestion of the entire wall of the intestine, with hemorrhage into its cavity and its wall.

### THE LARGE INTESTINE.

#### INFLAMMATION.

The mucous membrane of the large intestine is very frequently the seat of acute and chronic inflammatory processes. The larger number of these belong to the condition which is described clinically under the name of dysentery. The inflammation affects most frequently the rectum, sometimes the entire length of the colon, sometimes only the upper part of the colon.

*Acute catarrhal colitis.*—The mucous membrane is swollen and congested, there is an increased production of mucus, there may be a large transudation of serum, there may be some bleeding from the capillary vessels. The epithelium desquamates, and the connective tissue and glandular coats are infiltrated with a moderate number of pus-cells.

There are curious cases of catarrhal colitis occurring in old and feeble persons, which are very fatal. After death, we find the mucous membrane soft and black, and the entire wall of the gut soft and easily torn. The intestine looks almost gangrenous, but yet does not seem really to be so. What the real nature of these cases is I do not know, although I have seen several of them.

*Chronic catarrhal colitis* may succeed acute colitis, or it may begin as a chronic affection. Either a portion or the entire length of the colon may be involved, and the lesion is found developed in different degrees in different cases. The glandular coat is thickened by the growth of connective tissue between the tubules, or the tubules may become atrophied, and the glandular coat is then thin. There may be a complete destruction of the glandular coat at different points, so that ulcers of different sizes are formed. The solitary follicles in the wall of the intestine may be inflamed and softened, and in this way also small round ulcers are formed. The connective-tissue coat is thickened; this thicken-

---

<sup>1</sup> Charité-Annalen, 1884, p. 707.

ing is uniform, or it is more marked at some places than others, so that little polypoid tumors are formed, which project into the cavity of the colon. The muscular and peritoneal coats are also thickened.

*Croupous Colitis.*—This form of inflammation may involve the rectum alone, or the entire length of the colon, or only its upper portion. The mucous membrane is congested and swollen, and coated with a layer of false membrane, the connective tissue between and beneath the glandular tubules is infiltrated with fibrin and pus, and in severe cases, the inflammation involves the muscular and peritoneal coats also. The inflammation is usually more intense at some places than at others, so that the surface of the mucous membrane shows the false membrane in isolated patches. Less frequently there is a uniform coating with the false membrane. In mild cases, as the inflammation subsides, the products of inflammation are absorbed, and the wall of the intestine returns to its normal condition. In more severe cases, the quantity of the inflammatory products is so great that portions of the wall of the intestine become necrotic. This necrosis may involve only the glandular coat, or it may extend deeper into the wall of the intestine. The necrosed tissue after a time sloughs away, leaving behind ulcers of different sizes and depths. After this the ulcers may cicatrize, or their floors and walls may remain in the condition of granulation tissue for an indefinite length of time. When the latter is the case, there is added a chronic inflammation of the wall of the intestine between the ulcers, with changes in the mucous membrane, and thickening of the connective tissue and muscular coats.

*The solitary follicles.*—In children, the lymphatic glands in the wall of the large intestine frequently become swollen, soften, and form ulcers in cases of catarrhal colitis. In adults, such changes are not common except in the dysentery of armies. In army dysentery, the changes in the solitary follicles often form the principal part of the lesion, although catarrhal or croupous inflammations are usually associated with them. The intestine is thickly studded with small, round ulcers, originating in the destructive changes in the solitary follicles. But these ulcers show a disposition to increase in size and to remain as chronic ulcers for a long time.

*The cæcum.*—Catarrhal inflammation of the cæcum is not uncommon. It is usually produced by an habitual accumulation of feces in this part of the intestine. The course of the inflammation is chronic, but marked by acute exacerbations. At first the mucous membrane undergoes the ordinary changes of chronic catarrhal inflammation; then there is a slow suppurative inflammation which extends through the wall of the intestine, and produces ulcers and perforations. Through these perforations the feces may pass into the peritoneal cavity, or the perforations are



partly closed by adhesions, and abscesses are formed, or sinuses into the surrounding soft parts.

*The rectum.*—Besides the inflammatory changes already described as existing in the colon, we sometimes find a suppurative inflammation of the connective tissue which surrounds the rectum, either associated with lesions of the mucous membrane or occurring by itself.

*The vermiform appendix.*—The most frequent form of inflammation of the appendix is a suppurative one. The appendix is swollen and congested; its walls are infiltrated with pus; at some points there may be necrosis and sloughing of portions of its wall. Within the cavity of the appendix we find fecal concretions, or foreign bodies, or nothing. Such an inflammation may terminate in resolution, but more frequently it sets up an inflammation of the surrounding tissues. This inflammation may be either a local or general peritonitis, or a suppurative inflammation of the soft parts about the appendix.

Less frequently there is a chronic inflammation of the mucous membrane of the appendix, followed by constriction of its upper portion, while the lower part is dilated into a cyst filled with mucus and serum.

*Syphilitic ulcers* produced by changes in the solitary and agminated glands of the small intestine are sometimes found in infants.

In adults, the lower end of the rectum is the part of the intestine which is the most frequent seat of syphilitic ulceration. Most of these ulcers seem to be the result of unnatural coitus, or of infection from specific sores of the vulva; but some of them seem to be due to the softening of gummy tumors.

#### TUMORS.

*Myoma.*—Tumors composed of smooth muscle and connective tissue grow in the muscular coat and project inwards. They may be large enough to obstruct the intestine, and may then give rise to intussusception. In the duodenum, such tumors may obstruct the common bile-duct. Less frequently, these tumors project outwards into the peritoneal cavity.

*Lipomata* may be developed from the submucous coat and grow inwards, or from the subserous coat, and project outwards into the peritoneal cavity.

*Polypoid Tumors*, projecting into the cavity of the intestine and composed of connective tissue and covered with epithelium, are frequently found. They are associated with catarrhal inflammation or occur by themselves. They are found throughout the intestinal tract, and may be single or multiple. They grow from the submucous coat, and project inwards. Some of them are small, solid, connective-tissue tumors, covered by the mucous membrane which they have pushed inwards. Others are of the same character, but of large size. In others, the connective

tissue is arranged in branching tufts, covered with cylindrical epithelium, and in these last tumors there may also be tubules lined with cylindrical epithelium, giving to the growth the characters of an adenoma.

*Adenomata* are found in the duodenum and colon. They form flat infiltrations of the wall of the intestine, or project inwards as polypoid tumors. They are composed of tubular follicles, like those of the intestinal mucous membrane and of a connective-tissue stroma. In some of these tumors the tubules have a tolerably regular shape and arrangement; there is no infiltration of surrounding tissue; the tumor is of benign nature. In other tumors, the tubules are irregular in shape and arrangement, and the growth infiltrates the surrounding parts. There is no sharp dividing line between these tumors and the carcinomata.

*Carcinomata* are found in the colon and the duodenum, and are of three varieties.

1. The new growth is composed of tubules lined with cylindrical epithelium. It begins as a flat infiltration of the submucous coat, which soon surrounds the intestine, infiltrates the whole thickness of the wall of the gut, and may extend to the surrounding soft parts. Fungous masses project into the cavity of the intestine, while at the same time ulcerative and destructive processes are going on. According to the exact arrangement of the growth, there is more or less stenosis of the intestine.

2. The growth has the characters of colloid cancer, and forms a diffuse infiltration of the intestinal wall, completely surrounding it and often extending over a length of several inches.

3. At the anus, there is sometimes a carcinomatous growth, with flat epithelial cells (epithelioma), like similar growths in the skin, which involves the lower end of the rectum.

*Lymphoma*.—Tumors composed of tissue resembling that of the lymphatic glands originate in the solitary and agminated follicles and in the intestinal wall in cases of leukæmia and pseudo-leukæmia.

Similar tumors are found as an idiopathic lesion, both in the large and small intestine. These tumors are irregular diffuse growths infiltrating the wall of the intestine, the mesentery, and the neighboring glands, and reaching a considerable size. They often ulcerate internally and produce dilatation or stenosis of the intestine. It is hard to tell whether some of these tumors should be called lymphomata or sarcomata.

#### CONCRETIONS.

There are sometimes found in the intestines round, oval, or irregular masses of firm consistence. They are usually small, but may reach the size of a man's fist. They are composed of fecal matter, mucus, bile, the carbonate and phosphate of lime, and triple phosphate. They may produce inflammation, ulceration, and perforation.

## PARASITES.

*Mycosis Intestinalis*.—Under this name have been described a number of cases in which inflammation of the intestines occurred as one of a group of lesions.<sup>1</sup> In these cases, there are found ecchymoses of the skin and mucous membranes; patches of fibrin in the stomach, small intestine, and colon; serum in the peritoneal cavity; swelling of the spleen and lymphatic glands; and sometimes inflammation of the lungs. The intestinal lesions are most marked in the small intestine and the upper part of the colon. The mucous membrane is studded with small brownish patches. At the centres of these patches, the wall of the intestine is infiltrated with pus, and around the centres it is infiltrated with blood. Bacilli resembling those of anthrax are found in the intestinal lesions and in other parts of the body. It is believed that the disease is a form of anthrax.

*Ascaris lumbricoides* is found in the small intestine, either singly or in considerable numbers. In rare cases, a number of worms may form a mass which produces inflammation, ulceration, and perforation.

*Oxyuris vermicularis* is found in large numbers in the rectum.

*Tricocephalus dispar* is found in the cæcum.

*Ankylostomum duodenale* is found in the duodenum, and may give rise to considerable hemorrhages.

*Trichina spiralis* is found in its adult condition in the small intestine.

*Pentastomum denticulatum* occurs in the submucous tissue of the small intestine in an encapsuled condition.

*Cysticercus cellulosæ* has been seen, in a few cases, on the mucous membrane.

*Tænia solium*, *Tænia mediocanellata*, and *Bothriocephalus latus* are all found in the small intestine.

Very large numbers of various forms of bacteria are regularly found in the intestinal cavity intermingled with its contents, and clinging to its walls.

## THE PERITONEUM.

The free surface of the parietal peritoneum is covered with a single layer of flat, polygonal nucleated cells. Beneath these cells are successive planes of connective tissue extending down to the muscles and fasciæ. These planes are formed of a fibrillated basement substance, reinforced by elastic fibres, and of branching cells. Embedded in the connective tissue are the nerves, blood-vessels, and lymphatics. The lymphatic system is very extensive.

The omentum consists of fibrillated connective tissue arranged so as

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. xxi., p. 579; xxx., p. 366; lii., p. 541. Zeitschr. f. Biologie, v., 129. Arch. d. Heilkunde, xv. Arch. f. klin. Med., xii., p. 517.



to form a mesh-work. The trabeculæ of the mesh-work are completely covered by large, flat cells. In the basement substance, beneath the endothelium, are branching cells. In the larger trabeculæ are blood-vessels, lymphatics, and fat. Sometimes we find on the larger trabeculæ little nodules formed of polygonal or branched cells.

#### MALFORMATIONS.

Arrest of development of the peritoneum occurs in the shape of fissures in the mesial line, or external to it; in the case of the diaphragm being absent, of a fusion with the pleura; and as defective development of the mesentery, the omentum, and the other folds of the peritoneum.

Excess of development occurs in the shape of unusual length of the mesentery, the omentum, and the other folds of the peritoneum; or of supernumerary folds and pouches. These are chiefly found in the hypogastric, iliac, and inguinal regions and near the fundus of the bladder. There is access to these sacs by a well-defined fissure, or ring, which is frequently surrounded by a tendinous band lying in the duplicature. They may give rise to internal incarceration of the intestines.

#### INFLAMMATION.

The very great extent of the peritoneum, and the readiness with which its lymphatic system absorbs foreign matters from the peritoneal cavity, render peritonitis a most severe and dangerous form of inflammation.

If the greater part of the peritoneum is inflamed, we call the lesion a *general peritonitis*. If only a circumscribed area is involved, it is a *local peritonitis*. The course of the inflammation may be rapid or slow, so that we speak of *acute* and *chronic* inflammation. The inflammation may be attended with the production of tubercle tissue, and then it is a *tubercular peritonitis*.

##### I. *Acute Peritonitis.*

The acute inflammations of the peritoneum may occur as idiopathic lesions without discoverable cause; but much more frequently they are directly due to some appreciable cause.

Wounds and contusions of the wall of the abdomen; wounds, ulcers, new growths, incarcerations, intussusceptions, ruptures, perforations and inflammations of the stomach and intestines; inflammation of the vermiform appendix; injuries, ruptures, and inflammations of the uterus, ovaries and Fallopian tubes; rupture and inflammation of the bladder; inflammation of and about the kidneys; abscesses and hydatid cysts of the liver; inflammation of the gall-bladder and large bile-ducts; thrombosis of the portal vein; inflammations of the spleen, pancreas, lymphatic glands, retroperitoneal connective tissue, vertebræ, ribs and pel-

vic bones; septicæmia and the infectious diseases; and chronic Bright's disease, are all ordinary causes of acute peritonitis.

According to the exact cause of the inflammation, the peritonitis is at first either local or general. A local peritonitis may remain circumscribed, or it may spread and become general.

We can distinguish two anatomical forms of acute peritonitis.

(1) *Cellular Peritonitis.*

This form of peritonitis may be produced by any irritant which does not act too energetically. It can be excited in dogs by injections of very small quantities of a solution of chloride of zinc. In the human subject we find it with perityphlitis, with circumscribed abscesses in the peritoneal cavity, and in cases of puerperal fever which die within forty-eight hours after the development of symptoms.

After death we find the entire peritoneum of a bright-red color,

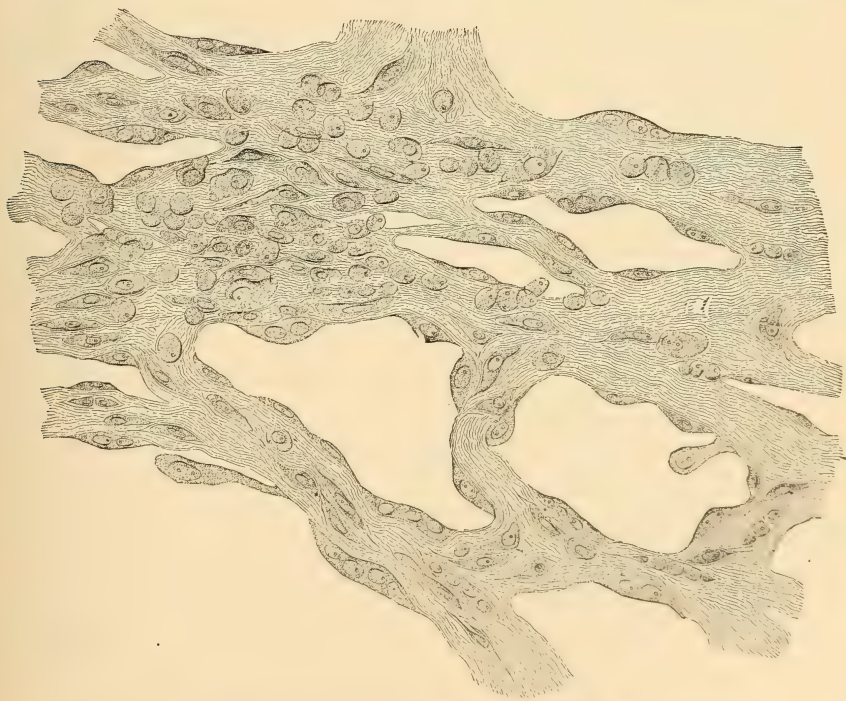


FIG. 110.—ACUTE CELLULAR PERITONITIS, Human Omentum.  $\times 750$  and reduced.

from the congestion of the blood-vessels, but there is no fibrin, no serum, no pus, no other lesions visible to the naked eye. Minute examination, however, shows a very marked change in the endothelial cells. They are increased in size and number, and the new cells coat the surface of the peritoneum, and project outwards in little masses (Fig. 110).

(2) *Exudative Peritonitis.*

The ordinary form of acute peritonitis is attended with the production of serum, fibrin, and pus, and with changes in the endothelium and connective-tissue cells.

If we inject a solution of chloride zinc, or of some other irritant into the peritoneal cavity of a dog, we find that by the end of one or two hours inflammatory changes are evident. There is a little serum in the peritoneal cavity, a general congestion of the peritoneum, and little knobs and threads of fibrin on its surface. There are no marked changes in the endothelium or connective-tissue cells, but pus-cells are present in moderate numbers in the stroma, just beneath the endothelium, and white blood-cells in the vessels.

After the lapse of twenty-four hours, the lesions are more marked. The congestion of the peritoneum is much more decided, there is more serum in its cavity, and a thicker layer of fibrin and pus on its surface. Minute examination shows that two distinct sets of changes are going on at the same time: (1) a production of fibrin, serum, and pus; (2) a swelling and multiplication of the endothelial cells. If the inflammation is very intense, the pus and fibrin are most abundant; if the inflammation is milder, the changes in the endothelium are more marked. The fibrin coagulates on the free surface of the peritoneum. The white blood-cells collect in large numbers in the blood-vessels, and as pus-cells infiltrate the stroma and collect on its surface. There is no special change in the connective-tissue cells. The endothelial cells may remain in place, although their edges and corners are separated by pus-cells and knobs of fibrin; or the endothelium falls off in large patches; or the surface of the peritoneum is covered with numerous cells which look like endothelial cells more or less deformed. But few dogs survive the third day of an acute artificial peritonitis.

In the human subject, if death takes place before the third day, both the gross and minute changes are the same as those seen in the dog. There are present the same general congestion, the pus, fibrin, and serum, the desquamation and multiplication of the endothelial cells.

In many cases of peritonitis, however, death occurs between the sixth and fourteenth days of the disease. The appearance of the peritoneum at this period of the inflammation is not always the same. The congestion of the blood-vessels may persist, it may be very intense and accompanied with extravasations of blood, or it may be entirely absent. There may be a thin coating of fibrin and pus gluing together neighboring surfaces of peritoneum, or this layer may be very thick. The production of pus may be superficial, or it may infiltrate the whole thickness of the peritoneum and the subperitoneal connective tissue. The quantity of purulent serum in the peritoneal cavity may be small or large, and this serum may



contain few or many pus-cells, or the serum may be of a dirty brown color, and filled with bacteria. When the purulent serum is shut in by adhesion, it is often thick and yellow, like the pus of an abscess.

The minute appearances differ from those seen at an earlier stage, chiefly in the larger amount of inflammatory products, and in the changes

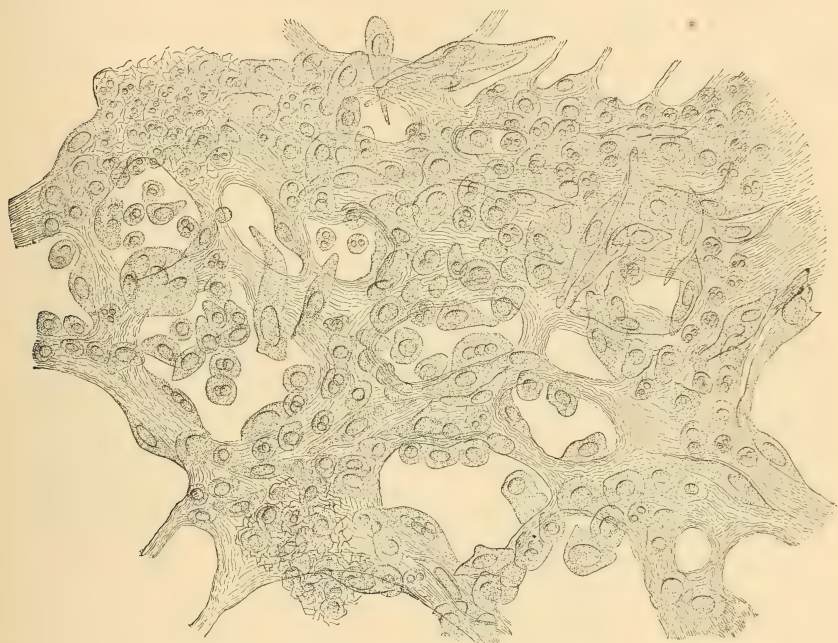


FIG. 111.—HUMAN OMENTUM,  $\times 750$  and reduced.  
Acute Peritonitis of eight days' duration.

in the fixed connective-tissue cells. During the first three days of an acute peritonitis, the connective-tissue cells are but little changed, but by the seventh day there is a marked increase in their size and number.

Acute peritonitis may prove fatal by the fourteenth day; or it may be succeeded by chronic peritonitis; or the patients recover and permanent connective-tissue adhesions and thickenings of the peritoneum are left behind. Recovery is most common when the peritonitis has been a local one.

## II. Chronic Peritonitis.

We find the following varieties of chronic peritonitis.

### 1. Cellular Peritonitis.

This form of peritonitis is found as a complication of chronic endocarditis, of cirrhosis of the liver, of chronic pulmonary phthisis and of acute general tuberculosis.

Neither fibrin nor pus are present, but there may be clear serum in the peritoneal cavity. The peritoneum may look normal to the naked eye, or it may be studded with very minute, translucent nodules.

Minute examination shows changes in the endothelial cells and the connective-tissue cells. These cells are everywhere increased in number and altered in shape; or to speak more guardedly, the surface of the peritoneum is covered with cells which look as if they were derived from the endothelium and connective-tissue cells (Fig. 112). Some are large flat

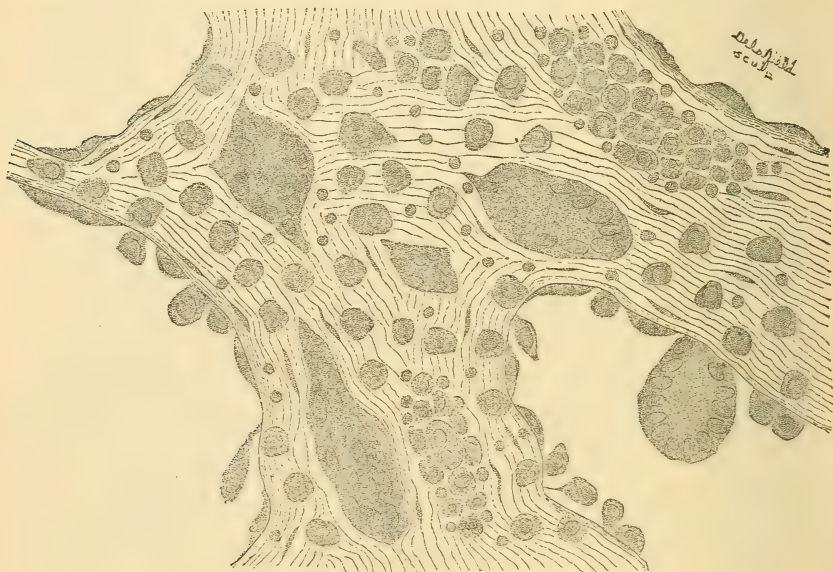


FIG. 112.—HUMAN OMENTUM,  $\times 750$  and reduced.  
Chronic cellular peritonitis, with pulmonary phthisis.

cells; some smaller polygonal cells; some irregularly fusiform; some large, granular masses containing a number of nuclei. Although these new cells are found over most of the surface of the peritoneum, yet they are more numerous in little patches, which are scattered here and there.

## 2. *Peritonitis with Adhesions.*

There may be a formation of permanent adhesions without the production of fibrin or pus. It is often, indeed, difficult to tell whether old peritoneal adhesions are due to the form of chronic peritonitis of which we are now speaking, or whether they are the result of an acute peritonitis. But there are some cases in which the mode of development of the adhesions seems evident (Fig. 113).

If, from perityphlitis or some other cause, a collection of pus is shut in in some part of the peritoneal cavity, we may find the rest of the peritoneum smooth and shining, no serum, fibrin, or pus, no thickening;



but the neighboring surfaces of the peritoneum are attached to each other by adhesions. These adhesions are in the shape of threads and membranes, often of the most extreme tenuity. They are formed of a fibrillated basement substance, the fibrils crossing each other in all directions. In the basement substance are cells, some fusiform and stellate, but most of them look like large branching cells, of which the cell-bodies have become fused with the basement substance, while the nuclei remain.

Close to these adhesions the peritoneum may appear normal to the naked eye, but if it is put in water, very fine threads and membranes

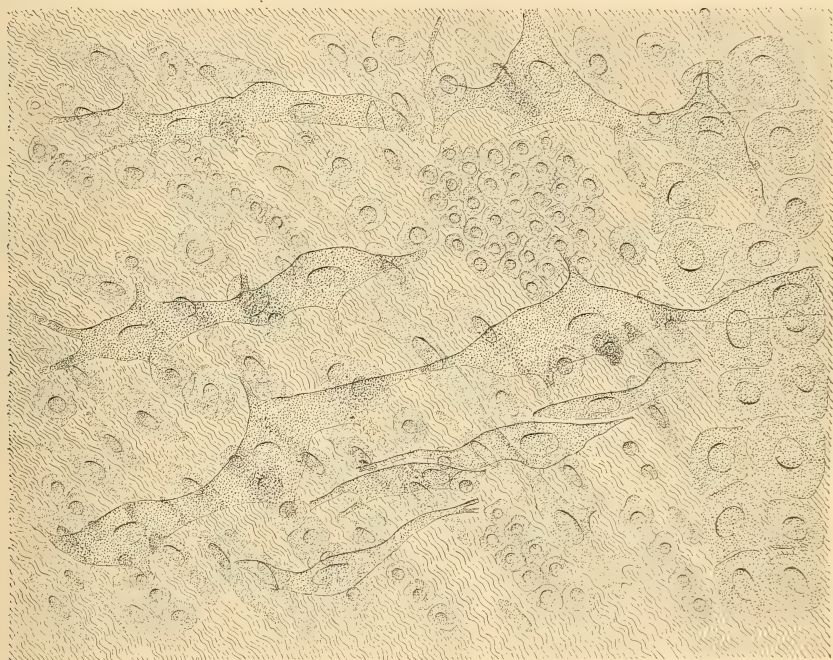


FIG. 113.—CHRONIC PERITONITIS WITH ADHESIONS,  $\times 750$  and reduced.  
Parietal Peritoneum.

will float upward from its free surface. Minute examination shows that the connective-tissue cells are increased in size and number, that the endothelial cells are replaced by cells of a great variety of shapes, and that the thin little threads and membranes on the surface are formed of large branching cells.

Such a peritonitis with adhesions appears to be a more advanced stage of the cellular peritonitis just described, but the inflammation, instead of stopping at the production of cells alone, goes on to the formation of membranes.

We sometimes find in the same patient chronic pleurisy with adhesions and chronic peritonitis with adhesions.



### 3. *Chronic Peritonitis with Thickening of the Peritoneum.*

This form of peritonitis occurs quite frequently as an idiopathic lesion. It may involve the greater part of the peritoneum or be confined to the capsules of the liver and spleen.

The most marked feature of the lesion is the thickening of the peritoneum—a thickening which may reach as much as an inch. The outer portions of the thickened peritoneum are composed of dense connective tissue, the inner layers of granulation tissue. The surface of the peritoneum is smooth or covered with fibrin. There may also be connective-tissue adhesions between different parts of the peritoneum. The peritoneal cavity contains clear or purulent serum.

In some cases the parietal peritoneum is principally involved; in others, the peritoneum of the stomach, intestines, liver, and spleen. The thickening of the capsule of the liver is attended with a diminution in the size of that viscus.

### 4. *Chronic Peritonitis with the Production of Fibrin, Serum, and Pus.*

This form of peritonitis may follow acute peritonitis, may be due to lesions of the abdominal viscera, or may occur without known cause.

The abdominal cavity contains purulent serum, either free or shut in by adhesions. The surface of the peritoneum is coated with fibrin and connective-tissue adhesions. The coils of intestine, and all the neighboring surfaces of the peritoneum are matted together partly by fibrin, partly by permanent adhesions.

### 5. *Hemorrhagic Peritonitis.*

This occurs most frequently as a local inflammation. It involves the peritoneum behind and around the uterus in the female, and that covering the recto-vesical excavation in the male. The affected portion of the peritoneum is covered with layers of new membrane infiltrated with blood. The membranes are formed of connective tissue containing numerous blood-vessels and infiltrated with blood. The extravasations of blood may form tumors of considerable size.

General hemorrhagic peritonitis is described by Friedreich.<sup>1</sup> In two cases of ascites, which had been frequently tapped, he found the visceral and parietal peritoneum covered with a continuous membrane of a diffuse yellowish-brown color, mottled with extravasations of blood. The membrane was thickest over the anterior abdominal wall. It could be separated into a number of layers. These layers were composed of blood-vessels, masses of pigment, branching cells, and fibrillated basement substance. In many places the extravasated blood was coagulated in the shape of round, hard, black nodules. The entire new membrane could be readily stripped off from the peritoneum.

---

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 58, p. 35.

### 6. *Tubercular Peritonitis.*

This occurs as one of the lesions of acute general tuberculosis, with chronic pulmonary phthisis, with tubercular inflammation of the genito-urinary tracts, and as a local inflammation.

The gross appearance of the lesion varies.

When tubercular peritonitis occurs as one of the lesions of general tuberculosis, there are numerous small miliary tubercles, increase in the size and number of the endothelial and connective-tissue cells, and sometimes a little fibrin. Some of the miliary tubercles are composed of tubercle tissue, others of round and polygonal cells.

As a complication of tuberculosis of the genito-urinary tract, we find the peritoneum studded with miliary tubercles, coated with fibrin, and serum is also present in the peritoneal cavity.

As a complication of chronic phthisis, there are miliary tubercles in the peritoneum of the small intestine immediately over tubercular ulcers of the mucous membrane. There may also be thickening of the peritoneum and permanent adhesions.

Local tubercular peritonitis usually follows one of three types.

(1) Tubercular ascites.—The peritoneum is thickened, it is studded with masses of tubercle tissue in the form of miliary tubercles, or of large, flat masses. The omentum may be much thickened. There are but few adhesions, but there is a large amount of turbid serum. There may be at the same time tubercular pleurisy, or tubercles in the spleen, or in the lymphatic glands.

(2) Tubercular peritonitis with the production of a large amount of fibrin. The peritoneum is studded with miliary tubercles. It is coated with a thick layer of soft gelatinous fibrin, which mats together all the neighboring peritoneal surfaces, so that the abdominal cavity seems to be filled with a large boggy mass composed of all the viscera adherent to each other, and with the interstices between them filled with fibrin.

(3) Tubercular peritonitis with adhesions. The peritoneum is thickened and there are numerous connective-tissue adhesions. All the abdominal viscera are firmly matted together, and there may be collections of pus shut in by the adhesions. The adherent coils of intestine may ulcerate and open into each other. There are miliary tubercles, or large tubercular nodules or plates.

### TUMORS.

*Fibromata* are developed from the subperitoneal connective tissue, and project inwards into the peritoneal cavity. They are found beneath the parietal peritoneum and that covering the intestines. Such tumors may reach a very considerable size.

*Lipoma*.—Circumscribed tumors composed of fat-tissue are formed beneath the intestinal and parietal peritoneum. These tumors may be-

come changed into fibrous tissue, or calcified. Their pedicles may become atrophied so that they are left free in the peritoneal cavity.

When they grow beneath the parietal peritoneum, they may form fat herniæ. At the umbilicus, in the inguinal canal, along the vas deferens, in the crural ring, and in the foramen obturatorium fatty tumors may grow, project outwards under the skin like herniæ, and by drawing the peritoneum after them into a pouch, may open the way for a future intestinal hernia.

*Plexiform Angio-Sarcoma*.—Very large tumors, resembling in their gross appearance colloid cancer, have been described by Waldeyer.<sup>1</sup> They are formed by a new growth of blood-vessels with a production of gelatinous tissue from their adventitia.

*Carcinoma* of the peritoneum is either secondary and primary. The primary tumors assume the character of colloid cancer, or of common cancer.

The colloid form frequently involves the greater part of the peritoneum, and forms a large mass which distends the abdomen. The omentum is changed into a large gelatinous mass; the subjacent muscles, the lymphatic glands, and the liver are infiltrated with the new growth, and soft gelatinous masses project into the peritoneal cavity. The umbilicus is sometimes invaded, so as to project outward in the form of a semi-translucent tumor. The appearance of the new growth is that of a soft, jelly-like mass embedded in a fibrous stroma. The minute structure is that of a connective-tissue stroma, arranged so as to form cavities of different sizes. These cavities are filled with a homogeneous, gelatinous basement substance and with polygonal cells.

Common carcinoma appears in the form of numerous small nodules scattered everywhere in the inner layers of the peritoneum. These nodules are small, firm, and white, and are composed of a fibrous stroma inclosing cavities filled with polygonal cells. With the formation of these nodules, there are often associated a general thickening of the peritoneum, an accumulation of serum in the peritoneal cavity, and adhesions.

*Endotheliomata* of the peritoneum have been observed in cases with similar growths in the pleura (page 216).

*Sarcomata* appear in the form of solitary, slowly-growing tumors behind the peritoneum or between the folds of the mesentery.

These retro-peritoneal sarcomata are found both in children and adults. They usually originate behind the peritoneum covering the posterior part of the abdominal wall. At first they grow slowly inwards, pushing forward the peritoneum and abdominal viscera. After a time they assume a more infectious character, infiltrating the soft parts with

---

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. lv., p. 134.



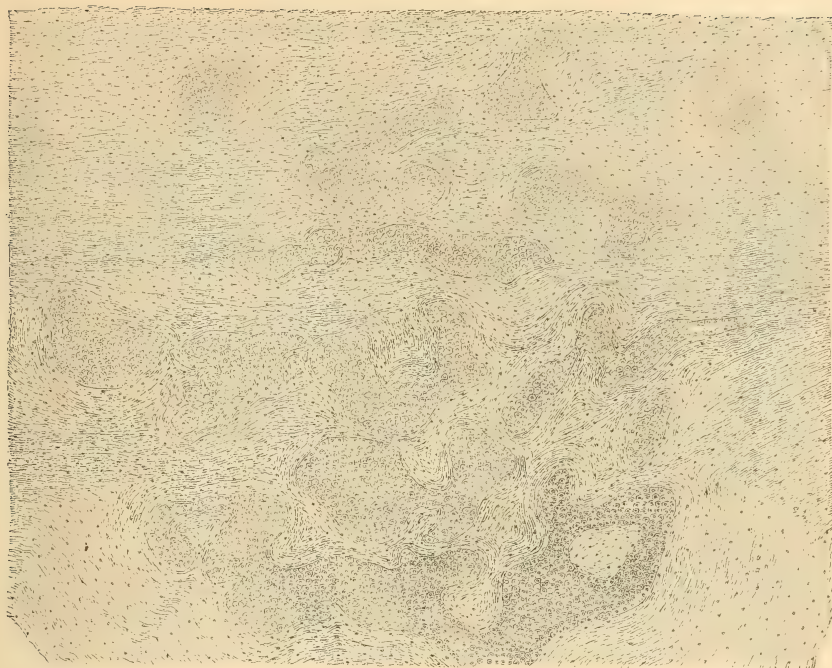


FIG. 114.—SECTION OF A RETRO-PERITONEAL SARCOMA,  $\times 170$  and reduced.

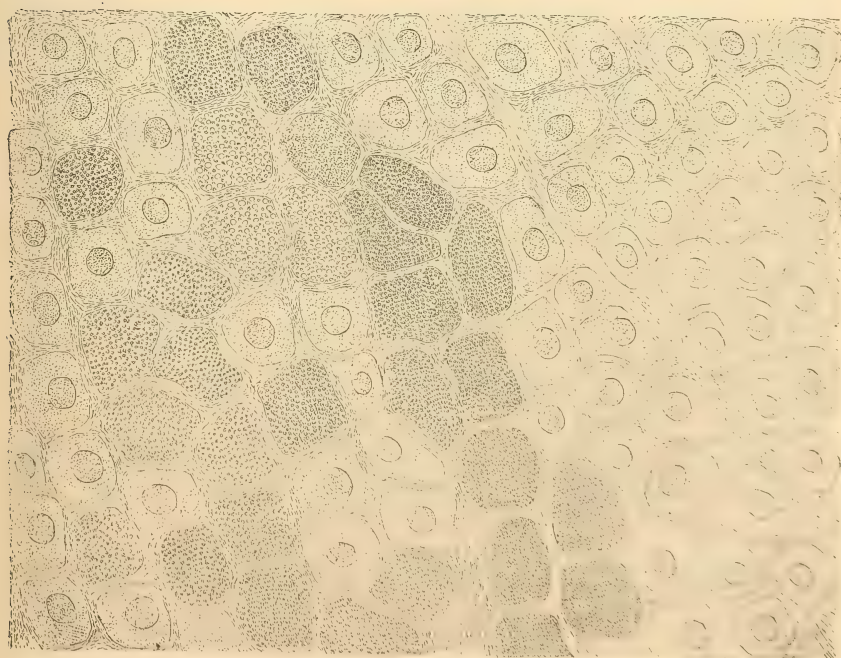


FIG. 115.—SECTION OF A RETRO-PERITONEAL SARCOMA,  $\times 550$  and reduced.

which they come in contact, and forming metastatic tumors in the liver and other viscera.

These tumors are composed of a stroma and cells. The cells are large, of cuboidal shape, and often undergo fatty degeneration, when they become swollen. The proportion between the cells and the stroma and the arrangement of the cells varies in the different cases and in different parts of the same tumor (Figs. 114 and 115).

The stroma may be abundant, and the cells scattered irregularly, each cell in a little cavity of its own. The stroma may be abundant, but the cells are collected in masses, as in a carcinoma.

The cells are abundant and close together, but each cell is surrounded by a thin partition of connective tissue. The blood-vessels are numerous, and the cells are arranged around them with some regularity.

From the above description, it will be seen that these tumors are of peculiar structure, and perhaps do not really belong to the sarcomata.

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococci* can be formed in their regular way at any part of the visceral and parietal peritoneum, or be free in the peritoneal cavity. These cysts may be small, or so large as nearly to fill the abdominal cavity.

*Cysticercus cellulosæ* may also be developed in the subperitoneal connective tissue.

## THE LIVER.

---

### MALFORMATIONS.

*Congenital malformations* of the liver are not common, and are of little practical importance. The organ may be entirely wanting; the lobes may be diminished or increased in number; its form may be altered, so that it is rounded, flattened, triangular, or quadrangular. The gall-bladder or gall-ducts may be wanting, the ductus choledochus may be double, both ducts emptying into the duodenum, or one emptying into the duodenum, the other into the stomach. The single ductus choledochus may also empty into the stomach. Owing to abnormal openings in the diaphragm or the abdominal parietes, the liver may suffer displacement upward or forward. In congenital transposition of the viscera, the liver is found on the left side, the stomach and spleen on the right side.

Small, isolated bodies, having the same structure as the liver, have been found in the suspensory ligament.

### ACQUIRED CHANGES IN SIZE AND POSITION.

As a result of tight lacing, very marked changes are sometimes produced in the shape of the liver. By the narrowing of the base of the thorax, the organ is compressed from side to side, and its convex surface is pressed against the ribs. In consequence of this, there are found ridges and furrows on its convex surface. In consequence also of the circular constriction, a part of the right, and usually of the left lobe also, becomes separated by a depression. Over this depressed and thinned portion of the liver, the capsule is thick and opaque. In extreme cases, the depressing and thinning reach such an extent that there is only a loose, ligamentous connection between the separated portion and the liver.

A series of depressions are sometimes found on the upper surface of the right lobe of the liver, running from front to back, apparently caused by folds of the organ.

Structural changes in the liver may induce changes in its size and



shape. It may be increased in size by tumors, hydatid cysts, abscesses, fatty and amyloid degeneration, by congestion, and sometimes by cirrhosis, etc.

It may be diminished in size by atrophy, by cirrhosis, by acute parenchymatous degeneration, etc.

Changes in the position of the liver are produced by alterations in its size, by pressure downward from the thoracic cavity, and upward from the abdomen, by the constriction of tight lacing, by tumors or circumscribed serous exudation between the liver and diaphragm, by curvature of the spine.

The liver is readily turned, by pressure from above or below, on its transverse axis. The transverse colon may be fixed above the liver so as to push it backward, downward, and to the right. There are a few cases recorded of dislocated and movable livers. These occurred in women who had borne children, and whose abdominal walls were lax. With ascites it is not uncommon to find the liver quite movable.

#### ANÆMIA AND HYPERÆMIA.

*Anæmia* of the liver may be general or partial. It may be due to general anæmia or to local disturbances of the circulation, such as swelling of the cells in parenchymatous or other degeneration, pressure of tumors, etc. The organ appears pale, often of slightly yellowish or brownish color. It may be harder than usual, and smaller.

*Hyperæmia* of the liver is either an active or a passive process. In health, the amount of blood in the liver varies at different times, being regularly increased during the process of digestion. When the digestive process is unduly influenced by the ingestion of spirits, spices, etc., the hyperæmia assumes abnormal proportions, and, when this is often repeated, it may lead to structural changes in the organ. Severe contusions over the region of the liver sometimes cause a hyperæmia, which may result in suppurative or in indurative inflammation. In hot climates and in malarious districts, active and chronic hyperæmia of the liver are frequent, and often cause structural lesions. In scurvy, also, the liver is sometimes congested. Cessation and suppression of the menses and of hemorrhoidal bleeding may cause hyperæmia of the liver. In all these varieties of active congestion, the liver is enlarged, of a deep-red color, and blood flows freely from its cut surface.

The passive congestions of the liver are produced by some obstruction to the current of blood in the hepatic veins. Valvular diseases of the heart, emphysema and fibrous induration of the lungs, large pleuritic effusions, intra-thoracic tumors, angular curvature of the spine, aortic aneurisms pressing on the vena cava, and constrictions of the vena cava and of the hepatic veins, may all produce a chronic hyperæmia of the liver. In all these cases, as the congestion affects principally the hepatic

veins, we find the centre of each acinus congested and red, while its periphery is lighter colored. This gives to the liver a mottled or nutmeg appearance (*Nutmeg liver*). The liver-cells in the centre of each acinus are frequently colored by little granules of red or black pigment, and the cells at the periphery become fatty, so that the nutmeg appearance is still more pronounced. A liver in this condition is usually of medium size, but may be smaller or larger than normal.

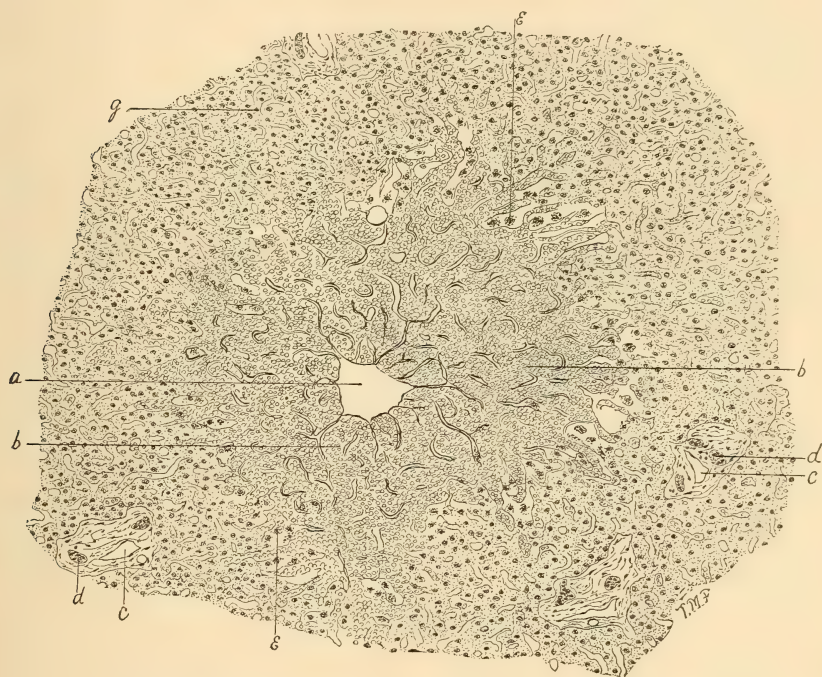


FIG. 116.—CHRONIC CONGESTION OF THE LIVER.  $\times 300$  and reduced.

Complete atrophy of the liver-cells at the centre of a lobule. *a*, Dilated vena centralis; *b*, dilated capillaries filled with blood; *c*, portal vein surrounded by connective tissue; *d*, gall-ducts; *e*, atrophied liver-cells; *g*, nearly normal liver-tissue.

When the congestion is long continued, the veins at the centre of each acinus may become permanently dilated, the hepatic cells in their meshes become atrophied (Fig. 116), so that the centre of each acinus consists only of dilated capillaries and new connective tissue; or, the dilatation and atrophy of the liver-cells may, in circumscribed portions of the organ, involve the entire acinus. In long-continued congestion, the liver is usually smaller than normal, and may be slightly roughened or uneven on the surface; but it is sometimes enlarged. The peculiar nutmeg appearance may be very well marked, or it may not be evident, the organ being of a dark-red color.

## WOUNDS, RUPTURE, AND HEMORRHAGE.

*Wounds* of the liver induce hemorrhage, which, if life continue, is followed by inflammation. Serious wounds of the liver are usually fatal, but recovery may occur even after the destruction of a considerable portion of the organ.

*Rupture* of the liver may be produced by severe direct contusions, or by falls. It may be produced in children by artificial delivery. The rupture usually involves both the capsule and a more or less considerable portion of the liver-tissue. It is commonly accompanied by large hemorrhage, and is usually fatal.

*Hemorrhage*.—Extravasations of blood in the substance of the liver, or more frequently beneath the capsule, are found in new-born children after tedious or forcible labors. In adults, hemorrhage, except as the result of injury, is uncommon. Extravasations of blood are sometimes seen in malignant malarial fevers, especially in tropical climates; in scurvy, purpura, and phosphorus poisoning; and bleeding may occur in and about soft tumors, abscesses and echinococcus cysts. It may also occur as a result of thrombosis of the hepatic vein.

## LESIONS OF THE HEPATIC ARTERY.

The hepatic artery is in rare cases the seat of aneurisms which may attain a large size. Such aneurisms may displace the liver-tissue, compress the bile-ducts so as to cause jaundice, and may rupture into the stomach or abdomen.

Owing to its abundant anastomoses, emboli of the branches of the hepatic artery usually induce no marked lesions, but they sometimes result in hemorrhagic infarctions.

## LESIONS OF THE PORTAL VEIN.

*Thrombosis, Embolism, and Inflammation*.—*Thrombosis* of the branches of the portal vein may be produced by weakening of the circulation from general debility—*marasmatic thrombi*; by pressure on the vessel from without, as in cirrhosis, tumors, gall-stones, dilatation of the bile-ducts, etc.; by injury; by the presence of foreign materials within the vessel; and as a result of inflammation of its wall, or of embolus. The thrombus may form in the vessels in the liver, or be propagated into them from without. It may partially or entirely occlude them. The clot may become organized as a result of endophlebitis and a permanent occlusion of the vessel ensue. If the clot be a simple, non-irritating one, leading to occlusion, the consequences are usually more marked in the abdominal viscera than in the liver itself. The branches of the hepatic artery form sufficient anastomoses to nourish the liver-tissue and prevent its necrosis even in complete occlusion of the portal vein, and if occlusion occur slowly, the organ may continue to perform its functions.



But this obliterative form of thrombosis is usually attended by ascites, enlargement of the spleen, dilatation of the abdominal veins, and sometimes by hemorrhage from the stomach and intestines.

In another class of cases, in addition to the local and more mechanical effects of a thrombus, there may be necrotic changes and suppurative inflammation in the walls of the vessels, or in the liver-tissue about them. The thrombi are apt to soften and break down, and the fragments may be disseminated through the smaller trunks of the portal vein. In this way, by the distribution through the smaller vessels of a disintegrated thrombus from a large trunk, or by the introduction into the branches of the portal vein of purulent or septic material from some of the abdominal viscera, or from wounds, multiple foci of purulent inflammation in the portal vein, and multiple abscesses involving the liver-tissue may be produced. In many cases, the presence of bacteria may be detected in the inflammatory foci.

These soft thrombi of the portal vein and the accompanying pylephlebitis and abscess may be caused in a variety of ways: 1. Ulceration of the intestines and stomach, abscesses of the spleen, suppurative inflammation of the mesentery and mesenteric glands, inflammation and ulceration of the bile-ducts from gall-stones, inflammation of the umbilical vein in infants, may all induce thrombi in their respective veins, which may be propagated to the portal vein, or may give rise to purulent or septic emboli. Two cases are recorded in which a fish-bone in the portal vein induced suppurative inflammation in that vessel. One of these cases, occurring in Bellevue Hospital, in 1867, was reported by Dr. Janeway. Male, 47; dying, after a four weeks' illness, in a typhoid condition, with lesions of sero-fibrinous peritonitis and chronic diffuse nephritis. There were numerous small abscesses in the right lobe of the liver, two in the left lobe. The left division of the portal vein contained a firm red and white clot, over an inch long; the right division was lined with a firm thrombus. The walls of the vein were thickened and contained purulent fluid. A fish-bone, two inches long, its centre covered by a thrombus, lay half in the mesenteric and half in the portal vein.

In certain cases of thrombosis and inflammation of the portal vein, the cause cannot be discovered.

In infants, inflammation of the umbilical vein may not only induce inflammation of the portal vein and abscesses in the liver, but multiple abscesses in various parts of the body, and acute peritonitis may be induced.

*Rupture of the Portal Vein*, with fatty degeneration of its walls, has occurred in a few instances.

*Chronic Endophlebitis*, with atheroma and calcification, may occur in the walls of the portal vein, giving rise to thrombosis.

*Dilatation of the Portal Vein*, either uniform or varicose, may occur

in various parts of the vessel or its branches. It may be caused by destruction of the liver-capillaries in cirrhosis, or by occlusion of the vein by thrombi, tumors, etc.

#### THE HEPATIC VEINS.

The hepatic veins present lesions similar to those of the portal vein and its branches, but they are much less frequent. They may be dilated by obstruction to the passage of venous blood into the heart. They may be the seat of acute and chronic inflammation, and soft thrombi and suppurative inflammation may be produced by abscesses in the liver.

#### ATROPHY OF THE LIVER.

Atrophy of the liver may affect the entire organ, or be confined to some part of it. General atrophy may occur in old age as a senile change, or may be induced by starvation or chronic exhausting diseases. The organ is diminished in size, is usually firm, and the acini appear smaller than usual. Microscopically, the change is seen to be due to a diminution in size of the liver-cells, and, hand in hand with this, there occurs frequently an accumulation of pigment granules within the atrophied cells. The cells may entirely disappear over circumscribed areas, leaving only shrivelled blood-vessels and connective tissue; or, in some cases, there may be an increase of connective tissue, in connection with the atrophy of the cells. When much pigment is formed in the cells, the lesion is often called *pigment atrophy*.

Essentially the same changes may occur in circumscribed portions of the liver, as the result of pressure from new connective tissue in cirrhosis, from tumors, hydatids, amyloid degeneration, gall-stones, etc. In atrophy from pressure, the liver-cells are apt to become very much flattened and squeezed together as they diminish in size.

#### DEGENERATIVE CHANGES.

*Parenchymatous Degeneration (Cloudy Swelling).*—In a variety of acute and infectious diseases—pneumonia, typhoid and typhus fever, scarlatina, variola, erysipelas, yellow fever, septicæmia, and in certain cases of acute anæmia and phosphorus poisoning—the liver is somewhat swollen and, on section, of a dull yellowish-gray color, looking somewhat as if it had been boiled. It contains less blood than usual, and the outlines of the lobules are indistinct. Microscopical examination shows the lesion to consist of a swelling of the liver-cells and an accumulation in them of moderately refractile, finer and coarser albuminous granules. These granules may disappear and the cells return to their normal condition, or, as is frequently the case, they may pass into a condition of fatty degeneration. Very frequently fatty and parenchymatous degenerations are associated together.

*Fatty Infiltration.*—In the normal human liver, there is usually a cer-

tain amount of fat in the liver-cells, and this amount varies considerably under different conditions.

The gross appearance of pathological fatty livers varies a good deal, depending upon the amount and distribution of fat and its association with other changes. If the lesion is uncomplicated and considerable, the organ is increased in size, the edges rounded, the consistence firm, the color yellowish, and the cut surface greasy. The lobules are enlarged and their outlines usually indistinct, and the blood content diminished. The liver is increased in weight. If the amount of infiltration be moderate, the outlines of the lobules may be more distinct than usual, and the centres appear unusually red. This is due to the fact that the accumulation of fat usually commences in the periphery of the lobules and progresses towards the centres, so that the centre appears darker by contrast with the fatty periphery. The lesion may be uniform throughout the organ, or it may occur in patches. In the latter case the liver has a mottled appearance, irregular yellowish patches alternating with the brownish-red unaffected portions.

Fatty infiltration is often associated with chronic congestion (*nutmeg*

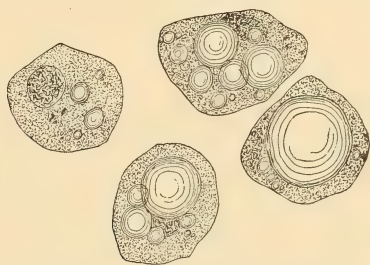


Fig. 117.—FATTY INFILTRATION OF LIVER-CELLS,  $\times 700$ .

*liver*), with cirrhosis and amyloid degeneration; the picture may then present considerable complexity. Fatty livers may be stained brown or greenish with bile pigment.

Microscopically the liver-cells are seen to contain larger and smaller droplets of fat (Fig. 117), and frequently large drops of fat occupy nearly the entire volume of the cell, so that the protoplasm may be visible only as a narrow nucleated crescent at one side; or it may disappear altogether. The microscopical appearances of course vary, depending upon the degree of infiltration and the association with other lesions.

Fatty infiltration of the liver may occur as a result of excessive ingestion of oleaginous food, in chronic alcohol, phosphorus, and arsenic poisoning; in certain exhausting diseases accompanied by malnutrition, as in pulmonary phthisis, chronic dysentery, etc., and under a variety of condition which we do not understand.

*Fatty Degeneration.*—In this condition, which in many cases cannot



be morphologically distinguished from fatty infiltration, the fat is believed to be formed by a transformation of the protoplasm of the liver-cells. The fat-droplets are, for the most part, very small and abundant, though this is not constant. Fatty degeneration of the liver-cells frequently follows, and is associated with cloudy swelling, under the varying conditions in which this occurs, or it may appear in profound anæmia.

*Amyloid Degeneration (Waxy Liver).*—In the liver, amyloid degeneration may be general or local; so extensive as to give the organ very characteristic appearances, or so slight as to be unrecognizable without the aid of the microscope. It may be associated with other lesions. When the change is extensive and general, the liver is enlarged sometimes to more than twice its normal size; the edges are thickened and rounded; the surface smooth; the tissue tough, firm, inelastic, more or less translucent, and of a brownish-yellow color. The lobular structure may be more or less indistinct, or it may become very evident by an associated fatty degeneration of the peripheral or central cells of the lobules. The translucency and peculiar appearance of the tissue may be best seen by slicing off a thin section, and holding it up to the light. When the lesion is less considerable, the liver may be of the usual size,



Fig. 118.—AMYLOID DEGENERATION OF LIVER CAPILLARIES.  $\times$  about 100.

and may feel harder than normal, and here and there a translucent mottling may be evident, or the degeneration may be apparent only on the addition of staining agents (see p. 62). When, as is frequently the case, it is associated with cirrhosis, the liver may be small and nodular, and the appearance of the cut surface will vary greatly, depending upon the character of the cirrhotic change and the presence or absence of fat.

This degeneration usually commences in the walls of the intralobular blood-vessels, causing them to become thickened and translucent. The liver-cells are squeezed by the thickening of the vessels and may become

atrophied, sometimes completely so (Fig. 118). It is stated by some observers that the liver-cells may also become waxy, but we have been unable to find them unmistakably thus changed. The liver-cells not infrequently undergo fatty metamorphosis. Amyloid degeneration may also involve the interlobular vessels, and in advanced stages larger and smaller areas of liver-tissue may be nearly or completely converted into the dense refractile substance, which in its arrangement but obscurely represents the grouping and structure of the affected lobules. Not infrequently atrophic or fatty liver-cells are seen scattered singly or in clusters through the amyloid masses. In the affected regions the blood content of the liver is considerably diminished, or it may be nearly entirely absent.

Amyloid degeneration of the liver is usually associated with a similar lesion of other organs, such as spleen, kidneys, intestines, etc., although it may occur in this organ alone. It usually occurs in cachectic conditions, as in chronic phthisis, in chronic suppurations especially of the bones, in syphilis, and sometimes in malarial poisoning. It occasionally occurs unassociated with any of these conditions.

#### PIGMENTATION OF THE LIVER.

As a result of severe malarial poisoning, a variable amount of brown, black, or reddish pigment is often found in the blood. This is usually mostly taken up by the leucocytes and deposited in various parts of the body, chiefly in the liver, spleen, and marrow of the bones. In the liver it is usually found inclosed in variously shaped cells, especially in the blood-vessels, but sometimes in the tissue between them. The liver-cells frequently contain bile-pigment, but usually are free from the melanotic pigment characteristic of this condition. As the result of this accumulation of pigment, the liver may have a dark reddish-brown, an olive-brown or black color (sometimes called *bronze liver*). This condition may be associated with various other lesions of the liver, depending upon the nature and extent of which the organ will present a great variety of appearances. Thus there may be fatty or waxy degeneration; cirrhosis, chronic congestion, etc.

Pigment may be found in the connective tissue along the portal vessels similar in character to that which occurs in the lungs from the inhalation of coal-dust. This inhaled pigment, according to the researches of Weigert, doubtless finds access to the blood (see p. 57), and is deposited in the liver as it is in the spleen and hepatic lymph-glands.

Pigmentation of the liver-cells, which is to a certain extent normal, may be greatly increased as a result of atrophy, localized hemorrhage, and of destructive jaundice.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The distribution and amount of the pigment may be well seen by staining thin sections with eosin and mounting in eosin glycerin or balsam.

## ACUTE YELLOW ATROPHY OF THE LIVER.

This disease is characterized anatomically by a rapid diminution in the size of the liver as the result of a granular and fatty degeneration and disintegration of the liver-cells. The liver, sometimes within a few days, may be reduced to one-half its normal size. On opening the abdominal cavity, the organ may be found lying concealed by the diaphragm, close against the vertebral column. The amount of diminution and the general appearance of the affected organ depend to a considerable extent upon its previous condition, *i. e.*, whether or not it was the seat of other lesions, as well as upon the degree of degenerative change. In general, if the lesion is well marked, the liver is small, flabby—sometimes almost fluctuating—and the capsule wrinkled. On section, the cut surface may show but little trace of lobular structure, but presents an irregular mottling with gray, ochre-yellow, or red; sometimes one, sometimes another color preponderating.

Microscopical examination shows varying degrees of degeneration and destruction of the liver-cells. Most evidently in those parts which have a grayish appearance, the outlines of the cells are preserved and the protoplasm is filled with larger and smaller granules. In the yellow portions the outlines of the liver-cells may be preserved, and they may contain varying quantities of larger and smaller fat-droplets and granules of yellow pigment. Or the cells may be completely disintegrated, and in their place irregular collections of fat-droplets, pigment-granules, red and yellow crystals, and detritus; only the connective tissue and blood-vessels of the original liver-tissue remaining. The red areas may show nearly complete absence of liver-cells and cell-detritus, and sometimes irregular rows of cells which are variously interpreted as being new-formed gall-ducts or proliferated liver-cells. In these areas it appears to be, in part at least, the blood contained in the vessels which imparts the red color. Sometimes the interstitial tissue is infiltrated with small spheroidal cells resembling leucocytes. Crystals of leucin and tyrosin are sometimes found intermingled with the cell-detritus. In some cases the liver is not diminished in size.

These lesions of the liver are frequently associated with enlargement of the spleen and parenchymatous degeneration of the kidney and of the heart-muscle. Multiple hemorrhages may occur in the gastro-intestinal canal, kidneys, bladder, and lungs. There is usually marked jaundice. Rod-shaped bacteria and micrococci have been found in the liver, but their significance is doubtful; we have not been able to find them in the cases which we have examined. The cause of the disease is unknown, and it is doubtful whether it is a disease primarily of the liver, or a general disease with local lesions.



## INFLAMMATION OF THE LIVER.

*Acute Hepatitis (Purulent Hepatitis, Abscess of the Liver).*—Purulent inflammation of the liver may be the result of injury: it may be secondary to inflammation of the gall-ducts, or the branches of the portal vein. It may occur as the result of the presence of tumors, parasites, or from propagation of an inflammatory process from without, as in ulcer of the stomach with adhesions to the liver and secondary involvement of the latter. It may be due to the introduction into the organ, through the blood-vessels, of septic material, bacteria, etc., or it may be due to unknown causes. Purulent inflammation in the liver almost always results in abscess.

Large abscesses of the liver may be traumatic, but are, for the most part, due to unknown causes. They are not infrequently associated with dysentery, and may then be due to the conveyance through the veins of septic material from the intestinal ulcers. They occur most frequently in tropical climates, but are not very uncommon in the temperate zones. They are usually single, but there may be several of them. They are sometimes so large as to occupy a large part of a lobe. They are most frequent in the right lobe, but may occur in any part of the organ. They tend to enlarge, and as they do so, they approach the surface of the liver. Here the contents of the abscess may be discharged into the peritoneal cavity. More frequently, however, as they approach the surface, a localized adhesive peritonitis ensues, so that the liver becomes bound to adjacent parts, and thus the abscess may open into the pleural cavity, or, owing to a secondary pleurisy with adhesions, into the lung-tissue. They may open into the pericardium. They may open externally through the abdominal wall; into the stomach, duodenum, colon, or pelvis of the right kidney; into the hepatic veins, portal vein, vena cava, or gall-bladder or gall-ducts.

The early stages in the formation of large abscesses of the liver are but little known. It is probable, however, that in many cases they are the result of the confluence of smaller abscesses. Their contents, usually bad smelling, may be thick and yellow, like ordinary pus; but more commonly it is thin, reddish-brown, or greenish in color, from admixture with the pus of blood, gall-pigment, and broken-down liver tissue. Microscopical examination shows the contents to consist of fluid with pus-cells, more or less degenerated blood, degenerated liver-cells, fragments of blood-vessels, and pigment granules and crystals. The walls of the abscess are usually ragged, shreds of necrotic liver-tissue hanging from the sides. Microscopical examination of the liver-tissue near the abscess shows infiltration with pus, flattening of the liver-cells from pressure, cloudy swelling, and necrosis of those lying along the cavity.

After the discharge of the contents of the abscess, or without this if it

be not very large, granulation tissue may form in the wall of the cavity, and a fibrous capsule be produced, inclosing the contents, which become thickened and often calcareous, and in this condition may remain for a long time. Or, the connective-tissue walls may approach one another and join, forming a fibrous cicatrix at the seat of the abscess.

Abscesses of the liver, accompanying inflammation of the portal vein and gall-ducts, are considered elsewhere in this section.

Small *multiple metastatic abscesses* are not infrequent in pyæmia, and are called *pyæmic abscesses*. In these abscesses we can readily study the various stages of formation. Suppurative processes in any part of the body—in the head, upper and lower extremities, etc.—may favor the production of the noxious materials, which in many cases are associated with bacteria, or are bacteria themselves. These, entering the circulation, may pass the heart and pulmonary capillaries, with or without inducing lesions in the lungs, and lodging in the vessels of the liver, induce circumscribed necrosis of the liver-tissue and suppurative inflammation. Under these conditions, we may find on a section of the liver larger and smaller, yellowish or grayish spots, the larger of which may be soft and present the usual characters of abscesses. The smaller, which may not be larger than a pin's head, may present the usual consistence of liver-tissue with the lobular structure still evident; others may be softer, more yellow, and surrounded by a zone of hyperæmic liver-tissue. Microscopical examination of the earlier stages often shows the blood-vessels filled with micrococci, scattered, and in zooglœa colonies. Around these, the liver-cells are found in various stages of necrosis; in many the nuclei do not stain, and the bodies are very granular; or, the entire cell is broken down into a mass of detritus. About these necrotic islets of liver-cells, pus-cells collect and often form a zone of dense infiltration. Thus, by the increase of pus-cells and the necrosis of liver-tissue, small abscesses are formed, whose contents are intermingled with greater or less quantities of bacteria which seem to increase in number as the process goes on. By the confluence of small abscesses, larger ones may be formed. Death usually ensues, however, before the abscesses attain a very large size.

*Chronic Interstitial Hepatitis (Cirrhosis).*—The primary result of chronic interstitial hepatitis is the formation of new connective tissue in the liver. The character, amount, and distribution of the new tissue vary greatly in different cases. Secondly there are usually marked changes in the liver-cells and in the blood-vessels and gall-ducts. The new tissue is most commonly formed and most abundant, in the periphery of the lobules along the so-called capsule of Glisson, but it may extend into the lobules between the liver-cells. It may surround single lobules, or more frequently larger and smaller groups of lobules (Fig. 119). It may occur in broad or narrow irregular streaks or bands. It is frequently more abundant in one part of the liver than in another. The

new-formed tissue tends to contract, and thus compromise by pressure the inclosed islets of liver-tissue, causing them to project, in larger and smaller nodules, from the surface of the organ. The liver-cells may be flattened or atrophied from pressure; or from interference with the portal circulation they may atrophy or become fatty; or they may become

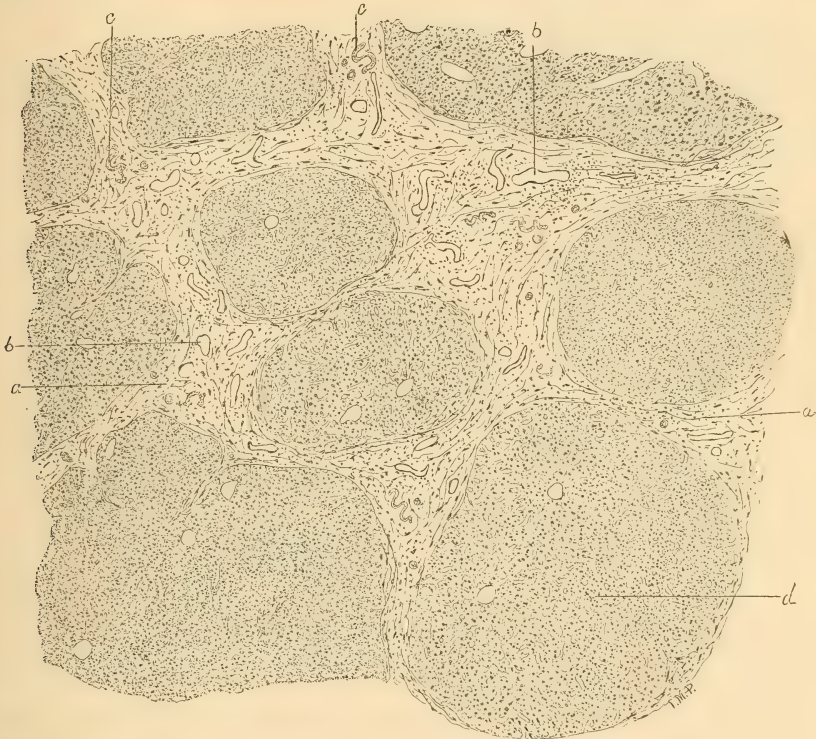


Fig. 119.—CHRONIC INTERSTITIAL HEPATITIS,  $\times$  about 20.

*a*, New-formed connective tissue; *b*, dilated blood-vessels in the new tissue; *c*, gall-ducts; *d*, parenchyma of liver.

colored with bile pigment. The varied appearances which cirrhotic livers present to the naked eye depend largely upon the amount and distribution of the new connective tissue, and upon the secondary changes in the liver-cells.

In some cases the liver is enlarged, sometimes so much so as to weigh nine or ten pounds, the surface smooth, or slightly roughened; in other cases it may be finely or coarsely nodular on the surface. It may be smaller than normal, sometimes very small indeed, so as to weigh only one or two pounds. The surface may then be very rough and uneven from the projection of larger and smaller nodules of liver-tissue, or it may be quite smooth; or the organ may be greatly distorted by the contraction of large bands or masses of new connective tissue. In sections



through cirrhotic livers, the new tissue may not be visible to the naked eye, or it may appear as grayish irregular streaks, or bands, or patches, often sharply outlined against the dark-red, or brown, or yellow, or greenish-yellow parenchyma.

On microscopical examination, the new connective tissue (Fig. 120) is

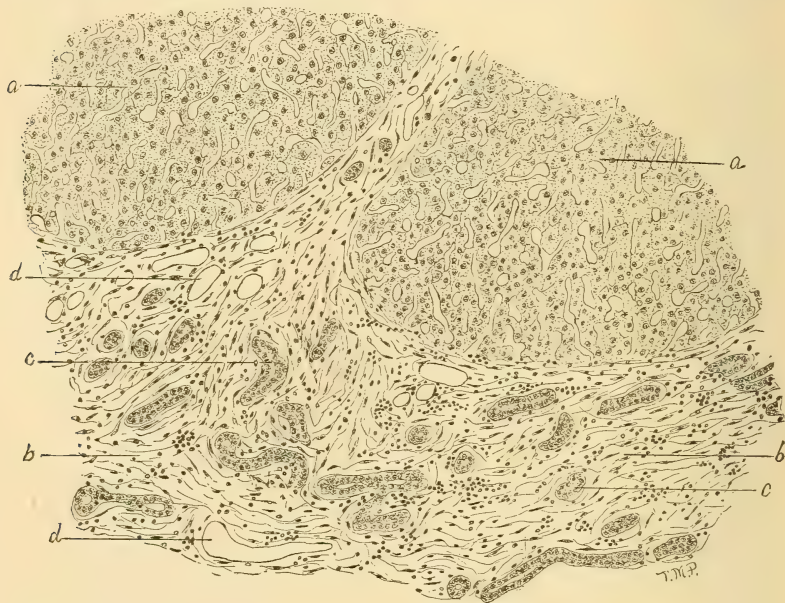


Fig. 120.—CHRONIC INTERSTITIAL HEPATITIS.

The same specimen as Fig. 119, but more highly magnified. *a*, Portions of liver-lobules; *b*, new-formed connective tissue; *c*, gall-ducts, apparently newly formed; *d*, blood-vessels in the new tissue.

found in some cases loose in texture, and containing many variously-shaped cells; or it may be dense and contain comparatively few cells; it is usually quite vascular. Not infrequently, when occurring largely between the lobules, it will be found to have encroached more or less upon their peripheral portions. Very frequently there are found in the new connective tissue cylindrical ducts lined with cuboidal cells, and resembling gall-ducts (Fig. 120 *c*); or irregular rows of more or less cuboidal or polyhedral cells, which look somewhat like the lining-cells of the medium-sized gall-ducts, or like altered liver-cells. The branches of the hepatic and portal veins, particularly the latter, often become obliterated by pressure from the new connective tissue, or from chronic thickening of their walls, so as to seriously interfere with the function and nutrition of the liver-cells. The bile-ducts also may become obliterated, or there may be catarrhal inflammation, especially of the larger trunks. The branches of the hepatic artery are much less liable to alterations than the other vessels. The capsule of the liver is usually thickened either uniformly

or in irregular patches; or its surface may be roughened by larger and smaller papillary projections. The liver is frequently bound to the diaphragm or other adjacent organs by connective-tissue adhesions. Amyloid and fatty degeneration may be associated with cirrhosis. Cirrhotic livers frequently show an unusual number of leucocytes in the blood-vessels.

The obstruction to the portal circulation induced by cirrhosis usually gives rise to a number of secondary lesions, since collateral circulation is rarely established in sufficient degree to afford much relief. The hemorrhoidal and vesical veins may be greatly enlarged, and also veins of communication between Glisson's capsule and the diaphragmatic veins.

In rare cases, a very peculiar dilatation of the cutaneous veins about the umbilicus is observed. The enlarged veins form a circular network around the umbilicus, or a pyramidal tumor alongside of it, or all the veins of the abdominal wall, from the epigastrium to the inguinal region, are dilated. This condition is said to be produced by the congenital non-closure and subsequent dilatation of the umbilical vein and its anastomoses with the internal mammary, epigastric, and cutaneous veins. According to Sappey, it is not the umbilical vein which is dilated, but a vein which accompanies the ligamentum teres.

There is very frequently also a dilatation of the veins of the abdominal wall, which has a different cause. It is produced by the pressure of the fluid of ascites on the vena cava, and is found with ascites from any cause and with abdominal tumors.

Ascites is the most common secondary lesion of cirrhosis. It usually begins at an early stage of the disease, and increases constantly. It usually precedes œdema of the feet, but both may appear at the same time. This fluid is of a clear yellow or brown, green or red; it is sometimes mixed with shreds of fibrin, and more rarely with blood. The peritoneum remains normal, or becomes opaque and thick, or there may be adhesions between the viscera.

The spleen is very frequently enlarged, and the enlargement may be very considerable. When it is not increased in size, this seems usually due to previous atrophy of the organ, or to fibrous thickening of its capsule, or to hemorrhages from the stomach and bowels, occurring just before death.

The stomach and intestines are often secondarily affected by the obstruction to the portal circulation. Profuse hemorrhage from the stomach and intestines may occur, and sometimes cause sudden death. The mucous membrane is then found pale, or congested, or with hemorrhagic erosions. Sometimes the blood is infiltrated in the coats of the stomach and intestines. The mucous membrane of the stomach, and of the entire length of the intestines, is frequently the seat of chronic catar-

rhial inflammation, and is sometimes uniformly and intensely congested, and coated with mucus. In other cases both the mucous and muscular coats are pale, but very markedly thickened.

Cirrhosis of the liver is not infrequently accompanied by chronic diffuse nephritis.

The causes of cirrhosis are imperfectly understood. It is a disease of adult life, but exceptionally occurs in children. In adults, it seems in many cases to be directly dependent upon the continued ingestion of large quantities of strong alcoholic liquors. It very rarely occurs as a result of beer-drinking. There are many cases of cirrhosis for which no cause can be discovered.

*Syphilitic Hepatitis.*—Chronic interstitial inflammation of the liver very frequently results from syphilitic infection, either congenitally, or in the later stages of the acquired form. It may occur in a diffuse manner, new connective tissue being formed either between the lobules,

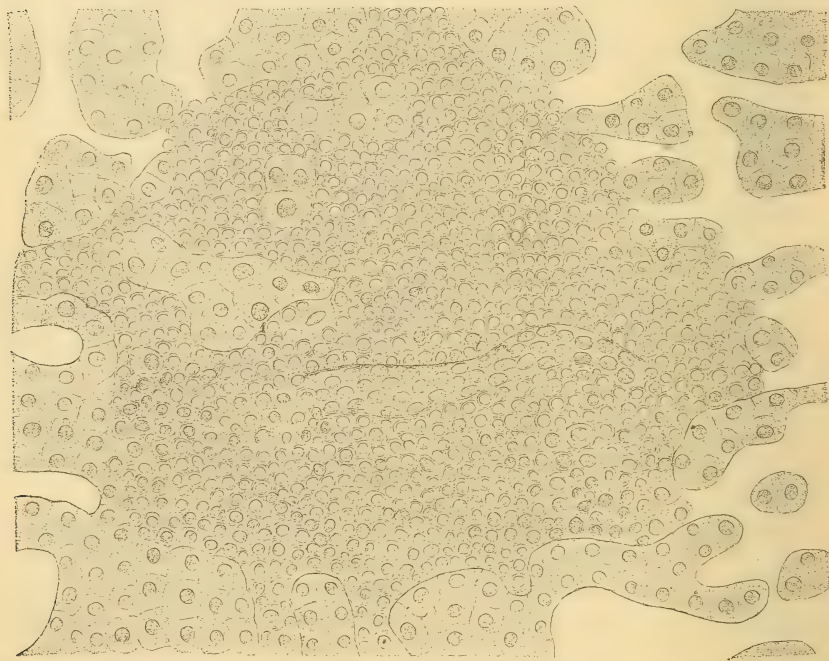


FIG. 121.—A VERY SMALL SYPHILITIC TUMOR,  $\times 850$  and reduced.

Formed of small polygonal cells developed around the blood-vessels, from a child with congenital syphilis.

or within them, between the rows of liver-cells. The new tissue may be rich in cells, or dense and firm. This form is frequently seen in children, and cannot be distinguished, either macroscopically or microscopically, from similar forms of interstitial hepatitis from other causes.



In other cases, particularly in children, there may be numerous small gummata scattered through the liver, together with more or less new connective-tissue (Fig. 121). In adults, gummata are usually larger, varying in size from that of a pea to a hen's egg, and may be surrounded by larger

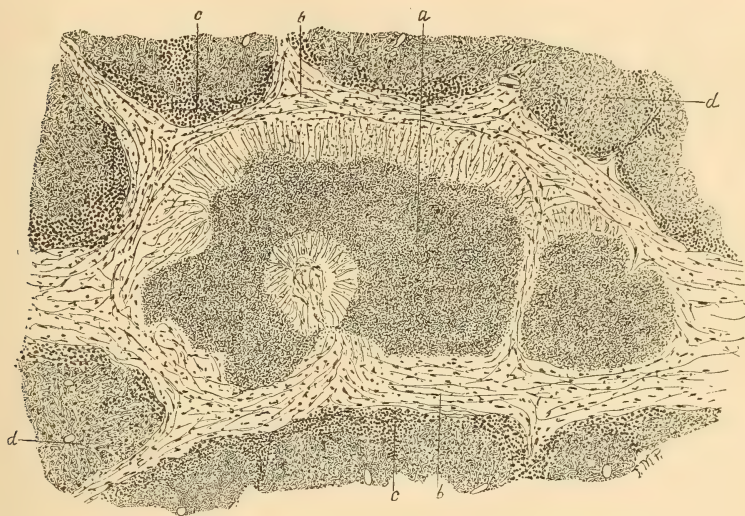


FIG. 122.—GUMMA OF LIVER,  $\times$  about 10.

*a*, Cheesy centre ; *b*, fibrous periphery ; *c*, small-celled peripheral infiltration ; *d*, portions of liver-lobules.

and smaller irregular zones of ordinary connective tissue (Fig. 122). In still other cases in adults, we find larger and smaller dense irregular bands or masses of connective tissue running through the liver, drawing in the capsule, and often causing great deformity of the organ. These bands and masses of new tissue may or may not inclose gummata, either large or small. These deforming cicatrices, either with or without gummata, are very characteristic of syphilitic inflammation of the liver.

This, like the simple interstitial inflammation of the liver, may be associated with fatty and waxy degeneration, and with atrophy of the parenchyma from pressure.

*Tubercular Hepatitis.*—This lesion, which is usually secondary to tubercular inflammation in some other part of the body, or a part of acute general miliary tuberculosis, is most frequently characterized by the formation of larger and smaller miliary tubercles which may be either within or between the liver-lobules, or in the walls of the bile-ducts. Many of the tubercles are too small to be seen with the naked eye; others may be just visible as grayish points; still others may be from one to three mm. in diameter, with distinct yellowish-white centres. Microscopical examination shows considerable variation in the structure of the tubercles in different cases, as well as in the same liver. Some of

them, usually the smaller ones, consist simply of more or less circumscribed collections of small spheroidal cells, which are not morphologically distinguishable, so far as the form and arrangement of the cells are concerned, from simple inflammatory foci, or from the diffuse masses of lymphatic tissue which occur normally in the liver.

In other forms we find a well-marked reticulum with larger and smaller spheroidal and polyhedral cells, with or without giant-cells. In still other forms, there is more or less extensive cheesy degeneration. The larger forms are conglomerate, being composed of several tubercle granula joined together to form a single nodular mass. The liver-cells at the seat of the tubercle are destroyed, and the interstitial tissue and blood-vessels either destroyed or merged into the tubercle-tissue. In the periphery of the tubercles the liver-cells may be in a condition of coagulation necrosis and the tissue round about may be infiltrated with small spheroidal cells. There is in some cases a new formation of gall-ducts or of structures which resemble these, and which in transverse sections look considerably like giant-cells. Tubercle bacilli, frequently in small numbers, but often in great abundance, may be found within the tubercles.

Tuberculosis of the liver may be associated with cirrhosis, waxy and fatty degeneration.

Much more rarely than the above form, there are found in the liver more or less numerous scattered tubercular masses from the size of a pea to that of a walnut or larger, with cheesy centres and usually a new growth of connective tissue in the periphery. These so-called *solitary tubercles* of the liver may be softened at the centres. Tubercular inflammation of the gall-ducts may give rise to numerous scattered cheesy nodules, as large as a pea or larger, which may be softened at the centre and stained yellow with bile. This lesion is rare and seems to be more frequent in children than in adults.

*Perihepatitis.*—*Acute inflammation* of the serous covering of the liver with the formation of fibrin may occur as a part of acute general or localized peritonitis, and over the surface of abscesses, tumors, hydatids, etc., of the organ, when these lie near or approach the surface; or it may be secondary to acute pleurisy.

*Chronic perihepatitis*, resulting in the thickening of and formation of new connective tissue in and beneath the capsule of the liver, may be secondary to an acute inflammation of the capsule, or it may be chronic from the beginning and associated with chronic pleurisy, chronic peritonitis, and cirrhosis. In this way, more or less extensive adhesions of the liver to adjacent structures may be formed; or by contraction of the new-formed connective tissue, considerable deformity of the liver may be produced. The capsule is sometimes uniformly thickened, sometimes the new tissue occurs in more or less sharply circumscribed patches. The surface is sometimes roughened from little irregular projecting masses of con-

nective tissue. Microscopically the new-formed tissue is usually dense and firm, but it may be loose in texture and contain many cells. Not infrequently bands or masses of connective tissue run inwards from the thickened capsule between the superficial lobules, causing localized atrophy of the parenchyma.

*Hyperplasia of Lymphatic Tissue in the Liver.*—In some forms of leukæmia and pseudo-leukæmia, the liver is not infrequently enlarged and soft and besprinkled with small white spots, or streaked with narrow whitish irregular bands, or of a diffuse grayish color. Microscopical examination shows this change to be due to an accumulation of cells resembling leucocytes, either along the portal vein, or diffusely through the liver-tissue, or in small circumscribed masses. The amount of accumulation of these small cells varies much, but is sometimes so great as to seriously compromise the liver-cells. The origin of these new cells is not yet definitely known. They may be, and doubtless in part are, brought to the organ through the portal vein, but they may, in part at least, be formed in the liver itself.

In typhoid fever, small-pox, scarlatina, diphtheria, and measles, small circumscribed masses of cells resembling leucocytes are sometimes found in the liver, lying in the meshes of a delicate reticular tissue. These are sometimes called *miliary lymphomata*, but it should be remembered (see p. 291) that small masses of lymphatic tissue normally occur in the liver, and that, as under the above conditions, an hyperplasia of the lymph-glands and spleen is wont to occur; these so-called lymphomata are very probably normal structures, which have become altered and more prominent under the conditions of disease.

#### TUMORS OF THE LIVER.

Tumors of the liver may be primary or secondary; the latter are most common.

*Cavernous Angiomata.*—These tumors, usually small, from five to fifteen mm. in diameter, are most common in elderly persons and are of no practical significance. They may be situated at the surface or embedded in the organ, and are of a dark-red color; sometimes sharply circumscribed by a connective-tissue capsule, sometimes merging imperceptibly into the adjacent liver-tissue. Microscopically they consist of a congeries of irregular cavities (Fig. 44, p. 139) filled with blood and frequently communicating freely with one another. The walls of the cavities consist of connective tissue, often containing small blood-vessels, and are sometimes thick, sometimes thin. They are believed to be formed by dilatation of the liver capillaries with subsequent thickening of their walls and atrophy of the adjacent liver-cells.

Small *fibromata* and *lipomata* have been described, as also *fibroneuromata* of the sympathetic.



*Adenomata* of the liver are of not infrequent occurrence. They are sometimes small and circumscribed, sometimes very large and multiple. They present two tolerably distinct types of structure. In one form the tissue presents essentially the same structure as normal liver-tissue, except that the arrangement of the cells is less uniform and the cells are apt to be larger. They look like little islets of liver-tissue, sometimes encapsulated and sometimes not, lying in the liver-parenchyma. In the other form, the cells are less like liver-cells, are frequently cylindrical, and are arranged in the form of irregular masses of tubular structures with more or less well-defined lumina. These tumors are sometimes large and multiple, and, in one case described by Greenfield, there were metastatic tumors in the lungs. These tubular adenomata are in some cases so closely similar to some of the carcinomata as to be scarcely distinguishable from them and seem indeed to merge into them.

*Carcinomata* are the most common and important of the liver tumors, and may be primary or secondary. Primary carcinomata of the liver are probably developed from the epithelium of the gall-ducts, and in some cases are arranged along the larger trunks. Their cells are usually polyhedral, sometimes cylindrical, and may be arranged irregularly in alveoli, or form more or less well-defined tubular structures.

Secondary carcinomata of the liver, which are by far the most common, are most frequently due to the dissemination in the organ of tumor-cells from carcinomata of the stomach, intestines, pancreas, or gall-bladder. But they may be the result of metastases from the mamma, œsophagus, uterus, and various other parts of the body. In secondary carcinomata the cells resemble more or less closely the type of those forming the primary tumor.

The form in which the carcinomatous nodules in the liver present themselves is subject to considerable variation. Sometimes they are single, but more often multiple; they may be very large, or so small as to be scarcely visible to the naked eye; very frequently numerous small nodules are grouped in the periphery of a larger cancerous mass. They are sometimes deeply embedded in the liver, sometimes they project from the surface. The liver is frequently enlarged, sometimes enormously so. The nodules are usually whitish or yellowish, or pink in color, but they are often the seat of hemorrhages, and may become softened at the centre, forming cysts filled with degenerated tumor-tissue, which is often mixed with blood. The nodules are sometimes hard, sometimes soft, and almost diffuent. Fatty degeneration is frequent, and may be evident to the naked eye in the form of yellowish streaks or patches on the cut surfaces. Owing to the degeneration and partial absorption of the central portions of the tumors, the nodules on the surface frequently present a shallow depression at the centre. The tumors may be sharply outlined against the adjacent liver-tissue, or may

merge imperceptibly into it. They may be so large or numerous as to occupy the greater part of the enlarged organ. The liver-tissue in their vicinity shows flattening and atrophy of the liver-cells from pressure, and there may be infiltration with small spheroidal cells. The tumors may press upon the portal vein or its branches, or upon the gall-ducts, and thus seriously interfere with the functions of the organ. Sometimes, however, the tumors are very large and abundant without causing any apparent detriment to the liver functions. They are not infrequently stained with bile. *Melanotic carcinomata* sometimes occur in the liver, most frequently as secondary tumors.

In some cases, instead of forming separate distinct nodules, the cancerous growth develops in the form of a diffuse infiltration of the organ, so that the often greatly enlarged liver is irregularly mottled with white and reddish-brown masses, and may then somewhat resemble some forms of chronic interstitial hepatitis.

*Sarcomata*.—Spindle-celled, melanotic, and telangiectatic sarcomata may occur in the liver as secondary tumors. Secondary *myxomata* and *chondromata* have also been described, but they are very rare.

*Cavernous lymphangiomata* have been described in a few cases. *Cysts*, usually of small size, may occur by dilatation of the bile-ducts. They may be multiple and contain serum, mucus, and degenerated epithelium. Single cysts, apparently unconnected with the gall-ducts, are occasionally found in the connective tissue of the liver. They may be lined with ciliated epithelium.

The liver is sometimes the seat of larger and smaller *multiple cysts*, varying from microscopical size up to that of a pea, and sometimes larger. They do not appear to communicate with the gall-ducts. They are sometimes associated with multiple cysts of the kidney. Their origin and nature is not understood.<sup>1</sup>

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus*.—This parasite is the most common and important of those which occur in the human liver. It forms the so-called *hydatids* of the liver. These represent one of the developmental stages of the small tape-worm of the dog *tenia echinococcus* (see p. 68). The cysts in the liver may be very small and multiple, but they may be as large as a man's head or larger. The liver may be greatly increased in size, and the tissue about the cysts atrophied. The liver itself furnishes a connective-tissue capsule, within which is the translucent lamellated membrane furnished by the parasite. On the inside of this we may find a layer of cells, granular matter, and a vascular and muscular system belonging to the parasite. Projecting from this inner capsule are the brood-capsules

<sup>1</sup> Consul Pye-Smith: "Cystic disease of liver and both kidneys." Trans. London Path. Soc., Vol. xxxii., p. 112, 1881.

and heads or scolices of the immature tape-worm. The scolices may become detached from the wall and lie free in the cavity which is filled with a transparent or turbid fluid. Not infrequently the cysts are sterile, and are then simply filled with clear or turbid fluid; or the embryos may have died and disintegrated, and their detritus, including the hooklets, may be intermingled with the fluid contents of the cysts. The contents of the cysts may be mixed with fat, cholestearin crystals, pus, bile, or blood; or form a grumous mass in which we may or may not be able to find the hooklets of the scolices, or fragments of the lamellated wall. The connective tissue of the walls of the cysts may be greatly thickened, or they may be calcified.

In other countries the lesion is much more common and frequently more formidable than in the United States. The cysts reach an enormous size, the veins of the liver may be compressed and filled with thrombi, the bile-ducts compressed and ulcerated. So much of the liver-tissue may be replaced by the hydatids, that the patient may die from this cause alone. Very frequently there is local peritonitis, and adhesions are formed between the liver and the surrounding parts. In some cases the cysts rupture, and their contents are emptied into the peritoneal cavity, the stomach, the intestines, the pleural cavity, or the lung-tissue. Sometimes the cysts perforate the bile-ducts, the vena cava, or some of the branches of the portal or hepatic veins. Sometimes the abdominal wall is perforated and a fistula formed between the cavity in the liver and the surface.

In cases in which we do not find the scolices entire, a careful examination of the inner cyst-wall, or of its contents, will frequently establish the diagnosis by revealing single hooklets (see Fig. 6, p. 70) or fragments of the characteristically lamellated wall (see Fig. 4, p. 69).

*Echinococcus multilocularis*, which is apparently an abortive form of the above species (see p. 70), is very rare indeed in the United States. The writer (T.M.P.), has examined a specimen sent to him by Dr. Edward J. Ill, of Newark, N. J., and which is now in the museum of the College of Physicians and Surgeons, New York. The patient was a male, age thirty-one, German, single, farmer. He had been in the United States five years. For a year previous to his death he had been out of health and jaundiced, and somewhat emaciated. A large indistinctly fluctuating tumor was evident in the right lumbar and umbilical regions, and apparently connected with the liver. Aspiration of the tumor gave a milky fluid believed to be pus. An opening was made into the tumor by one of the surgeons attending the case, and death occurred after ten hours, from hemorrhage.

The liver was found adherent to the abdominal walls and about one-fourth of the right lobe of the liver was occupied by an irregular cavity, with very rough ragged walls. These walls were in some places from one



to two inches in thickness, and appeared to the naked eye to consist of dense connective tissue in irregular bands and fascicles which inclosed very irregular, mostly small cavities. Microscopical examination showed that the cavities were lined with the delicate lamellated cuticula characteristic of the echinococcus cysts. No hooklets were found. Fig. 123 is a drawing from this specimen.

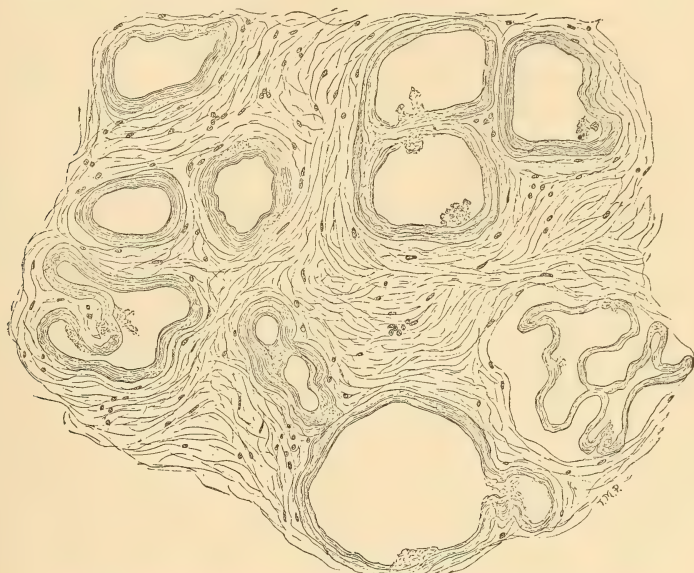


FIG. 123.—ECHINOCOCCUS MULTILOCULARIS OF LIVER,  $\times 50$  and reduced.

*Distoma hepaticum*; *D. sinense*; *D. lanceolatum*, may occur in the gall-ducts and gall-bladder. *D. sinense* occurs especially in the East, and has been found in great numbers in the bodies of Chinamen. *D. hæmatobium* is very common in Egypt and Abyssinia, occurring in the blood-vessels of the liver.

*Pentastoma denticulatum* is the undeveloped form of *Pentastoma tænioides*, a parasite which inhabits the nasal cavity of dogs and some other animals. In the liver of man, it usually occurs in the form of small rounded calcified cysts. The cysts may contain fat, calcareous matter, and the remains of the dead parasite among which the hooklets may be found.

*Ascaris lumbricoides* sometimes finds its way from the intestines into the bile-ducts. It may cause no disturbance here, but in some cases the worms have been present in large numbers, and caused occlusion, dilatation, and ulceration of the biliary passages, and have led to the formation of abscess of the liver.

*Psorospermia*, the very common parasite in the rabbit's liver, has been found a few times in the liver of man.

## THE BILIARY PASSAGES.

*Catarrhal inflammation* most frequently attacks the lower portion of the common duct and the gall-bladder. In the acute form, it usually leaves but few changes appreciable after death. An abnormal coating of mucus and sometimes congestion of the blood-vessels, are almost the only post-mortem lesions. Owing to the swelling of the mucous membrane and the accumulation of mucus in the lumen, the ducts may be temporarily occluded; but this occlusion may not be evident after death. If, however, the inflammation becomes chronic, the walls of the bile-ducts may become thickened, and their lumina more or less permanently obstructed. In consequence of this, dilatation or ulceration of the bile-ducts may ensue. Temporary obstruction of the bile-ducts may produce marked pigmentation of the liver, owing to the accumulation of pigment granules in the liver-cells, particularly in the vicinity of the capsule of Glisson, and jaundice of the entire body.

The gall-bladder may be inflamed by itself, or in connection with inflammation of the biliary passages. If the disease is chronic, the wall of the bladder may be thickened, polypoid growths may occur in the mucosa; the duct may be occluded; dilatation, ulceration, the formation of gall-stones, calcification and atrophy may ensue.

Inflammation of the stomach and duodenum, hyperæmia and inflammation of the liver, concretions, and parasites, are the usual causes of catarrhal inflammation of the biliary passages, but it may occur without these.

*Suppurative and Croupous Inflammation* may attack the biliary passages and produce infiltration of pus in their walls, and purulent fluid in their cavities; or flakes and tubular casts of fibrin on their walls; or infiltration of their walls with fibrin, and consequent ulceration. These lesions occur most frequently in connection with obstruction of the bile-ducts, and in typhoid and typhus fever, pyæmia, cholera, or they may be due to the extension of inflammatory processes from without. They also occur under unknown conditions. Purulent inflammation may produce perforations of the ducts or bladder, with escape of bile and peritonitis; or fistulous openings between the gall-bladder and the duodenum, colon, and stomach, or through the abdominal wall. Or the inflammation may extend to the liver-tissue and produce abscesses. Under the latter conditions, we may find a series of small abscesses arranged along the walls of the suppurating gall-ducts. In more advanced stages, the abscesses may become large and communicate with one another, so that a considerable portion of the liver may be occupied by a series of communicating cavities with ragged walls, containing pus and detritus of liver-tissue, more or less tinged with bile. These abscesses are apt to contain various forms of bacteria. They may become more or less com-

pletely inclosed by connective-tissue walls. Or, the portal vein may be inflamed and even perforations may be formed between it and the bile-ducts. Constrictions of the biliary passages may also be produced by the same causes.

*Constriction and occlusion* may be produced by inflammation of the ducts themselves, by new growths in their walls, by calculi or parasites in their lumina, by changes in the hepatic tissue in chronic and acute hepatitis, by aneurisms, or by pressure on the duct from without, as by tumors in the head of the pancreas, etc.

The obliteration of the smaller bile-ducts produces no marked lesions. When the ductus communis, or the hepatic duct, is obstructed, the ducts throughout the liver are frequently dilated and the liver-tissue bile-stained. The liver may undergo atrophy and the whole body be intensely jaundiced. When the cystic duct is obstructed, the gall-bladder is dilated.

*Dilatation* of the bile-ducts is usually produced by strictures in the ways just mentioned, or by calculi. When calculi have produced the dilatation, this condition may sometimes continue after they have found their way into the intestines. Sometimes, however, we meet with very marked dilatation of the bile-ducts without being able to make out any present or past obstruction. The dilatation may affect only the common and hepatic ducts, or it may extend to the smaller ducts in the liver, which are then dilated uniformly, or sacculated. They may contain bile, mucus, or calculi. The liver is at first enlarged, but may afterward atrophy. The gall-bladder may be dilated in consequence of obstruction of the common or the cystic ducts. In the latter case, it may reach an immense size, and form a large tumor in the abdominal cavity. The dilatation is generally uniform, the bladder retaining its normal shape; sometimes, however, there are diverticula, which are usually produced by calculi. If the obstruction to the hepatic duct is incomplete or movable, the gall-bladder may contain bile, and often calculi. If the obstruction is complete, the contained fluid may gradually lose its biliary character, and become a serous or mucous fluid of a light yellow color—*hydrops cystidis fellæ*. The walls of the bladder may be of normal thickness, or thinned, or thickened, or calcified. If the obstruction is due to a calculus, this may pass into the intestine and the gall-bladder be suddenly emptied. Usually the bladder fills again, owing to its loss of contractile power.

*Biliary Calculi*.—These bodies are of common occurrence. They are found usually in the gall-bladder, sometimes in the hepatic, cystic, and common ducts; less frequently in the small ducts of the liver. In the gall-bladder from 1 to 7,800 calculi have been counted. They vary in size from that of a pin's head to that of a hen's egg, or they may be



larger. Single gall-stones are usually spheroidal or ovoidal; when multiple, they are usually flattened at the sides or facettted.

They may be composed:

1. Principally of *cholestearin*, and may be of a pure white color, or tinged with various shades of yellow, or brown, by bile-pigment. The fractured surface shows a radiating crystalline structure.

2. Of *cholestearin*, *bile-pigment*, and salts of *calcium* and *magnesium*. These are usually dark-colored, brown, reddish-black, or green, and may be spheroidal or facettted, smooth or rough on the surface; the fractured surface is usually radiating crystalline. This is the most common form.

3. Principally of *bile-pigment*.—Such calculi are rare, usually small, very dark-colored, and not numerous.

4. Of *calcium carbonate*.—These are rare, have a nodular surface, and a clear crystalline not radiating fracture.

Most calculi are formed around a central mass, sometimes called the nucleus, which may consist of cholestearin, bile-pigment, mucus, or

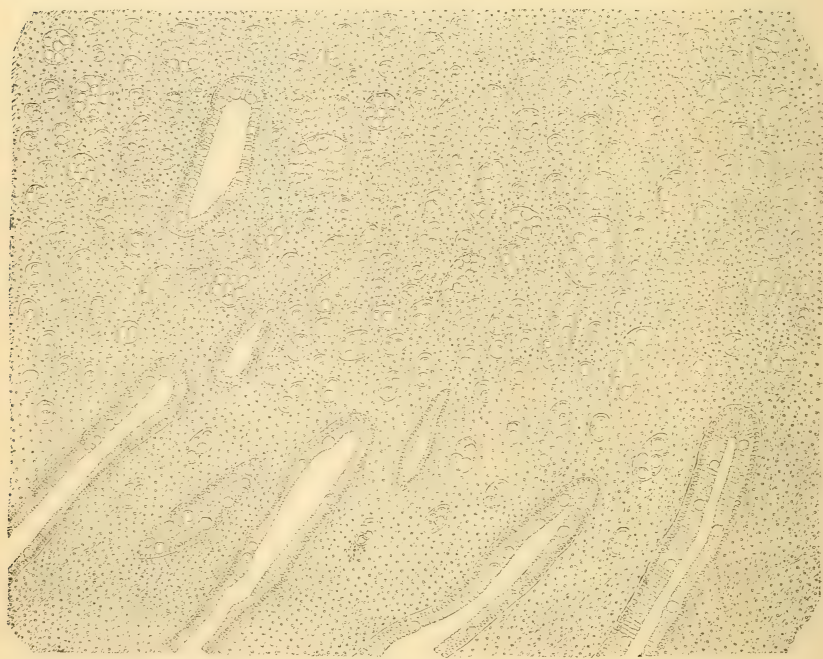


FIG.124.—PRIMARY CARCINOMA OF THE COMMON BILE-DUCT,  $\times 300$  and reduced.

epithelium, or more rarely of some foreign body. Thus a dead parasite, a needle, and fruit seeds may serve as nuclei. The body of the calculus may be homogeneous, or lamellated, or crystalline.

Biliary calculi in the gall-bladder may produce no symptoms and only

be discovered after death. In the hepatic and common ducts they may obstruct the flow of bile and produce fatal jaundice; or they may pass from time to time into the intestine producing biliary colic. If they are impacted in the cystic duct, they may produce dilatation of the gall-bladder. They may get into the duodenum by ulceration through the walls of the ducts or gall-bladder, or in the same way into the peritoneal cavity. Gall-stones which get into the intestinal cavity usually pass off without doing any further injury, but very large calculi may cause occlusion of the gut, with fatal results.

#### TUMORS OF THE GALL-BLADDER AND LARGER GALL-DUCTS.

Small *fibromata* have been described in the gall-bladder and in the common duct, but they are very rare. The most common tumors are *carcinomata*. These may be primary or secondary, and present the usual structural variations. The cells may be cylindrical, polyhedral, or they may present the characteristics of colloid cancer. Primary *carcinomata* of the gall-bladder and larger ducts (Fig. 124) are not very common. Not infrequently the pancreatic and common ducts are both involved and it is difficult to say whether the tumor is primary in the head of the pancreas or in the gall-duct. The bladder and ducts may also be secondarily involved in *carcinomata* of the stomach, liver, and duodenum.

## THE SPLEEN.

---

In studying the alterations produced in the spleen in disease, it is important to bear in mind the peculiar relations in which this organ stands to the blood-vessels and to the circulation. After passing through the various branches of the splenic artery and the limited systems of capillaries which are associated with it, the blood is not received at once into venous trunks, as in other parts of the body, but is poured directly into the pulp tissue. In this it circulates, under conditions which render it liable to stagnation and undue accumulation, before it is taken again into well-defined vessels, through the open walls of the cavernous veins. Moreover, these conditions, naturally unfavorable to undisturbed and vigorous circulation, are reinforced by the association of the splenic with the sluggish and often interrupted portal circulation. Bearing these considerations in mind, it will be in a measure plain why, as is in fact the case, the spleen should be more liable to alterations in size than any other organ in the body, and why, serving as it does as a sort of blood filter, it should be especially susceptible to the influence of deleterious materials of various kinds which in one way or another gain access to the blood. In this respect the relations of the spleen to the blood, and of the lymph-glands to the lymph, present suggestive analogies.

### WOUNDS, RUPTURE, AND HEMORRHAGE.

*Wounds* of the spleen are usually accompanied by extensive hemorrhage, and are commonly fatal. Death usually occurs as the result of this hemorrhage, but it may be due to secondary inflammatory changes. Healing and recovery may, however, occur.

*Rupture* of the spleen may be traumatic or spontaneous. In the former case it may be due to direct violence in the region of the organ or to injury to the thorax, falls, etc. In certain diseased conditions, the spleen is more liable to rupture than when it is normal. The rupture usually involves not only the capsule, but a more or less considerable portion of the parenchyma, and of course leads to hemorrhage. Spontaneous rupture is rare, but may occur as the result of excessive enlargement of the



organ, as in typhoid fever, malaria, etc.—see below—or as the result of abscess.

*Hemorrhage*.—Aside from the extensive hemorrhages from injury and rupture, the spleen may be the seat of small circumscribed hemorrhages in various infectious diseases, although, owing to the peculiar distribution of the blood, it is often very difficult to distinguish between a moderate interstitial hemorrhage and hyperæmia.

#### DISTURBANCES OF THE CIRCULATION.

*Anæmia*.—This may be associated with general anæmia, but it is not always present in this condition. When marked and unassociated with other lesions, the spleen is apt to be diminished in size, the capsule more or less wrinkled, the cut surface dry and lighter in color than normal, the trabeculæ unduly prominent.

In this as in other alterations simply of the blood content of the spleen, neither the gross nor microscopical appearances are constant, because of the redistribution of blood which is apt to occur in the viscera after death.

*Hyperæmia*.—This may be passive, occurring when some obstruction to the portal circulation exists, most frequently in cirrhosis of the liver, but also with certain valvular lesions of the heart, emphysema, etc. The spleen is enlarged, but usually only to a moderate degree. The capsule is apt to be tense, and on section, the pulp is dark-red and may be soft or firm. Usually, when the lesion has existed for some time, there is a thickening of the trabeculæ and reticular framework of the spleen, so that they are prominent on section. In other words, there is a chronic interstitial splenitis following the chronic congestion.

*Active congestion* of the spleen, which in most cases is scarcely to be differentiated from some forms of acute inflammation, and probably in many cases is associated with it, very frequently occurs in a great variety of acute and infectious diseases, such as typhoid fever, pneumonia, diphtheria, pyæmia, the exanthemata, etc. The spleen is enlarged, the capsule tense; on section, the pulp is soft, dark-red in color, often swelling out from the cut surface, and concealing the glomeruli and trabeculæ. Under these conditions, we may find the cavernous veins distended with blood, and the interstices of the pulp infiltrated with a variable, sometimes large quantity of red and white blood-cells. Or we may find, in addition to this, an increase in cells, which characterizes acute inflammation or hyperplasia of the spleen (see p. 362).

*Infarctions of the Spleen*.—Embolic infarctions of the spleen are of frequent occurrence. They may be single or multiple, small or very large, sometimes occupying half of the organ. They are in general approximately wedge-shaped, corresponding to the area of tissue supplied by the occluded artery. They may be hemorrhagic, *i.e.* red, or they may

be white (see p. 53). Infarctions, originally red, may become white after a time from changes in the blood-pigment. They may usually be seen as dark-red, reddish-white, or white, hard, sometimes slightly projecting areas on the surface of the organ. Not infrequently, the centre of the infarction is light in color, while the peripheral zone is dark-red. A layer of fresh fibrin is sometimes seen over the surface of the infarction. The general, as well as the microscopical appearances which they present, depend largely upon the age of the infarction. In the earlier stages the hemorrhagic infarctions present little more under the microscope than a compact mass of red blood-cells, among which may be seen the compressed necrotic parenchyma. The white infarction may show at first in a general way the usual splenic structure, but the entire tissue is in a condition of coagulation necrosis. The tissue may disintegrate and soften, and be more or less completely absorbed, with or without fatty degeneration. A zone of inflammatory tissue may appear around the infarction and upon the capsule, and this tissue, becoming denser, assumes the characters of cicatricial tissue, and contracts around the unabsorbed remnant of the infarction, so that finally nothing may be left but a dense mass of fibrous tissue which frequently draws in the surface, causing more or less distortion of the organ. This cicatrix may be pigmented or white.

If the embolus be of an infectious irritating nature, in addition to its mechanical effects, there may be suppuration, gangrene, and the formation of abscess. There may be perforation of the capsule and fatal peritonitis.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Acute Hyperplastic Splenitis* (Acute splenic tumor).—The conditions under which acute inflammation of the spleen occurs have already been mentioned under active hyperæmia, with which it is usually associated. It is a frequent, though not a constant accompaniment of the acute infectious diseases, and seems in all cases to be a secondary lesion. The spleen is enlarged, sometimes to two or three times its normal size. On section the pulp is soft, often almost diffuent, and projects upon the cut surface. The color is sometimes dark-red, sometimes grayish-red, or mottled red and gray. The trabeculæ and glomeruli are usually concealed by the swollen and softened pulp, but the glomeruli are sometimes unusually prominent.

Microscopical examination shows the marked increase in size to be due in part to the hyperæmia; in part to a swelling and increase in the number of cells, sometimes of the pulp, sometimes of the glomeruli, or of both. We find large multinucleated cells; cells resembling the ovoidal and polyhedral cells of the pulp, but larger and with evident division of the nuclei. Cells resembling leucocytes may be present in large num-

bers, and larger and smaller cells in a condition of fatty degeneration or containing pigment, are often seen. The elongated cells lining the cavernous veins may be swollen or increased in number. Not infrequently larger and smaller cells are found which contain structures looking somewhat like red blood-cells. In some cases, particularly in scarlatina, hyperplasia of the glomeruli is a prominent feature. In some cases, particularly in typhus and recurrent fevers, the cells of the glomeruli undergo marked degenerative changes, so that they may form small, softened areas looking like little abscesses. Small necrotic areas, often associated with localized suppuration, are sometimes found in typhus and typhoid fever, scarlatina, etc., and may be due to infectious emboli. As the primary disease runs its course, the swelling of the spleen subsides, the capsule appears wrinkled, the color becomes lighter, and sometimes the organ remains for a long time, or permanently, small and soft.

The cause of these marked changes in the spleen in infectious diseases is not understood. It seems probable that they are due to the lodgment in the organ of some deleterious materials which have found access to the blood. Whether these materials are bacteria, or products of the life processes of bacteria, or something entirely apart from these, we do not know. Bacteria have, indeed, in many cases been found in the organ under these conditions, but by no means with the frequency and abundance which the commonness and prominence of the lesion would lead us to expect, if it were in all cases due to their presence.

*Suppurative Splenitis* (Splenic Abscess).—Small abscesses may be found in the spleen as the result of minute infectious emboli, and these may coalesce to form larger abscesses; but larger and smaller abscesses may form in the spleen without evidence of their embolic origin. Sometimes the entire parenchyma is converted into a soft necrotic purulent mass surrounded by the capsule. It is rare for simple infarctions to result in abscess, but it does occasionally occur. Abscess of the spleen may occur from the propagation of a suppurative inflammation to the organ from adjacent parts; from perinephritic abscesses, ulcer and carcinoma of the stomach, etc. Abscesses of the spleen may open into the peritoneal cavity, inducing fatal peritonitis, or, owing to an adhesive inflammation, the opening may occur into the post-peritoneal tissue, into the pleural cavity, lung, stomach, intestines, or it may open on the surface. On the other hand, the contents of the abscess may dry, shrink, and become encapsulated and calcified. Abscesses may occur in ulcerative endocarditis, pyæmia, typhoid fever, and more rarely in intermittent fever, and under a variety of other conditions whose nature is unknown to us.

*Chronic Indurative Splenitis* (Chronic Splenic Tumor).—There may be, as we have already seen, a new-formation of connective tissue in the spleen as a result of chronic congestion, or infarctions, or about



abscesses. But there is a more diffuse formation of connective tissue, usually in the nature of an hyperplasia, which occurs under a variety of conditions, and is now marked and extensive, and again comparatively ill-defined. It is always associated with more or less extensive changes in the parenchyma. In its most marked form it is found in chronic malarial poisoning, and under these conditions it may be found not only in persons who have suffered from repeated attacks of intermittent fever, but also in those who have not thus suffered, but have resided in malarial regions. The enlarged spleen is often called "ague cake." Similar conditions, though usually less marked, may occur in congenital and acquired syphilis, from prolonged typhoid fever, and as a result of acute hyperplastic splenitis from various causes, and also in leukæmia and pseudo-leukæmia.

The gross appearance of the spleen in chronic indurative splenitis varies greatly, both in the size of the organ and in the appearance of the section. The spleen may be enormously enlarged or it may be of about normal size. It is usually, however, enlarged. The capsule is usually more or less thickened, frequently unevenly so. The consistency is usually considerably increased, but this is not always the case. The color and appearance of the cut surface present much variation. It may be nearly normal or it may be grayish or dark-brown or nearly black. The color may be uniform or the surface may be mottled. The glomeruli may be scarcely visible or very prominent; the trabeculæ are in some cases nearly concealed by the pulp, in others they are large, prominent, and abundant; so that the surface is crossed in all directions by an interlacing network of broader and narrower irregular bands, between which the red or brown or blackish pulp lies.

Not less varied are the microscopical appearances of the spleen under these conditions. In one class of cases, there is more or less uniform hyperplasia of both pulp and interstitial tissue. The parenchyma cells are increased in size and number; there may be swelling of the lining cells of the cavernous veins. The reticulum of the pulp, as well as that of the glomeruli, and also the trabeculæ, are thickened. In another class of cases, the thickening of the reticular and trabecular tissue, either uniformly or in patches, is the prominent feature, while the changes in the pulp are rather secondary and atrophic. In both forms, irregular pigmentation is frequent, the pigment particles being deposited either in the cells of the pulp or glomeruli, or in the new-formed interstitial tissue. Finally, there are all intermediate forms of induration between those described, and the changes are by no means uniform in the same organ. When these spleens are large, they are liable to displacement.

*Syphilitic Splenitis.*—This lesion may present itself as an indurative process due to the formation of new connective tissue, and present no distinct morphological characteristics. In rare cases, however, gummata

may be present, in connection with the new fibrous tissue; then the nature of the lesion becomes evident.

*Tubercular Splenitis.*—This lesion is secondary, either to tubercular inflammation in some other part of the body; or is the result of the general infection in acute general miliary tuberculosis. The tubercles may be very numerous and still invisible to the naked eye, or they may be just visible, or as large as a pin's head or thereabouts, and very thickly strewn through the organ, or sparsely scattered. In other cases, the tubercles are larger, sometimes as large as a pea, and they are then usually not very numerous. Microscopically, they present the usual variety of structure: sometimes as simple tubercle granula, sometimes as conglomerate tubercles, they may consist simply of a collection of small spheroidal cells; or there may be larger polyhedral cells and giant-cells, with a well-defined reticulum. Cheesy degeneration occurs under the usual conditions. Tubercle bacilli are usually present, particularly in the more acute forms, sometimes in small, sometimes in enormous numbers. They seem to be especially abundant in acute general miliary tuberculosis of children. These tubercles may be formed in the glomeruli, in the walls of the smaller arteries, in the pulp tissue, and in the trabeculæ and capsule. Owing to the peculiar character of the spleen tissue, the earlier stages are not readily recognized, since simple collections of small spheroidal cells are not distinctly outlined against the normal tissue. There is frequently a moderate swelling of the spleen, owing to hyperæmia and hyperplasia of the parenchyma.

*Perisplenitis.*—*Acute inflammation* of the capsule of the spleen may occur as a part of a general or localized peritonitis, or as a result of lesions of the spleen itself, such as infarctions, abscesses, and acute hyperplastic inflammation. Under these conditions, a fibrinous pellicle, with more or less pus, may be formed on the surface of the organ. *Chronic perisplenitis*, resulting in the production of new connective tissue, either in patches, or as a more or less general thickening of the capsule, is of frequent occurrence. It may follow acute inflammation of the capsule, or be a part of general or localized chronic peritonitis. It is common in connection with chronic indurative splenitis, and it may occur from unknown causes. Sometimes the capsule is three or four mm. in thickness over a considerable area; sometimes very small nodular thickenings or papillary projections occur. As a result of this process, adhesions, sometimes very extensive, may form between the spleen and adjacent parts. The thickened capsule is sometimes more or less extensively calcified.

*Alterations of the Spleen in Leukæmia and Pseudo-Leukæmia.*—The lesions of the spleen are essentially the same under both of these conditions. They consist, in general, of an hyperplasia, sometimes most marked in one, sometimes in another of the structural elements of the organ, but usually they all participate in the alterations. The

changes which occur in the earlier stages are but little known. The gross appearances of the spleen as we find them in persons dying of either of the above diseases, present considerable variation. They are usually enlarged, and sometimes are ten or fifteen times the normal size. They are usually hard, but are sometimes of the ordinary consistency, or softer. The capsule is usually thickened and rough. The section of the spleen may be of a uniform dark-red color, but it is more frequently mottled red and gray. Sometimes the glomeruli are inconspicuous, but they are very often enlarged and prominent. They may be 2 to 4 mm. in diameter, and owing to an infiltration of the arterial sheaths with lymph-cells, may appear to the naked eye as grayish, round or elongated bodies, arranged along branching interrupted grayish streaks. The trabecula may be greatly thickened, as also the reticulum of the pulp, so as to be evident to the naked eye. Brown or black pigment may be collected around the glomeruli or in the pulp. Hemorrhagic infarctions or circumscribed extravasations of blood may further complicate the picture.

Microscopically, the appearances are essentially the same as those above described in acute hyperplasia and in chronic interstitial splenitis, depending upon the stage and variety of the disease. Owing to the great size which some of these spleens attain, they are liable to displacement, and they may interfere by pressure with the function of neighboring organs.

#### DEGENERATIVE CHANGES IN THE SPLEEN.

*Atrophy.*—The spleen may become atrophied in old age; as a result of prolonged cachexiæ, and in connection with profound and persistent anæmia; or more rarely from unknown causes. The capsule may be wrinkled and thickened, the color pale, the trabecula prominent, the consistency increased. The change is largely in the pulp, whose parenchyma-cells are decreased in number.

*Amyloid Degeneration.*—This degeneration may affect the glomeruli or the pulp-tissue, or both together. When confined to the glomeruli, the spleen may or may not be enlarged, and the cut surface is more or less abundantly sprinkled with round or elongated translucent bodies resembling considerably in general appearance, the grains of boiled sago. These are the waxy glomeruli. Such spleens are often called “sago spleens.” Microscopical examination shows that the degeneration is confined to the walls of the arteries, capillaries, and reticulum of the glomeruli with atrophy and disappearance of the lymphoid cells.

In other cases, either with or without involvement of the glomeruli, there is waxy degeneration of the blood-vessels and reticulum of the pulp, which may occur in patches or be general and more or less excessive. If the alteration is general and considerable, the spleen is enlarged, its edges rounded, its consistence increased. On section it appears trans-



lucent and the distribution of the degenerated areas may be readily seen by holding a thin slice up to the light. The spleen may be alone affected, or there may be similar degenerations in other organs. The general conditions under which this lesion occurs and the methods of staining and studying are given on p. 62.

*Pigmentation* of the spleen may occur as the result of the decomposition of hæmoglobin in the organ under a great variety of conditions, thus after hemorrhagic infarctions, small multiple hemorrhages, acute hyperplastic splenitis, etc. Or the pigment may be anthracotic and be brought to the organs from the lungs or bronchial glands (see p. 65). Bile pigment may also be deposited in the spleen in jaundice. The pigment may lie in the walls of the smaller arteries, in the cells and reticulum of the pulp, or free in the latter tissue, or in the follicles. It is usually quite unevenly distributed. The pigment may be red, brown, or black. According to Weigert, anthracotic pigment may be sometimes seen with the naked eye in the periphery of the glomeruli, as dark crescents.

#### TUMORS.

Primary tumors of the spleen are rare. Small *fibromata*, *sarcomata*, and *cavernous angiomata* sometimes occur. *Sarcomata* and *carcinomata* may occur in the spleen secondarily either as metastatic tumors, or by extension from some adjacent part, as the stomach. Dermoid cysts are described, but are rare. Other larger and smaller cysts, whose mode of origin is in most cases obscure, not infrequently occur.

#### PARASITES.

*Pentastomum denticulatum* is not infrequently found in the spleen, usually encapsulated and calcified. *Cysticercus* is rare. *Echinococcus* is occasionally found, and if the cysts are large or numerous, may cause more or less extensive atrophy of the organ.

Various forms of bacteria have been found in the spleen. *Micrococci* have been found in pyæmia, small-pox, ulcerative endocarditis, and under other conditions. The *Bacillus anthracis* occurs here in anthrax; the *B. tuberculosis* in tubercular inflammation, and bacilli have been described in typhoid fever. *Spirochæte Obermeieri* may be found in relapsing fever.

#### MALFORMATIONS AND DISPLACEMENTS.

The spleen may be absent in acephalous monsters, and with defective development of other abdominal viscera. Very rarely it is absent in persons who are otherwise perfectly developed. Small accessory spleens from the size of a hazel-nut to that of a walnut are not infrequent. They usually lie close to the spleen, but may be considerably removed from it; thus they have been found embedded in the head of the pancreas. Two spleens of about equal size have been observed. The form of the spleen

is subject to considerable variation. The spleen may be displaced congenitally or as the result of disease. It may be on the right side in transposition of the viscera. As the result of congenital defects in the diaphragm, the spleen may be found in the thorax; or in deficient closure of the abdominal wall, it may, together with other abdominal viscera, be found outside of the body.

The spleen may be pressed downward by any increase in the contents of the thorax. It may be fastened by adhesions to the concave surface of the diaphragm, so that its long axis is nearly horizontal, instead of vertical. It may be displaced by changes in the contents of the abdominal cavity. If the organ is increased in size, it frequently becomes tilted, so that its lower border reaches the right iliac region. If the ligaments are too long congenitally, or if they are lengthened by traction, and if the organ is at the same time increased in weight, it may become very movable. It may sink downward, with its hilus turned upward; or it may be rotated on its axis, and owing to torsion of the vessels thus produced, the organ may atrophy. Or, the pressure of the ligament and vessels across the duodenum may cause occlusion of the gut.

## THE PANCREAS.

---

The diseases of the pancreas are, so far as we know, with a few exceptions, of no great practical importance; that is, they do not often give rise to symptoms of disease, or cause death, but the lesions are found in the bodies of persons dead from other diseases. It is probable, however, that in many cases their apparent insignificance is due to our lack of knowledge of the interference with functions which lesions of the gland induce. *Hemorrhage* into the substance of the organ may occur as the result of injury; in the hemorrhagic diathesis; in connection with valvular diseases of the heart, or interference with the portal circulation; or in connection with extensive fatty degeneration of the organ. A few cases of sudden death are recorded, in which the only discoverable lesion was an extensive hemorrhage into the substance of the gland and the tissue about it. In these cases it has been assumed that death was caused by interference with the heart's action, through pressure on the solar plexus and semilunar ganglion, but it may be due other causes (see below, fat necrosis).

### INFLAMMATION.

In some cases of typhoid fever, pyæmia, yellow fever, and other acute infectious diseases, the pancreas is red, swollen, and oedematous. Microscopically the most prominent lesion is a swelling and undue granulation of the glandular epithelium and hyperæmia. This condition is known as *parenchymatous pancreatitis*.

*Suppurative pancreatitis* is not very common, and may be primary or due to the extension of a suppurative inflammation from adjacent parts. There may be a diffuse infiltration of the organ with pus-cells or larger and smaller abscess. The causes of primary suppurative pancreatitis are obscure.

*Chronic interstitial pancreatitis* (cirrhosis of the pancreas).—This lesion consists in an increase of interstitial connective tissue which may be general or confined to some particular portion of the gland. The



organ is sometimes enlarged, sometimes smaller than normal. It is usually dense and hard; secondary atrophy of the parenchyma regularly occurs. It may be due to chronic inflammatory processes in the vicinity of the organ.

*Syphilitic inflammation.*—Chronic interstitial pancreatitis is frequently found in congenital syphilis of the new-born, and the gross and microscopical lesions are similar to those above described. It is not definitely established whether or not a similar lesion may be caused by acquired syphilis. Gummata are very rare in the pancreas, but have been described in congenital syphilis in very young children.

*Tubercular Inflammation.*—Larger and smaller tubercles and tubercular cheesy nodules are occasionally found in the pancreas in connection with acute general miliary tuberculosis or with tubercular inflammation in some other organ, particularly with that of adjacent lymph-glands, the lungs and the intestine.

#### DEGENERATIVE CHANGES IN THE PANCREAS.

*Atrophy* of the pancreas may occur in old age, and as a result of pressure from tumors or other adjacent structures. Marked atrophy of the pancreas is found in a certain proportion of cases of diabetes mellitus, but it is not constant.

*Fatty degeneration* of the parenchyma cells may occur, and in some cases is so extensive as to lead to nearly complete destruction of their protoplasm.

*Fatty infiltration*, which should be distinguished from fatty degeneration, consists in the accumulation of fat in the interstitial tissue of the gland. This may be so excessive as to cause nearly entire destruction of the gland structures. Under these conditions, the outline of the organ may be preserved, the fat being inclosed by the capsule.

*Amyloid Degeneration.*—This usually occurs in connection with similar degeneration in other organs, and is confined to the walls of the blood-vessels and the interstitial tissue.

*Fat necrosis.*—A very peculiar lesion of the fat-tissue, most frequently seen in the fat-tissue about the pancreas or between its lobules, but sometimes in fat tissue in other parts of the body, has been a few times described and called *fat necrosis*. White or yellowish nodules, varying from the size of a pin's head to that of a pea or larger, are seen embedded in the fat, the central portion being often soft and grumous and readily squeezed out. They are sometimes calcified and sometimes surrounded by a connective-tissue capsule. Microscopical examination shows degeneration and disintegration of the fat tissue. They are most frequently found in marasmatic persons. When the lesion is extensive, according to *Balser*, it may cause death either directly, or by inducing hemorrhage.

Some of the extensive hemorrhages about the pancreas, above mentioned, may be caused in this way.<sup>1</sup>

#### TUMORS.

*Carcinomata* are the most common and important of the tumors of the pancreas. They may be primary or secondary. Primary carcinomata are most frequently found in the head of the organ, but may occur in other parts. The hard or scirrhus form is most common, but occasionally soft and succulent, and colloid forms are found. They are liable to involve adjacent parts by continuous growth, and may form metastases in the liver, adjacent lymph-glands, etc. Secondary carcinoma in the pancreas may occur in carcinoma of the stomach, duodenum, and the gall-ducts and gall-bladder. As a result of carcinoma of the pancreas, aside from the extension of the growth, there may be pressure on the ductus choledochus with jaundice; or on the pancreatic duct with cystic dilatation; or pressure on the duodenum with stenosis of the gut; or pressure on the vena cava or portal vein, or superior mesenteric vein, etc., with disturbances of the circulation.

*Concretions* of carbonate and phosphate of lime are frequently found in the pancreatic ducts. They are usually multiple, small, whitish, smooth, or of rough and irregular shape. Sometimes, however, they reach a diameter of more than an inch. They consist chiefly of calcium phosphate and carbonate. Besides these free concretions, the walls of the ducts are sometimes incrustated with salts of lime. Such concretions may produce dilatation of the pancreatic ducts and large cysts, or more rarely abscesses.

*Foreign Bodies.*—Gall-stones sometimes find their way into the pancreatic duct. Ascarides have been found in the ducts in a considerable number of cases.

*Dilatation* of the pancreatic ducts, and the formation of cysts, take place in several different ways.

(1) The entire duct may undergo a uniform, cylindrical dilatation. With this cylindrical dilatation we sometimes find associated small sacculi.

(2) There may be sacculated dilatations at some point in the ducts. These dilatations form cysts of large size, as large even as a child's head. Their walls frequently undergo degeneration and calcification. These cysts often become filled with blood, and may then be mistaken for aneurisms.

(3) The small branches of the pancreatic duct may be dilated so as to form a number of small cysts. These cysts are filled with serum, mucus, pus, or a thick cheesy material.

<sup>1</sup> Consult Balser: "Ueber Fettnekrose," *Vireh. Archiv*, Bd. 90, 1882, p. 520. and Chiari, *Prager Wochenschrift*, 1883, Nos. 30 and 31.

## MALFORMATIONS AND DISPLACEMENTS.

The pancreas may be entirely absent in anencephalous and double monsters, and in congenital umbilical herniæ. The pancreatic duct may be double; it may open into the duodenum at some distance from the biliary duct, or into the stomach. The head of the pancreas may be unduly developed, and sometimes even completely separated from the rest of the organ, opening into the duodenum with a duct of its own. Occasionally there is small accessory pancreas situated beneath the serosa of the duodenum or stomach.

The pancreas is so firmly bound down that its position is not often changed. Sometimes, however, it is found pressed downward by tight lacing, displaced by aneurisms, or contained in umbilical and diaphragmatic herniæ.



## THE SALIVARY GLANDS.

---

### THE PAROTID, SUBMAXILLARY, AND SUBLINGUAL.

*Inflammation.*—This condition is most frequent and important in the parotid. The epidemic disease known as *mumps* is most frequently confined to the parotid gland of one side, but the submaxillary and sublingual may be at the same time involved. The gland is swollen and there is often œdema of the mucous membrane of the mouth and pharynx. Very little is known of the actual minute changes which the gland undergoes in this disease.

Acute parotiditis occasionally occurs as a secondary lesion in a variety of diseases, as in typhoid and scarlet fever, pyæmia, pneumonia, etc., and by propagation of inflammation from the mouth. Under these conditions the inflammation is usually suppurative, and frequently results in abscess or sloughing. The interstitial tissue of the gland is more or less densely infiltrated with pus-cells, and the parenchyma cells may undergo fatty degeneration and disintegration. The inflammation may be confined to the gland or it may spread to adjacent parts, sometimes causing much destruction of tissue, and may give rise to inflammation of the brain, or of the inner ear, or even to metastatic pyæmic abscesses in different parts of the body. Healing may occur with the formation of salivary fistulæ.

The submaxillary gland may be involved with the parotid in the suppurative inflammation.

Acute suppurative inflammation of the connective tissue about the *submaxillary gland* is sometimes of serious import. Sloughing and gangrene may occur, and are apt to spread to adjacent parts. Septicæmia, œdema of the glottis, or pneumonia may complicate the process and cause death.

The sublingual gland is not often the seat of inflammation.

*Chronic inflammation*, leading to the formation of dense interstitial tissue, sometimes occurs in the salivary glands. This may occur by itself or follow an acute inflammation.

The *Excretory Ducts* of the salivary glands may become inflamed from

the presence of foreign bodies or of concretions formed in them. They may become occluded, from the presence of calculi or as the result of inflammation, and may thus become widely dilated both in the main branches and in the finer ramifications. The dilatation of Wharton's duct to form larger and smaller cysts containing salivary fluid, sometimes gives rise to very large and troublesome tumors which constitute one of the forms of *ranula*.

#### TUMORS.

*Fibromata* are of occasional occurrence in the parotid. *Chondromata*, *sarcomata* and *fibro-sarcomata*, and *myxomata*, or more frequently mixed tumors, formed of varied combinations of these, are of frequent occurrence in the parotid, and of occasional occurrence in the submaxillary gland. These complex or mixed tumors are of more frequent occurrence in these glands than in any other part of the body, except possibly the ovary. They are sometimes rendered still more complicated in structure by a partially atypical glandular growth lending them an adenomatous character, and by the formation of cysts. Or they may present in parts a distinctly carcinomatous character.

*Fibro-sarcoma* and melano-sarcoma have been described. *Primary Carcinoma* of these glands is very rare.

One case of *rhabdomyoma* of the parotid gland with evidences of atypical development of portions of the gland, has been described by the writer.<sup>1</sup>

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus* has been observed in the parotid gland.

---

<sup>1</sup> Prudden: "Rhabdomyoma of the Parotid Gland." American Journal of the Medical Sciences, April, 1883.

## THE THYROID GLAND.

---

*Hyperæmia* of the thyroid gland, often accompanied by considerable enlargement of the organ, may be the result of valvular disease of the heart; it occurs in Basedow's disease; it may be temporary or permanent; and in the latter case may give rise to the formation of new connective tissue. Hemorrhages may occur, causing pigmentation of the organ.

*Inflammation* of the thyroid gland is not very common, and may occur from a variety of causes. It may result in the formation of larger and smaller abscesses, or in the production of new connective tissue. *Tubercular inflammation* with the formation of miliary tubercles is of infrequent occurrence. *Syphilitic inflammation* with the formation of gummata has been described, but is rare.

*Degeneration.*—*Colloid degeneration* of the epithelial cells of the gland and the filling of the alveoli with colloid material is of common occurrence, and when occurring in moderate degree may be regarded as a normal event, since a certain amount of this change is found in many, otherwise apparently normal glands. It may occur, however, to such an extent as to constitute a lesion. See below.

*Amyloid degeneration*, particularly of the blood-vessels, is of infrequent occurrence.

### TUMORS.

Among the most important of the lesions of the thyroid is the enlargement of the organ commonly known as the *goître* or *struma*. The enlargement of the gland may occur in several different ways, and in only a part of the cases is to be considered as a tumor. Thus, a simple hyperæmia may, as above stated, cause considerable enlargement of the organ, and this is sometimes called *Struma hyperæmica*. The true goître, however, consists in the enlargement of the old and the formation of new gland alveoli, while with these changes there is very frequently associated a greater or less amount of colloid degeneration. When there is new formation of gland-tissue, the growth has the character of an *adenoma*. The hyperplasia may occur diffusely, so that the whole gland is more or less enlarged; or it may occur in the form of circumscribed



nodules. When the colloid degeneration is prominent so that the tumor has a gelatinous look, it is called *colloid struma*. Accumulations of fluid, blood, colloid, etc., in the old or new formed alveoli may cause dilatation and atrophy of the walls of the alveoli so that cysts, sometimes of large size, are formed. Thus occurs the *cystic struma*. Again, the blood-vessels may undergo marked dilatation so that we may have a *telangiectatic struma*; or *cavernous angiomas* may form within them. Very frequently all of these varieties of lesion are present in the same goitre. The appearances may be rendered still more complex by the occurrence of hemorrhages and pigmentation, calcification, purulent or indurative inflammation, and by the not very infrequent association with carcinoma and sarcoma. The cause of goitre is not well understood. The growth is, as rule, slow, but occasionally a very rapid enlargement occurs as the result of a sudden increase of the colloid degeneration. In many cases even very large goitres give rise to but moderate inconvenience, but they may assume great significance by encroaching upon neighboring parts. Thus death may be caused by pressure on the trachea, œsophagus, or on the large vessels.

*Sarcoma*, either spheroidal or spindle-celled, may occur as primary tumors in the thyroid, either in otherwise normal glands or in connection with struma. *Melano-sarcoma* has been observed. Secondary sarcomata are rare.

Primary *Carcinoma*, both glandular and scirrhus, occur in the thyroid, and particularly the softer forms may spread to adjacent parts, and occasionally form distant metastases.

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus* cysts have been found in the thyroid.

## THE SUPRA-RENAL CAPSULES.

---

### MALFORMATIONS.

In acephalic and other monsters the supra-renal capsules may be atrophied or entirely absent. Sometimes in well-formed adults these organs cannot be discovered.

There may be little rounded nodules loosely attached to the surface of the capsules and having the same structure.

If one of the kidneys is absent, or in an abnormal position, its capsule usually retains its proper position.

### HEMORRHAGE.

In children, soon after birth, it is not very infrequent to find large hemorrhages in one of the capsules, converting it into a cyst filled with blood. The same lesion has been observed in a few cases in adults.

### THROMBOSIS.

Klebs describes a case of capillary thrombosis of the cortex in both capsules in a woman after excision of the knee-joint.

### INFLAMMATION.

The most frequent lesion of the supra-renal capsules is *tubercular inflammation*. They are usually increased in size, their surfaces are smooth or nodular. The normal structure of the gland is lost, and is replaced by tubercle tissue, connective tissue, and cheesy matter.

*Suppurative inflammation* with the formation of abscesses has been seen in a few cases.

### DEGENERATION.

*Fatty Degeneration* of the cortical portion of the capsules is the rule in the adult. In children under five years of age, it is a pathological condition.

*Amyloid Degeneration* may involve both the cortical and medullary portions. In the cortex, it usually involves only the walls of the blood-

vessels; in the medulla, both the blood-vessels and the cells of the parenchyma may undergo this degeneration. The capsules are usually firm and of a grayish, semi-translucent color.

#### TUMORS.

*Carcinoma* of the supra-renal capsules is not common. It may be primary, but is much more frequently secondary. Either one or both of the capsules may be the seat of the new growth.

*Sarcoma* occurs as a primary and secondary growth. Probably many of the older cases described as cancers were really sarcomata.

*Cylindroma*.—Klebs describes a growth of this character in one of the capsules, secondary to a tumor of the same kind in the supra-orbital region. He gives to such tumors the name of lymphangioma cavernosum. The exact character of these growths is still obscure. They consist of irregular follicles and cavities, lined with epithelium, and containing peculiar hyalin, structureless bodies.

*Cysts* are found both single and multiple. They are usually situated in the cortex.

*Neuroma*.—A ganglionic neuroma has been described by Weichselbaum.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Archiv, Bd. 85, p. 554.



## THE URINARY APPARATUS.

---

### THE KIDNEYS.

#### MALFORMATIONS.

Entire absence of both kidneys is sometimes associated with great malformation of the entire body. Such fœtuses are not viable.

Absence of one kidney is not uncommon; the left kidney being more frequently absent than the right. The absence of the kidney may be complete, the ureter being also absent; or there may be a little mass of connective tissue and fat to represent the kidney, and a ureter running down to the bladder. The single kidney which is present is usually much enlarged. It may be in its natural position or displaced downwards.

Since the extirpation of the kidney has been practised by surgeons, it has been found that absence of one kidney is more common than was formerly believed.

When both kidneys are present, one of them may be much larger than the other.

Sometimes one kidney will have two pelves or two ureters.

A rather frequent malformation is the so-called *horse-shoe kidney*. The lower ends of the kidneys are joined together by a commissure. The commissure is usually composed of kidney tissue, but sometimes of connective tissue. The two kidneys may be normal, except for the commissure; or their shape, the arrangement of the vessels and ureters, and the position, may be unnatural.

The two kidneys may be united throughout so as to look like a single misshapen kidney with two or more pelves, and irregular blood-vessels. The united kidneys may be both situated on one side of the vertebral column or in the pelvis.

#### CHANGES IN POSITION.

The kidneys may be placed in an abnormal situation, in which they are either fixed or movable.

The change in position is either lateral or downward. When displaced downwards, the kidney may be over the sacrum, or below this in the cavity of the pelvis. The vessels also have an irregular origin and distribution. The kidney is firmly attached in its abnormal position.

Movable or wandering kidneys are found in adult life as a result of tight lacing, of pregnancy, of over-exertion, and of unknown causes. They are more frequent in females than in males. The right kidney is the one more frequently affected. The blood-vessels become lengthened and the attachments of the kidney longer and looser.

#### BRIGHT'S DISEASE.

This name is given to a group of kidney diseases which are characterized by changes in the urine and by certain clinical symptoms. The clinical relationship of these diseases is so marked that it seems probable that they will always be grouped together, although anatomically they are quite distinct. If, then, we divide the cases of Bright's disease anatomically, we must distinguish:

1. Congestion of the kidney.
2. Acute parenchymatous nephritis.
3. Chronic parenchymatous nephritis.
4. Acute diffuse nephritis.
5. Chronic diffuse nephritis.
6. Acute interstitial nephritis.
7. Chronic interstitial nephritis.

##### *1. Congestion of the Kidney.*

This condition of the kidney is produced by any mechanical cause which increases the amount of blood in the renal veins. Valvular disease of the heart, dilatation of the heart, aneurism of the aorta, emphysema of the lungs, hydro-pneumothorax, pericarditis, tumors, and thrombi in the veins, are all capable of producing venous congestion of the kidney.

If the congestion has not existed for a long time, the kidneys are increased in size and heavy. They are of a stony hardness; the capsules are not adherent, and the surface of the kidney is smooth. Both the pyramidal and cortical portions contain too much venous blood, which gives them a dark-red color. There are no structural changes in the Malpighian bodies, tubes, or stroma, except that the epithelium of the convoluted tubes may be somewhat swollen.

If the congestion has lasted for a long time, the kidneys may continue to be large, or they may be somewhat diminished in size, the consistence remaining hard and the color dark-red. The capsules are now adherent, and the surface of the kidney is finely nodular. In the cortex are patches of new connective tissue inclosing atrophied tubules, or a more

diffuse growth of connective tissue separating the tubules. In the convoluted tubules the epithelial cells are swollen and coarsely granular, or very much swollen, or flattened against the walls of the tubules. The tubules contain cast matter and detached and broken epithelial cells. The capsules of the Malpighian bodies are a little thickened and the capsular endothelium is swollen. In the pyramids, the epithelium of the straight tubules is granular and detached, and there may be cast matter both in the straight and looped tubules.

The same mechanical conditions which cause congestion of the kidney may also cause a peculiar form of chronic diffuse nephritis, which will be described later.

## 2. *Acute Parenchymatous Nephritis.*

This form of nephritis occurs both as a secondary and an idiopathic lesion. As a secondary lesion, it is of very frequent occurrence, especially with the infectious diseases.

The morbid changes are confined to the epithelium of the tubules and the endothelium of the Malpighian capsules, and vary much in the degree of their development.

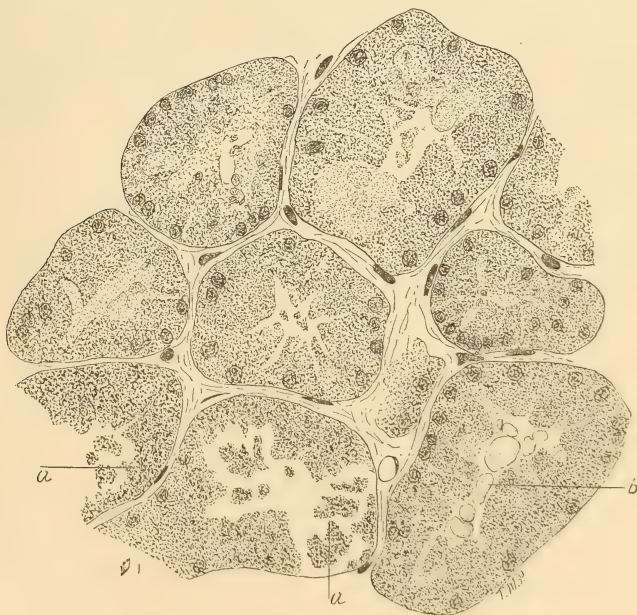


FIG. 125.—ACUTE PARENCHYMATOUS NEPHRITIS,  $\times 700$  and reduced.

From a case of yellow fever. *a*, The swollen and granular epithelium is peeling off and disintegrating; *b*, hyaline casts in the lumen of the convoluted tubule.

There is a corresponding variety in the gross appearance of the kid-



neys. Some of them can hardly be distinguished by the naked eye from a normal kidney. In others, the cortex is swollen and pale, and the entire kidney increased in size. The capsules always strip off readily, leaving the surface of the organ smooth.

In the milder cases, only the cells of the convoluted tubes are swollen and granular.

In more severe cases, the epithelium of both the convoluted and straight tubes and the endothelium of the Malpighian capsules are swollen and granular, and there is cast matter in the tubes (Fig. 125).

In the most severe cases, the changes in the epithelium of all the tubes are very marked. They are very much swollen, granular, broken-down, and detached from the walls of the tubes. Cast matter and blood are found in the tubes.

It is often a matter of very great difficulty to decide as to the presence or absence of the lesser grades of parenchymatous nephritis. The morbid process consists simply in a change in the composition and appearance of the epithelial cells—a change which is closely simulated by decomposition. And yet such kidneys may give, during the patient's life, albumin, casts, and blood in the urine, and other symptoms.

There is also a very marked discrepancy in different cases between the development of the kidney lesion and the degree of the renal symptoms during life. Especially in children who have scarlatina or diphtheria, there may be marked renal symptoms with but very slight anatomical changes in the kidney.

### 3. *Chronic Parenchymatous Nephritis.*

This name should properly be applied only to those case in which the lesions are confined the epithelium of the tubes and the endothelium of the Malpighian bodies. A good deal of confusion has arisen from applying the name to kidneys with more complicated lesions.

This form of nephritis is really not a very common one, and its clinical history resembles very closely that of chronic diffuse nephritis.

The kidneys are increased in size, and weigh together from sixteen to twenty ounces. The capsules are not adherent, the surface of the kidney is smooth. The cortical portion is thick and white, the pyramids are large and red. Such kidneys are often called "large white kidneys," but the same name is even more frequently applied to some of the forms of acute and chronic diffuse nephritis.

The epithelium of the tubes, especially of the convoluted tubes, is swollen, granular, and often broken down. The endothelial cells of the Malpighian capsules are also swollen, and there is cast matter in the tubes. The stroma and the blood-vessels are unchanged.

#### 4. *Acute Diffuse Nephritis.*

This form of nephritis occurs as an idiopathic disease, and as a complication of scarlatina and of acute phthisis.

The kidneys are considerably increased in size, the capsules are not adherent, the surfaces are smooth. The entire kidney with the mucous membrane of the pelvis may be intensely congested; or the cortex is of an opaque white color, mottled with red spots, while the pyramids are red. The tissue of the kidney is moist and succulent.

In most of the tubes, both in the cortex and pyramids, the epithelial cells are swollen, granular, broken down, and detached from the walls of the tubes. Cast matter and blood-globules are found in the tubes in



FIG. 126.—ACUTE DIFFUSE NEPHRITIS,  $\times 350$  and reduced.

Case of scarlatina. *a*, Swollen endothelium of the capsule of the glomerulus; *b*, proliferation of lining cells of glomerulus; *c*, compressed vascular tuft; *d*, swollen stroma infiltrated with cells; *e*, dilated convoluted tubule; *g*, swollen epithelium peeling off; *h*, hyaline casts.

considerable quantities. The endothelial cells of the Malpighian capsules are swollen, or they are increased in number, sometimes to such an extent as to compress the tuft of vessels (Fig. 126). The stroma of the kidney is infiltrated with serum, pus-cells, and blood to a greater or less degree.

#### 5. *Chronic Diffuse Nephritis.*

This is the most common and the most important form of kidney disease.

Although the lesions are essentially the same in all the cases of chronic

diffuse nephritis, yet there is a variety in the degree of development of the lesions and in the gross appearance of the kidneys.

There is also very frequently a discrepancy between the severity of the clinical symptoms and the extent of the lesions in the kidney. This discrepancy is so great as to lead us to look for the causes of the symptoms in other morbid conditions which co-exist with the disease of the kidneys.

The most common form of chronic diffuse nephritis is that which is often called "the atrophied kidney," or "interstitial nephritis." Many of these kidneys are much diminished in size, but some are of normal size and some increased in size. The capsules are more or less adherent, and when they are stripped off, portions of the kidney adhere to them. The surface of the kidney is finely or coarsely nodular. The cortical portion of the kidney is of its natural thickness, or increased, or thinned; it is of a red or grayish color, the normal striations are obscured. The pyramids are of normal size or small, sometimes studded with little white concretions of urate of soda. There are often cysts both in the cortex and pyramids.

Another common form is that in which the kidney is hardly changed at all in its size, color, or gross appearance. Except for the adherence of the capsule, it resembles a normal kidney.

Another variety is "the large white kidney." The kidneys which have the gross appearance of the large, white kidney are not, however, all examples of chronic diffuse nephritis; some are in the condition of parenchymatous nephritis. These kidneys are considerably increased in size. The capsules are not adherent, or but slightly so, the surfaces are smooth. The cortex is thickened, of an opaque white color, or mottled with yellow, red, or gray. The pyramids are large and red.

There are other kidneys which resemble the large white kidneys in their color and general appearance, but are diminished in size, with atrophy of the cortex and adherence of the capsules.

A peculiar form of chronic diffuse nephritis may be produced by cardiac lesions in the place of the ordinary chronic congestion. The kidneys are increased in size, the capsules are not adherent, the surfaces are smooth. The cortex is thickened, and of a peculiar pinkish-white color, the pyramids are red. The whole coloring is different from that of chronic congestion, and the texture is not of the same stony hardness.

There are still other kidneys which look as if they had passed from the condition of chronic congestion into that of chronic diffuse nephritis. They retain the color and hardness of chronic congestion, but the capsules are adherent and the surfaces nodular.

In all these different varieties of chronic diffuse nephritis, there are morbid changes in the tubes, the Malpighian bodies, the stroma and the arteries.



In the tubes the epithelium is changed, especially in the tubes of the cortex. The cells are swollen, finely or coarsely granular, or fatty, or completely broken down, or the seat of hyalin degeneration. They may remain in place on the walls of the tube, or be flattened, or detached. The tubes may also contain cast matter, blood, pus-cells, and small, flat, nucleated cells.

The calibre of the tubes is often changed. They are dilated either in the cylindrical or sacculated form, sometimes so as to form cysts of considerable size. Such dilatations regularly affect groups of tubes, as if they were due to obstruction of the large tubes in the pyramids. In other cases, the tubes are denuded of epithelium, are small, fall together,

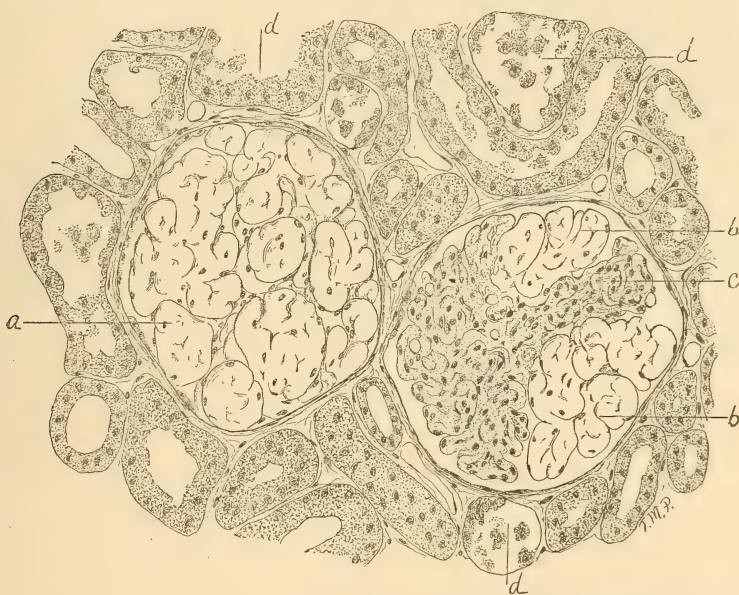


FIG. 127.—WAXY DEGENERATION OF BLOOD-VESSELS OF GLOMERULUS,  $\times 350$  and reduced.

*a*, The tuft is completely transformed into a waxy mass; *b*, portions of vascular loops waxy; *c*, vascular loops in normal condition; *d*, convoluted tubules with swollen, degenerating, and peeling epithelium.

and so may come to resemble connective tissue. The walls of the tubes may be thickened, or they may be the seat of waxy infiltration.

The Malpighian bodies are changed, and from the alterations in the surrounding tissue may be unnaturally close together. The capsules may be dilated, or thickened and contracted. Their endothelial cells are swollen and sometimes increased in number. The capillary tuft of vessels may be the seat of a fibrous thickening of its walls, which may go on to complete obliteration of the vessels; or of waxy infiltration (Fig. 121).

In the stroma there is a new growth of connective tissue (Fig. 128).

This is usually found in patches surrounding the Malpighian bodies, and the blood-vessels in the cortex. Less frequently it is diffuse, following the distribution of the capillary veins between the tubes.



FIG. 128.—CHRONIC DIFFUSE NEPHRITIS, ATROPHIED KIDNEY,  $\times 350$  and reduced. Showing small patch of new connective tissue with atrophy of inclosed tubules. *a*, New connective tissue; *b*, atrophied tubule containing hyalin casts; *c*, tubule with epithelium peeling off; *d*, thickened capsule of glomerulus.

The walls of the arteries are thickened. This thickening seems to be a uniform and symmetrical hypertrophy of all the coats of the vessel.

In the atrophied kidneys the changes in the stroma, the Malpighian bodies and the arteries, and the dilatation of the tubes are especially developed.

In the large white kidneys waxy infiltration of the tufts of the Malpighian bodies and of the small arteries are especially common.

When chronic diffuse nephritis occurs in gouty persons, the kidneys are usually atrophied and there are deposits of urate of soda in the tubes.

#### 6. *Acute Interstitial Nephritis.*

This is a rare form of nephritis of which the clinical history is still incomplete. One of its most noticeable features is that the patients may have marked dropsy and other renal symptoms without albumen in the urine.

The kidneys are very large and succulent, the capsules are not adherent, the surfaces are smooth, the cortex is thick and whitish.

The most marked change is the accumulation of white blood-cells in the capillary veins, and in the stroma between the tubes, while the

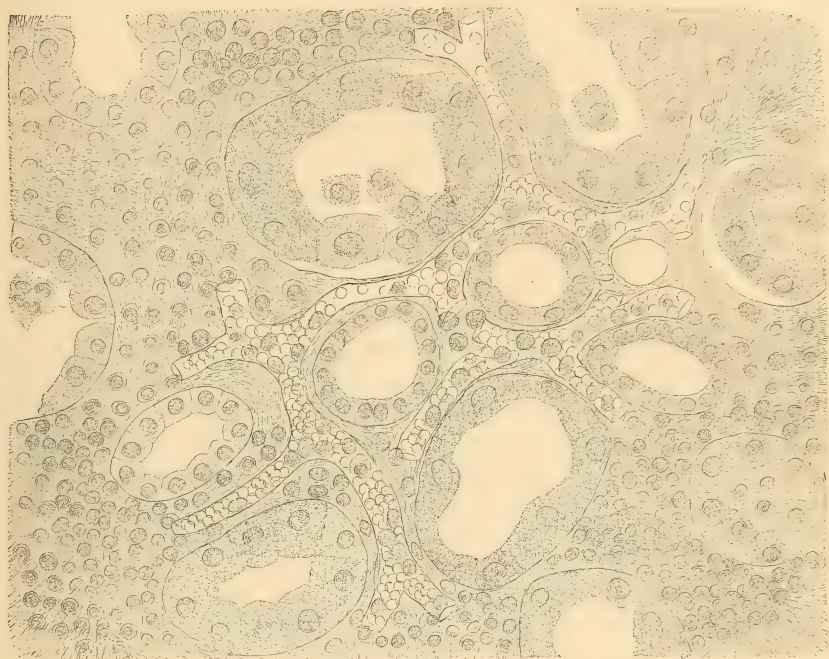


FIG. 129.—ACUTE INTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS,  $\times 850$  and reduced.

epithelium of the tubes is but little altered (Fig. 129).

#### 7. *Chronic Interstitial Nephritis.*

I think that there can be no question that there exists a true interstitial nephritis—a condition like that of cirrhosis of the liver, in which the primary changes are in the stroma of the kidney, with secondary degeneration of the epithelium.

The proper recognition of this form of nephritis has been much delayed by the attempt to bring into it all the atrophied kidneys. The larger number of the atrophied kidneys belong to the class of chronic diffuse nephritis, although probably some of them are examples of true interstitial nephritis.

The best marked examples of chronic interstitial nephritis are those in which the kidney is large and nodular. The growth of interstitial connective tissue is very considerable both in the cortex and pyramids. It is a diffuse growth, but more marked in some places than in others. Not only is there a thickening of the stroma, but also of the walls of the



tubes, the Malpighian capsules, and the arteries. The arteries may also be the seat of obliterating endarteritis.

The epithelium of the tubes is more or less degenerated and broken down.

### *Fatty Infiltration.*

In chronic alcoholism, chronic phthisis, and the fatty diathesis there may be developed a condition of the kidneys analogous to fatty infiltration of the liver. The kidneys are increased in size, the capsules are not adherent, the surfaces are smooth. The cortical portion is thickened and of yellowish color. The epithelium of the tubes of the cortex is infiltrated with fat-globules.

### *Suppurative Nephritis and Pyelo-Nephritis.*

Suppurative inflammation of the kidney may be produced by injuries, by emboli, by cystitis, and may occur without discoverable cause.

(1) Suppurative nephritis from injury. Gun-shot wounds, incised or punctured wounds, falls, blows, and kicks are the ordinary traumatic causes. If the injury is a very severe one, it usually causes the death of the patient in a short time; if it is less severe, suppurative inflammation is developed. The inflammatory process may be diffuse so that nearly the whole of one or of both kidneys is converted into a soft mass composed of pus, blood, and broken-down tissue; or it is circumscribed and one or more abscesses are formed in the kidney.

(2) Embolic Abscesses. In pyæmia and in malignant endocarditis, small infectious emboli find their way into the arteries of the kidneys and produce necrosis of small areas of tissue with surrounding zones of suppurative inflammation. The entire kidney is enlarged and congested, and is dotted with little white foci surrounded by red zones. The foci are formed by an infiltration of pus-cells between the tubes with more or less degeneration of kidney tissue. Colonies of micrococci are sometimes, but not always, found in the Malpighian tufts and in the abscesses (see Fig. 14, p. 86).

(3) Idiopathic abscesses. Sometimes abscesses of one or both kidneys are met with, which have existed for a long time, and for which no cause can be discovered. After death the kidney is found changed into a sac full of pus and surrounded by fibrous tissue. The pelvis and calyces are dilated, and their walls are thickened. The connective tissue around the kidney, and its capsule are also thickened. Suppurating sinuses may extend from the kidney into the surrounding soft parts.

(4) Suppurative pyelo-nephritis with cystitis. Both kidneys are usually affected. The mucous membrane of the pelvis is congested, thickened, and coated with pus or with patches of fibrin. Scattered through the kidneys are abscesses and foci of pus of different sizes. The

smallest are hardly visible to the naked eye, but with the microscope we find small collections of pus-cells between the tubes, with swelling and degeneration of the renal epithelium. The larger purulent foci look like white streaks or wedges parallel to the tubes and surrounded by zones of congestion. The larger abscesses replace considerable portions of the kidney tissue.

The ureters are sometimes inflamed, their walls are thickened, their inner surfaces are coated with pus or fibrin.

The bladder is always inflamed, and this is the primary lesion to which the kidney lesion is secondary. It may present any of the lesions of acute or chronic cystitis.

### *Chronic Pyelo-Nephritis.*

Chronic cystitis or calculi in the pelvis of the kidney may set up a chronic inflammation which involves both the pelvis and calyces, and the kidney tissue. The mucous membrane of the pelvis and calyces is thickened, the epithelial layer is changed, there is a growth of granulation tissue beneath the epithelium, and there may be little polypoid outgrowths. The surface of the mucous membrane is coated with pus or fibrin, or the cavity of the pelvis is dilated and distended with purulent serum.

The kidney itself is the seat of a chronic interstitial inflammation with the production of new connective tissue, and sometimes of pus with obliteration of the renal tubules.

### *Nephro-Phthisis.*

The kidney may become the seat of a peculiar form of chronic inflammation which is called tubercular, or scrofulous, or cheesy nephritis, or nephro-phthisis. The kidney lesion, however, is not isolated; it is associated with similar lesions in other parts of the genito-urinary tract. The ureters, the bladder, the seminal vessels, the prostate, the testicles, the uterus, and the ovaries are involved in the same species of inflammation, although not all of them in each case.

The lesion is usually unilateral, involving the kidney and other portions of the genito-urinary tract on one side of the body, most frequently the left side. In different cases, either the kidney or some other part of the tract is first inflamed, and the other parts later.

The other kidney is apt to become the seat of chronic diffuse nephritis with waxy infiltration of the walls of the arteries.

The lesion seems to begin in the mucous membrane of the pelvis and calyces, and extend from thence first to the pyramidal and afterwards to the cortical portion of the kidneys. In the mucous membrane of the pelvis and calyces, there is a growth of granulation tissue studded with tubercle granula in the stroma, while the epithelial cells proliferate, become de-

formed, and desquamate. This process is often rapidly succeeded by cheesy degeneration of all the inflammatory products.

In the kidney, there is the same production of granulation tissue and tubercle granula, which soon undergo cheesy degeneration, the degeneration involving the adjacent kidney tissue. In addition to this, there is in the rest of the kidney chronic interstitial or suppurative inflammation. So the entire kidney is enlarged, portions are in the condition of cheesy degeneration, or have sloughed away, while the rest of the kidney is dense and hard. Or if suppuration takes place, the kidney is hollowed out into cavities filled with cheesy matter and pus.

Sometimes the process comes to a standstill, and then the cheesy portions are infiltrated with the salts of lime.

#### *Embolism and Thrombosis.*

Acute and chronic endocarditis affecting the left side of the heart, and chronic endarteritis of the aorta, frequently result in the formation of vegetations, portions of which become detached, and lodged as emboli in the branches of the renal artery.

The occlusion of an artery in this way produces in the kidneys wedge-shaped infarctions, varying in their size with the size of the obstructed artery. The infarction loses the natural red color of the kidney, and becomes first yellow and then white. The renal epithelium degenerates and disappears, the tubes become collapsed and shrunken, around the infarction is a zone of congestion and of infiltration with pus-cells. After this the infarction becomes shrunken, dense, and changed into connective tissue. The kidney is then left deformed by the cicatricial depressions and contractions. It is possible, however, for the infarction to become gangrenous, or to be surrounded by a zone of purulent infiltration, and break down so as to form an abscess. Rarely the infarctions are of the hemorrhagic variety.

Embolism of the trunk of the renal artery produces complete necrosis of the kidney.

Infectious emboli are small and produce little purulent foci, see above.

Thrombosis of the renal vein and its branches may occur in patients suffering from chronic Bright's disease.<sup>1</sup> It can also be produced by tumors pressing on the veins, by thrombi of the vena cava; and occurs as a primary lesion dependent on the general condition of the patient.

#### *Hydronephrosis.*

Dilatation of the pelvis and calyces of the kidney is found as a congenital condition. In some cases, other malformations such as club foot, hare-lips, imperforate anus are also present. The pelves and calyces of

---

<sup>1</sup> Moxon, Trans. Lond. Path. Society, 1870, p. 248.



both kidneys, and the ureters are distended with urine, the bladder is also distended and its wall may be hypertrophied. The urethra may be closed, or no obstruction can be demonstrated. In these latter cases it is supposed that there does exist some membranous obstruction which is broken by the probe or catheter used to explore the urethra.

In adult life, hydronephrosis is produced by mechanical obstruction of the urethra or ureters, due to inflammation, tumors, or calculi. According to the position of the obstruction, either one or both kidneys are involved.

The pelvis and calyces are dilated, sometimes enormously, and filled with urine alone, or urine mixed with pus. The kidney tissue is flattened and thinned over the distended cavities. Its texture may remain unchanged, or there may be developed suppurative pyelo-nephritis, or chronic diffuse nephritis.

### *The Cystic Kidney.*

Cysts are formed in the kidneys, both during intra-uterine and extra-uterine life.

The congenital cystic kidney is a very remarkable pathological condition. Either one or both kidneys are enormously enlarged and converted into a mass of cysts. The cysts are of all sizes and are separated from each other by fibrous septa or compressed kidney tissue. They contain a clear, yellow, acid fluid, holding in solution the urinary salts. Or the fluid is turbid and brown, and contains blood, uric acid crystals, and cholestearin. The cysts are lined with a single layer of flat polygonal cells. They seem to be formed by a dilatation of the tubules, and of the capsules of the Malpighian bodies. As causes for such dilatations are found, obliteration of the tubes in the papillæ, and stenosis of the pelvis, ureters, bladder, or urethra. Other congenital malformations are often associated with this one.<sup>1</sup>

In adult life we find three varieties of cystic kidney.

(1) In kidneys which are otherwise normal, there are one or more cysts filled with clear or brown serum, or colloid matter. These cysts do not appear to interfere at all with the function of the kidneys.

(2) In chronic diffuse nephritis, especially in the atrophic form, groups of tubes are dilated. Apparently one or more of the larger tubes in the pyramids is obstructed, and this causes dilatation of a corresponding group of tubes. Such a dilatation may be moderate in size, or it may form cysts visible to the naked eye.

(3) Both kidneys are very much enlarged and converted into a mass of cysts containing clear or colored serum, or colloid matter. The nature of these cysts is uncertain. It is possible that they are congenital.

---

<sup>1</sup> Virch., Ges. Abhandl.

They are sometimes associated with similar cysts in the liver. They seem to produce no renal symptoms until shortly before the patient's death, unless chronic nephritis also exists, and then there are the ordinary symptoms of chronic Bright's disease.

### *Perinephritis.*

The loose connective tissue which is situated around and beneath the kidney may become the seat of suppurative inflammation, and in this way abscesses of considerable size are formed.

Such a perinephritis may be either secondary or primary. The secondary cases are due to extension of the inflammation from abscesses in the vicinity, such as are formed with caries of the spine, pelvic cellulitis, puerperal parametritis, perityphlitis, and suppurative nephritis.

The primary cases occur after exposure to cold, after contusions over the lumbar region, and after great muscular exertion; or no cause can be discovered.

Complicating cases occur in the course of typhus and typhoid fevers and of small-pox.

Most of the reported cases have been in persons between the ages of twenty and forty years. Less frequently children and older persons are affected.

In the idiopathic cases, the connective tissue behind the kidney seems to be the point of origin of the inflammatory process, and it is here that the pus first collects. After the abscess has formed, the suppuration extends and the pus burrows in different directions; backward through the muscles, downward into the iliac fossa, the perineum, the bladder, the scrotum, or the vagina; forward into the peritoneal cavity or the colon, upward through the diaphragm.

The kidney itself is simply compressed by the abscess, or its tissue becomes involved in the suppurative inflammation.

### *Renal Calculi.*

In the kidneys of new-born children, from the first to the fourteenth day after birth, the large tubes of the pyramids often contain small, brownish, rounded bodies composed of the urates of ammonium and sodium. Similar masses may also be present in the calyces and pelves. In still-born children these masses are usually absent. The carbonate and phosphate of lime may be deposited in the tubes of the pyramids in the form of white linear masses in the kidneys of old persons and of those who have suffered from destructive diseases of the bones.

Urate of soda in the form of acicular crystals is deposited both in the tubes and stroma of the kidneys of gouty persons.

Concretions of the urinary salts are often formed in the pelves of the kidneys. They may remain there as rounded masses, or they may at-

tain a large size and be moulded into the shape of the pelvis and calyces. Smaller calculi pass into the ureter and either become impacted there or pass through it into the bladder. The most common form of calculus is that composed of uric acid. But they may also be formed of uric acid with a shell of oxalate of lime, or of oxalate of lime alone, or of the phosphates, or of cystin.

The most serious result of the presence of these calculi is the occlusion of the ureters, or the production of pyelo-nephritis.

### *Tumors.*

*Fibroma.*—Small, hard, white fibrous nodules are frequently found in the pyramids. They are of no special importance. They may be mistaken for miliary tubercles. Large fibromata are very rare.<sup>1</sup>

*Lipoma.*—Small fatty tumors are found in the cortex of the kidney just beneath the capsule. They are composed of fully developed fat-tissue. The fat is developed in the stroma so as to replace the kidney tissue.<sup>2</sup>

*Papilloma.*—Villous tumors formed of tufts of connective tissue covered with epithelium may grow from the mucous membrane of the pelvis.<sup>3</sup> A peculiar form of papillary and cystic growth of the ureter is described.<sup>4</sup>

*Myxo-Sarcoma.*—Large tumors may grow from the pelvis of the kidney. They are not simple myxomata, but are composed of mucous tissue, fat, and sarcomatous tissue.

*Myoma.*—Small tumors composed of smooth muscular fibres and of round cells are found in the cortex close to the capsule.

A tumor composed of striated muscle and round cells is described by Cohnheim.<sup>5</sup>

A tumor composed partly of smooth muscle, partly of striped muscle, and partly of sarcomatous tissue, is described by Eberth.<sup>6</sup>

*Angioma cavernosum* occurs in the form of small nodules situated in the cortex.

*Lymphoma.*—Small white tumors composed of tissue like that of the lymphatic glands are found in cases of leukaemia and pseudo-leukaemia. Less frequently they are found with typhoid fever, scarlet fever, and diphtheria.

*Adenoma.*—This form of tumor is situated in the cortex of the kidney, and may invade the pyramidal portion also. Usually there is only

<sup>1</sup> Wilks, Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., xx.

<sup>2</sup> Virchow: Krank. Geschwülste, Bd. i., p. 385.

<sup>3</sup> Trans. Lond. Path. Soc., 1870, p. 239.

<sup>4</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 66, p. 139.

<sup>5</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 65, p. 64.

<sup>6</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 55, p. 518.



a single tumor, but sometimes two or more, or they may even occur in both kidneys. They vary in size, some are not larger than a pea, others are large as a hen's egg. They are of rounded form, of whitish color, and separated by a capsule from the kidney tissue. The tumors are most frequent in persons over forty years of age.

There are two principal varieties of these tumors : the papillary and the alveolar.

(1) The papillary Adenoma. There are cavities of different sizes, from the walls of which spring branching tufts covered with cylindrical or cuboidal epithelium. These tufts nearly fill the cavities.

(2) The alveolar Adenoma. There is a connective-tissue framework, inclosing small, round, oval or tubular alveoli, lined or filled with cells. The cells are large, polygonal, nucleated bodies.

The adenomata frequently undergo fatty degeneration, which may be so complete that they look like fatty tumors.

Or there may be an excessive development of the stroma, with atrophy of the epithelial cells.

There may be an excessive development and dilatation of the capillaries and veins in the stroma.

Cysts of considerable size may be formed by dilatation of the cavities or alveoli.<sup>1</sup>

There are larger tumors involving the whole of the kidney and accompanied with metastatic growths in other parts of the body, which have the same structure as the papillary adenomata.

A congenital adenoma is described by Weigert.<sup>2</sup>

*Carcinoma*.—Besides secondary carcinoma of the kidney, there is also a primary form. Our knowledge of this has been much obscured by confounding with it adenomata and sarcomata.

There seems to be, however, a real epithelial growth originating in the kidney tubules, which forms tumors of large size and malignant character.

*Sarcoma*.—Tumors formed of connective-tissue cells may originate either in the pelvis of the kidney or in the kidney itself. They form tumors of large size and malignant character. Those which grow from the pelvis are usually myxo-sarcomata. Those which originate in the kidney tissue reach a large size, and are soft and hemorrhagic. Their stroma forms irregular alveoli filled with small round cells.

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus* in its ordinary form of mother and daughter cysts, is

---

<sup>1</sup> Medizinisch. Jahrb., 1883, p. 213. Virch. Arch., Bd. 93, p. 39.

<sup>2</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 67, p. 492.

sometimes found in the kidney. The cysts may open into the pelvis of the kidney, into the pleura, or through the wall of the abdomen.

*Cysticercus cellulosæ* is of very rare occurrence.

*Pentastomum denticulatum* has been seen once by E. Wagner.

*Filaria sanguinis hominis* is found in the arteries, veins, lymphatics, and stroma.

*Strongylus gigas* has been found several times in the pelvis of the kidney.

## THE URINARY BLADDER.

### MALFORMATIONS.

*Extroversion* of the bladder is one of the most frequent malformations, and may occur in either sex. It presents several varieties:

(1) The umbilicus is lower down than usual, the pubic bones are not united at the symphysis, the pelvis is wider and shallower than it should be. Between the umbilicus and pubes the abdominal wall is wanting. In its place is a projecting ovoid mass of mucous membrane, in which may be seen the openings of the ureters. The penis is usually rudimentary; the urethra is an open fissure (epispadia); the clitoris may be separated into two halves. The ureters usually open normally; sometimes their openings are displaced, or are multiple. They may be dilated.

(2) There may be a fissure in the abdominal wall filled up by the perfectly-formed bladder.

(3) The umbilicus may be well formed, and there is a portion of abdominal wall between it and the extrophied bladder.

(4) The external genitals and urethra may be well formed, and the symphysis pubis united, while only the bladder is fissured.

(5) The genitals, urethra, and symphysis may be well formed, the bladder closed, except at the upper part of its anterior wall. The bladder is entirely or in part inverted and pushed through the opening in the abdominal wall.

The *Urachus* normally remains as a very small canal, five to seven centim. long, with a small opening into the bladder, or entirely closed at that point. If there is a congenital obstruction to the flow of urine through the urethra, the urachus may remain open, and the urine pass through it.

*Absence of the bladder* is of rare occurrence. The bladder may be very small, the urine passing almost directly into the urethra. The bladder may be separated into an upper and a lower portion by a circular constriction. It may be completely divided by a vertical septum into two lateral portions. Diverticula of the wall of the bladder are sometimes found in new-born children. Partial or complete closure of the neck of the bladder may occur. This may lead to hydro-nephrosis, or the urine may be discharged through the open urachus.

## CHANGES IN SIZE AND POSITION.

*Dilatation*.—This may be *general* or *partial*, leading to the formation of diverticula.

General dilatation of the bladder is produced by the accumulation of urine in consequence of some mechanical obstacle to its escape, or of paralysis of the muscular walls of the organ. The dilatation is usually uniform, and may be very great, so that the bladder may reach to the umbilicus. If the walls of the bladder are paralyzed or the obstruction occurs suddenly, or is complete, the wall of the bladder is thinned. When an incomplete obstruction exists for some time, the walls of the bladder are apt to hypertrophy, so that, although the bladder is larger than normal, the walls may not only be of the usual thickness, but even very much thicker. In the fœtus, dilatation of the bladder may reach such a size as to interfere with delivery.

The retained urine in dilated bladders is liable to decomposition, leading to inflammation or gangrene of the mucous membrane.

*Diverticula* of the bladder may be produced by the pouching out of circumscribed portions of the wall of the bladder; the wall of the pouch containing all the layers of the bladder-wall. More frequently, however, they are produced by a protrusion of the mucous membrane between hypertrophied bundles of muscle fibres. They may be very small, or they may be as large as a child's head. They may communicate with the bladder by a large or a small opening. The decomposition of stagnant urine in diverticula is apt to induce inflammation. Calculi may be formed in them or may slip into them from the bladder.

*Hypertrophy* of the muscular coat of the bladder is usually produced by mechanical obstructions to the outflow of urine, such as stricture of the urethra, enlarged prostate, calculi, new growths, etc. The muscular coat is thickened uniformly, or assumes a trabeculated appearance. The organ retains its normal capacity, or is dilated, or becomes smaller. The mucous membrane is frequently the seat of chronic or acute inflammation. Dilatation of the ureters and hydronephrosis frequently accompany this condition.

*Hernie* of the bladder sometimes accompany intestinal herniæ through the inguinal and crural canals, and the foramen ovale. The changes in position of the bladder, produced by displacements of the vagina and uterus, will be mentioned with the lesions of those organs.

In the female, the base of the bladder may press downward, causing protrusion of the vaginal wall (*vaginal cystocele*); or there may be inversion and prolapse of bladder through the dilated urethra.

## RUPTURE.—PERFORATION.

Penetrating wounds of the bladder may permit escape of urine into the abdominal cavity, or infiltration into the surrounding connective tis-



sue, or permanent fistulæ. Such wounds are always serious and frequently fatal, owing chiefly to the severe and often gangrenous inflammation, which decomposing urine sets up in the connective tissue, or to the peritonitis induced by the same cause.

Rupture of the bladder may be produced by severe blows and falls when the bladder contains urine. More rarely, rupture takes place from over-distention. Death may occur from rupture of the bladder with escape of urine into the peritoneal cavity without evidences of peritonitis.

Perforations of the bladder are produced by ulceration and gangrene, by abscesses from without, and by cancerous ulceration from the adjoining organs. Fractures of the pelvic bones may produce laceration of the bladder. Perforations of the bladder may lead to the establishment of fistulæ, communicating with the rectum, vagina, uterus, or opening externally.

#### DISTURBANCES OF CIRCULATION.

*Hyperæmia*.—Aside from active hyperæmia of the mucous membrane in acute inflammation, the bladder is not infrequently the seat of chronic congestion from obstruction to the venous circulation. Under these conditions, there may be chronic catarrhal inflammation; or a marked dilatation of the veins (vesical hemorrhoids), which may give rise to hemorrhage, or to obstruction of the opening of the ureters.

*Hemorrhage*.—Extensive hemorrhages into the bladder are commonly due to injury or to the presence of calculi or tumors. Small hemorrhages into the substance of the mucous membrane may accompany inflammation, the hemorrhagic diathesis, scurvy, purpura, small-pox, etc. If the hemorrhage is considerable, and occurs rapidly in an empty bladder, a clot is apt to form; but when the blood mixes with urine as it is extravasated, it more commonly remains liquid, and is discharged as a reddish-brown fluid.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Acute Catarrhal Cystitis*.—This may be incited by the presence of urine which has decomposed under the influence of bacteria; by cantharides or other drugs; by the presence of foreign bodies and calculi; or it may be due to an extension of gonorrhœal urethritis or vaginitis; or it may occur without assignable cause. The mucous membrane is swollen and congested, although these alterations may not be very evident after death. The surfaces may be coated with mucus containing red blood-cells and pus. The epithelium is apt to be loosened and in some places peeled off, so that superficial or deep ulceration may occur. We may find mixed with the urine in the organ, shreds of mucus, pus-cells, epithelial cells of various shapes, usually more or less swollen and granular, or fragments of such cells; red blood-cells and bacteria. Of the bacteria the most common forms are *Bacterium termo* and *Micrococcus*

ureæ (see pp. 80 and 81). Resolution may occur from acute catarrhal cystitis, but it very frequently assumes a chronic character.

*Chronic Cystitis.*—In this form the mucous membrane may be swollen, succulent, grayish, or mottled with spots of congestion or extravasation, and covered with a layer of mucus and pus. Microscopically the membrane may be more or less infiltrated with pus-cells, and pus may be constantly produced and thrown off into the urine. Later the mucous membrane may become thickened either diffusely or in the form of tufts or polypi. In some cases it becomes atrophied. Owing to decomposition of the hæmoglobin in the extravasated blood, the mucosa may become pigmented, brown or slate-colored. The mucous membrane frequently becomes eroded, especially on the most elevated portions, or deep ulcerations may occur. The muscular coats may become paralyzed and the bladder dilated; or the submucosa or the muscularis, or both, may become hypertrophied. The mucous membrane may become incrustated with urinary salts.

In another class of cases the inflammation assumes a more intense and necrotic character. Larger and smaller shreds and patches of the mucosa die, become brown or gray in color, and loosen or peel off, and become mixed with the urine and exudations. The gangrenous process may extend to all the coats of the bladder so that perforation and fatal peritonitis may occur. The gangrenous form of cystitis is most apt to occur in paralytics. In still another class of cases, the inflammation assumes a suppurative character. The submucosa, the intermuscular connective tissue, and the adjacent parts become infiltrated with pus, either diffusely or in the form of larger and smaller abscesses, which may open externally, or internally, forming deep ulcers. In all these cases the inflammation may extend to the ureters and kidneys; it may skip the ureters and involve the kidneys.

*Croupous Inflammation.*—In connection with any of above lesions, the mucous membrane of the bladder may be covered in patches or sometimes over a considerable portion of its surface with a layer of fibrin, either granular or fibrillar, inclosing pus and epithelial cells and bacteria. The mucosa may be infiltrated with fibrin.

This form of inflammation may occur in connection with severe infectious diseases—measles, diphtheria, scarlatina, typhoid fever; in connection with similar inflammation of the external genitals, in puerperal fever, noma, and sometimes in the presence of foreign bodies. It is rarely an idiopathic disease.

*Tubercular Inflammation.*—This disease commences by the formation of miliary tubercles in the mucous membrane of the bladder. By the coalescence of the tubercles and the degeneration of tissue about them, ulcers are formed, and it is most frequently in the ulcerative stage that the lesion is seen. The ulcers, which may be large or small, are usually

most abundant at the base of the organ. Their edges may be cheesy, and miliary tubercles in greater or smaller numbers are usually found in the mucosa about them. Not infrequently large shreds of tissue are loosened and cast off. The mucosa about the ulcers is apt to be infiltrated with small spheroidal cells. Tubercle bacilli are present in many of the tubercles, and in the edges and base of the ulcers. They may also be found in the urine, and are then of diagnostic significance. Catarrhal inflammation is a very constant accompaniment of this lesion. Tubercular cystitis may occur in connection with tubercular inflammation of the lungs, intestines, or of the kidney, uterus, prostate, etc.

#### TUMORS.

*Fibromata* have been described, occurring as small nodular tumors in the submucosa, but they are rare.

Aside from the polypoid thickenings of the mucosa occurring in chronic cystitis, soft vascular *papillomata* are of frequent occurrence. These tumors vary in size from that of a pea to that of a pigeon's egg or larger. They consist of a fibrous, often very vascular stroma, and are covered on the surface with numerous small, closely-set, villous projections, over which are irregular layers of elongated or cylindrical cells. These tumors are very liable to bleed; are often accompanied by vesical catarrh, and may be covered by a precipitate of urinary salts. The epithelium is liable to peel off from the surface of the villi and appear in the urine. *Sarcoma* of the bladder has been described.

*Carcinoma*.—Carcinoma of the bladder is most frequently secondary and is then rarely due to metastasis, but usually to an extension of the growth from neighboring parts, as the uterus, vagina, or rectum.

Primary carcinoma of the bladder may occur:

(1) As a diffuse *scirrhous infiltration* of the entire wall of the bladder, usually with ulcerations of its inner surface.

(2) As a *circumscribed nodule* which grows inward and outward, ulcerating on its inner surface, and sometimes producing perforations.

(3) As *villous* or *papillomatous growth*. The tumor grows from one or more points of the inner surface of the bladder. It is formed of tubular follicles, lined with cylindrical epithelium, and on its inner free surface, of tufts covered with cylindrical epithelium. The new growth may involve the entire thickness of the wall of the bladder.

(4) A few cases of carcinoma have been described in which the stroma contained a varying quantity of smooth muscle-tissue.<sup>1</sup>

*Cysts*.—*Dermoid cysts* of the wall of the bladder have been described, but are rare. Small cysts with serous contents sometimes occur in the

<sup>1</sup> The literature of tumors of the bladder may be found in Stein's "Study of the Tumors of the Bladder," 1881.



mucous membrane. A part of them at least are believed to be due to faulty embryonal development.

#### PARASITES, ETC.

Among the animal parasites occasionally found in the bladder may be mentioned—*Echinococcus*, *Distoma hematobium*, *Filaria sanguinis*, *Ascarides* and *Oxyurides*.

*Bacteria* of various forms not infrequently occur in the bladder, particularly in connection with chronic cystitis. *B. termo*, *Micrococcus urinæ*, and *Sarcina* may be mentioned as of most frequent occurrence.

A great variety of foreign bodies may be found in the bladder, particularly in the female. If their stay is long, they are apt to become incrustated with urinary salts.

#### CALCULI.

Vesical calculi may occur singly or in great numbers, and vary greatly in size, ranging from small, sand-like particles, up to masses four or five inches in diameter, but the usual range is from the size of a pea to that of a hen's egg. They are usually oval, spheroidal, or elongated; or when several are present, they are apt to be faceted. The surface may be smooth or rough. They are usually more or less distinctly lamellated, and are frequently formed around a central body called a nucleus, which may either be formed of urinary salts or some foreign body. Their most common constituents are *phosphates*, *uric acid* and *urates*, and *calcium oxalate*, or various combinations of these.

*Uric Acid Calculi*.—These are the most common of vesical calculi. In the form of small brownish-red crystalline aggregations, they may be passed as 'gravel.' The larger uric acid calculi are not commonly of very great size, are frequently finely nodulated on the surface, but may be smooth. The color varies from light-yellow to dark reddish-brown; they are usually dense and lamellated.

*Calculi formed of urates*.—Calculi composed of pure urates are rare, these salts being more commonly combined with uric acid, and the phosphates to form the complex calculi. Sodium urate, in the form of small, spined, more or less globular crystalline masses, forms one of the forms of 'gravel.'

*Phosphatic calculi*.—Pure *calcium phosphate* calculi are rarely found, as whitish, usually smooth and small lamellated concretions.

*Mixed or triple phosphate* calculi are common, and frequently attain large size. These calculi are sometimes pure, but the deposit is more frequently associated with other salts, either as incrusting or intercalated lamellæ. Triple phosphate calculi are usually rough on the surface, of grayish-white color, lamellated, and frequently very friable.

Small gray or white hard and usually smooth calculi of pure *calcium*

*carbonate* occur rarely. Calcium carbonate is sometimes passed as gravel in the form of minute spheroidal bodies, either singly or in clusters.

*Calcium oxalate* calculi (mulberry calculi) are comparatively common, either pure or in combination with uric acid or the phosphates. Calcium oxalate may occur in the form of very small, hard, smooth concretions, or as larger, heavy, hard, finely or coarsely nodulated brown or blackish lamellated masses. The nucleus or some of the lamellæ, or both, are often composed of uric acid.

*Cystin calculi* are usually ovoidal in shape, of waxy consistency, of clear or brownish or greenish-yellow color, with mamillated surface and crystalline fracture. Cystin may be associated in a variety of ways with other calculi.

*Xanthin calculi*, which are very rare, are usually of moderate size, smooth, of a cinnamon or cinnabar-red color, lamellated, and oval or flattened in shape.

Solid masses of fibrin and blood sometimes occur in the bladder, and may exist as independent structures, or form nuclei for the deposit of urinary salts.

For a detailed account of calculi, the conditions under which they form, modes of analysis, etc., we refer to special works on this subject.

## THE URETHRA.

### CONGENITAL MALFORMATIONS.

Some of the malformations of the urethra are described with those of the penis.

The urethra may be impervious, or may open at the root of the penis. More commonly there is partial obliteration or stricture of some part of the canal.

The entire urethra may be dilated into a sac full of urine.

There may be a canal on the dorsum of the penis, formed by the fusion of the spermatic cords, and opening in the glans above the urethra.

There may be two or more openings of the urethra.

The canal may be dislocated so as to open in the inguinal region.

A number of cases have been reported in which a valve in the urethra has produced hypertrophy of the bladder, dilatation of the ureters, and hydronephrosis.<sup>1</sup>

Owing to its narrowness, greater length, and peculiar connections with the internal generative organs, the male urethra is much more liable to disease than the female.

### CHANGES IN SIZE AND POSITION.

*Dilatation* of the urethra may be produced by strictures, or by calculi

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 49, p. 348.

or other bodies fixed in its lumen. The dilatations are fusiform or sacculated in shape, and may reach the size of an orange or be even larger.

Strictures of the urethra are usually produced by inflammation of its walls.

The stricture may be *temporary*, produced by a diffuse inflammatory swelling of the mucous membrane, or by the raising of the relaxed membrane into a fold or pocket.

*Permanent strictures* are produced by structural changes in the walls of the urethra.

(1) The mucous membrane and submucous tissue is left hard and unyielding by the preceding inflammation. Subsequently, the new fibrous tissue contracts and narrows the canal.

(2) Ulceration of the mucous membrane leaves cicatricial tissue, which contracts, and also produces adhesions and bands of fibrous tissue.

(3) There is fibrous induration of the corpus spongiosum, and consequent constriction of the urethra.

The most frequent position of strictures is at the junction of the membranous and spongy portions of the urethra, or close to this point. They also occur at the fossa navicularis and the meatus, but frequently in the prostatic portion. There may be one stricture or several. The consequences of stricture are dilatation of the urethra, the bladder, the ureters, and hydronephrosis; inflammation and ulceration of the urethra behind the stricture, with perforation, infiltration of urine, or the formation of fistulæ.<sup>1</sup>

The urethra may also be obstructed by folds of the mucous membrane; by muscular valves at the neck of the bladder; by wounds; by polypi and swollen glands; by new growths; by changes in the prostate and perineum; by calculi, mucus, blood, and echinococci coming from the bladder; by foreign bodies introduced from without.

*Prolapse* and inversion of the mucous membrane is seen in young girls and women in rare cases. There is a bluish-red swelling, from the size of a pea to that of a walnut, at the meatus. In the male, invagination of the mucous membrane of the urethra has been seen after injuries of the perineum.

#### WOUNDS, RUPTURE, PERFORATION.

Wounds of the urethra are produced in many ways, but most commonly by catheters and bougies. The wounds may cicatrize, or there may be infiltration of urine, or the formation of fistulæ or false passages.

Ruptures of the urethra are produced by severe contusions and by

---

<sup>1</sup> For literature of stricture of urethra and plates illustrating several forms, see article by Dittel, in Pitha and Billroth's "Handbuch der allg. Chirurgie," Bd. 3, Abth. 3.



fracture of the pelvic bones. Extravasations of blood and urine, and gangrenous inflammation of the surrounding soft parts, are the ordinary results.

Ulceration and perforation of the urethra may lead to the formation of fistulæ, which open in various directions through the skin.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Catarrhal Urethritis* may be simple and due to the action of chemical irritants; to the extension to the urethra of inflammation from other parts, and to unknown causes; but it is most frequently due to the action the gonorrhœal poison. In its acute form, it involves either a portion or the whole of the urethra. The mucous membrane is red, swollen, and covered with muco-pus. The inflammation may extend to the fibrous wall of the urethra, the corpora spongiosa and cavernosa. This may result in the formation of new connective tissue, or of abscesses, especially near the fossa navicularis. The inflammation may also extend to the bladder, the glands of Cowper, the prostate, the spermatic cord, and the testicles. The inguinal glands also may be swollen and inflamed, and the lymphatic vessels on the dorsum of the penis may be involved in the same process.

Chronic inflammation of the urethra may exist for a long time with the production of a muco-purulent exudation, but without the occurrence of marked structural lesions. In other cases it leads to ulceration, to fibrous induration of the wall of the canal, to induration and swelling of the mucous follicles, to polypoid thickenings of the mucous membrane.

The exudation in gonorrhœal inflammation of the mucous membranes not only of the urethra, but also of the vagina and of the eye, constantly contains, in greater or less numbers, a form of micrococcus, which is said by some observers—although this is denied by others—to present characteristic morphological characters.

The micrococcus—called gonococcus—which is spheroidal or ovoidal in shape, usually occurs in pairs or in groups of four or more, and may be contained in the pus-cells, or lie on their surfaces or free in the fluid. The pus-cells sometimes contain very large numbers of the micrococci. While the very constant presence of these micrococci justify the conjecture that they may stand in an etiological relation to the gonorrhœal inflammation, the experiments thus far recorded upon their purification by culture and inoculation have not led to such definite results as to justify us in assigning to them a definite rôle in the disease. The conclusions of investigators are in many respects at variance; the results of animal inoculations are usually negative; and the inoculations thus far practised on the human subject have not been sufficiently extensive and exact.

The gonococcus may be stained by drying the exudation on a cover glass and using fuchsin or methylin blue.<sup>1</sup>

*Croupous inflammation* is sometimes seen in children. Fibrinous casts of a small or large portion of the canal may be formed.

*Syphilitic ulcers* may be situated at the meatus, or as far back as the fossa navicularis. They are apt to produce strictures.

*Tubercular inflammation* rarely occurs in the mucous membrane of the urethra in connection with tubercular inflammation of the bladder, prostate or testicles.

#### TUMORS.

Aside from the polypoid outgrowths from the mucous membrane of the urethra as the result of chronic inflammation, fibrous polyps may occur congenitally, or polyps containing glandular structures or cysts rarely occur. *Carcinoma* may occur as a result of local extension from adjacent organs or metastasis from the bladder. *Cysts* may occur in the mucous membrane as a result of the dilatation of the mucous glands. Circumscribed masses of dilated veins occasionally occur in the urethra, forming the so-called *urethral hemorrhoids*.

The sinus pocularis may be dilated in children by the retention of its secretion, so as to form a tumor which may obstruct the exit of urine, cause hypertrophy of the bladder, and dilatation of the ureters.

---

<sup>1</sup> The bibliography of the so-called *Gonococcus* may be for the most part found in journal articles by Neisser, "Die Mikrokokken der Gonorrhoea," Deutsch. med. Wochenschrift, May 13th, 1882, Bd. viii., No. 20, p. 279, and by Keyser, "Is Gonorrhoea a Bacteria disease?" Maryland Med. Jour., Feb. 15th, 1883, Vol. ix., No. xx. p. 481; or in Magnin and Sternberg's "Bacteria," 1884.

## THE ORGANS OF GENERATION.

---

### FEMALE.

#### THE VULVA.

##### MALFORMATIONS.

The external genitals may be entirely absent or imperfectly developed. The fissure between the labia may be unformed, or the labia may grow together, with or without obstruction of the urethra. The clitoris and nymphæ may be abnormally large, or the nymphæ may be increased in number. The clitoris may be abnormally long, resembling a penis; at the same time the vagina is narrow, the uterus small and undeveloped or malformed, the ovaries small, sometimes situated in the labia, the mammæ small, and the body of a masculine character. Such cases are sometimes called pseudo-hermaphrodites. The clitoris may be perforated by the urethra, or may be cleft and apparently double.

The hymen frequently exhibits various anomalies. It may be entirely absent. The opening may be very large, or in unusual places; there may be several openings; the free edge may be beset with papillary projections; there may be no opening at all.<sup>1</sup>

##### HEMORRHAGE, HYPERÆMIA, ETC.

Hemorrhage may take place from wounds or ulcers of the vulva, but the most important form of hemorrhage is that which occurs in the connective tissue of the labia majora. This is produced during labor, or from external injury. One of the labia may be swollen and distended by the extravasated blood, until it is as large as a child's head. The blood may be gradually absorbed, or it may decompose, with suppuration or gangrene of the surrounding tissue. The purulent matter may escape through the skin, and the patient recover; or the suppuration may extend into the pelvis and cause death.

---

<sup>1</sup> For description and illustrations of anomalies of the hymen, which may be useful for medico-legal purposes, see Courty's "Diseases of Uterus, Ovaries, Fallopian Tubes," Trans. by McLaren, 1883, p. 90.



A varicose condition of the veins of the labia is not infrequent. *Edema* may occur in acute form in pregnant and puerperal women, and may terminate in suppuration or gangrene. *Edema* of the labia majora frequently accompanies disturbances of the venous circulation, as in certain heart and lung diseases, or it may occur in chronic diffuse nephritis or other wasting diseases, or as a result of thrombosis or other disturbances of circulation in the uterine or peri-vaginal venous plexuses. This may be excessive, leading to the transudation of fluid through the skin, to the formation of vesicles, to superficial erosion, or even to gangrene.

#### INFLAMMATION.

The skin, mucous membrane, connective tissue, and glands of the vulva may be the seat of inflammation. Acute catarrh of the mucous membrane may be caused by a variety of irritating influences, but is most frequently due to gonorrhœal infection. The mucous membrane is swollen and red, and covered with a muco-purulent exudation. The labia may be swollen and the glands are liable to be involved, and abscesses of the labia may be developed. Chronic catarrhal inflammation may lead to superficial or deep ulceration of the mucous membrane, or to papillary outgrowths, or to thickening of the labia. Suppurative inflammation of the tissue of the labia may occur in connection with a similar process in neighboring parts. Erysipelatous inflammation of the skin of the vulva is frequent in young children, and may cause death. In adults it is less common. Inflammation of the vulvo-vaginal glands may be acute and produce abscesses; or chronic and produce induration of the gland.

Gangrene may follow erysipelatous inflammation, may occur after parturition, may accompany severe exhausting and infectious diseases, or may occur as an epidemic disease, especially among children. It may be the result of bruises or other injuries. In some forms, such as those known as *noma* and *hospital gangrene*, the destruction of tissue proceeds with extreme rapidity.

Herpes, eczema, lichen, prurigo, etc., may be found on the skin of the vulva.

Syphilitic inflammation and ulceration is of frequent occurrence on the vulva, particularly on the mucous surfaces, and frequently lead to considerable destruction of tissue and cicatricial contractions.

*Croupous inflammation* may occur with or without diphtheria and a similar lesion of the fauces, and is frequently associated with gangrene.

*Lupus*.—This form of inflammation, usually with more or less destructive ulceration, occasionally occurs in the vulva.

#### TUMORS.

*Fibroma*.—Circumscribed fibrous tumors are found in the connective tissue of the labia, mons veneris, perineum, clitoris, and entrance to the

vagina. They may attain a large size, and, attached only by a pedicle, may hang far down between the legs. The skin is usually movable over the surface of these tumors.

*Fibroma diffusum* (elephantiasis).—This usually involves the clitoris or the labia, or both, and may extend to surrounding parts of the skin. It consists essentially of a diffuse hypertrophy of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, with or without involvement of the papillæ and epidermis. The surface may be smooth or rough. Sometimes when the new growth is circumscribed, rough or smooth polypoid growths, often of large size, are formed. When the papillæ and epidermis are much involved, larger and smaller cauliflower-like excrescences may cover the hypertrophied parts, and the surface be very rough and scaly.

*Papillomata*.—These growths consist of hypertrophied papillæ covered with thick layers of epithelium. They vary in size from that of a pea to that of an apple, and have a cauliflower appearance.

*Syphilitic Condylomata*.—In one form, the so-called *mucous patch*, there is an infiltration of the papillary layers of the skin or mucous membrane with variously shaped cells and fluid, so that the tissue has a gelatinous appearance. In others cases, there is an hypertrophy of the papillæ, so that larger and smaller wart-like excrescences are formed. This is called the *pointed condyloma*. *Lipomata*, *fibro-myomata*, and *fibro-sarcomata* are of occasional occurrence of the vulva. *Chondroma* of the clitoris has been described. *Carcinoma* of the vulva may be primary, usually in the form of epithelioma of the clitoris or labia, or it may be secondary to cancer of the uterus, vagina, etc.

*Cysts* are found in the connective tissue of the labia majora and minora. They are from the size of a pea to that of a child's head. They may contain serum, colloid material, purulent or bloody fluid, or they may have the characters of dermoid cysts or atheroma cysts. Their origin is in many cases obscure. In some cases they are doubtless due to dilatation of lymph-vessels. Cysts may be formed by a stoppage and filling with fluid of the canal of Nuck, or by a dilatation of the ducts or acini of the vulvo-vaginal glands.

## THE VAGINA.

### MALFORMATIONS.

The vagina may be entirely absent, and the internal organs of generation also absent, or imperfectly developed.

Either the upper or the lower portion of the canal may be absent while the remaining portion is present.

The vagina may be closed by an imperforate hymen or by fibrous septa at any part of its canal. The canal may be abnormally small without being occluded.

The vagina may be double, in connection with a double uterus; or, while the uterus is normal, the vagina may be incompletely divided by a longitudinal septum.

#### CHANGES IN SIZE AND POSITION.

*Dilatation* of the vagina is produced by tumors, by the prolapsed uterus, and by the accumulation of blood and mucus behind constrictions or obliterations of the canal. *Lengthening* of the vagina is produced by any cause which draws the uterus upward. *Narrowing* of the vagina is found as a senile change; is produced by tumors and by ulceration of the wall of the canal. Extensive ulcers may even cause entire obliteration of the canal.

*Prolapse* of the vagina occurs by itself, usually as a result of thickening or laxity of its walls, or in connection with prolapse of the uterus. As an idiopathic process, it usually takes place soon after parturition. A larger or smaller portion of the canal is inverted, and projects through the vulva. The entire circumference of the canal may be inverted and prolapsed, or only the anterior or posterior wall. The prolapse is at first small, but may afterwards gradually increase in size, and may drag down the uterus with it. In other cases, prolapse of the uterus is the primary lesion, and the vagina is inverted by the descent of that organ, or the body of the uterus may retain its normal position, while an hypertrophy and lengthening of the cervix alone drags down the vagina.

*Hernia vesico-vaginalis*—cystocele—may be either the cause or effect of a prolapse of the vagina and uterus. If the cystocele is the primary lesion, it begins as a small projection of the wall of the bladder into the anterior part of the vagina. As the urine accumulates in this sac, it increases in size, projects through the vulva, draws down the vagina and the anterior lip of the cervix, and finally the entire uterus. If the cystocele is the secondary lesion, it is simply produced by the dragging down of the posterior wall of the bladder by the inverted vagina.

*Hernia intestino-vaginalis*.—A portion of the intestines may become fixed in Douglas' cul-de-sac between the rectum and uterus. This portion of intestine gradually becomes larger, pushes forward the posterior wall of the vagina, inverts and fills up that canal, and finally projects through the vulva. It may drag with it the posterior wall of the vagina and the uterus.

*Rectocele vaginalis*.—A sac is formed by the projection of the anterior wall of the rectum and the posterior wall of the vagina. This lesion is of rare occurrence, and does not reach a large size.

When the vagina is prolapsed, there is usually an inflammatory condition of the lining membrane or a thickening of the epidermis.

#### WOUNDS. PERFORATIONS.

Wounds of the vagina are made by penetrating instruments, by for-



ceps and other obstetrical weapons, and by the fœtus during delivery. Such wounds may heal, may give rise to large hemorrhages, may suppurate, may produce abscesses in the surrounding tissues, may leave fistulous openings into the vagina, or may cause constriction or obliteration of its canal.

*Vesico-vaginal fistulæ* are usually produced by injuries from instruments or from the fœtus during delivery; less frequently by ulceration of the vagina, bladder, or adjacent connective tissue, or by abscess in the surrounding parts. The fistulæ form an opening between either the bladder or the urethra and the vagina. They allow the urine to pass into the vagina. Spontaneous cure does not take place.

*Recto-vaginal fistulæ* are formed in the same way as the last-mentioned. They allow the passage of gas or fæces into the vagina. They sometimes heal spontaneously.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Catarrhal Inflammation* of the vaginal mucous membrane may be acute or chronic. It is most frequently caused by gonorrhœal infection, but may be due to local irritation or depend upon general causes. It not infrequently occurs in the new-born. In the acute form, the mucous membrane is swollen and frequently covered with a muco-purulent or a purulent exudation. In the chronic form, the mucous membrane may be swollen, covered with a purulent exudation; there may be an exfoliation of epithelium, shallow or deep erosions, or ulcers. In other cases, the mucous membrane is thickened, dense, and sometimes pigmented, or it may be roughened, covered with papillæ, or it may be relaxed and prolapsed.

*Croupous Inflammation* may occur after parturition, in dysentery, in typhus and typhoid fever, diphtheria, scarlatina, measles, and other infectious diseases. The mucous membrane is swollen and covered with a grayish layer of fibrin and pus. The mucosa and sub-mucosa may be infiltrated with fibrin and pus. The infiltrated portions of the mucosa and submucosa may die and become gangrenous, and thus deep and extensive ulcers be formed.

*Suppurative Inflammation* of the fibro-muscular coat of the vagina may occur after injuries or in pregnant and puerperal women. Abscesses may be formed which penetrate into the labia or into the pelvic connective tissue. In other cases, the intense phlegmonous inflammation may lead to the death and casting off of portions of the vaginal wall, or even of the entire wall.

*Gangrene* of the vagina may occur as a result of croupous or intense suppurative or syphilitic inflammation, or from unknown causes. In the form of *noma* it may be very extensive and rapidly destructive.

*Tubercular and Syphilitic Inflammation*, usually leading to more or

less extensive ulceration, may occur in any part of the vagina. Tubercular inflammation is secondary to tuberculosis of other parts. Syphilitic ulcers may heal, sometimes leaving marked cicatrices, and sometimes not.

#### TUMORS.

*Fibroma, fibro-myoma, sarcoma, myoma lævicellulare*, are of occasional occurrence in the vagina. *Myoma striocellulare* is of rare occurrence.

*Papillomata* are of frequent occurrence as a result of chronic inflammation. *Carcinoma* of the vagina is usually secondary to cancer of the uterus. It may be primary as a circumscribed nodular tumor, or more frequently it occurs in a papillary and ulcerating form and often spreads to neighboring parts.

*Cysts*.—These are not very common and may be small or as large as a hen's egg. They may be lined with flattened epithelium, and contain serous or viscid, dark-colored or transparent fluid.

#### PARASITES.

Among the animal parasites *Oxyuris* and *Trichomonas vaginalis* are of occasional occurrence. Among the vegetable forms *Oidium albicans*, *Leptothrix* are occasionally seen, while *micrococci* and various other forms of bacteria are common. The pathogenic significance of the bacteria in the vagina is not yet established.

#### THE UTERUS.

##### MALFORMATIONS.

The uterus, up to the third month of intra-uterine life, consists of two large cornua, which by the fusion of their lower ends form the uterus.

The uterus, tubes, and vagina may be entirely absent, with or without absence of the external genitals. Or the uterus alone, or the upper part of the vagina also, may be absent.

The uterus may be only rudimentary, while the vagina is normal. It then appears as a flattened solid body with solid cornua. Or there are two cornua joined at their lower extremities so as to form a small double uterus. Or the uterus is represented by a small sac, which may or may not communicate with the vagina. Or there is a very small uterus, with thin muscular walls and two large cornua.

Only one of the cornua which should form the uterus may be developed, while the other is arrested in its growth. The uterus is then a long cylindrical body, terminating above in one tube. On the side where the other horn should have been developed, there is no tube, or only a rudimentary one. Both ovaries are usually present.

The two cornua may be fully developed, but their lower ends remain

separated, and form a double uterus. An entire separation into two distinct uteri and vaginae is very rare. More frequently, the uterus consists of one body, divided by a septum into two cavities. There are then two cervical portions of the uterus projecting into a single vagina, or each into a separate vagina. Or there is only a single cervix. The septum in the uterus may be complete, or only partial.

We also find abnormal size of the uterus, abnormal flexions; the cervix may be solid, or may be closed by the vaginal mucous membrane. Or the cervix may have an abnormal form with a small opening or canal.<sup>1</sup>

#### CHANGES IN SIZE.

In the new-born infant, the uterus is small, the body flattened, the cervix disproportionately large. During childhood, the organ increases in size, but the body remains small in proportion to the cervix. At puberty the shape changes, and the body becomes larger.

At every menstruation the uterus is somewhat swollen and congested. After pregnancy it does not return to its virgin size, but remains somewhat larger. In old age, it gradually becomes smaller; its walls are harder and more fibrous.

*Abnormal Smallness* of the uterus is sometimes found as an arrest of development. The uterus in adult life retains the size and shape of that of the infant. It may result, however, from chronic endometritis, from repeated pregnancies, from old age, or from chronic exhausting diseases. Its cavity may be smaller than normal, or distended with mucus. Large myomata sometimes cause marked atrophy of the uterine wall. Atrophy of the vaginal portion of the uterus is sometimes observed after repeated pregnancies, sometimes without known cause. Narrowing and obliteration of the cavity of the uterus and of the cervix are usually produced by chronic inflammation.

*Enlargement of the Uterus* may be due to too early development. It is accompanied by abnormally early development of all the sexual organs and functions. The uterus may be enlarged in connection with heart disease, prolapse and abnormal flexions and versions, chronic inflammations, repeated pregnancies, myomata, and accumulations of blood or mucus in the uterine cavity. Enlargement of the vaginal portion may be produced by the above causes, and is also found without known cause. One or both lips of the cervix may be uniformly increased in size, or they may be lobulated.

Dilatation of the uterus is produced by accumulations of blood, mucus, or pus, in consequence of narrowing or obliteration of the cervix

---

<sup>1</sup> Illustrations of various forms of malformations of the cervix may be found in the translation by McLaren of Courty's "Diseases of the Uterus, Ovaries, etc.," 1883.



or vagina. The uterine walls may retain their normal thickness, be thickened or thinned. The most frequent position of the stenosis is the os internum. The retained contents after a time change in character, forming a thin serous fluid—*hydrometra*—or they may be mixed with blood. The dilated uterus is not usually larger than an apple, but it sometimes reaches enormous dimensions. If both os internum and os externum are closed, the cervical cavity may be also dilated, and the uterus have an hour-glass shape. If the obstruction is in the vagina, the uterus and vagina may form a large flask-shaped body, and the line of demarcation between cervix and vagina be lost. In some cases the dilatation is confined to the cervix. If the obstruction is not complete, the retained fluid may escape into the vagina and afterward accumulate again.

Accumulations of menstrual blood in the cavity of the uterus—*hematometra*—is usually produced by congenital stenosis of the cervix or vagina. The dilated uterus may reach an enormous size. If the fluid is not evacuated by surgical interference, there may be either rupture or ulcerative perforation of the uterus. The blood may escape into the abdominal cavity or be shut in by adhesions, or perforate into the bladder or intestines. Sometimes the blood passes into the Fallopian tubes, dilates them, and escapes through their abdominal ends.

#### CHANGES IN POSITION.

The body of the uterus may become fixed in an abnormal position; while the situation of the cervix is unchanged. The body may be bent forward—*anteflexion*; backward—*retroflexion*; or sideways—*lateral flexion*. The flexion may be slight, or so great that the neck and body form an acute angle. Anteflexion is the most common variety, and that in which the flexion is greatest. Peritoneal adhesions, flaccidity of the uterine walls particularly after delivery, atrophy of the walls, ovarian and other tumors, etc., are the usual causes of flexions.

*The Versions* of the uterus consist in an abnormal inclination of the long axis of the organ to that of the vagina. The uterus may be inclined backward, forward, or to one side.

*Retroversion* is very much the most common. The fundus uteri is directed backward and downward; the cervix, forward and upward. This condition is found in various degrees; in the highest, the fundus lies in Douglas' cul de sac with the cervix upward, so that the axis of the uterus is parallel to that of the vagina, but in a direction nearly opposite to the normal one. Abnormal looseness of the uterine ligaments, abnormally large capacity of the pelvis, hypertrophy or tumors of the uterus, and pregnancy during the first four months, are some of the more common conditions under which this lesion occurs.

*Anteversion*.—Inclination of the fundus forward and downward, and of the cervix backward and upward is not common, and seldom reaches a

high degree. It occurs under the same general external conditions as ante flexion.

*Lateroversion* is not very common as a simple lesion, but is not infrequently combined with other displacements. It may be produced by congenital shortening of one of the broad ligaments, by adhesions, or by the pressure of tumors.

The greater degrees of version may produce very grave lesions. The urethra and rectum may be compressed. Cystitis, perforation of the bladder, dilatation of the ureters and hydronephrosis, and fatal obstruction of the bowels may follow. If pregnancy exists, abortion may take place, or the inverted uterus may be forced through the peritoneum and posterior wall of the vagina and project through the vulva. In the non-pregnant uterus, pressure on the veins, and consequent chronic inflammation of the organ may follow.

*Prolapsus uteri* consists of a descent of the uterus into the vagina. The uterus may be only slightly lowered or it may project at the vulva. In complete prolapse we find a tumor projecting through the vulva, partly covered by the distended vagina, and presenting the opening of the os externum near its centre. The bladder and rectum may be drawn down with the vagina or may remain in place. The exposed cervix and vagina usually become inflamed and sometimes ulcerated, or the mucous membrane may become thickened. The lesion is frequently complicated by hypertrophy of the cervix.

Gradual prolapse, which is most frequent, may be due to an increased weight of the uterus, as in pregnancy, inflammatory enlargement, the presence of tumors, etc.; or to some abnormal condition of the uterine supports. It is frequently caused by a vaginal cystocele or rectocele. Sudden prolapse is most apt to occur in an enlarged uterus or one unduly heavy by reason of tumors connected with it. It is most common in sub-volution after parturition.

*Elevation* of the uterus is produced by mechanical causes crowding or dragging it upward, as adhesions, tumors, etc. The vagina is drawn up and lengthened, and the vaginal portion of the cervix may be obliterated.

*Inversion* of the uterus consists of an invagination of the fundus. The fundus may be invaginated in the body; the fundus and body in the cervix; or the entire organ in the vagina. It usually occurs when the uterine walls are relaxed, and is very frequently due to traction on the placenta during parturition. It may take place spontaneously after parturition. It may be produced by intra-uterine tumors. The mucous membrane of the inverted organ is frequently inflamed, particularly when the inversion is complete.

*Herniæ* of the uterus are rare. *Ventral herniæ* may occur during the latter months of pregnancy; the peritoneum, aponeuroses, and skin

being forced outward to form a sac in which the uterus lies. Crural *herniæ* are produced by the drawing down of the uterus and ovaries into the sac of an intestinal *herniæ*. Inguinal hernia may be produced in the same way or be congenital. Ischiadic hernia has been seen. Pregnancy may occur in the uterus while situated in a crural or inguinal hernia.

#### RUPTURE AND PERFORATION.

Rupture of the unimpregnated uterus is rare. It may, however, occur when the uterine cavity is distended with blood or serum, or in connection with large myomata of the uterine walls.

In the gravid uterus, ruptures have been seen in nearly every month of pregnancy, but most frequently toward the end. The rupture may be produced by thinning of the uterine wall by tumors, or by violent contusions.

The act of parturition is the most frequent cause. Malpositions of the fœtus, narrowing of the pelvis, protracted labor, thinning of the uterine wall from tumors, forcible use of the forceps and other instruments are the ordinary causes. The rupture may be in the body of the uterus or the cervix; it may be large or small; it may extend completely or only partly through the uterine wall. The consequences of partial rupture are hemorrhage, gangrenous inflammation of the edges of the rupture, peritonitis, and usually death. In rare cases, the rupture cicatrizes, and the patient recovers. Complete rupture usually causes death in a short time. The fœtus escapes partly or completely into the abdominal cavity. If the patient survives the immediate shock, fatal peritonitis soon ensues. In rare cases, the fœtus is shut in by adhesions, and the patient survives.

Perforations of the uterus may be produced by carcinoma, by abscesses in its neighborhood, and by ovarian cysts.

#### HYPERÆMIA, UTERINE AND PERI-UTERINE HEMORRHAGE.

*Hyperæmia*.—Aside from the active menstrual hyperæmia, the uterus may be hyperæmic in acute and chronic inflammation, as a result of displacement of the organ, and in certain forms of heart disease. The organ is usually enlarged, the mucous membrane swollen, and the veins more or less evidently dilated.

*Hemorrhage*.—Effusion of blood into the cavity of the uterus occurs normally at the menstrual periods. For the abnormalities to which this function is subject we refer to works on gynæcology. Effusions of blood at other than the menstrual periods may be caused by mechanical hyperæmia, by hemorrhoids, by acute hyperæmia, by intra-uterine polypi and other tumors, by acute and chronic inflammation, by typhus fever, scurvy, etc., by ulcerating carcinoma, by abortions and miscarriages.



A peculiar form of hemorrhage is the polypoid hæmatoma, or fibrinous polypus of the uterus. It occurs after parturition and after abortions. The portion of the uterine wall where the placenta was attached, with or without a portion of retained placenta, forms the point of attachment of the pedicle of the polypus. We find a large, polypoid, bloody mass, firmly attached by a pedicle to the uterine wall. The uterus enlarges with the growth of the polypus; the cervix is dilated, and the thrombus projects into and may even fill up the vagina. The formation of such a thrombus is accompanied by repeated hemorrhages.

Hemorrhage in the substance of the uterus occurs in old age. The mucous membrane and uterine wall are infiltrated with blood, and there is some blood in the uterine cavity.

*Peri-uterine* or *Retro-Uterine Hematocele* consists in an accumulation of blood around the uterus or in Douglas' cul de-sac. It may consist of blood extravasated into the abdominal cavity, which settles into the pelvis; or, in consequence of local hyperæmia, there may be repeated extravasations of blood. In the latter case, the local peritonitis may produce false membranes, between the layers of which hemorrhages take place. A similar condition rarely occurs in the male. The hemorrhagic mass may become encapsulated, or may soften or suppurate, and perforate into the rectum or vagina, or may be absorbed. A form of extra-peritoneal hematocele is described in which the blood lies between the folds of the broad ligament. The extravasation may proceed from hemorrhage of any of the abdominal viscera or rupture of aneurisms; from vascular new-formed, false membranes; from rupture of the varicose veins of the broad ligaments; from rupture of hemorrhagic cysts of the ovaries; from the Fallopian tubes in tubal pregnancy, or in hematometra, or from general causes, such as scurvy, purpura, etc. In some cases the extravasation begins at a menstrual period, and increases at the succeeding periods.

*Ante-uterine hæmatocele* is of occasional occurrence, either in connection with the retro-uterine form, or when the posterior cul-de-sac is obliterated.

## INFLAMMATION.

### I. OF THE UNIMPREGNATED UTERUS.

*Acute Catarrhal Endometritis.*—In this disease, which in its lighter grades may leave but little alteration after death, the mucous membrane is swollen, hyperæmic, and sometimes the seat of punctate hemorrhages. The epithelium may desquamate, and the mucosa contain an undue quantity of small spheroidal cells. The surface is more or less thickly covered with muco-purulent exudation. In severe cases, shreds of mucous membrane may be exfoliated. The lesion is usually most marked

in the mucous membrane of the body, but may also affect the cervix, or the cervix alone. The body of the uterus may be swollen and hyperæmic. Acute catarrhal inflammation may be due to injury, exposure during menstruation, the gonorrhœal infection; or it may accompany acute infectious diseases.

*Chronic Catarrhal Endometritis.*—This may be a continuation of an acute inflammation, or begin as a chronic disease. In some of the lesser degrees of inflammation, we find but slight changes after death. The mucous membrane, on the other hand, may be swollen, hyperæmic, and covered with muco-purulent exudation. In other cases, there is more or less well-marked thickening of the mucous membrane, which may present a smooth or a rough papillary surface. Owing to the decomposition of extravasated blood in the mucous membrane, the latter may be mottled with brown or black. The glandular elements of the mucosa may be partially or almost entirely destroyed. The papillæ of the cervix may be hypertrophied, the mucous follicles swollen, and their outlets obstructed, leading to the formation of the so-called ovula Nabothi. The uterine wall becomes flaccid and atrophied, or it may be hypertrophied, especially in the cervical portion. Ulceration of the mucous membrane, especially of the cervix, may occur. Contraction or obliteration of the cervical canal may occur. The inflammation may extend to the Fallopian tubes, or to the vagina.

Chronic endometritis may exist at any age, but is most common after puberty, and is produced by a great variety of causes. It may occur in ill-nourished persons, or in those suffering from exhausting diseases. It may be due to displacements and tumors of the uterus, subinvolution, injuries, etc.

*Croupous Endometritis.*—This form of inflammation is not very common. It occasionally occurs in the puerperal uterus, in acute infectious diseases, cholera, typhoid fever, the exanthemata, etc. The disease sometimes involves the vagina and Fallopian tubes. It may co-exist with croupous inflammation of the colon.

*Tubercular Endometritis.*—This usually occurs as part of a tubercular inflammation of the genito-urinary tract. We find a part or the whole of the cavity of the uterus lined with a rough yellowish or gray cheesy mass, which may deeply involve the muscular walls of the organ. At the edges of the ulcerating cheesy areas we may find well-defined miliary tubercles, or we may find tubercles scattered through the otherwise intact mucosa. The lesions resemble those of nephro-phthisis.

*Syphilitic endometritis.*—The results of this infection are usually confined to the cervical portion, and consist of shallow or deep ulcerations and condylomata of the mucous membrane; or there may be a diffuse thickening of the mucosa.

*Acute metritis* is usually the result of acute catarrhal endometritis. The

organ is swollen, succulent, congested; the mucous membrane covered with muco-pus; the peritoneal coat congested. There may be small extravasations of blood in the wall or cavity of the uterus. The inflammation, in rare cases, becomes suppurative, and abscesses are formed in the uterine wall. These may perforate into the peritoneal cavity or into the rectum.

*Chronic metritis* is the result of an acute metritis, or accompanies acute or chronic endometritis, and is dependent upon the same conditions: subinvolution, displacements, tumors, active irritants, etc. The uterus is enlarged, the wall congested, thickened, and soft; or, owing to the new-formation of connective tissue, hard and dense. The lesion may be most marked in the body or in the cervical portion.

*Perimetritis*.—The peritoneal coat of the uterus may be inflamed with the production of membranous adhesions or of pus. The adhesions may be small or very extensive, and owing to their contractions may cause various distortions and displacements of the pelvic organs. The inflammation is usually an accompaniment of chronic metritis and endometritis. In prostitutes such adhesions are of very common occurrence.

*Parametritis*.—The connective tissue about the uterus, between that organ and the reflexions of the peritoneum, may be the seat of suppurative inflammation. It most frequently causes the death of the patient, but may result in the formation of dense connective tissue about the uterus.

## II. OF THE PREGNANT UTERUS.

The same forms of inflammation which have just been described may attack the pregnant uterus. Catarrhal endometritis may produce effusion of serum, extravasations of blood, and abortions. Metritis may lead to softening of the uterine wall, so that ruptures take place during labor. Perimetritis and parametritis produce adhesions and abscesses about the uterus.

## PUERPERAL INFLAMMATION.

For a week or more after delivery, we find the inner surface of the still dilated uterus rough, especially at the insertion of the placenta, and covered with blackened, gangrenous-looking shreds of blood, mucous membrane, and placenta. This condition is not to be mistaken for inflammation.

As a result of some injury to the uterus during or after delivery, or of the action of some infectious material which may gain access to the tissues, the puerperal uterus is liable to become the seat of a series of severe and often destructive inflammatory and necrotic changes. These may be confined to the uterus; they may induce serious alterations in surrounding parts; they may lead to an involvement of the peritoneum, or



to pyæmia and its accompanying lesions in the most distant parts of the body. In one series of cases a more or less extensive gangrenous inflammation of the mucous membrane and the underlying parts may lead to the casting off of larger and small shreds of necrotic tissue, and the formation of deep and spreading ulcers, which may be accompanied by severe parametritis and fatal peritonitis. This condition may be due to injury or to the presence of decomposing portions of retained placenta. In other cases the inflammation has a croupous character which may affect the vagina and lead to necrosis and gangrene, ulceration, and peritonitis. In connection with either of the above forms of inflammation, or without them, there may be thrombosis of the uterine sinuses, purulent inflammation of the veins, suppuration and abscess in the uterine wall, and, owing to the generalization of the infectious material, to metastatic abscesses in the lungs, spleen, kidneys, etc. Or, acute pleurisy, ulcerative endocarditis, purulent inflammation of the joints, hyperplastic swelling of the spleen and lymph-glands, may furnish characteristic features of the presence of an acute infectious disease. In some cases which rapidly pass to a fatal termination, the local lesions may be but slightly marked, and general alterations characteristic of pyæmia, such as metastatic abscesses, etc., be entirely wanting.

Bacteria, in the form of micrococci, are very constantly present in the exudation, in the lymph-vessels and inflamed tissue of the uterus; often in enormous quantities in the peritoneal exudation and in the metastatic inflammatory foci. There is a good reason for believing, although it has not yet been absolutely proven, that the destructive local processes are due to the presence and action of micrococci, and that the general infection in this, as in other forms of septicæmia and pyæmia, is dependent upon the same cause (see Septicæmia).

#### ULCERATION AND DEGENERATION.

*Catarrhal, tubercular, and syphilitic ulceration* have been mentioned above.

*Phagedænic or corroding ulcer*.—This rare form of ulceration usually occurs in old age without assignable cause. It begins in the cervix and gradually extends until it may destroy the greater part of the uterus or even invade the bladder and rectum. The ulcer is of irregular form, its base is rough and blackish, its walls indurated. It should not be confounded with carcinomatous ulcer which it considerably resembles.

*Fatty Degeneration*.—This may occur in connection with inflammatory changes; in acute infectious diseases, and in phosphorus poisoning.

*Amyloid Degeneration* in the uterus is of rare occurrence. It may affect the muscle-fibres or the walls of the blood-vessels.

## TUMORS.

*Fibromata*.—Dense nodular fibromata of the uterus are exceedingly rare, the so-called fibromata being in most cases myomata or fibromyomata. *Fibroma papillare*, on the other hand, is a common form of growth from the mucous membrane. It consists of a more or less vascular connective-tissue stroma covered with epithelium. The surface may be smooth or villous. It may contain very numerous gland-follicles, and then approaches the type of adenoma or even carcinoma. The stroma may be loose and succulent and resemble mucous tissue, forming the so-called *mucous polypi*; and these again may contain glandular structures. In any of these forms the blood-vessels may be abundant and dilated, forming telangiectatic or cavernous polypi. The adenomatous polypi may become cystic from the dilatation of the gland-follicles.

Polypi of the uterus may be multiple or single, small or large. Numerous smaller and larger papillary outgrowths from the mucous membrane may occur in chronic endometritis. Single polypi may grow from the mucosa of the body of the uterus or from the cervix, and hang by a long pedicle down into the vagina.

Syphilitic papillary growths in the form of pointed condylomata may form finely papillary wart-like excrescences of variable size, particularly on the cervix.

*Myomata*.—These tumors, whose characteristic structural elements are smooth muscle-cells, are the most common of uterine tumors and are frequently of no special practical importance, but are sometimes of very serious import. They are especially common in negroes. They are most frequently composed of both muscular and fibrous tissue—fibro-myomata—but the relative amount of the two kinds of tissue is subject to great variation. They are most apt to occur after puberty and usually in advanced life. They may be single or multiple, small or of enormous size; are usually sharply circumscribed, whitish or pink, dense and hard, or sometimes soft, and present on section interlacing bands or irregular masses of glistening tissue. Their favorite situation is in connection with the body of the uterus, but they may occur in the cervix, or in the folds of the broad ligaments. According to their position, we may distinguish subserous, submucous, and intraparietal forms. The *subserous myomata* grow from the outer muscular layers of the uterus in the form of little nodules. As they increase in size they may become separated from the uterine wall and remain attached only by a narrow pedicle or by a little connective tissue. They may work their way between the folds of the broad ligament until they are at some distance from their point of origin. Some authors mention cases in which the tumors became entirely detached from the uterus and were free in the abdominal cavity. In some cases,

the tumors excite inflammation of the adjacent peritoneum, leading to the formation of adhesions or of collections of pus. Cases are recorded in which, owing to the atrophy of the pedicle, subserous myomata have become completely detached from the uterus and were held in place and nourished by peritoneal adhesions. In other cases, the tumor reaches a large size, but remains firmly attached to the uterus. This organ may then be drawn upward, the cervix and vagina being elongated and narrowed. The traction may be so great that the body of the uterus is entirely separated from the cervix. The bladder may also be drawn upward, producing incontinence of urine and cystitis. Subserous myomata are very often multiple and frequently attain great size.

*The submucous myomata* grow from the inner muscular layers of the uterine wall. They commence as rounded nodules which lift up the mucous membrane. Their usual position is the fundus uteri. They rarely occur in the cervix. As the tumors increase in size, they project into the uterine cavity. They then remain continuous with the uterine wall over a large area, or are attached by a large or small pedicle. They are usually well supplied with vessels. The uterus dilates with the growth of the tumor, and its walls may be also thickened. The tumor may reach such a size as to entirely fill the cavity of the dilated uterus and project through the cervix into the vagina.

The submucous myomata are usually single, although there may be at the same time subserous and intraparietal tumors. They are frequently soft. If they are of large size and polypoid in form, they may project through the cervix, and drag down the fundus of the uterus, producing inversion. The mucous membrane covering them may be atrophied or hyperæmic, with dilated blood-vessels, and may thus give rise to severe and repeated hemorrhages. Hemorrhage may occur in the substance of these tumors. Inflammation, suppuration, and gangrene may also occur. The surface may be ulcerated. In some cases the pedicle of the tumor is destroyed, and it is spontaneously expelled.

The *intraparietal myomata* grow in the substance of the uterine wall, but, if they attain a large size, project beneath the serous or the mucous coat. They are found in every part of the uterus, but are most frequent in the posterior wall.

The shape of the uterus is altered in a great variety of ways by the presence of these tumors; its cavity is narrowed, dilated, or misshapen; it undergoes flexion and version in every direction. The tumors may sink downwards, and become attached to the posterior wall of the vagina, looking as if they grew from it. They may, without the formation of a pedicle, project into the cavity of the uterus, fill it up, and project through the cervix. The uterus is dilated, its wall hypertrophied or atrophied.

The tumors themselves may undergo a variety of secondary altera-



tions. The muscle-fibres may undergo *fatty degeneration*, and the tumor diminish in size, or even undergo, it is said, entire destruction and atrophy. *Calcification* may occur, converting a part or the whole of the tumor into a stony mass. The intraparietal and submucous myomata may give rise to profuse hemorrhages; they may suppurate, and become gangrenous.

Sometimes the tumors or circumscribed portions of them are very vascular, constituting the *telangiectatic* or *cavernous* variety. These tumors, which possess some of the characters of erectile tissue, may suddenly change in size from a variation in the amount of blood which they contain.

A very important change, which is sometimes found in these tumors, is the development of cysts in their interior (fibro-cystic tumors). This sometimes takes place in those tumors which grow outward beneath the peritoneal coat. We find one or more cavities communicating with each other, with rough, trabeculated walls. The appearance is more that of cavities than of cysts. There may be a number of smaller cavities, or they may fuse to form one large one. The fluid contained in the cavities is like synovia, or is mixed with blood. These cystic myomata may reach an immense size, and fill the abdominal cavity. The diagnosis between them and ovarian cysts is very difficult, and they have frequently been the subjects of fatal operations.

In the cervix uteri, myomata are rare. They may grow as polypi beneath the mucous coat, or produce enlargement of the anterior or posterior lips, or may grow outward into the abdominal cavity.

Combinations of myoma and sarcoma sometimes occur—*myosarcoma*.

*Sarcoma* may occur as a primary tumor in the mucous membrane of the uterus, either in the form of a diffuse infiltration or as a circumscribed nodular or polypoid mass. They frequently involve the muscular wall, are liable to hemorrhage and gangrene, and, particularly in the diffuse form, are liable to recur after removal. They may consist largely of spindle or spheroidal cells or both. It is said that sarcoma of the uterus is more liable to occur at an advanced age than at an early period, as is the rule with sarcomata of other organs.

*Angioma*.—A small, cavernous angioma of the wall of the uterus has been described.

*Carcinoma*.—The carcinomata of the uterus commence most frequently in the cervix and portio vaginalis, and the most common form is the epithelioma. The growth of epitheliomata of the cervix uteri proceeds under three tolerably distinct forms, which, however, frequently merge into one another.

(1) The *flat ulcerating epithelioma*.—This form of cancer commences as a somewhat elevated, flat induration of the superficial layers of the cervix, sometimes circumscribed, sometimes diffuse. This induration is

due to the growth of plugs and irregular masses of epithelial cells into the underlying tissue. Ulceration usually commences early, and may proceed slowly or rapidly. The edges of the ulcer are irregular, indurated, and somewhat elevated. The ulceration of the new-formed cancerous tissue at the edges is usually progressive, so that the vaginal portion of the cervix, the cervical canal, the vagina, and even the bladder and rectum may be involved. More or less extensive hemorrhages and necrosis of the base of the ulcer are liable to occur. The entire cervix may be destroyed.

(2) In another class of cases, the carcinomatous growth develops under the form of papillary or fungous excrescences, which may form larger or smaller masses composed of epitheliomatous tissue. Hand in hand with this projecting growth, there may occur an epithelial infiltration of the underlying tissue of the cervix. These growths are often quite vascular, and may give rise to severe hemorrhages. They may ulcerate, and thus produce great destruction of tissue.

(3) In still another class of cases, there is a more or less deep infiltration of the submucous tissue, either diffuse or in circumscribed nodules, with epithelial cell masses. We find at first, in the vaginal portion of the cervix, in the submucous connective tissue, either nodules, or a general infiltration of a whitish new growth. The cervix then appears large and hard. Very soon the mucous membrane over the new growth degenerates and falls off; the superficial layers of the new growth undergo the same changes. After this, the formation of the new growth and its ulceration go on simultaneously, producing first an infiltration and then destruction of the cervix, and often of a part of the body of the uterus. The growth frequently extends to the vagina, the bladder, and rectum with the same destructive character, so that we often find the cervix and upper part of the vagina destroyed, and in their place a large cavity with ragged, gangrenous, cancerous walls. Less frequently the pelvic bones are invaded in the same way. Not infrequently the ureters are surrounded and compressed by the new growth, so that they become dilated. The dilatation may extend to the pelves and calyces of the kidneys. The new growth may begin in the cervix, and extend uniformly over the internal surface of the cervix and of the body of the uterus. The entire uterus is converted into a large sac, of which the walls are infiltrated with the new growth, while the internal surface is ulcerating and gangrenous. In some cases there is a considerable formation of new, dense connective tissue, so that the growth has a scirrhus form.

In rare cases, the growth begins in the upper part of the cervix or in the body of the uterus, while the lower part of the cervix is not involved. In all of these cases the epithelial cells of the new growth follow more or less closely the type of the epithelial cells of the part from which they spring.

In still another class of cases, in which the new growth may be in the form of nodules or diffuse infiltrations, or polypoid masses, or may present more or less extensive alterations, the cells are irregular, polyhedral in shape, the tumor belonging to the class of glandular or medullary carcinomata. These also usually commence in the cervix and, according to the views of many writers, probably in the mucous glands.

In rare cases the entire wall of the uterus is infiltrated with the new growth, and the organ is much enlarged. *Colloid carcinoma* sometimes occurs, but is rare.

While we may for convenience recognize the above types of carcinoma of the uterus, it should be borne in mind, as above stated, that they are not apt to be perfectly distinct, and some of them may merge into one another, or exist simultaneously.

As a result of the ulceration of these various forms of carcinoma, recto-vaginal fistulæ may be formed; the lumbar glands may be involved, and metastases in distant organs are occasionally, though not frequently formed. Frequent and profuse hemorrhages, gangrenous destruction of tissue, the absorption of deleterious materials, etc., are apt to lead to the development of a more or less profound anæmia and cachexia.

#### PARASITES AND CYSTS.

Various forms of *bacteria* are of frequent occurrence. *Ecchinococcus* has been found in the body and neck of the uterus, and may rupture into the peritoneal cavity or into the vagina.

*Cysts*.—Aside from the cysts which develop in tumors of the uterus, in the cervix uteri the mucous follicles are frequently so dilated as to form cysts filled with a gelatinous material, and more or less epithelium. These cysts may be large or small, and are frequently called *ovula Nabothi*. Sometimes there is an inflammatory growth of new connective tissue about these cysts. In other cases the cysts may project from the mucous membrane in the form of polypi. Similar changes are infrequently found in the body of the uterus from the dilatation of occluded uterine glands. Dermoid cysts are rarely found in the walls of the uterus.

#### THE OVARIES.

##### MALFORMATIONS.

One or both ovaries may be absent, the other organs of generation being also absent or undeveloped. Or the ovaries may be only partially developed. Absence or arrest of development of one ovary is sometimes met with in otherwise well-formed individuals. It is sometimes accompanied by a low position of the kidney on the same side. The ovaries may pass into the inguinal canal or into the labia majora, and remain



fixed there through life. Less frequently they are found in the crural canal or the foramen ovale.

#### CHANGES IN SIZE.

The ovaries may become larger than normal by chronic inflammation, by the formation of cysts and tumors. They may become atrophied in old age, the Graafian follicles disappearing, and the organ shrivelling into a small irregular fibrous body. Atrophy may be produced by ascites, by chronic inflammation, or from unknown causes. As the result of the maturing and rupture of the Graafian follicles with and without pregnancy, the surface of the ovary which before puberty is smooth may become roughened by irregular cicatricial depressions.

#### CHANGES IN POSITION.

In adult life, the ovaries may pass as herniæ into the inguinal or crural canal, the foramen ovale, or the umbilicus.

The position of the ovaries in the abdomen may be changed by the pressure of tumors, the traction of false membranes, etc. It may occur in enlarged ovaries or in those of normal size, and by the compression of the veins may lead to congestion and chronic inflammation of the organ.

#### HYPERÆMIA AND HEMORRHAGE.

Aside from the normal hyperæmia of the ovaries during menstruation, the vessels may be congested in inflammation, in displacements with interference with the venous circulation, in certain diseases of the heart, etc., and may then be followed by chronic inflammation.

The menstrual periods are accompanied by the effusion of blood into a Graafian follicle. Normally, the amount of blood is small, becomes solid, is decolorized, and then gradually absorbed. Sometimes the effusion of blood is much greater; the follicle filled with blood is as large as a pigeon's egg. The blood may remain in the follicle and be absorbed, and replaced by a serous fluid, or it may rupture it and escape into the peritoneal cavity. Death may ensue from the hemorrhage, or the blood may collect in Douglas' cul-de-sac, and be inclosed in false membranes. Hemorrhages also occur in follicles which have become cystic.

#### INFLAMMATION (OOPHORITIS).

Inflammation of the ovaries occurs most frequently in the puerperal condition, either as part of a general peritonitis, or as a primary affection.

With puerperal peritonitis, both ovaries are usually inflamed; they are swollen, congested, soft, infiltrated with serum or pus, or gangrenous. The inflammation may attack principally the capsule, the stroma, or the follicles. Inflammation of the capsule results in adhesions and collections of pus, shut in by false membranes; of the stroma, in abscesses and

fibrous induration ; of the follicles, in their containing purulent serum. If the inflammation of the ovary is the primary lesion, it is usually confined to one organ. The stroma of the ovary is infiltrated with serum and pus, and may contain abscesses of large size. In other cases the ovary itself is but little changed, but is surrounded by a mass of fibrinous and purulent exudation. Such idiopathic forms of inflammation may terminate in recovery; or the abscesses may perforate into the rectum and vagina; or the ovary is left indurated and bound down by adhesions; or the patient dies from the violence of the disease.

Inflammation of the ovaries unconnected with the puerperal condition is not common, but it may occur in connection with acute or chronic peritonitis or perimetritis. It is usually confined to one ovary. Either the follicles, stroma, or capsule, or all together, may be involved. The inflamed follicles are enlarged, their walls thickened ; they may contain bloody or purulent fluid. The stroma becomes infiltrated with serum or pus; and later we may find abscesses or fibrous induration of the organ. The inflammation of the capsule may lead to the formation of membranous adhesions between the ovary, Fallopian tube, and surrounding parts.

As a result of *chronic interstitial oöphoritis* the organ may be increased in size, owing to the formation of loose cellular, or dense firm connective tissue, with many blood-vessels; or it may be small, dense, and atrophied.

*Tubercular Inflammation* of the ovaries is rare, and may accompany tubercular inflammation of other organs, particularly the peritoneum and Fallopian tubes. It usually results in the production of cheesy nodules of considerable size.

*Syphilitic Inflammation* in the form of gummata is uncommon.

#### TUMORS.

*Fibromata*.—These tumors are not very common, nor usually of great importance. They may be very small or of great size. They are usually dense in texture, and in a considerable number of cases seem to originate in the tissue formed in the closure of the ruptured Graafian follicle. They may contain cysts or be accompanied by cysts of the surrounding stroma. Papillary fibromata of the surface of the ovary is sometimes seen.

*Leiomyomata* containing more or less fibrous tissue are of occasional occurrence.

*Sarcoma* of the ovaries is not common. It is usually primary, but may be metastatic. It is usually of the spindle-celled variety, but may contain areas of spheroidal-celled tissue or more or less fibrous tissue. The tumors may be hard or soft, and are apt to involve both ovaries.

*Chondroma* of the ovaries is described, but is rare; cartilage not infrequently occurs, however, in dermoid cysts.

*Carcinoma*, usually of the glandular variety, may occur as a primary tumor of the ovary. It may be due to a continuous infection from neighboring organs, or more rarely it is of metastatic origin. Although the glandular medullary carcinomata are the most common, scirrhus, melanotic and colloid cancer sometimes occur. Some forms of carcinoma stand in very close relation with certain of the cystic adenomata—see below.

*Adenomata.*—(*Cystic Adenomata*—*Compound Ovarian Cysts*.—These growths, which may occur in one or both ovaries, form one of the most common and important classes of ovarian tumors. Some of their most noteworthy and important features depend upon their tendency to the formation of cysts. It should be remembered, however, that the primary lesion is a true new-formation of glandular tissue, and not, as in the case of most cysts, a transformation, by retention or otherwise, of pre-existing structures.

The growth primarily consists of a fibrous stroma, in which are tubular follicles lined with cylindrical epithelium. Or, in some cases, it consists of the above follicular or glandular structures associated with papillary outgrowths from a fibrous stroma, which are covered with cylindri-



FIG. 130.—CYSTIC ADENOMA OF OVARY (PAPILLARY FORM),  $\times 350$  and reduced.

cal epithelium. Sometimes one, sometimes the other, form of growth—the glandular or the papillary—predominates (Fig. 130). There is, as above stated, a marked tendency, particularly in the glandular form of adenoma, to a dilatation of the follicles by a semi-fluid material, and the formation of cysts. There may be a number of follicles equally dilated, so as to form a number of cysts of moderate size; or only a few follicles are enormously



dilated to form a large *multilocular cyst*, with but few compartments. The walls of the cysts may fuse together, and be absorbed so as to form one large cyst divided by incomplete septa—*unilocular cysts*. The stroma in which the follicles and cysts are embedded may be largely developed or very scanty.

The walls of the larger cysts are composed of fibrous tissue which is dense in the outer layers, more cellular in the inner, upon which the epithelium is placed. They may be thin and membranous; or we find developed on their internal surfaces an intra-cystic growth composed of a fibrous stroma and tubular follicles. These secondary follicles may also be filled with fluid and form larger and smaller cysts. The intracystic growths may be so large as to fill up the original cysts. Sometimes the intra-cystic growth presents very little dilatation of its follicles, so that the entire tumor has more the character of a solid growth than of a cyst.

In many of the cysts in which the formation of follicles and their dilatation is well shown, the growth of the papillomatous projections is also seen, so that the cyst cavity may be more or less filled with cauliflower-like tufts.

The cylindrical epithelium lining the cysts, usually forms a single layer, but, owing to the accumulation of fluid, the cells may become flattened and atrophied, or they may be fatty or desquamated. The contents of the cysts differ considerably in different cases, and even in different cysts in the same case. It may be tough and ropy, or gelatinous, or serous; transparent and colorless, or yellow or reddish, or reddish-brown; or it may be turbid and colorless, or variously colored, red, brown or chocolate.

Chemically the cyst contents, when thick and ropy, contain mucin or paralbumin, and perhaps other less well-known compounds belonging to the same class. It is believed that the peculiar ropy character which the fluid often possesses is due to the paralbumin, but the chemical nature and relations of this substance are still matters of dispute. It is probable that the contents of these cysts are, so far as the mucin and paralbumin are concerned, produced by a metamorphosis of the protoplasm of the lining cells, similar to that by which the mucin is produced in the mucous glands and in mucous membranes. We frequently find the cylindrical cells presenting the form of the so-called "beaker cells," and in some cases the mucous contents of the cysts are seen to be continuous with the similar contents of the beaker cells. It is probable that much of the fluid contents of the cysts comes from simple transudation.

Microscopically the contents of these cysts present also considerable variation. We may find almost no structural elements; or there may be red blood-cells in variable quantity, and pus-cells in various stages of granular or fatty degeneration or of disintegration, so that variously

shaped fragments of the cells appear. Then we may find cylindrical, or flattened, or polyhedral cells, either well preserved, swollen, or in a state of fatty degeneration (Fig. 131), or we may find fragments of these cells. It is these various forms of cells, often more or less swollen and in a condition of more or less well-marked granular and fatty degeneration, which have been considered characteristic of the ovarian cysts and are sometimes called *Drysdale's* corpuscles. While, however, they are of frequent occurrence under these conditions, they are by no means pathognomonic, since we find them in the contents of various kinds of cysts and cavities where the cells are undergoing degeneration. In addition to the above structural elements, we may find free fat droplets, cholestearin crystals, pigment granules, and more or less granular detritus. The material filling these cysts is sometimes called colloid, and the cysts are frequently called colloid cysts; but we believe that the above view of their nature is the correct one.

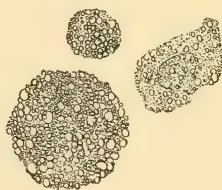


FIG. 131.—CELLS FROM OVARIAN CYST IN A CONDITION OF FATTY DEGENERATION,  $\times 700$  and reduced.

Numerous secondary changes are liable to occur in these cysts. The cells may become fatty, and peel off so that we may find in some parts only a connective-tissue wall. The walls may atrophy, may become infiltrated with salts of lime, or contain concentrically lamellated lime concretions. Inflammatory changes may occur in them. There may be a suppurative inflammation of the walls leading to the formation of abscesses, or pus may be mingled with the cyst contents; the epithelium may be exfoliated, and granulation tissue may form in the walls. Chronic inflammation may lead to considerable thickening of the walls, and to adhesions with neighboring parts. Hemorrhages, sometimes very extensive, may occur in inflammation, or as the result of other disturbances of the circulation, so that some of the cysts may be filled with blood. Inflammatory softening, gangrene, etc., of the walls, may lead to perforation; so that the contents of the cysts may be discharged into the peritoneal cavity, or, in virtue of adhesions, into the bladder, vagina, or rectum. Perforation may be caused by the piercing of the walls by the papillomatous growth. Carcinoma may be developed from the epithelium of the cysts. Since these cysts sometimes reach a very large size, they may produce the greatest variety of disturbances in the abdominal cavity, which need not be enumerated here.

They probably originate in the glandular epithelium of the ovary either before or after the formation of the Graafian follicles.<sup>1</sup>

*Follicular cysts of the ovary.*—The Graafian follicles may be dilated so as to form cysts. This may occur in one or both ovaries, and the cysts may be small or large, single or multiple. They are usually found after middle life, but may occur during youth, childhood, or even in the fœtus. The follicles dilate from the accumulation of fluid within them; the ovum is destroyed; the epithelium flattened. The contents are usually serous and colorless, but may be viscid, turbid, purulent, or variously colored, red, yellow, or brown. The ovary may be crowded with numerous cysts of moderate size, whose adjacent walls may coalesce and atrophy, forming communications between them.

A variety of this form of cyst is formed by the dilatation of a follicle containing a corpus luteum. Such cysts may communicate with a Fallopian tube.

*Dermoid cysts.*—These cysts may be uni- or multilocular, are usually of moderate size, but sometimes becomes as large as a man's head or larger. Their fibrous walls may be thick or thin, and portions of the internal surface may present more or less completely developed cuticular structures, such as corium, papillæ, epidermis, hairs, and hair-follicles, sebaceous glands, etc. The cavity may contain a thick greasy material composed of flattened epithelium, fat, or cholestearin crystals. Or, the cavity or walls may contain masses of irregularly formed hair, teeth, bone, cartilage, striated muscle, and nerve-fibres and cells. Such growths, which are doubtless of embryonal origin, may exist for many years without causing inconvenience; but inflammatory changes may occur in them leading to adhesions and perforations into adjacent organs. They may form the nidus for the development of carcinoma, or they may calcify.

In addition to the above-described adenoid, dermoid, and simple follicular cysts, there are a number of composite forms, of not infrequent occurrence. Thus, in connection with dermoid cysts or separately, we find larger and smaller cysts lined with ciliated epithelium. Then there are several cases described of cysts which partake of the characters of both adenoid and dermoid cysts. Such cysts may be multilocular and be lined with flattened, cylindrical, or ciliated epithelium, and may contain epidermal cells, cholestearin, or mucin, etc.<sup>2</sup>

Small cysts, sometimes pediculated, sometimes not, of doubtful origin

---

<sup>1</sup> For more extended descriptions of the cyst-adenomata of the ovaries, see Waldeyer: "Die epithelialen Eierstocksgeschwülste," Archiv für Gynäkologie, Bd. I., Heft 2, p. 252-316, 1870. Also Klebs: "Handbuch der pathologischen Anatomie," vierte Lieferung, p. 796, 1873.

<sup>2</sup> A tolerably full bibliography of the tumors of the ovaries may be found in Lawson Tait's "Pathology and Treatment of Diseases of the Ovaries," 4th ed., Wm. Wood & Co., p. 131.



and of no special significance, are frequently found growing from the broad ligament near the ovary. The walls are usually very thin, lined with flattened epithelial cells; and the contents serous.

*Cysts of the parovarium*, lying between the peritoneal layers of the broad ligament, are usually small, but may be as large as a man's head. They are usually lined with ciliated epithelium, but sometimes by flattened non-ciliated cells. The contents may be serous or may be thick, and contain mucin and paralbumin.

## THE FALLOPIAN TUBES.

### MALFORMATIONS.

Absence of both tubes occurs with absence of the uterus. One tube may be absent, with arrested development of the corresponding side of the uterus. Both tubes may be imperfectly developed, either of their ends may be closed, they may be inserted into the uterus at an abnormal place, they may terminate in two or three abdominal ostia.

### CHANGES IN POSITION AND SIZE.

The Fallopian tubes may participate in the various malpositions of the uterus and ovaries; but they are most frequently displaced by the contraction of adhesions, formed in perimetritic and periovarial inflammations.

The lumen of the tube may be partially or completely closed as the result of inflammation of the mucous membrane; of peritonitis about the fimbriated extremity; of tumors or inflammation of the uterus; or by pressure from without, as by adhesions, tumors, etc. It may become stopped by plugs of mucus or pus.

Dilatation of the tubes may be produced by an accumulation of catarrhal or other exudation, when there is partial or complete stenosis at some portion of the tube. The dilatation may be moderate, converting the tube into a tortuous sacculated canal containing mucous or serous fluid; or, more rarely, large cysts may form containing several pounds of serous fluid—*hydro-salpinx*. As the fluid collects, the epithelium may become flattened or fatty, or may desquamate. As a result of an inflammation in the walls of the dilated tube, the contents may be mixed with pus or blood. Rupture of a dilated tube sometimes occurs; or severe and even fatal hemorrhage may take place into its cavity. Papillary growths are sometimes found springing from the inner wall of the cysts.

### HEMORRHAGE.

Hemorrhage into the tube may occur in puerperal women with retroversion of the uterus, with abortions; hematometra and tubal pregnancy; in acute infectious diseases. The blood may undergo degenerative

changes and be largely absorbed, or it may escape into the peritoneal cavity and cause peritonitis.

#### INFLAMMATION (SALPINGITIS).

*Catarrhal inflammation* of the mucous membrane of the Fallopian tubes commonly occurs in connection with endometritis, frequently in the puerperal condition. In the acute stage, the mucous membrane is hyperæmic and swollen, and covered with a muco-purulent exudation. The inflammation may subside, leaving no lesions, but it more frequently becomes chronic and may then result in peritoneal adhesions, obliteration of the tubes, and dilatation.

*Suppurative Salpingitis*.—The inflammation of the mucous membrane may assume a suppurative character, particularly in connection with puerperal metritis and peritonitis, but sometimes as a result of gonorrhœal inflammation.

Under these conditions, the wall of the tube may be involved, and pus may exude from the abdominal ends. It is difficult, in many cases of suppurative salpingitis associated with peritonitis, to say which is the primary lesion.

In some cases, there is a considerable collection of pus in the tubes, causing dilatation—*pyo-salpinx*. These collections may rupture into the peritoneal cavity, or the pus may escape into a cavity shut in by adhesions, or may perforate into the intestine or bladder. Or it may dry, and finally become calcified.

*Tubercular Inflammation*.—This form of inflammation in the tubes is most frequently seen in its later stages, when the mucous membrane is partially or entirely converted into a thick, cheesy, often ulcerating layer. The lumen of the tubes may be dilated, the walls thickened from chronic inflammation. This lesion may occur by itself, or may be associated with tubercular inflammation of the lungs, or of the other genito-urinary organs, or the peritoneum. The lesion usually commences at the abdominal ends of the tubes, and both tubes are apt to be involved.

*Syphilitic Inflammation* in the form of a diffuse thickening of the wall by gummatous tissue has been described.

#### TUMORS.

Small *fibromata* and *fibro-myomata* sometimes occur in the wall of the tubes or in the fimbriæ. Small *lipomata* have been seen between the folds of the broad ligament in close connection with the tubes.

*Carcinoma* of the tubes is usually, if not always, secondary to cancer of the uterus or ovaries.

*Cysts*, usually of small size, sometimes pediculated and with thin walls, are frequently seen in the peritoneal covering of the tubes or in the fimbriæ. They are believed to be of embryonal origin.

## EXTRA-UTERINE PREGNANCY.

*Tubal Pregnancy.*—The impregnated ovum is in some way hindered from passing into the uterus, becomes fixed in the tube, and is there developed. The villi of the chorion grow into the mucous membrane of the tube, forming an incomplete placenta. Rare cases are recorded in which the placenta was situated in the uterus, while the foetus was developed in the tube. The embryo and its membranes are developed until they reach such a size that the tube surrounding them ruptures. This may occur in the first month or not until much later. In rare cases, when the wall of the tube was extensively involved in the formation of the placenta, the development has gone on until term. The ovum may remain in the tube after the rupture; or may escape into the peritoneal cavity still enveloped in its membranes; or the membranes may be ruptured and left in the tube. The rupture is generally attended with fatal hemorrhage. In some cases, death is caused by the rupture of a dilated vein, while the tube is still intact. Hemorrhage into the sac may occur before its rupture.

In rare cases, death does not take place, and the foetus is shut in by adhesions and false membranes. The embryo soon dies. In favorable cases, there is a slow absorption of the soft parts of the foetus, the bones are separated and left embedded in a mass of fibrous tissue, fat, cholesterin, and pigment. Or the foetus retains its shape and becomes mummified, and may then be incrustated with the salts of lime.

In unfavorable cases, degeneration and gangrene of the foetus take place rapidly, with inflammation and suppuration of the surrounding tissues. There may be perforation and escape of the broken-down foetus through the rectum, vagina, bladder, or abdominal wall. The patient may die from peritonitis or exhaustion, or may recover after the escape of the foetus.

In some cases, the foetus may escape through a rupture of the tube into the space between the folds of the broad ligament.

*Tubo-Abdominal Pregnancy* is produced by the development of the ovum in the fimbriated extremity of the Fallopian tube. Adhesions are formed, so that the foetus is partly in the end of the tube and partly in the abdomen.

*Interstitial Pregnancy.*—The ovum in these cases is arrested and developed in the portion of the tube which passes through the wall of the uterus.

*Abdominal Pregnancy.*—The ovum, after escaping from the ovary, does not enter the Fallopian tube, but becomes fixed to the peritoneum, usually at some part near the ovary. It is surrounded by thickened peritoneum and develops in that position.

*Ovarian Pregnancy.*—The existence of this form of pregnancy is



doubtful and difficult to prove, but there are some cases in which it seems probable that the ovum develops in its Graafian follicle. The placenta may be attached to the tube or to the abdominal wall.

In all forms of extra-uterine pregnancy, the uterus becomes enlarged, and a sort of decidua is formed on its internal surface.

#### LESIONS OF THE PLACENTA.

Aside from the variations from the normal in size, shape, and position, for a description of which we refer to the works on obstetrics, we may briefly mention here some of the more important structural changes which the placenta may undergo.

*Hemorrhage.*—This may occur either on the maternal surface in the decidua; or between the foetal surface and the membranes; or in the substance of the placenta. The latter form of hemorrhage constitutes the true *placental apoplexy*. This may occur as the result of rupture of a placental sinus. The placental tissue is crowded apart, and a blood-clot, often infiltrating the parenchyma, is formed. This may lead to abortion, or the blood may undergo disintegration and absorption, and its place be occupied by a cicatrix. The placental tissue in its vicinity may undergo fatty degeneration. Under other conditions, without evidence of rupture of the vessels, the placental tissue may become infiltrated with blood in the form of an infarction. In this, degenerative changes, similar to the above, may occur, leading to fibrous induration of the placenta.

#### INFLAMMATION (PLACENTITIS).

*Suppurative Inflammation* of the placenta with the formation of abscesses is of rare occurrence as the result of injury.

*Chronic Indurative Inflammation* of the placenta may result in the formation of circumscribed masses of cellular and loose, or dense and cicatricial connective tissue; or in a diffuse formation of connective tissue, which may interfere with the nutrition of the foetus and cause abortion. The new-formed connective tissue may undergo fatty degeneration or calcification.

In another class of cases, the new connective tissue is formed mainly in the walls of the vessels, particularly the arteries. This may occur in circumscribed portions of the vessels, leading to nodular growths around the arteries, or it may occur extensively along the various ramifications of the vessels, converting them into thick fibrous cords. The change is primarily in the adventitia, but all the coats of the vessel may become involved, leading to more or less complete obliteration of the lumen.

Various proliferative and indurative changes in the placenta may occur as the result of syphilitic infection.

## DEGENERATIONS.

Fatty and amyloid degeneration and calcification of the placental tissue are of not infrequent occurrence.

Cysts of the placenta are of occasional occurrence, their origin is in most cases obscure.<sup>1</sup>

## MALE.

## THE PENIS.

## MALFORMATIONS.

Entire absence of the penis is met with in connection with great defects of development of the rest of the body.

Absence of the penis with proper development of the other organs of generation is rare. The urethra then usually opens into the rectum.

An abnormally small penis is found with absence or arrested development of the testicles.

Absence or a rudimentary form of the prepuce has been observed in a number of cases. Congenital phimosis is also not infrequent.

*Hypospadias* consists in an arrest of development of the penis and scrotum. In its highest degrees, the penis is one-half to one inch long, the glans penis small and resembling a clitoris. On the lower side of the penis is a deep cleft, lined with mucous membrane. Into this cleft the urethra opens at the root of the penis. The scrotum remains separated into two halves, resembling labia majora. The testes descend into their proper position on each side, or remain in the abdomen. If the testicles continue to develop normally, the individual has the appearance and capacities of a man; if their development is arrested, the individual is small and has a womanish appearance.

In lesser grades of the same malformation, the two halves of the scrotum are joined and the penis is larger, but a part of the urethra remains open as a cleft, at any point of the penis.

*Epispadias* is an opening of the urethra on the upper side of the penis. It presents various grades and forms.

*Hermaphroditism*.—This is a union of two sexes in the same person, the test of which is the presence of the secreting organs, the ovaries and testicles. True hermaphroditism is rare, but it does occur, while most of the conditions called hermaphroditism are in reality due to varying malformations of the external generative organs.

*Pseudo-hermaphroditism*.—This malformation consists in an abnormal change in the transition from the foetal condition of the parts to their fully developed form. In the male, normally, the greater part of Mül-

---

<sup>1</sup> See Ahlfeldt, Arch. für Gynäkologie, Bd. ii., p. 397. Fenomenodes, *ibid.*, Bd. 15, p. 343.

ler's canal disappears, and its lower end forms the vesicula prostatica. In this malformation Müller's canal is changed, as it is in the female, into Fallopian tubes, uterus, and vagina, while at the same time the testes, epididymes, vesiculæ seminales, and spermatic cord are formed as usual. In the lesser degrees of this malformation, we find, in the place of the vesicula prostatica, a pear-shaped sac, as large as pigeon's egg, with muscular walls, and an epithelial lining. This sac may be incompletely divided into a uterus and vagina, and it opens into the urethra. In the higher grades, we find a well-formed vagina and uterus. The uterus may or may not have Fallopian tubes. The testicles are usually retained in the abdomen or inguinal canals, and are small. The spermatic ducts run on the sides of the uterus and open into the urethra, or are closed. The penis and scrotum appear as in hypospadias, or are well formed. The appearance of the individual varies with the development of the testicles.

*True hermaphroditism* may be lateral. In this condition there is hypospadias; a vagina and uterus and a Fallopian tube and ovary on one side, and a testicle and spermatic cord on the other.

In certain cases, which may be called *bilateral hermaphroditism*, there is a testicle on one side, and an ovary on the other.<sup>1</sup>

*Enlargement* of the penis is sometimes caused by venous congestion from heart disease; by long-continued masturbation, as a result of which the corpus cavernosum may lose its contractility; and in rare cases, by hypertrophy of the stroma of the corpus cavernosum.

*Injury and Hemorrhage*.—Injuries to the penis are liable to give rise to severe hemorrhage on account of its peculiar vascular character; suppurative inflammation, gangrene, infiltration with urine, and its consequences are also liable to occur. The contractions of the cicatricial tissue by which wounds are healed, frequently give rise to various distortions of the organ and not infrequently prevent subsequent erections.

#### INFLAMMATION.

*Balanitis*, inflammation of the prepuce, is usually produced by gonorrhœa, or by accumulations of smegma. The skin is red and swollen, and may ulcerate. Condylomata may be formed, and adhesions between the prepuce and glans. The glans may ulcerate and the prepuce may be much thickened. If the prepuce is long, there is an inflammatory phimosis, and the products of inflammation accumulate within the swollen prepuce. In some cases, the prepuce becomes gangrenous.

*Paraphimosis* is produced by the retraction of a narrow prepuce

---

<sup>1</sup> For a detailed consideration of the malformations of the male and female generative organs, consult Klebs: "Handbuch der Pathologischen Anatomie," and more recent cases of hermaphroditism by Heppner, Arch. f. Anat. u. Physiol., 1870, and by Hofmann, Wien. Med. Jahrb., 1877.



behind the glans, with consequent stricture, inflammation, and sometimes gangrene.

*Inflammation of the Corpora Cavernosa* is produced by gonorrhœa, injuries, fistulæ, typhus fever, measles, and occurs in connection with inflammation of the connective tissue of the pelvis. It results in fibrous induration of portions of the corpora cavernosa; in rare cases, in abscesses or diffuse purulent infiltration; sometimes in gangrene.

*Syphilitic Ulcers* frequently occur on the glans penis and prepuce. The indurated chancre is formed either from an excoriation in which a pustule is formed, or from a little nodule. The pustule breaks and its walls are infiltrated with small round cells. The nodule softens, breaks down, and forms an ulcer, of which the walls are infiltrated with cells in the same way.

Syphilitic condylomata are of frequent occurrence on the glans.

Phagedænic ulcers occur, and may destroy a considerable part of the penis. Herpes of the prepuce occurs in the form of small vesicles, which may later become ulcers. Erysipelatous and furuncular inflammation sometimes involve the skin of the penis.

#### TUMORS.

*Papilloma* is found on the prepuce and glans penis. It occurs in the form of little warty growths, or of composite, cauliflower masses, even as large as a fist. In either case, the structure is the same, hypertrophied papillæ covered with epithelium. Sometimes the epithelial layers become thick and horny, forming large dense projections.

*Fibroma diffusum*, or elephantiasis of the prepuce, may occur, leading to immense thickening of the structure. It consists in a diffuse growth of the deep fibrous tissue of the cutis. *Lipomata; angiomata; circumscribed fibromata*, and sebaceous cysts may occur in the penis. *Carcinoma* of the penis usually occurs in the form of epitheliomata. These are most frequent in the prepuce and glans penis. They may have the form of flat ulcers; or of infiltrating ulcerating nodules, or very frequently assume the form of papillary outgrowths, which may attain great size, ulcerate, or undergo a variety of inflammatory changes. These growths may involve the entire skin of the penis; they may invade deeper parts. The inguinal glands may be invaded. Distant metastases may occur, but are not frequent.

Glandular carcinoma of the penis is not common. It may be secondary to carcinoma in some other part of the body.

*Calcification and Ossification* of the connective tissue of the corpora cavernosa sometimes occurs. Large and small preputial calculi are occasionally found between the prepuce and the glans. These may be formed in situ, may come from the bladder, or from without, and may later increase in size.

## THE SCROTUM.

The skin of the scrotum is subject to the various forms of lesions which may occur in any part of the integument.

*Elephantiasis* of the scrotum consists in the main, of a development or new connective tissue from the cutis, which is sometimes accompanied by dilatation of the lymph-vessels. The thickened scrotum sometimes forms very large tumors, often rough upon the surface, which may entirely cover in the penis. *Lipomata*, *fibromata*, *atheromatous* or *sebaceous cysts*, and *dermoid cysts* containing hair, bone, cartilage, etc., are sometimes found. Occasionally the skin of the scrotum is beset with numerous larger and smaller sebaceous cysts, which raise the surface of the skin into little wart-like projections. *Epitheliomata*, in the form of flat or papillary ulcerating tumors are of frequent occurrence among chimney sweepers, and may lead to extensive ulcerations of the adjacent parts and involvement of neighboring lymph-glands.

In very rare cases, tumors containing a considerable portion of a foetal skeleton have been found in the scrotum.

## THE TESTICLES.

## MALFORMATIONS.

Absence of both testicles, either with or without absence of the epididymes, spermatic cord, and vesiculæ seminales, occurs in rare cases. The scrotum is only indicated, or may contain the epididymes. The penis is small, and the individuals are small and poorly developed.

Instead of being entirely wanting, the testes may be imperfectly developed. The individuals are weakly and effeminate. Absence of one testicle, with healthy development of the other, is more frequent. The corresponding epididymis and cord may be absent or present.

The spermatic cords and vesiculæ seminales may be absent or imperfectly developed on one or both sides, while the testes are normal.

Either one or both testicles may remain permanently in their foetal position, or may not descend into the scrotum for several years after birth (*cryptorchismus*). Their descent may even be delayed until the thirtieth year of life. This condition may depend on an arrest of development in the testes, or the gubernaculum testis; on adhesions produced by intra-uterine peritonitis; on narrowing of the inguinal canal; on narrowing or shortening of the vaginal process of the peritoneum; or on abnormal size or position of the testicle. Usually the malformation is confined to one testicle, and then is more frequent on the left side. The testicle is usually found in the abdomen close to the mouth of the inguinal canal or in the inguinal canal, just below the external ring; but it may be beneath the skin in the perineum; or in the crural canal with

the femoral vessels, or elsewhere. The retained testis is usually not fully developed, or undergoes fatty or fibrous degeneration. The retention of one or even of both testicles does not preclude the possibility of procreation. Retained testicles are prone to inflammatory changes and liable to become the seat of malignant tumors.

Sometimes, while the testis is retained, the epididymis and spermatic cord descend into the scrotum. In rare cases, the position of the testis may be changed, so that the epididymis and cord are in front. The existence of a supernumerary testis has been asserted in some cases, but is rather doubtful.

*Atrophy* of the testicle may occur in old age or in persons who are in a condition of premature senility; or as the result of pressure from herniæ, hydrocele, or inflammatory products.

#### HYDROCELE.

Hydrocele of the tunica vaginalis consists in an accumulation of serum in the cavity of this membrane. It is usually confined to one side. It is caused by acute or chronic inflammation of the tunica vaginalis, by varicocele, or by general dropsy. The serum is found in small or in large quantities; it is usually transparent, may contain cholestearin, or be purulent, or be mixed with blood. The tunica vaginalis remains unchanged, or is thickened, or contains plates of bone, or is covered with polypoid fibrous bodies, which fall off, and are found free in the cavity of the sac. There may be adhesions between the layers of the tunica vaginalis, and in this way the fluid becomes sacculated. The testis is pushed downward and backward; it remains unchanged, or is atrophied.

Hydrocele of the processus vaginalis consists in an accumulation of serum in the cavity of the vaginal process of the peritoneum, which remains open after the descent of the testicle. There are several different varieties.

(a) The vaginal process is entirely open, and there is a free communication with the peritoneal cavity. The serum may originate in the cavity of the peritoneum, or of the vaginal process, and passes freely from one to the other.

(b) The processus vaginalis is closed in the inguinal canal, while its lower portion is filled with serum.

(c) The processus vaginalis is closed about the testis, and the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis is formed. The serum accumulates in the upper part of the vaginal process, which communicates with the peritoneal cavity.

(d) The vaginal process is closed in the inguinal canal and over the testis; the serum accumulates so as to form one or more sacs between these two points. Inguinal hernia may complicate this form of hydrocele.



Hydrocele of the spermatic cord consists in a general œdema of the connective tissue of the cord, or in the development of circumscribed cysts in this connective tissue.

A peculiar form of hydrocele is produced by the accumulation of serum in the sac of an inguinal hernia, from which the intestine has become retracted.

#### SPERMATOCELE.

Cysts containing spermatic fluid not infrequently arise from the epididymis or from the rete testis. These sometimes acquire a large size and crowd the tunica vaginalis before them, so that they simulate a collection of fluid in the cavity of the latter. The wall of the cyst may be lined with ciliated or with flattened epithelium. The contents are sometimes simply serous, but more frequently opalescent, and contain great numbers of spermatozoa.

#### HÆMATOCELE.

Hæmatocele of the tunica vaginalis consists in an effusion of blood into the cavity of this sac. It may be produced by injury; in scurvy, or the hemorrhagic diathesis; or it may complicate a pre-existing hydrocele. The effused blood usually soon degenerates, and we find the sac filled with a brownish fluid, or a thick grumous mass. The tunica vaginalis may be thickened. The testis remains normal or is atrophied.

Effusion of blood into the loose connective tissue of the scrotum is often called *extravaginal hæmatocele*.

Hæmatocele of the spermatic cord occurs in rare cases as a diffused infiltration of blood in the connective tissue of the cord. Or blood may be effused into a hydrocele of the cord.

#### INFLAMMATION.

Inflammation of the testicles may be caused by injuries, exposure to cold, inflammation of the urethra, syphilis; or it may occur in parotitis. The testes, epididymis, or tunica albuginea may be principally involved. Usually only one testicle is inflamed, sometimes both. The inflammation may extend to the vas deferens. The inflammation may be acute or chronic.

*Acute Orchitis* is more frequent in the epididymis and tunica albuginea. When the testis is involved, the organ is congested and infiltrated with serum or pus. From this condition it may return to the normal state, or small abscesses may form. These abscesses may increase in size so as to involve nearly the entire organ. They may perforate externally and then healing may occur by means of granulation tissue; or extensive gangrenous destruction of the scrotum may occur. They may become inclosed in a fibrous capsule and the contents dry and become cheesy or

calcified, and so persist for a long time. The acute inflammation may pass over into the chronic form. *Acute epididymitis* is frequently the result of gonorrhœal infection, and may or may not be associated with inflammation of the testis.

*Chronic Orchitis* occurs as a sequel of acute inflammation or as an original condition. It may affect the testis, the epididymis, or the spermatic cord. The seminiferous tubules may be filled with desquamated and degenerated epithelium; they may be atrophied, or their walls may be greatly thickened so that they are converted into dense fibrous cords with almost or quite complete obliteration of their lumina. There is usually a marked increase in the interstitial tissue which causes atrophy of the tubules. The albuginea may be greatly thickened. In some cases the testis is converted into a mass of dense connective tissue, in which but little trace of the original structure can be made out. The new-formed connective tissue may become calcified. A peri-orchitis may lead to thickening and union of the layers of the tunica vaginalis testis. Abscesses are not infrequent in connection with chronic orchitis.

*Tubercular Orchitis* may occur in connection with tuberculosis of the other genito-urinary organs or the lungs, in acute general miliary tuberculosis; or by itself. It usually begins in the epididymis, and may extend from there to the testis; or it may commence in the testis itself. The appearances which the testicles present when the seat of this form of inflammation are exceedingly varied and difficult of interpretation. This is partly due to the complex structure of the organ, partly to the varied complicating simple inflammatory changes which the different parts of the organ undergo in connection with the special tubercular inflammation, and the impossibility of making any definite morphological distinction between them. Further researches are urgently needed in this direction, and it seems probable that in the presence or absence of the tubercle bacillus we shall find the needed differentiating factor between various inflammatory processes which are at present grouped under the general heading of tuberculosis testis.

We may find in the testicle small circumscribed masses of cells, visible to the naked eye as whitish spots, which are sometimes composed of small spheroidal cells, or of larger polyhedral or fusiform or round cells. These occur in the walls of seminiferous tubules and blood-vessels, and in the interstitial tissue. Sometimes associated with these smaller nodules and sometimes not, we find larger, irregular yellowish or gray cheesy masses, which are believed by many to be formed by the confluence and degeneration of the smaller nodules. The cheesy masses may break down and open externally, giving rise to fistulæ, gangrenous inflammation, etc. Hand in hand with this nodular formation of tissue, which is disposed to degenerative changes, there are various more or less diffuse alterations of the parenchyma and interstitial tissue of the organ, which

must not be overlooked, and which often constitute a most prominent and important factor in the lesion. The interstitial tissue may be more or less densely and diffusely infiltrated with small spheroidal cells. The arteries are often the seat of obliterating endarteritis. The walls of the seminiferous tubules may be very much thickened, so that the lumen may be entirely obliterated. The epithelium lining the tubules may be fatty, disintegrated, and peeled off; or it may have largely disappeared, or the lumen of the tubules may be filled with a granular, nucleated mass which in transverse sections looks like a giant-cell. The thickened walls of the tubules may be infiltrated with small spheroidal cells, so that the underlying stroma is scarcely visible. When this occurs in connection with a similar infiltration of the interstitial tissue and the formation of giant-cells in the lumina, we have structures which present the greatest resemblance to some forms of tubercle granula. This resemblance is especially striking when, as is not infrequently the case, the infiltrated tissue undergoes cheesy degeneration.

Tubercular inflammation may extend from the testis to the vas deferens, vesiculæ seminales, and prostate.<sup>1</sup>

*Syphilitic orchitis.*—This may occur in the form of a diffuse new formation of connective tissue, which may occur in some particular part of the organ or be widely distributed through it, and by reason of which the organ becomes dense and firm. Morphologically, there is no difference between this form of orchitis and chronic indurative orchitis from other causes. It may occur in children affected with congenital syphilis.

Gummata may form in connection with the interstitial induration. These may disappear, leaving irregular cicatrices.

#### TUMORS.

*Fibroma* occurs in the form of small dendritic or polypoid growths of the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis. These sometimes become free, and are found in the sac, usually in connection with hydrocele. Small nodular fibromata occasionally occur in the albuginea and in the spermatic cord.

*Lipomata*, either pure or in combination with myxoma and sarcoma, may arise from the connective tissue of the spermatic cord, or from the tunica albuginea.

*Chondroma*, sometimes in a pure form, but more frequently combined with myxoma and sarcoma, occur in the testicles, and may attain a large size. *Osteoma* has been described.

<sup>1</sup> For the literature of Tuberculosis of the Testicle, consult Waldstein: "Zur Kenntniss der tuberculösen Erkrankungen des Hodens." Virch. Archiv, Bd. 85, p. 397, 1881.



*Sarcomata* occur in the testes and epididymis, most frequently in the former. They present the greatest variety in structure. They may be composed of spheroidal or spindle-shaped cells; they may be soft or contain much fibrous tissue; they are very frequently combined with myxoma, chondroma, lipoma, etc. Owing to the occlusion of the seminiferous tubules, cysts may be formed in these sarcomata. In these cysts polypoid growths of sarcomatous tissue may occur in the form of intracanalicular growths. Thus the so-called *cysto-sarcomata* of the testicle are formed. The walls of these cysts may coalesce, so that large irregular cavities may be formed. When the cysts are not filled by polypoid outgrowths from their walls, they may contain a mucous, serous, or bloody fluid, or masses of flattened cells, fat, and cholestearin. The cysts may be lined with cylindrical, ciliated, or flattened cells.

*Rhabdomyomata* have been several times observed, frequently in combination with cysts.

*Adenoma* is occasionally found, usually in combination with sarcoma, or carcinoma, or with cyst-formation.

*Carcinoma* of the testicle is commonly of the soft medullary form, of rapid growth, and usually primary. It may commence in the testis or epididymis. Usually only one testicle is involved. Frequently the entire glandular portion of the organs is replaced by the new growth. The albuginea expands with the growth of the tumor, and may continue to inclose it even when of large size. The tissues are often very vascular, and hemorrhages, areas of softening, fatty and mucous degeneration are frequent. The inguinal and lumbar glands are apt to become involved, and distant metastasis may occur. Rarely the growth assumes a scirrhus form.

*Cysts*.—Aside from the above-mentioned cysts which occur in connection with tumors and spermatocele, cysts may be formed from persistent remnants of Müller's canal in the epididymis, or from obstruction of the seminiferous tubules or ducts by inflammatory products or tissue.

*Dermoid cysts* of various kinds are of infrequent occurrence, and are sometimes quite complex in character. They may be embedded in the substance of the gland. Probably some of the above-mentioned cystic rhabdomyomata belong here.

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus* may occur in the testis or epididymis.

#### THE SEMINAL VESICLES.

The seminal vesicles may be the seat of acute or chronic inflammation, which are most frequently connected with inflammatory changes in adjacent parts, prostate, urethra, etc. As a result of chronic inflamma-

tion, the vesicles may be atrophied, or they may be greatly dilated as a result of constriction of the ducts.

Tubercular inflammation is usually secondary. Carcinoma of the rectum or other genito-urinary organs may secondarily involve the seminal vesicles. Small concretions, sometimes containing masses of spermatozoa, are occasionally found in the seminal vesicles.

### THE PROSTATE.

*Hypertrophy* of the prostate is a frequent senile change; it is general or partial.

In general hypertrophy, the entire organ is enlarged, and may reach the size of a man's fist. The enlargement is symmetrical, or is most marked in one-half or in the so-called middle lobe. The organ is hard and dense, or soft, or alveolar, containing numerous small openings, from which a turbid fluid exudes. These different appearances depend upon the character of the hypertrophy. The muscular and fibrous tissue alone may be increased, which is most common, or at the same time the glandular tissue, or the glandular tissue alone. In the latter case, the lesion is more properly an *adenoma*. The increase of muscular tissue properly constitutes a *myoma*.

In partial hypertrophy, we find circumscribed nodules of muscular tissue, or of muscular and glandular tissue. They are usually situated at the periphery of the organ, and project into the bladder. They may become detached from the prostate, and are found as small movable tumors beneath the mucous membrane of the bladder.

Both forms of hypertrophy frequently produce, by pressure, retention of urine and changes in the bladder.

*Atrophy* of the prostate is sometimes seen in connection with atrophy of the testicles, with castration, and as a result of inflammation. Sometimes the ducts of the glandular portion are enlarged, or there may be fibrous degeneration of the organ.

### INFLAMMATION.

Inflammation of the prostate is caused by gonorrhœa, by injuries, or, more rarely, is idiopathic. It may run an acute or chronic course. The gland may after a time return to its normal condition, or is gradually converted into a mass of fibrous tissue filled with abscesses. The abscesses may perforate into the bladder, urethra, vesiculæ seminales, rectum, or peritoneum. Or the inflammation may extend to the connective tissue of the scrotum, or beneath the pelvic peritoneum. The pus may become thickened and cheesy, or even calcified.

*Tubercular Inflammation* of the prostate usually accompanies a similar lesion of some of the other genito-urinary organs, and is rarely of

primary occurrence. Large cheesy masses are often formed, which may break down and open into the bladder or rectum.

#### TUMORS.

*Adenoma* of the prostate occurs in one of the forms of hypertrophy of the gland, either with or without an increase in the fibro-muscular interstitial tissue.

*Carcinoma* is of occasional occurrence and may be primary or secondary.

*Cysts* of the prostate are sometimes found either as a result of occlusion of the ducts by hypertrophy of the interstitial tissue, tumors, etc., or as a result of faulty development.

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus* of the prostate has been described, but is rare.

#### CONCRETIONS.

Small ovoidal or spheroidal bodies having the characters of corpora amylacea are of very frequent occurrence in the alveoli of the prostate, particularly in old persons. We find a certain number of them in the prostate of nearly all old men, but they are sometimes present in great numbers. Larger irregular concretions, apparently formed by the coalescence or growth of the smaller ones, are less frequently found, and may be incrustated with lime salts. These concretions may give rise to ulceration of the ducts of the gland or to interference with the passage of urine, but in a majority of cases they seem to be of little or no practical importance.

### THE MAMMA.

#### MALFORMATIONS.

Absence of both mammæ is only found in connection with other marked malformations.

Absence of one mamma has been observed in a few cases, with and without defective development of the corresponding half of the thorax.

Absence of one or of both nipples is more common.

Arrest of development of the mammæ is found in connection with arrest of development of the organs of generation, and, to a less degree, alone.

Supernumerary mammæ and nipples have been observed in a number of cases. The glands may all secrete milk during lactation.

Too early development of the mammæ is sometimes found in young children in connection with abnormal development of the organs of generation.



## HEMORRHAGE.

In young women who suffer from amenorrhœa or dysmenorrhœa, small hemorrhages sometimes occur in the mammæ at the time of menstruation. The blood may find its way into the milk-ducts, and exude in small quantities at the nipple.

Contusions of the breast may produce extravasations of blood in the mammary gland or the surrounding connective tissue. This may become absorbed, or may remain and be surrounded by fibrous tissue, or be converted into cysts.

## INFLAMMATION.

During lactation, the nipple is liable to become inflamed in three ways, which may occur separately or be combined together.

(1) The epidermis is rubbed off by nursing, the cutis becomes inflamed and converted into granulation tissue; in this way small or large ulcers may be formed.

(2) Fissures are formed at the base of the nipple, which extend completely through the skin, and of which the floors are composed of granulation tissue.

(3) There is a diffuse inflammation of the whole nipple, which does not, however, go on to suppuration. The nipple is conical, red, swollen, and very painful.

*Acute inflammation of the mamma—mastitis*—occurs most frequently during lactation; it also occurs during pregnancy, and occasionally in women who are neither pregnant nor nursing.

The inflammation may involve the subcutaneous connective tissue, the gland itself, or the connective tissue between the gland and the wall of the thorax. The inflamed tissues are at first congested, swollen, hard, and painful. The inflammation may stop at this point and resolution take place; but more frequently it is succeeded by suppuration. If the inflammation involves the subcutaneous connective tissue, the abscess is superficial, and soon opens through the skin. If the gland is involved, one lobule after another may become inflamed, so that successive abscesses are formed in different parts of the gland. If the connective tissue beneath the gland is inflamed, a deep abscess of large size is formed, which usually perforates through the skin, but sometimes into the pleural cavity. In both these latter forms of abscess, there is apt to be necrosis of large portions of tissue. These abscesses may cicatrize, or they pass into a chronic condition, and remain as suppurating, fistulous tracts for a long time.

In new-born children, there is often a painful swelling of the breasts, which usually subsides in a few days, but may go on to suppuration.

Epidemic parotitis is sometimes complicated by mastitis.

*Chronic inflammation of the interstitial connective tissue of the*

mammary gland may result in the formation of dense connective tissue (Fig. 132), with or without cystic dilatation of the milk-ducts, or there may be added to this the gradual development of abscesses.



FIG. 132.—CHRONIC INFLAMMATION OF MAMMARY GLAND,  $\times 350$  and reduced.  
New formation of connective tissue with compression of acini.

Eczema sometimes affects the skin of the nipple. Attention has lately been drawn to the relationship between this inflammation and carcinoma of the nipple, for the two are frequently associated. It is possible that the eczema may lead to the subsequent development of the carcinoma.

*Syphilitic* ulcers may occur in the nipple, either as primary chancres or as mucous patches. Gummy tumors have been observed in the mamma.

#### TUMORS.

There may be a general hypertrophy of one or both breasts. This is usually found in young, unmarried women, but sometimes in advanced life. There is an increase in all the elements of the gland, both the glandular and the connective tissue.

*Cysts* of the mamma seem to be for the most part retention cysts, formed by the dilatation of the glandular ducts or acini. During lactation, such retention cysts are sometimes formed, and then contain milk. They may reach an enormous size. At other times, retention cysts are formed containing serous, or viscid brownish fluid, which often exudes through the nipple. These cysts may be large or small, single or multiple. There is usually at the same time some growth and induration of the connective tissue of the gland. In some cases there are polypoid outgrowths of connective tissue from the wall of the cyst. These cysts are not to be confounded with the cysts which are developed with the intracanalicular tumors, of which we shall speak below.

*Fibroma*.—Circumscribed tumors composed of connective tissue are sometimes found in the breast. They are dense and hard, and may inclose in them some of the gland ducts and acini.

*Intracanalicular Fibroma*.—These tumors are formed by a diffuse growth of connective tissue, a dilatation of the milk ducts, and a growth of polypoid fibrous tumors from the walls of the ducts into their cavities.

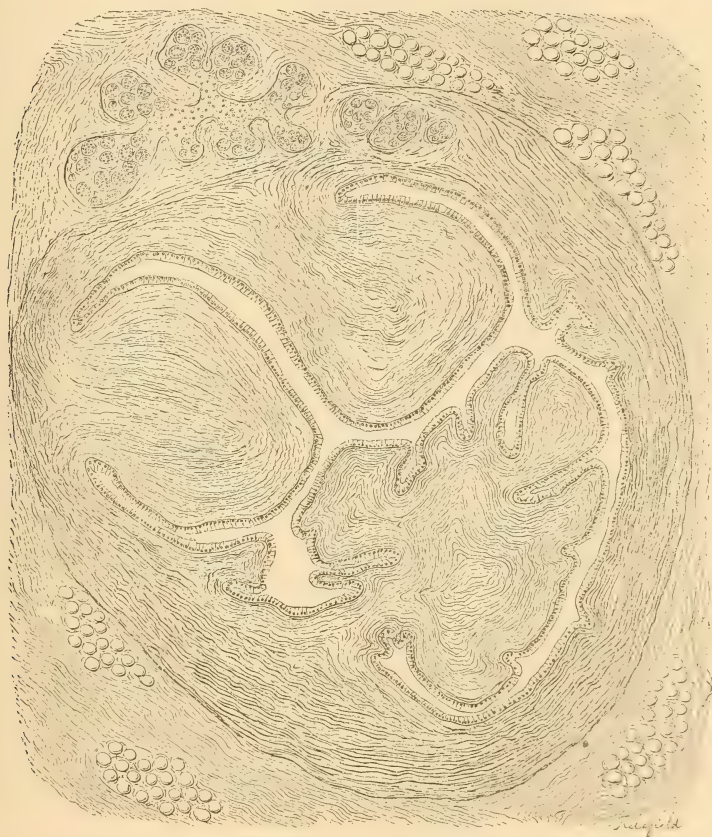


FIG. 133.—INTRA-CANALICULAR FIBROMA OF THE MAMMA,  $\times 170$  and reduced.  
Cross section of a milk duct with polypoid ingrowths.

The glandular acini may be atrophied, or enlarged, or cystic. A section of such a tumor looks like a solid mass of fibrous tissue, divided by clefts and fissures lined with cylindrical or cuboidal epithelium (Fig. 133), or containing cysts into which project polypoid fibrous outgrowths. These tumors grow slowly, but if left to themselves may reach an enormous size. The skin over them may ulcerate, and the tumor project through the opening in fungous masses.

*Myxoma*.—This form of tumor may occur as a circumscribed growth



replacing part of the mamma; or it may be developed in the same way as the intracanalicular fibromata. It is not uncommon in these intracanalicular tumors to find a combination of fibrous, mucous, and sarcomatous tissue in the same tumor.

*Chondroma* is a very rare form of tumor in the mamma. A few cases have been described in which it was combined with carcinoma.

*Adenoma*.—Tumors composed of glandular acini, and ducts surrounded by connective tissue, are of frequent occurrence in the mamma (Fig. 45, p. 142). They are either single or multiple, or several may be developed successively in the same breast. They grow at first slowly, afterwards more rapidly. Their structure may be further complicated by the dilatation of one or more of the ducts which compose the tumor into cysts, and the ingrowth of connective tissue from the walls of these cysts.

*Sarcoma*.—This form of growth may be developed as a circumscribed tumor of small or large size. Its basement substance is that of connective or of mucous tissue, and may be scanty or abundant. The cells are spheroidal, fusiform, branched, or polygonal. These tumors may simply replace the gland; or glandular acini and ducts may be inclosed within them; or these ducts and acini may be dilated so as to form cysts; or there may be a new growth of the gland-tissue so as to form an adeno-sarcoma.

In other cases the sarcoma takes the intracanalicular form. There is a diffuse growth of sarcomatous tissue, a dilatation of milk-ducts and an outgrowth of sarcomatous tissue from the walls of the dilated ducts into their cavities. These tumors often reach an enormous size, and there is apt to be ulceration of the skin over them.

*Carcinoma* of the mamma is most common in women between the ages of thirty-five and fifty-five, but it sometimes occurs in women not over twenty years old, and sometimes in old persons. It occurs in either breast, in the right rather more frequently than in the left, but sometimes in both. The growth begins more frequently at the periphery of the gland than at its centre, and more frequently in the upper edge of the gland than in any other place.

The growth most frequently begins as a small circumscribed nodule which enlarges and involves more and more of the breast; sometimes, however, it is diffuse from the first, and sometimes it begins in the nipple.

It may infiltrate the adjacent tissues, and the axillary and cervical glands, and form metastatic tumors in different parts of the body.

There are several different anatomical forms of the growth.

(1) There is a connective-tissue stroma, in which are tubular or irregular spaces filled with small polygonal cells, or with larger cells of irregular shape.

(2) The connective-tissue stroma is very abundant and dense, while the epithelial cells are scanty (see Fig. 54, p. 150). It is said that with these tumors secondary infiltrations of the bones are especially common.

(3) The connective-tissue stroma is comparatively scanty, while the cells are very numerous. The cells are small and polygonal or large and of irregular shape, they are arranged in irregular spaces, or in spaces resembling the shape of the glandular acini.

(4) The new growth follows the normal distribution of the gland ducts and acini. These are enlarged, their epithelial cells are increased in size and number, and there are infiltrations of similar cells in the stroma.

(5) Colloid cancer is of rare occurrence.

(6) The basement substance may resemble mucous tissue.

In any of these forms of cancer there may be cystic dilatations of the ducts and acini.

Besides the primary cancers of the mamma, secondary cancers are met with in rare cases.

#### THE MALE MAMMA.

There may be an abnormal number of mammæ. In boys, at about the time of puberty, the mammæ may be swollen and inflamed; or they may secrete milk. Cases are recorded in which adult males possessed large mammæ which secreted milk. The breasts may be enlarged from an increase of fat or of connective tissue.

*Cysts* of the male breast are not very infrequent. *Fibromata*, *sarcomata*, *cysto-sarcomata*, *myxomata*, and various forms of *carcinomata* are recorded.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> For literature of tumor of male mamma, see Gross: "Tumors of the Mammary Gland," p. 237.

## THE BONES.

---

### DISTURBANCES OF CIRCULATION.

*Hyperæmia.*—The evidences of this condition are most marked to the naked eye in the periosteum and marrow, particularly the latter. It should be remembered that the color of the marrow varies considerably under normal conditions, depending upon age and situation. In the bones of the fœtus and new-born, and near the areas of ossification in the young, the marrow is normally red in color. In adults, the marrow of the sternum, vertebræ, and to a certain degree that of the ribs, pelvic and cranial bones, and the cancellated tissue of the ends of the long bones, is red or reddish in color. But most of the marrow, particularly in long bones of the extremities, is of a yellowish color from the presence of fat-cells. In old age the marrow of all the bones is apt to become pale, and to assume a more or less translucent or gelatinous appearance.

Hyperæmia usually occurs as an accompaniment of inflammatory processes in the bone, and when marked, the periosteum is swollen and red; the compact bone-tissue may appear of a pink color, while the marrow, either by an increase in the amount of blood, or absorption of its fat, or both, may be of a uniform dark-red color, or mottled with red and reddish-yellow.

*Hemorrhage.*—This may be due to wounds and injuries; to inflammatory and necrotic processes, and small hemorrhages often accompany scurvy, purpura, hemorrhagic diathesis, and leukæmia. Hemorrhages of considerable size between the periosteum and bone may lead to serious consequences, by cutting off the blood-supply to the superficial layers of bone, and thus inducing necrosis; but when not in contact with the air, they are not usually of serious import, since they are readily absorbed. The smaller hemorrhages of the medulla are not usually of much importance. The decomposition of the extravasated blood may lead to extensive pigmentation of the marrow.



## WOUNDS, FRACTURES, AND DISLOCATIONS.

For details of the varied alterations produced under these conditions, and the secondary changes involved in the healing process, we refer to the works on surgery. It may be stated here, however, that the healing of fractures occurs by the formation of granulation tissue in greater or less amount about the seat of fracture, and the direct formation of bone under the influence of osteoblasts, or by a preliminary formation of cartilage or fibrous tissue, and the gradual conversion of this into bone by metaplasia.

## INFLAMMATION.

The periosteum, bone-tissue, and marrow are so intimately connected, that in most cases they all share to a greater or less degree in the pathological alterations of the bones. But as sometimes one, sometimes another, is most markedly involved, it is convenient to consider separately here the inflammatory changes by which they are respectively affected.

## PERIOSTITIS.

We may distinguish several varieties:

(1) *Simple Acute Periostitis*.—This form is apt to occur in children and ill-nourished persons from comparatively slight injuries, or from unknown causes. The periosteum is thickened, succulent, congested, and more or less abundantly infiltrated with leucocytes, while the connective-tissue fibres are swollen. The periosteum becomes less firmly adherent to the bone, and the cells of the inner layers are increased in number. This variety of inflammation may terminate in the disappearance of the new elements, and complete resolution; or it may represent a preliminary stage of one of the other varieties of inflammation.

(2) *Suppurative Periostitis* may begin as a simple or as a purulent inflammation. The pus is formed in the inner layers of the periosteum, and between it and the bone. The outer layers of the periosteum may resist for a long time the suppurative process. The accumulation of pus may dissect up the membrane from the bone, and leave the latter bare. The pus thus formed may remain in this position for a long time, may be absorbed, may become dry and cheesy, or may burst through the periosteum, and form abscesses in the soft parts. The bone, if separated from its nutrient membrane, may remain unchanged, but more frequently necrosis, or inflammation of the bone itself, is set up. Such a periostitis may run an acute or a chronic course.

Sometimes suppurative periostitis takes on a very *malignant* character. Pus is developed not only beneath, but in the periosteum, forming abscesses filled with foul pus. The periosteum breaks down into a gangrenous, foul-smelling mass, and the same change may affect the neighboring soft parts. The medulla may take part in the process, and break

down into a purulent, gangrenous mass. Hemorrhages may complicate the process. The lymphatic glands are enlarged and swollen; abscesses may form in different parts of the body, and the patient may die with the symptoms of septicæmia. Micrococci may be found under these conditions in the exudations of the periosteum as well as in the metastatic abscesses.

(3) *Fibrous Periostitis*.—This is a slow, chronic form of inflammation, resulting in the formation of new connective tissue in the periosteum, which becomes thickened and dense, and unusually adherent to the bone. It may be the result of necrosis, chronic arthritis, chronic ulcers of adjacent soft parts, etc. It may follow a simple acute periostitis.

(4) *Ossifying Periostitis* results in the formation of new bone from the inner layers of the periosteum. The masses of new-formed bone, called *osteophytes*, are of variable shape. They may form a thin, velvet-like, villous layer; or they are little spiculæ; or they form larger, rounded masses, or a thick, uniform layer, extending over a large part of a bone. They may be at first very loosely connected with the bone. The new bone has at first a loose, spongy character. It is formed of thin plates of bone inclosing large cavities filled with marrow. Layers of compact bone-tissue are formed from the medulla on the sides of the original plates, and thus the medullary cavities are gradually filled up with bone. The new bone may thus become as compact, or even denser than normal bone. The hyperostoses and exostoses thus formed may remain indefinitely, or they may gradually become smaller, and finally disappear by absorption.

The formation of new bone in the form of osteophytes, or in dense masses beneath and in the periosteum, occurs as a result of the same process by which bone-tissue is normally formed. Certain rather large cells, called *osteoblasts*, which are formed along the blood-vessels, possess the power of depositing osseous basement substance about themselves, and so forming bone. Pathological new formation of bone differs from the normal mainly in the conditions under which it occurs. The blood-vessels around which the pathological bone develops which grow out of from the old vessels, as in the formation of granulation tissue, are irregularly arranged and subject to a variety of abnormal nutritive and mechanical conditions, so that the new bone is not usually formed in a series of definite systems of lamellæ, but, as above described, in a series of irregular spiculæ or masses. Moreover, as will be seen further on, the conditions under which it is formed being liable to change, and itself serving no definite purpose in the economy, as does normal bone, pathological new bone is often an evanescent structure. The details of its disappearance will be considered below.

(5) *Syphilitic Periostitis*.—Syphilitic poisoning may give rise to simple, purulent, fibrous, and ossifying periostitis. Or, in addition to

these, gummy tumors may be developed in the periosteum. The bone tissue is usually more or less involved. The gummata may be absorbed or undergo cheesy degeneration, or be converted into fibrous tissue, or they may suppurate.

(6) *Tubercular Periostitis*.—In badly nourished persons, particularly in children suffering from the so-called scrofulous diathesis (see p. 288), a chronic purulent periostitis is frequently associated with the formation of miliary tubercles. Abscesses are apt to form in and about the periosteum, and when these are evacuated, granulation tissue may develop, in which miliary tubercles are formed. In these tubercles the *Bacillus tuberculosis* may be found. The bone is apt to be involved to a greater or less extent, in the form of inflammatory changes, or caries.

#### OSTEITIS.

Inflammation in bone-tissue is dependent upon the same general conditions and presents essentially the same series of phenomena as inflammation in other kinds of connective tissue. But it is variously modified in detail, by the peculiar, dense, and unyielding character of the basement substance, and by certain peculiarities of the blood-supply and the nutritive conditions under which the cells are placed. In simple exudative inflammation, the same series of phenomena occur in connection with the blood-vessels, resulting in the production of serum, fibrin, and pus, as in other tissues; but the extent to which these changes can occur is limited, and constantly associated with striking alterations in the basement substance. It is these secondary alterations in the basement substance which lend to inflammations of the bone their most peculiar characters, and in the prominence which these assume the fundamental alterations are often overlooked. The most common of these secondary alterations are the absorption of the hard basement substance of the bone and its replacement by or conversion into young cellular forms of fibrillar connective tissue or marrow tissue, and the new formation, in more or less atypical manner, of new bone. As a result of these changes, the bones in simple inflammation undergo alterations either in the direction of greater vascularity and increase of the spaces filled with granulation or marrow tissue, and so become more porous and less compact at the expense of the dense basement substance; or, they undergo alterations in the direction of an increase in density at the expense of new-formed or pre-existing marrow spaces. Or, as is frequently the case, both series of changes occur either simultaneously, in different regions, or follow one another, or are variously associated together. Very frequently one or the other of the opposing forms of alteration predominate, or one may occur to the exclusion of the other, and we thus have two prominent forms of inflammation which are called *rarefying osteitis* or *osteoporosis* and *condensing osteitis* or *osteo-sclerosis*. The exact nature of the conditions under



which in one case the bones become more, in another less dense, we do not understand.

In addition to these phases of inflammation in bone and in frequent and varied association with them, there are alterations leading to death and destruction of bone-tissue in greater or less amount, which we call *caries* and *necrosis*, and also inflammatory changes, more or less characteristic, due to the influence of peculiar specific agencies, such as the syphilitic and tuberculous infection, and we thus recognize *tubercular* and *syphilitic osteitis*. Again, the production of pus is so prominent a feature in some cases as to represent a *purulent* phase of the inflammatory process. Finally, any of these forms, and commonly several of them at once, are variously associated with more or less marked inflammatory or degenerative alterations of the periosteum on the one hand, or the marrow tissue on the other, or of both combined.

*Rarefying Osteitis* consists essentially in the formation in the marrow spaces, Haversian canals, or beneath the periosteum, of new, very cellular and vascular tissue, resembling granulation or young marrow tissue, in connection with which, or under whose influence, the basement substance of the bone is absorbed. The absorption of the bone occurs chiefly in the same way in which the bone is absorbed in normal growth, namely under the influence of certain large cells called *osteoclasts*, which are



FIG. 134.—RAREFYING OSTEITIS, ULNA OF CHILD.  $\times$  about 750 and reduced.

a, Isolated bone fragments with roughened edges; b, marrow tissue; c, Howship's lacunæ with osteoclasts.

grouped around the blood-vessels. If we examine a thin section of bone which is undergoing absorption (Fig. 134), we find the edges of the bone, which border on the vascular surfaces, irregularly indented by deep or shallow depressions, sometimes simple, sometimes quite complex. These

are called *Howship's lacunæ* and are usually filled or lined by larger and smaller granular, frequently multinuclear cells—the so-called *osteoclasts*. In the larger lacunæ, there may be granulation tissue with loops of blood-vessels, with or without cells which have the morphological characters of osteoclasts. Under the influence of these peculiar cells, or of the new vascular tissue, the bone is gradually absorbed. In other cases, we find irregular branching channels through the bone across the lamellæ, which appear to be due to the enlargement and coalescence of the lacunæ and canaliculi without the direct influence of blood-vessels or other cells than the fixed cells of the bone. The tissue which replaces the absorbed bone may be very rich in small spheroidal cells, or it may be more or less fibrillar. As a result of this process, irregular islets of bone-tissue may be entirely separated from adjacent bone and surrounded by a more or less fibrillar vascular tissue; this is most apt to occur in the cancellous tissue. Or the originally compact bone may become traversed by a series of larger and smaller irregular branching, communicating channels with ragged walls. These progressive alterations may cease and be succeeded by a new formation of bone along the edges of the channels or cavities; it may result in necrotic changes; the vascular changes may become prominent, and suppuration ensue.

Rarefying osteitis may occur as an idiopathic disease from unknown causes; it is often associated with the scrofulous diathesis, with diseases of the joints, with fractures or other injuries to the bone; it often forms a predominant feature in tubercular inflammation of the bones, etc. It is chiefly by a rarefying osteitis that bone-tissue is eroded and destroyed in the vicinity of tumors, aneurisms, etc., which exert pressure on the bones. By the same process, the sharp ends of fractured bones may be rounded off as healing proceeds.

When this form of inflammation occurs in cancellous bone-tissue, the marrow is red or gelatinous, and the bony septa may disappear altogether, so that, in extreme cases, we may have, instead of cancellous bone, a mass of granulation tissue. When the disease occurs in the articular extremity of a bone, the granulating medulla may send little offshoots through the articular cartilage. These may become fused together, and inflammation of the joint follow. The walls of the shafts of the long bones may be converted into spongy tissue. If, as is sometimes the case, an ossifying periostitis occurs at the same time, the bone is thickened but spongy; or, sometimes, there are concentric layers of compact bone-tissue separated by rarefied bone.

*Condensing Osteitis* (osteosclerosis).—This lesion is characterized by the new formation of bone in the walls of the marrow cavities or Haversian canals. The bone is formed under the influence of the blood-vessels and osteoblasts, as in normal bone formation, but with less regularity. It may result in the conversion of cancellous tissue into compact bone,

in the filling up of the medullary cavity of long bones with more or less dense bone-tissue. The compact bone, owing to the filling of its Haversian canals, may become very dense and ivory-like. When the medullary cavities of long bones are involved, the yellow marrow is converted into red marrow by the absorption of fat and increased vascularity. It is frequently associated with ossifying periostitis.

It very frequently follows rarefying osteitis, and under the microscope we can then often see the Howship's lacunæ resulting from the original

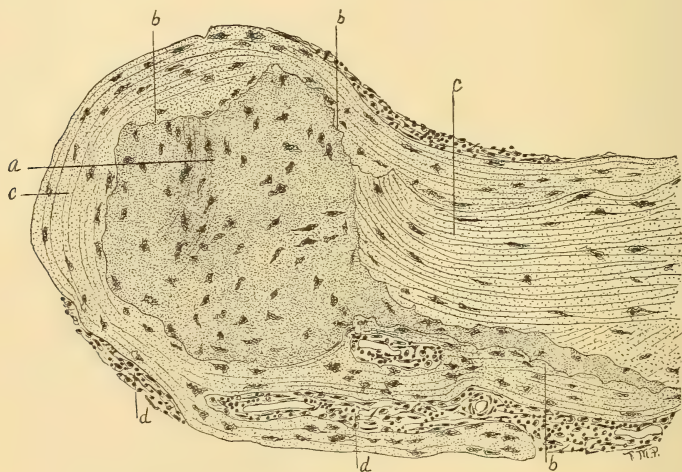


FIG. 135.—CONDENSING OSTEITIS OR OSTEO-SCLEROSIS OF ULNA OF CHILD,  $\times$  about 700 and reduced. *a*, Fragment of the old bone with roughened sinuous edges; *b*, old Howship's lacunæ covered with more recently formed bone lamellæ; *d*, marrow tissue.

absorption process filled and covered in with new bone lamellæ (Fig. 135). It is apt to occur in connection with necrosis or some chronic inflammation of adjacent soft parts, but it is sometimes idiopathic or occurs under unknown conditions.

*Suppurative osteitis (abscess of bone).*—This process occurs usually in the ends of the long bones. It begins with a rarefying osteitis. The medulla undergoes actual suppuration, the bone-tissue is destroyed, and a circumscribed cavity is formed in the bone, filled with pus, and lined with granulation tissue.

Less frequently, abscesses are formed in the shaft of a long bone, by a circumscribed suppuration of the medulla. These abscesses usually occur in old people. They last for many years, have little tendency to perforation, may gradually enlarge, and be accompanied by an ossifying periostitis, so that the bone is expanded. Very rarely acute suppurative osteitis, with rapid formation of an abscess, and perforation has been observed.



In some cases, instead of abscess, there may be a diffuse infiltration with pus of the Haversian canals, or the spaces formed by rarefying osteitis.

*Tubercular Osteitis* is essentially a rarefying osteitis associated with the formation of tubercle tissue and cheesy degeneration. The tubercles are sometimes small, scattered, and miliary in form; sometimes they unite to form larger and smaller masses. There may be extensive involvement of the medulla. There may be much simple granulation tissue or the formation of abscess associated with the process. Condensing osteitis and necrosis are not infrequently present. Tubercular osteitis is often associated with tubercular inflammation of the joints. It is most apt to occur in cancellous bone-tissue and is most common in the bodies of the vertebræ and in the carpal and tarsal bones. Tubercle bacilli may be found in the tubercular masses, sometimes in considerable numbers.

*Syphilitic Osteitis*.—The syphilitic poison may induce one of the above-mentioned varieties of osteitis, or it may produce gummy tumors. The gummatous osteitis usually commences in the periosteum, which becomes thickened and infiltrated with cells, so that there may be a circumscribed thickening of the periosteum with or without distinct gummata. The vessels which extend from the periosteum into the bone become surrounded by new cellular tissue, which causes an enlargement of the canals. At this stage, if we strip off the periosteum, we drag with it the vessels surrounded by the new cell-growth, leaving the bones beneath with numerous small perforations extending inwards. As the disease progresses, the gummatous tissue around the vessels continues to increase, and the channels in the bone enlarge by a rarefying osteitis, and coalesce, forming large irregular defects filled with gummatous tissue. In these masses of new tissue cheesy degeneration and the formation of fibrous tissue occur, giving them the characteristic appearance. In the vicinity of these gumma-filled spaces, a condensing osteitis may occur, both in the substance of the bone and on the surface in the form of osteophytes, so that the opening in the bone may be surrounded by an elevated irregular ring of bone-tissue. All this may occur beneath the uninvolved skin, or the skin may participate by a suppurative inflammation, resulting in ulceration. These processes may be circumscribed or involve a large part of a bone. It is not infrequently associated with necrosis of larger and smaller portions of bone. The gummatous tissue may be absorbed and its place be more or less filled with fibrous tissue. Syphilitic osteitis is most frequent in the cranial bones, but may occur elsewhere, as in the sternum, clavicle, tibia and fibula, the ribs, etc.

*Congenital Syphilis*.—The bones of young children in this condition may occasionally show increased density or evidences of periostitis, or irregular thickenings, particularly of the skull. The researches of Weg-

ner,<sup>1</sup> which have been frequently confirmed by other observers, have shown that exceedingly characteristic changes very uniformly occur in the long bones in still-born or young children who are the victims of hereditary syphilis. These changes are found for the most part along the border zone between the epiphysis and diaphysis. It will be remembered that in normal ossification of the long bones, the border line between the calcification and ossification zones is narrow, sharply defined, and straight, or gently and evenly curved. In the syphilitic bones, on the contrary, this line is broader, uneven, and presents various modifications depending upon the stage of the disease. Wegner distinguishes three prominent stages, which, however, merge into one another, so that all intermediate forms may be seen. In the first stage, there may be seen between the cartilage and the new-formed spongy bone, a white or reddish-white zone about two mm. in breadth, with very irregular borders consisting of calcified cartilage, in which the linear groups of cartilage cells are more abundant than normal. In the second stage, the calcified zone, still containing an unusual number of cartilage cells, is broader and still more irregular and less sharply outlined against the ossification zone. The cartilage just beyond it is softer and almost gelatinous, and may contain numerous blood-vessels, islets of connective tissue, or of calcification, or irregular ossification. In the third stage, the bone may be pouched out at the sides around the ossification and calcification zones, and the perichondrium and periosteum thickened. The whitish irregular calcified zone is hard and friable. Between this and the new-formed bone, there is an irregular soft, gray or grayish-yellow zone from two to four mm. in thickness, which forms a loose, readily separated connection between the cartilage and the diaphysis. The white friable zone consists mainly of irregular rows of degenerated and distorted cartilage cells, lying in a calcified basement substance; of irregular masses of atypical bone-tissue, and of blood-vessels surrounded by variously shaped cells. The soft zone consists of more or less vascular tissue with homogeneous basement substance, and round and spindle-shaped cells. This soft zone is not sharply outlined against the adjoining new-formed spongy bone, which, instead of consisting of the normal narrow spaces with bony lamellæ between them, is largely composed of granulation tissue.

Different stages of this faulty development may be seen in different bones in the same individual. According to Wegner, the lesion is usually most advanced in the lower end of the femur, then in the lower ends of the leg bones and of the forearm; then in the upper ends of the tibia, femur, and fibula.

Not infrequently, there is fatty degeneration of the marrow cells and

---

<sup>1</sup> Virchow's Archiv, Vol. 50, 1870, p. 305.

blood-vessels, giving the marrow a reddish-yellow color. These alterations of the bones may occur, not only in children which have gummata in other parts of the body, but also in those in which other evidences of syphilitic poisoning are absent. So uniform is their occurrence that their presence alone suffices for the establishment of a diagnosis.

#### OSTEOMYELITIS.

In most of the inflammatory processes which affect the bones, the medulla has an important share, so that many conditions described as osteitis are really osteomyelitis. It is customary, however, to reserve the latter name for those cases in which the medulla is primarily or chiefly involved. Using the word in this sense, we may distinguish an *idiopathic* and a *traumatic osteomyelitis*.

*Idiopathic osteomyelitis*.—At the commencement of this disease, which usually begins in the shaft of one of the long bones, there is hyperæmia and œdema of the medulla, so that if the bone be opened, the marrow is soft and of a dark-red color. A diffuse suppuration now rapidly ensues, and the marrow becomes streaked or mottled with gray. Occasionally, though not often, larger and smaller abscesses may form in the marrow. The inflammatory areas may be circumscribed and scattered; or, in the more malignant cases, the entire marrow may become rapidly involved. The cancellous tissue of one or both of the epiphyses usually becomes involved. The disease, however, is not commonly confined to the medullary spaces. The periosteum becomes œdematous and infiltrated with pus, and the surrounding soft parts may become the seat of intense inflammatory changes. Abscesses of the periosteum or surrounding tissues are apt to form. As a result of these changes, necrosis of greater or less portions of the bone may ensue. The medullary cavity may become enlarged as pus accumulates, and the wall of the bone may be broken through, permitting the discharge of pus outwards. Sometimes several bones may be involved at once. Secondary involvement of the joints is very frequent. There may be only a serous or purulent exudation; or the acute and destructive inflammatory process may extend to the joint and produce extensive alterations. In young persons the epiphyses very frequently become separated from the shaft by the destruction of the cartilage which binds them together.

In the severer cases, which are often denominated, *par excellence*, malignant osteomyelitis, the changes may be very rapid and destructive. The medulla becomes broken down and gangrenous; the joints are soon involved; large portions of the bone, sometimes the whole shaft, necrose; the periosteum and surrounding parts become gangrenous; the veins contain thrombi, and pyæmic infarctions and abscesses may form in various parts of the body. Micrococci have been found by several observers in spontaneous osteomyelitis in the bone and in the metastatic



abscesses, and while there is much reason for believing that some forms at least of malignant osteomyelitis are due to the presence of micrococci, this does not seem yet definitely established. It is moreover uncertain whether the micrococci which have been observed are peculiar to this disease, or whether they may not be identical with forms which are found in connection with other suppurative inflammations.<sup>1</sup>

In the more chronic forms of the disease there is apt to be more or less ossifying periostitis, and osteo-sclerosis, and fistulæ may form in the bone through which the exudations are discharged.

*Traumatic Osteomyelitis.*—This form of inflammation may be the result of fracture, amputation, etc. It consists essentially in a more or less diffuse suppurative inflammation of the marrow, variously associated, depending upon the intensity and cause of the disease, with necrosis, gangrene, periostitis, etc. In its more intense and destructive forms, its lesions are similar to those of spontaneous osteomyelitis, and are probably identical with them. Micrococci have been found in the inflammatory foci. Metastatic pyæmic abscess may be formed in other parts of the body.

#### NECROSIS.

By necrosis we understand the death of a larger or smaller portion of bone. This condition is induced by causes which deprive the bone of its proper vascular supply from the periosteum and medulla. Suppurative periostitis, osteomyelitis, and osteitis, traumatic separation of the periosteum, ulcers of neighboring soft parts, emboli, the action of phosphorus vapor, and diseases like typhus, which diminish the vitality, may cause necrosis. Necrosis is a pure form of gangrene, differing from gangrene of soft parts in that the dead bone has at first, and may retain for a long time, the general outward characters of normal bone; while in dead soft parts, the phenomena of decomposition, under the influence of bacteria, rapidly ensue, inducing marked complicating appearances in the dead tissue.

When a portion of bone has died, an inflammation is set up at the dividing line between the dead and living bone. This inflammation has the characters of a rarefying osteitis (see above), and finally separates the dead from the living bone. The dead bone, or *sequestrum*, may remain smooth and unaltered, or it may be eroded by the influence of surrounding

---

<sup>1</sup> Consult Kocher, Arch. für klin. Chirurgie, Bd. 23, p. 101. Schüller, Centralblatt für Chirurgie, 1881, No. 42. Rosenbach, Centralb. für Chirurgie, No. 5, Feb. 2d, 1884, p. 65. Becker, Deutsch. Med. Wochenschrift, Nov. 14th, 1883, No. 46. General bibliography and cultivation and inoculation experiments in articles by Krause in Fortschritte der Medicin, Bd. 2, 1884, Apr. 1st, No. 7; April 15th, No. 8. Consult also Rosenbach: "Mikro-Organismen bei den Wundinfektions-Krankheiten des Menschen," 1884, p. 49.

pus or granulation tissue, or osteoclasts. In this way it is possible for the sequestrum, if it be small, to be entirely absorbed; but this does not often occur. More frequently there is a production of new bone around the sequestrum, either beneath the periosteum or in the substance of the bone, and this becomes lined with granulation tissue, from which pus may continue to be formed, bathing the sequestrum.

Necrosis may involve the superficial layers, or the entire thickness of the wall of a long bone, or only the spongy tissue and inner layers of the wall, or an entire bone, or a number of different portions of the same bone; but it is most apt to occur in compact bone.

The death and separation of the bone is very soon followed by the growth of new bone to repair the loss. The periosteum, the medulla, and the surrounding soft tissues may all take part in this new growth. The new bone is usually irregular, rough, perforated with openings, through which pus formed around the sequestrum may be discharged. If the sequestrum be removed, healing may occur by the formation of new bone; but the bone is usually more or less distorted by the irregular new ossification.

*Phosphorus Necrosis.*—Under the influence of phosphorus vapor, periostitis and osteitis, particularly of the jaw, are apt to occur, which usually lead to more or less extensive necrosis, usually associated with prolonged and often extensive suppuration.

#### CARIES.

Caries of bone is essentially an ulcerative osteitis, resulting in progressive molecular destruction of the bone-tissue. It differs from necrosis in that, in the latter, larger and smaller masses of bone die, while in caries the destruction is molecular and gradual. It may occur in connection with any form of osteitis, with periostitis, and osteomyelitis, or it may be secondary to inflammatory or destructive processes in the joints or adjacent soft parts. The depressed surfaces of bones in which caries is progressing are rough and more or less finely jagged, and may be covered with granulations. The minute changes by which ulceration and destruction of the bone are produced in caries are somewhat analogous with those in rarefying osteitis, but there are marked degenerative changes in the bone-cells, which may become fatty or converted into a granular material. Moreover, the basement substance of the bone, instead of being absorbed, may disintegrate with the formation of larger and smaller masses of detritus. Sometimes the lime salts are removed from the basement substance, which is converted into atypical fibrillar tissue and fatty and granular detritus. Very extensive suppurations and necrosis may be associated with caries.

Long-continued caries, especially in badly-nourished individuals, is apt to become complicated with tubercular inflammation.

There is very little tendency to spontaneous healing in caries, but it may occur, and the defects produced may be more or less supplied by means of new-formed bone.

#### RACHITIS (RICKETS.)

Rickets is a disease affecting the development of bone, preventing its proper ossification. The disease usually occurs during the first two years of life, but may be congenital, or may occur as late as the twelfth year.

The physiological growth of bones depend upon three conditions. They grow in length by the production of bone in the cartilage between the epiphysis and diaphysis; in thickness, by the growth of bone from the inner layers of the periosteum. At the same time, the medullary canal is enlarged in proportion to the growth of the bone by the disappearance of the inner layers of bone.

In rickets, these three conditions are abnormally affected. The cartilaginous and subperiosteal cell-growth, which precedes ossification, goes on with increased rapidity and exuberance, and in an irregular manner, both between the epiphyses and diaphyses, and beneath the periosteum, while the actual ossification is imperfect, irregular, or wanting. At the same time, the dilatation of the medullary cavity goes on irregularly, and often to an excessive degree.

If we examine microscopically the region between the epiphysis and diaphysis, we find that the cartilage cells are not regularly arranged in rows along a definite zone in advance of the line of ossification, as in normal development, but that there is an irregular heaping up of cartilage cells, sometimes in rows, sometimes not, over an ill-defined and irregular area. The zone of calcification also, instead of being narrow, regular, and sharply defined, is quite lacking in uniformity. Areas of calcification may be isolated in the region of proliferating cartilage cells, or calcification may be altogether absent over considerable areas.

Corresponding to these irregularities, the ossification zone is also irregular. New-formed bone and marrow cavities containing blood-vessels may lie in the midst of the cartilage, or masses of cartilage may lie deep in the region which should be completely ossified. In other places, it seems as if the cartilage tissue were directly converted into an ill-formed bone-tissue by metaplasia or direct transformation. It will readily be seen from this that the medullary spaces of the new-formed bone are irregular, and this abnormality is enhanced by the premature intramedullary absorption of the bone.

The same sort of irregularity in the bone formation may be seen beneath the periosteum. An excessive proliferation of cells in the inner layers of the periosteum, the irregular calcification which occurs about them, and the absence of uniformity in the elaboration of ill-structured



bone, conspire to produce an irregular spongy bone-tissue instead of the compact lamellated tissue which is so necessary here for the solidity of the structure. The increased cell-growth between the epiphyses and diaphyses produces the peculiar knobby swellings which are characteristic of rickets. At the same time, the medullary cavity increases rapidly in size, and the inner layers of the bone become spongy. The medulla may be congested, and fat, if it has formed, may be absorbed, and a modified form of osteitis may ensue.

The result of these processes is, that the bones do not possess solidity and cannot resist the traction of the muscles or outside pressure. The epiphyses may be displaced or bent, especially in the ribs, less frequently in the long bones. The long bones and the pelvic bones may be bent into a variety of forms. Incomplete fractures are not infrequent. Complete fractures do not usually occur until the later stages of the disease, when the bones have become more solid. In the head, the cranium may be unnaturally large for the size of the face; the fontanelles and sutures may remain open; the bones may be soft, porous, and hyperæmic; while at their edges there may be rough bony projections beneath the pericranium. Sometimes, especially in the occipital bone, there are rounded defects in the bone filled only with a fibrous membrane; this constitutes one of the forms of so-called *craniotabes*.

It does not fall within the scope of this work to describe the various deformities which may occur as a result of this disease. The familiar pigeon breast; the rows of knobs along the sides of the chest from bending and dilatation of the ribs at the point of junction of cartilage and bone; the knock-knee, bow-legs, spinal curvatures, etc., may all be the result of rachitic weakening of the bones.

After a time, the rachitic process may stop, and the bones take on a more normal character. The porous bone-tissue becomes compact and even unnaturally dense, the swellings at the epiphyses disappear, many of the deformed bones may become of a normal shape. In severe cases, however, the deformities continue through life; especially is there a cessation of the growth of the bones in their long axis, so that the persons affected are dwarfed.

The disease may have an acute or a chronic character. The acute form begins usually during the first six months of life. The children suffer from vomiting, diarrhoea, profuse sweating, chronic bronchitis and pneumonia, general anæmia, and wasting. They either die, or the rachitic process is gradually developed. The chronic form is seen in older children, and often in those apparently healthy. The changes in the bones may take place without any constitutional symptoms, though there is often catarrhal bronchitis, pneumonia, and anæmia.

## OSTEOMALACIA.

This lesion consists in the softening of fully formed hard bone-tissue by the removal of its inorganic salts. It is to be clearly distinguished from rickets, whose lesions are due to a faulty development of bone, although in certain external characters the two diseases sometimes present considerable similarity. Osteomalacia usually occurs in adults, most frequently in females during pregnancy and after parturition; more rarely it occurs in males, and in females unassociated with the above conditions. Its cause is not known.

Microscopical examination shows that the decalcification occurs first in the periphery of the Haversian canals and in the inner layers of the walls of the marrow spaces. As the salts of lime are removed, the basement substance at first remains as a finely fibrillated material still preserving the original lamellation. The bone-cells may be changed in shape or degenerated. After a time the decalcified tissue may disintegrate and be absorbed and its place occupied by new-formed marrow or granulation tissue. As the disease goes on, the marrow tissue is congested and red, the fat absorbed, and there is a great accumulation of small spheroidal cells; or the marrow may assume a gelatinous appearance. The decalcification and absorption of the bone from within may proceed so far that the bony substance in the cancellous tissue almost entirely disappears and the compact bone is reduced to a thin soft decalcified tissue. The disease is not always continuously progressive, but may be subject to temporary cessation.

As a result of this softened conditions of the bones the weight of the body and the actions of the muscles may induce a series of deformities which are sometimes excessive: curvatures of the spine, complete and incomplete fractures of the bones, distortions of the pelvis, sternum, etc. There is a tendency in this disease to a general involvement of the bones, but the changes are sometimes confined to single bones or groups of bones. The cranium is rarely much affected.

## ALTERATIONS OF THE BONE-MARROW IN LEUKÆMIA AND ANÆMIA.

In certain forms of leukæmia, the marrow of the bones is very markedly altered. The change consists mainly in an accumulation in the marrow-tissue of small spheroidal cells often in a condition of fatty degeneration, which lie in the meshes of reticular connective tissue, and in and along the walls of the blood-vessels. There may also be absorption of the fat and sometimes enlargement of the marrow cavity from absorption of the bone. The marrow cavity may also contain, intermingled with its other elements, nucleated red blood-cells, small spheroidal cells, which contain red blood-cells (Fig. 136), and not infre-

quently considerable numbers of small octahedral crystals (called Charcot's crystals).

The degree to which this accumulation of cells occurs varies much in different cases, and the gross appearances of the marrow are consequently very variable. In some cases the marrow is soft and has a uniform

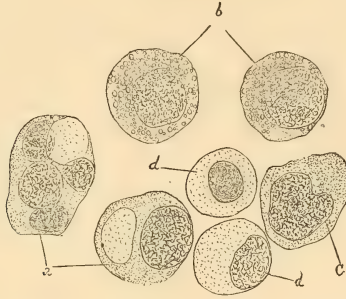


FIG. 136.—CELLS FROM THE MARROW OF FEMUR IN LEUKEMIA,  $\times 750$  and reduced.

a, Spheroidal and elongated cells containing small red blood-cells or fragments of red blood-cells; b, small spheroidal cells in condition of fatty degeneration; c, cell similar to the last but not fatty; d, nucleated red blood-cells.

red appearance, or it is variously mottled with gray and red. Occasionally circumscribed hemorrhages are seen. In another class of cases in which the cell accumulation is more excessive, the marrow may be gray, grayish-yellow, or puriform in appearance.

These changes may occur in the central marrow cavity, as well as in the marrow spaces of the spongy bone. They may be present in several or many of the bones. They are usually accompanied by analogous changes in the spleen and lymph-glands.

In certain cases of acute and chronic *anæmia*, particularly in the pernicious and progressive varieties, the marrow, especially of the larger long bones, may lose its yellow color from absorption of the fat, and become red. Microscopical examination of the marrow under these conditions shows considerable increase of small spheroidal cells, and sometimes an abundance of developing nucleated red blood-cells and Charcot's crystals.

In many of the acute infectious diseases, typhus and typhoid fever, ulcerative endocarditis, recurrent fever, etc., the bone-marrow has been found hyperæmic and containing an unusual number of small spheroidal cells.

All of these lesions of the marrow, although our knowledge of them is still very incomplete, together with what is known of the physiological functions of the marrow, point to a close relationship between the marrow and the spleen and lymph-glands as blood-producing organs.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The literature of the researches on the diseases of the spleen may be found



## ATROPHY.

In old age or in senile conditions the bones may become atrophied by the absorption of the hard tissue; the medullary spaces are enlarged, the marrow tissue contains less fat, and is often gelatinous in appearance. As the result of the lack of use or from any cause which interferes with the nutrition of the bone, such as paralysis of the muscles or diseases of the joints, the bones may atrophy. In connection with atrophy, there may be an ossifying periostitis, which results in making the bone look even larger than normal. Many of the conditions commonly called atrophy, such as the erosions of bone from tumors, etc., pressing upon them, are really due to a rarefying osteitis.

The bones, sometimes as the result of atrophy, and sometimes from causes which we do not understand, are unusually brittle and liable to fracture. This disposition is sometimes hereditary.

## TUMORS.

Tumors of the bone may involve either the periosteum, the compact bone, or the medulla, or, as is more frequently the case, two or more of these structures are involved at once. Tumors of the bone are usually accompanied by various secondary and sometimes very marked alterations of the bone-tissue, osteoporosis, osteosclerosis, ossifying periostitis, etc. The new growths are very apt to undergo calcification and ossification.

*Fibromata* may grow either from the periosteum or medulla. Their most common seat is in the periosteum of the bones of the head and face. They are apt to form polypoid tumors projecting into the posterior nares, pharynx, mouth, and antrum of Highmore. Central fibromata, *i. e.*, those growing from the medulla, are rare. They usually occur in the lower jaw, but have been found in the ends of the long bones, the phalanges of the fingers, and the vertebræ. The fibromata may calcify or ossify, contain cysts, and not infrequently occur in combination with sarcoma.

*Myxomata* are of occasional occurrence in bone.

*Osteomata*.—New formations of bone, as a result of inflammatory processes, are, as we have already seen, of frequent occurrence in bone, and although not strictly-speaking tumors, some of their forms are very closely allied to them, and they may, therefore, be conveniently mentioned here. New growths of bone which arise from the surfaces are called *exostoses* or *enostoses*, according to their origin from the external surface or interior of the bone. They may contain all the constituents of normal bone: bone, medulla, vessels, periosteum, and cartilage. The new bone

---

in part in Orth's "Lehrbuch der speciellen pathologischen Anatomie." Berlin, 1883. Erste Lieferung, p. 119 et seq.

may be compact and like ivory, or spongy, or contain large cavities filled with marrow.

The shape of exostoses varies greatly; they may be in the form of sharp, narrow spiculæ and processes, and occurring in connection with periostitis are called *osteophytes*. They may be polypoid in shape, or form rounded tumors with a broad base. They may form a general enlargement of the bone, with much roughening of the surface; this condition is often called *hyperostosis*.

The bone beneath these new growths may be normal, or sclerosed, or rarefied, or the medullary cavity of the bone may communicate with that of the exostosis. Exostoses are usually developed from the periosteum, sometimes in the insertion of tendons and ligaments. They are very frequently multiple, and may occur at all ages, even during uterine life.

Enostoses are developed in the interior of bones from the medulla. They may increase in size with absorption of the surrounding bone, until they project from the surface like exostoses. Their most frequent situation is in the bones of the cranium and face.

*Chondromata*.—These tumors may be single or multiple, and most frequently grow from the interior of the bone, but sometimes from the periosteum. They are prone to form various combinations with other forms of tumors, as fibroma, myxoma, sarcoma, etc. They are frequently congenital and are most common in young people. They occur most frequently in the bones of the hand and foot.

There is a form of chondroma called *osteoid chondroma*, which develops beneath the periosteum, most frequently in the femur and tibia near the knee-joint, forming a club-shaped enlargement of the bone. The characteristics of the tissue composing these tumors are, that it resembles somewhat the immature bone-tissue which is seen beneath the periosteum in developing bone. It differs from cartilage in the irregular shape of its cells, in the fibrillation and density of the basement substance, and in its general vascularity. On the other hand, it has not the inorganic contents or appearance of true bone. It resembles considerably the callus tissue forming about fractures of the bones. It may, however, and most frequently does, become converted in some parts of the tumor into true bone. On the other hand, combinations with sarcomatous tissue are of frequent occurrence (see below).

*Sarcoma*.—This form of tumor is especially common in the bones. It grows from the inner layers of the periosteum, or from the medulla, so that we may distinguish a *periosteal* and a *myelogenic* sarcoma. Sometimes the tumor attacks the bone itself so early that it is impossible to say whether the tumor began in the periosteum or in the medulla. There is also a variety which grows close to the outside of the periosteum, and becomes connected with it—*parosteal* sarcoma.

The *periosteal sarcomata* usually belong to the varieties fibro-, myxo-,

chondro-, and osteo-sarcoma, more rarely to the medullary variety. They commence from the inner layers of the periosteum, pushing this membrane outward. After a time the periosteum is attacked, and the tumor invades the surrounding soft parts. The bone beneath may remain normal, or may be eroded and gradually disappear until the tumor is continuous with the medulla. Portions of the tumor may be calcified, or a growth of new bone may accompany its growth. The new bone usually takes the form of plates, or spiculæ, radiating outward. The minute anatomy of these tumors is very variable. The simplest—the fibro-sarcomata—are composed of fusiform, round, stellate, and sometimes giant-cells (myeloplaxes), in variable proportions, packed closely in a fibrous stroma. In the medullary form, the stroma is diminished to a minimum, and the round cells are most numerous. In the chondro- and myxo-sarcoma, the basement substance may be hyalin, or mucous, and the cells follow the type of cartilage and mucous tissue more or less closely. There is a mixed form of tumor, called *osteoid-sarcoma*, which is very apt to spread and to form metastases. The growth consists in part of tissue corresponding to fibro-sarcoma, and round-celled sarcoma. In addition to this, there occurs in greater or less quantity immature bone-tissue called osteoid tissue, which may in part become calcified; the calcification usually occurring in the central portions leaving a softer peripheral zone. This form of tumor is most apt to occur at the ends of the long bones, and may form tumors of large size. It is often called, on account of its tendency to spread, and to form metastases, *malignant osteoma* or *osteoid cancer*.

*Myelogenic sarcomata* commence in the medulla and may grow rapidly. The bone surrounding them is destroyed, and they project as rounded tumors. Most frequently, new bone is formed beneath the periosteum, so that the tumor is inclosed in a thin, bony shell; sometimes there are also plates of bone in the tumor; sometimes the periosteum is unaltered; sometimes it is perforated, and the tumor invades the surrounding soft parts. The tumors are frequently very soft, vascular, and hemorrhagic in parts, or may inclose cysts filled with tumor detritus and blood. They are usually of the spindle or round-celled variety and not infrequently contain giant-cells.

The *parosteal sarcomata* resemble the periosteal, but they appear to grow from the outer layers of the periosteum. They may be as firmly connected with the bone as the periosteal form. The periosteum may remain intact between the tumor and the bone, or it may disappear and leave them in apposition.

*Angiomata and Aneurism of Bone*.—A very large number of the tumors which have been described under these names are really sarcomata, or other tumors which happened to be very vascular. Some authors, indeed, are disposed to deny altogether the existence of real



vascular tumors in bones. There are, however, reliable cases of cavernous angiomas growing between the periosteum and bone, and intimately connected with the latter. Whether myelogenic angiomas occur is doubtful. There are several cases described of cavities filled with blood in the interior of bones, which it is difficult to interpret. They have mostly been found in the head of the tibia. They are said to have consisted of single sacs composed of thickened periosteum lined with plates of bone, and filled with fluid and clotted blood. No large vessels communicated with the sacs, but their walls were covered with a rich vascular plexus, branches of which opened into the cavity of the sac.

*Carcinomata*.—Primary carcinomata are of very doubtful occurrence in the bones. Most of the structures thus named have doubtless been sarcomata. Secondary carcinomata, on the other hand, as a result of metastases, or local extension, are of not infrequent occurrence and present various structural forms. Metastatic carcinomata may occur in the bones of various parts of the body at the same time, and are most apt to be secondary to carcinoma of the mamma.

*Cysts*.—These most frequently occur in the maxillary bones, doubtless in connection with the teeth. They may be unilocular or multilocular, and contain clear serum or a mucous or brown fluid, and sometimes cholesterin. They may be lined with epithelium. They begin in the interior of the bone, and, as they increase in size, expand it until they may be covered with only a thin shell of bone. They may reach a large size, even as large as a child's head.

*Dermoid cysts* are occasionally found in connection with the bones, particularly of the skull.

#### PARASITES.

*Echinococcus* and *cysticercus* are of rather rare occurrence in the bones; the former is most frequently found.

## DISEASES OF THE JOINTS.

---

For a description of the dislocations, misplacements, and injuries of the joints we refer to works on surgery.

### INFLAMMATION.

*Acute arthritis.*—The earlier stages of acute inflammation of the synovial membranes are better known from experiments on animals than from post-mortem examinations. The first changes are swelling and congestion of the membrane, with increased growth and desquamation of epithelium, and infiltration of the membrane with lymphoid cells. These conditions are soon followed by an exudation. The exudation may be a clear serum, in which epithelial cells, lymphoid cells, and sometimes blood will be found. Or flocculi of fibrin may float in the serum, or the fibrin may be in excess and the serum nearly absent. Or there is an excessive production of lymphoid cells, and the synovial sac is filled with pus.

In *serous arthritis*, the accumulation of serum within the synovial sac is the most prominent lesion. The disease may terminate in recovery, or become chronic, or pass into the suppurative form. It may be caused by contusions, penetrating wounds, gonorrhœa, rheumatism, or it may occur without evident cause.

*Sero-fibrinous arthritis* may occur under the same conditions as those which lead to simple serous inflammation. The fibrin may be present largely as flocculi in the serum, or it may form false membranes over the surfaces of the joint.

*Purulent arthritis* may follow or be associated with the above forms of inflammation. The synovial membrane is thickened and cloudy, and there may be but a moderate amount of pus in the joint, and a slight degree of infiltration of the synovial membrane with pus-cells. Under these conditions resolution may readily occur.

In other cases, the accumulation of pus in the cavity may be great, the synovial membrane and its surrounding tissue densely infiltrated with pus-cells. Under these conditions, granulation tissue is apt to be found,

and the cartilages of the joints are apt to become involved. There is swelling and proliferation or degeneration of the cartilage cells; the basement substance becomes disintegrated, ulcerates, and exposes the bone, in which osteitis, caries, rarefaction, etc., may occur. The new-formed granulation tissue may penetrate the cartilage, absorbing the basement substance, and by metaplasia the cartilage tissue may be converted into embryonal or granulation tissue. The pus may break through the capsule of the joint and form large abscesses in the adjacent soft parts. Sometimes the inflammation is not only suppurative, but gangrenous, and runs a rapidly fatal course. The synovial membrane, articular cartilages, and ends of the bone, all undergo a rapid suppuration and gangrene. Pyæmia and septicæmia, small-pox, measles, scarlet fever, diphtheria, mumps, typhus fever, glanders, the puerperal condition, exposure to cold, penetrating wounds, and injuries may all give rise to purulent synovitis.

*Chronic arthritis* may begin as such, or it may be the result of previous acute inflammation. There is an increase of fluid in the joint. This fluid is thin and serous, or is thickened with flocculi of fibrin and epithelial and lymphoid cells, or is thick, syrupy, or even gelatinous. The synovial membrane is at first congested, its tufts prominent. Later it becomes thickened, sclerosed, and anæmic; the epithelium is destroyed, and the tufts become large and projecting. From the distention of the capsule there may be subluxations or luxations of the joint; or the capsule may be ruptured.

*Chronic rheumatic arthritis* is most common in elderly persons, usually affecting several joints and advancing slowly and steadily. There is a chronic thickening of the synovial membrane, and the fibrous tissue adjacent to it. Fluid accumulations are not common. The articular cartilages are apt to degenerate or ossify, or become softened and fibrillated, and they may disappear. The contracting synovial membranes and fibrous tissue render the joints stiff, and may cause considerable deformity. Not infrequently fibrous and bony ankyloses are formed between the ends of the bones.

*Arthritis deformans*.—This name has been applied to a variety of chronic inflammation of the joints which, combined with degeneration of parts of the joint and the new formation of bone, may result in marked deformities of the part.

It usually occurs in elderly persons, and is apt to involve several joints, most frequently the hip, knee, fingers, and feet. It may be idiopathic, or due to rheumatism, to injuries, or follow an acute arthritis. The capsules of the affected joints are thickened and sclerosed. The synovial fluid is at first increased in quantity; later, diminished and thickened. The tufts of the synovial membrane become much enlarged and vascular; they may be converted into cartilage. Sometimes the capsule becomes



ossified. The new bone grows from the edge of the cartilage within the capsule. Its articular surface is covered with cartilage. The articular cartilages are much changed. The basement substance splits into tufts, while the cartilage-cells are increased in number. Or the basement substance becomes fibrous; or it is split into lamellæ and the cartilage-cells are multiplied; or there is fatty degeneration and atrophy.

As a result of these changes, larger or smaller portions of the cartilage are destroyed, and the bone beneath is laid bare. The exposed bone may become compact and of an ivory smoothness. The ends of the bones are much deformed. They are flattened and made broader by irregular new growths of bone, while at the same time they atrophy. The new growth of bone starts from the articular cartilages. The cartilage-cells increase in number, and the basement substance in quantity. This growth is most excessive at the edge of the cartilage, so that a projecting rim is formed there. This projecting rim may ossify next the bone, and at the same time new cartilage may form on its surface, so that we may find large masses of bone covered with cartilage. All these changes occur in in various combinations and sequences, so that joints in this condition present the greatest variety of appearances.

*Arthritis urtica* (Gouty Arthritis).—This disease is characterized by the deposit of salts of uric acid in the cartilages, bones, and ligaments, and also in the cavity of joints. The deposits may be in the form of stellate masses of acicular crystals in and about the cartilage-cells, or in the basement substance; or they may be deposited in the fibrillar connective-tissue structures of the joint in single crystals; or in the subcutaneous tissue about the joint, as white concretions. The deposits may occur in repeated attacks of the disease, and are accompanied by acute inflammatory changes. They may lead to various forms of chronic inflammation of the joints.

*Tubercular arthritis* (Chronic fungous Arthritis—Strumous Arthritis).—This disease may commence in the joint itself, or be transmitted to it from a tubercular inflammation of the bone. It is characterized by the formation of granulation tissue containing tubercles, sometimes in great quantity, and usually associated with secondary inflammatory and degenerative changes of surrounding parts. According to the prominence of one or other of these secondary alterations, several forms of tubercular arthritis may be distinguished. If there is an excessive growth of granulation tissue without much suppuration, this constitutes a *fungous form*. Sometimes there is extensive *suppuration*, so that the cavity of the joint may be filled with pus, which may be discharged through openings in the skin; or there may be more or less extensive formation of abscesses or infiltration of the soft parts about the joint with pus. In other cases, there is a predominant tendency to breaking down of the new-formed tubercular

tissue, and of the tissues of the joint—*ulcerative form*. The cartilage basement substance may become split into fragments and the cells degenerate, and thus deep and destructive ulcers of the cartilage be formed. Or, the granulation tissue may work its way through the cartilage into the bone beneath, by absorption of the basement substance of the cartilage, with or without proliferation of its cells. Caries and necrosis of the underlying bone may lead to extensive destruction. Hand in hand with these alterations, subperiosteal new formation of bone may occur, or sclerosis of the adjacent bone-tissue. There may also be a great increase of fibrous tissue about the joint. Tubercle bacilli may be found in the tubercular tissue and in the exudations.

This disease is most common in children and young persons. The so-called scrofulous diathesis is said to dispose to it, but local injuries are frequently the exciting cause. It is most common in the large joints. It may occur in connection with tubercular inflammation in other parts of the body; but it is frequently quite local, and may remain so for a very long time or permanently; since general infection from tubercular arthritis is comparatively infrequent.

The disease always runs a very chronic course and may destroy the patient's life. If recovery takes place before the cartilages and bones are involved, the joint is preserved; but it may be stiffened, or even immovable, from the contraction of the new fibrous tissue around it. If the cartilages and bones are diseased, the joint is destroyed, and either bony or fibrous ankylosis results. Sometimes from the change in the articulating surfaces, and the contraction of the muscles and the new fibrous tissue, partial or complete dislocations are produced.

Occasionally miliary tubercles occur in the synovial membranes in cases of general miliary tuberculosis, with but little accompanying simple inflammatory change.

#### TUMORS.

Secondary tumors of the joints as a result of local extension from the adjacent parts are not uncommon, and the tumors may be of various kinds. Primary tumors of the joints, on the contrary, are not very common.

*Lipoma*.—A new growth of fatty tissue may begin in the other portions of the synovial membrane, push this inward, and project into the joint in a mass of tufts—*lipoma arborescens*.

*Fibroma* occurs as an hypertrophy of the little tufts and fringes of the synovial membrane. In this way, large polypoid and dendritic bodies are formed. The pedicles of these growths may atrophy and even disappear, so that the growths are left free in the cavity of the joints.

*Corpora Aliena Articulorum*—Loose Cartilages in the Joints.—These names are given to bodies of various structure and origin, which are

found free, or attached by slender pedicles in the cavities of the joints. They are most frequently found in the knee; next in order of frequency, in the elbow, hips, ankle, shoulder, and maxillary joints. They may be single, or in hundreds. Their size varies from that of a pin's head to that of the patella. They are polypoid, rounded, egg-shaped, or almond-shaped; their surface is smooth or faceted, or rough and mulberry-like. They are composed of fibrous tissue, cartilage, and bone in various proportions.

These bodies are formed in different ways.

(1) By hypertrophy of the synovial tufts, and production of cartilage and bone in them.

(2) More frequently by a change into cartilage of portions of the synovial membrane. Small, flat plates of cartilage form on the inner surface of the synovial membrane, and these increase in size and their outer layers ossify. They may remain fixed in the synovial membrane, or they project and become detached from it, and they then appear as flattened concave bodies, composed of bone covered with cartilage on one side.

(3) The growth of cartilage and bone begins in the outer layers of the synovial membrane, or in the periosteum, near the joint. The new growth pushes the synovial membrane inward, and projects into the joint as a polypoid body covered with the inner layers of the synovial membrane. Later, the membrane atrophies, and the growth becomes free in the joint.

(4) There may be cartilaginous outgrowths from the edges of the articular cartilages.

(5) Rarely portions of the articular cartilages may be detached by violence or disease; or fibrinous and other concretions may result from arthritis, or under conditions which we do not understand.



## MUSCLE.

---

### LESIONS OF VOLUNTARY STRIATED MUSCLE.

*Hemorrhage.*—This may occur as a result of mechanical injury; from rupture of the fibres by convulsive contraction, as in tetanus; or it may occur when the muscle-fibres are degenerated, as in typhoid fever; or in connection with certain general diseases, as scurvy, purpura, hemorrhagic diathesis, septicæmia, etc. The blood is usually readily absorbed.

*Embolic Infarction of Muscles* in connection with heart disease has been described in a few cases, but it is rare.

*Wounds and Rupture.*—When the muscle-fibres are severed by wounds or rupture, there is more or less degeneration of the divided fibres, and the wound may heal by the production of granulation tissue, which gradually becomes converted into cicatricial tissue, thus binding the severed parts together. In some cases there is a new formation of muscle-fibres, which penetrate the cicatrix and establish muscular connection between the parts. When the wound does not gap, so that the severed ends are not much separated, there may be, it would seem, a direct re-establishment of muscular continuity by new development of muscle, without the formation of much new connective tissue.

The exact way in which muscle-fibres are regenerated is yet somewhat uncertain. In many cases, there seems to be a proliferation of the so-called muscle-corpuscles leading to the formation of elongated cells or strings of cells, which are gradually converted into striated muscle. In some cases the appearances would seem to indicate that connective-tissue cells, and perhaps white blood-cells, may participate in the formation of new muscle-fibres, but this is not certain.<sup>1</sup>

### INFLAMMATION.

*Suppurative Myositis.*—In the early stages of this lesion we find the muscle hyperæmic and oedematous, and the interstitial tissue more or less

---

<sup>1</sup> For literature of muscle regeneration, consult Lüdeking: "Untersuchungen u. d. Regeneration d. quergest. Muskelfasern," Strassburg, 1876; or Recklinghausen: "Handbuch d. allg. Pathologie," in Billroth and Lücke's "Deutsche Chirurgie," Parts 2 and 3, p. 288, and bibliography, p. xxix.

infiltrated with small spheroidal cells, doubtless the result of emigration. If the inflammation becomes intense, there may be an excessive accumulation of pus-cells, either diffusely in the interstitial tissue or in larger and smaller masses. Hand in hand with this cell accumulation, occur degenerative changes in the muscle-fibres. By pressure, their nutrition is interfered with, and they undergo granular, fatty, or hyalin degeneration. They may completely disintegrate and gangrene may occur, so that larger and smaller masses of the infiltrated muscle-tissue become soft, foul-smelling, and converted into a mass of detritus in which but little muscle structure can be detected, and which is intermingled with bacteria. In other cases there may be larger and smaller abscesses formed in the muscle; the muscle-tissue itself either degenerating and disintegrating and mixing with the contents of the abscess, or being pressed aside and undergoing atrophy and degeneration. In some cases when the formation of pus is moderate in amount, there may be restoration, by formation of granulation tissue between the muscle-fibres. This becomes gradually dense and firm, and leads to more or less atrophy of the muscle-fibres by pressure.

Acute suppurative myositis may accompany wounds; it is very common in acute phlegmonous inflammations of the skin and subcutaneous tissue, and often accompanies acute infectious diseases, such as pyæmia, erysipelas, etc. In many cases, colonies of micrococci are present in the inflammatory foci. It is not infrequently seen in the muscles adjacent to the inflamed mucous membranes in diphtheria.

*Acute Parenchymatous Myositis.*—A few cases of this disease have been described, in which, without lesion of the nervous system, certain groups of muscles, with the occurrence of fever and pain, become swollen, in some cases beset with small hemorrhages, soft, mottled with yellowish-white patches. Microscopically the muscle-fibres showed granular and fatty, or in some cases waxy degeneration. The cause of this lesion is not known. In one case the muscles of the legs were thus affected in a woman who died in the first week after delivery, with fever and pain in the legs, and the lesion was conjecturally of infectious origin.<sup>1</sup>

*Chronic Interstitial Myositis.*—In this lesion there is a new formation of connective tissue between the muscle-fibres or bundles of fibres. This new tissue is sometimes very cellular, resembling granulation tissue, and this probably represents an early stage of the disease. In other cases (Fig. 137), we find dense cicatricial tissue crowding the muscle-fibres apart, inducing atrophy in them, and sometimes causing their complete destruction. This lesion, which is the analogue of chronic interstitial inflammation of the internal organs, may occur in muscles which are adjacent to

---

<sup>1</sup> Consult Eisenlohr, *Centralblatt für Nervenheilkunde*, i., 1879; Marchand, *Breslauer Aertzliche Zeitschrift*, 21, 1880.

other parts which are the seat of chronic inflammatory processes. It may occur in muscles which are not used. The new formation of connective tissue would in some cases seem to be secondary to atrophy of the muscle-fibres.

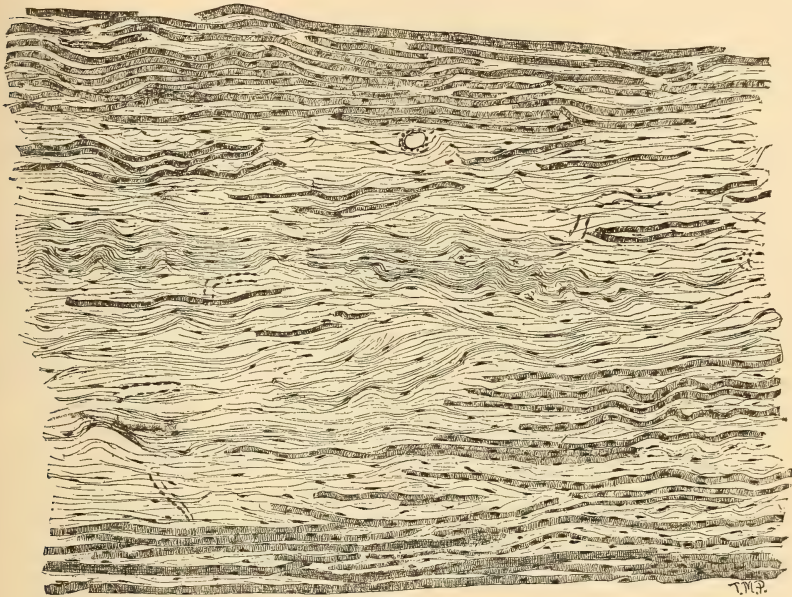


FIG. 137.—CHRONIC INTERSTITIAL MYOSITIS,  $\times 350$  and reduced.

The connective tissue is dense in texture, and the muscle fibres are atrophied and partially destroyed.

*Myositis ossificans*.—Under conditions and for reasons which we do not understand, there occasionally occurs, usually in young persons, a new formation of bone-tissue in the interstitial tissue of muscles; in the tendons, ligaments, fasciæ, and aponeuroses. This sometimes apparently starts as outgrowths from the periosteum, sometimes not. The bone-formations are apt to commence about the neck and back, and may become very widespread over the body. So far as the muscles are concerned, there is usually an increase of connective tissue between the fibres and bundles, in which new bone is formed, usually in elongated, and sometimes in spicula-like masses. The muscle-fibres undergo secondarily a greater or less degree of atrophy or degeneration. There may be fatty infiltration between the fibres, and various deformities are produced by the shortening and progressive immobility of the affected parts.<sup>1</sup>

While the above disease is a progressive and frequently a general one, there may be new formation of bone in muscle as a result of prolonged

<sup>1</sup> The literature of *Myositis ossificans* may be found, together with a description some interesting cases, in an article by Mays, in *Virch. Archiv*, Bd. 74, p. 145.



or repeated mechanical irritation. Thus in the adductors of the thigh, in persons who are constantly in the saddle, or in the deltoid muscle of soldiers who strike this part with their weapons in drill, there may be a formation of bone.

*Gummata* and occasionally *tubercles* occur in the connective tissue of muscle.

#### DEGENERATIVE CHANGES IN THE MUSCLES.

*Simple Atrophy.*—This may occur in old age, in prolonged exhausting diseases, or as a result of pressure from a foreign body, tumors, etc. The muscle-fibres grow narrower, the degree of narrowing frequently varying considerably in different parts. They usually retain the striation, but these may be obscured by degenerative changes. The sarcolemma may become thickened and there may be a considerable increase in connective tissue between the muscle-fibres and bundles.

*Progressive Muscular Atrophy.*—This lesion consists essentially in a combination of simple or degenerative atrophy of the muscle-fibres with chronic interstitial inflammation, and is sometimes associated with proliferative changes in the muscle nuclei. In the earlier stages of the disease, the muscles may be pale and soft, but exhibit otherwise to the naked eye but little alteration. Gradually, however, the muscle substance becomes replaced by connective tissue, so that in marked and advanced cases the muscles are converted into fibrous bands or cords, whose cicatricial contraction may induce great deformities.

Microscopical examination shows in the early stages of the disease a proliferation of cells in the interstitial tissue, so that this may have the appearance of granulation or embryonal tissue; also in some cases marked proliferative changes in the muscle nuclei, leading to the formation of new cells which may more or less replace the contractile substance within the sarcolemma. The new interstitial tissue increases in quantity and grows denser, and may crowd the muscle-fibres apart. The walls of the blood-vessels may also become thickened. Hand in hand with these interstitial alterations, the atrophy of the muscle-fibres proceeds. These may simply grow narrower, retaining their striations; or they may split up into longitudinal fibrillæ; or transversely into discoid masses, and in this condition disappear. In other cases a certain amount of fatty or hyalin degeneration may be present. These degenerative and proliferative changes do not, as a rule, occur uniformly in the affected muscles, but some parts are affected earlier and more markedly than others.

Progressive muscular atrophy is apt to commence in the small muscles of the extremities, in many cases in the muscles of the ball of the thumb. It may commence in the muscles of the shoulder, the arms, or the back. It may have a continuous extension or it may jump single

muscles or groups of muscles. Death may be induced by affection of the muscles of respiration or deglutition.

The causes of this lesion are in many cases unknown, and there is considerable lack of unanimity of opinion as to whether it is primarily a disease of the muscles or of the central nervous system. In a considerable proportion of cases, the muscle lesion is associated with atrophy of the ganglion-cells in the anterior cornua of the spinal cord and the development of connective tissue about them. In other cases, these changes in the cord may apparently be absent.

It is sometimes accompanied by atrophy of the nerves which are distributed to the muscles, and atrophy of the anterior roots has been described.

It is probable that there are several varieties of progressive muscular atrophy which our present knowledge does not enable us to clearly distinguish. Muscular atrophy in some cases follows overstraining of groups of muscles, or injuries, and may occur as one of the sequelæ of typhoid fever and diphtheria.

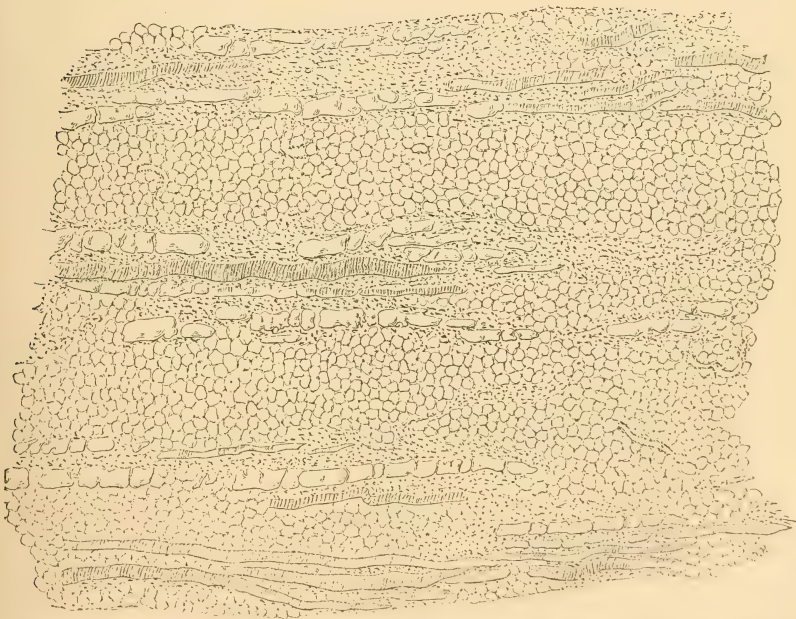


FIG. 138.—PSEUDO-HYPERTROPHY OF GASTROCNEMIUS MUSCLE (FATTY INFILTRATION),  $\times 350$  and reduced.

The specimen is from the case mentioned below, accompanying multiple neuroma.

*Atrophia Musculorum Lipomatosa* (Pseudo-hypertrophy of the muscles).—In some cases, hand in hand with the production of new connective tissue in the muscles and the atrophy of the muscle-fibres, or after

these changes have made considerable progress, there occurs a development of fat-tissue between the fibres (Fig. 138), which may prevent any apparent diminution in the size of the muscles, or in some cases even give them a great increase in size. This condition is of most frequent occurrence in children, and is most apt to appear in the gastrocnemii muscles. In the upper extremities, the deltoid and triceps are most frequently involved. The lesions may be symmetrical, affecting similar muscles on both sides of the body; or it may be unilateral. Parts of muscle-bellies may be affected.

The cause of this form of atrophy is not definitely known. Various lesions of the spinal cord have been described as occurring with it; but, in many cases at least, alterations of the nervous system cannot be detected. The writer (T.M.P.) has described a case<sup>1</sup> in which this lesion was marked in the gastrocnemii in connection with multiple false neuromata.<sup>2</sup>

*Fatty Degeneration* with greater or less destruction of the muscles may commence with a simple swelling and fine granulation of the fibres. As the process goes on, smaller and larger fat-droplets appear in the contractile substance, which loses its striations and becomes friable, and may be entirely destroyed, leaving within the sarcolemma a mass of fatty detritus, which may finally be absorbed and disappear. This alteration may occur in acute parenchymatous myositis in connection with various forms of atrophy; in prolonged exhausting diseases, and in phosphorus poisoning.

*Hyalin Degeneration.*—Under a variety of conditions the muscle-fibres undergo a peculiar series of changes, leading to their conversion into a translucent, highly refractile material, somewhat resembling amyloid, but not giving its micro-chemical reactions, and apparently more nearly allied to the material produced in the so-called hyalin degeneration. The lesion in the muscle which we are considering is commonly called *waxy degeneration*, from the peculiar appearance which the muscles present. When the lesion is far advanced and extensive, the muscles are brittle and have a grayish-yellow translucent appearance. Microscopical examination of various stages of hyalin degeneration of muscle shows that the contractile substance of the fibres becomes at first swollen and granular and gradually converted into hyalin material, which may present the outlines of the swollen fibres, but is more frequently broken into larger and smaller shapeless clumps (Fig. 139) which may disintegrate and finally be

---

<sup>1</sup> American Journal of Medical Sciences, July, 1880, p. 134.

<sup>2</sup> For bibliography of muscular atrophy consult Friedreich: "Ueber progressive Muskelatrophie," etc., Berlin, 1873; also "Dictionnaire encyclopédique des Sciences Médicales," 2 ser. I., X.; or Eulenberg's "Real-Encyclopädie der gesammten Heilkunde," article by Pick on Muskelatrophie.



absorbed. Hand in hand with these changes, there usually occurs an increase in the inter-fibrillar connective tissue, and in certain cases there may be a proliferation of the muscle nuclei and a new formation of variously-shaped cells within the sarcolemma, which leads to the regeneration of the fibres. As a result of the brittleness of the degenerated muscles, they are apt to rupture, and in this way hemorrhage may occur.

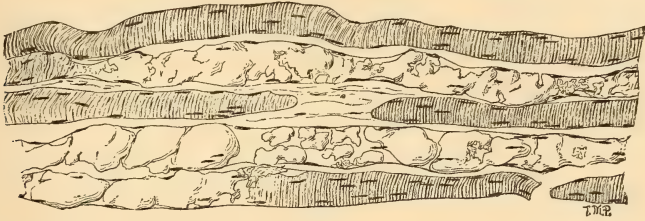


FIG. 139.—HYALIN DEGENERATION (WAXY DEGENERATION) OF ABDOMINAL MUSCLE IN TYPHOID FEVER,  $\times 700$  and reduced.

This form of degeneration may occur in progressive muscular atrophy, in variola, cerebro-spinal meningitis, trichinosis, in connection with inflammation, injuries, freezing, etc. It is, however, most marked and frequent in typhoid fever. In this disease the rectus abdominis and the adductors of the thigh are most frequently affected.

Experimental investigations have shown that under certain conditions very similar appearances may be produced in the muscles by post-mortem changes. It is not unlikely that a variety of changes are at present included under the name waxy or hyalin degeneration of the muscles.<sup>1</sup>

*Hypertrophy of Muscle.*—True hypertrophy of muscle as a pathological condition is rare, but it has been described in a few cases. It is usually confined to circumscribed groups of muscles. On microscopical examination, the diameter of the fibres is increased, sometimes considerably, though not uniformly. The transverse striation is unaltered, and the muscle-nuclei are in some cases enlarged. The cause of the change is unknown.

#### TUMORS.

The tumors of the muscles usually develop in the connective tissue. *Fibroma*, *chondroma*, *lipoma*, *myxoma*, *sarcoma* may occur as primary tumors. *Carcinomata* and *sarcomata* may occur secondarily in the muscles as a result of local extension from adjacent parts. The muscle-fibres are as a rule only secondarily affected by pressure, etc., in tumors of the muscles; but there exist observations which point to the possibility

<sup>1</sup>Consult Zenker: "Ueber die Veränderung der willkürlichen Muskeln in Typhus abdominalis," Leipzig, 1864; also Wehl: "Exp. Unters. ü. d. wachstartige Degeneration der quergestr. Muskelf." Virch. Arch., Bd. 61, p. 253, 1874.

of a proliferation of the muscle-nuclei and the new formation from them of cells which may take part in the growth of the tumor.

## PARASITES.

The *Trichina spiralis* is the most common parasite in the muscles (see p. 73).

*Cysticercus cellulosæ* and *Echinococcus* occasionally occur.

PART IV.

THE LESIONS FOUND

IN

THE GENERAL DISEASES

IN

POISONING

AND IN

VIOLENT DEATHS.





## TYPHOID FEVER.<sup>1</sup>

---

The lesions of typhoid fever are usually well marked and constant. They may conveniently be divided into two classes.

I. Those which are characteristic of the disease. To this class belong the changes in the lymphatic follicles of the intestines, in the mesenteric glands, and in the spleen.

I. Those which are very frequently found with this fever, and yet are not peculiar to it. To this class belong the changes in the parotid and pancreas, the degenerations in the liver, kidneys, and voluntary muscles, thrombosis of the blood-vessels, infarctions, diseases of the lungs, and suppuration of the connective tissue in various places.

I. *The Intestines*.—The lesions of the intestines consist in an inflammatory enlargement and subsequent degeneration of the solitary glands and Peyer's patches.

The process appears to begin with a catarrhal inflammation of the mucous membrane, accompanied or immediately followed by changes in the lymphatic follicles. The lesions in the lymphatic follicles begin early; they have been observed in persons who have died forty-seven hours after the commencement of the disease.

The increase in size of the agminated and solitary follicles may be rapid or gradual. The follicles may be only slightly enlarged, or may project so as to fill up the cavity of the intestine. The enlargement is usually more marked in the agminated than in the solitary follicles. Usually the whole of an agminated follicle will be enlarged, but sometimes only a part of it. If the enlargement is gradual, the different follicles which make up a Peyer's patch are enlarged, while the septa between them remain but little changed, and give the patch an uneven appearance.

The patches which are only moderately enlarged are of reddish or reddish-gray color, are soft and spongy, and their edges blend gradually with the adjoining mucous membrane. The patches which

---

<sup>1</sup>The most complete description of the lesions of typhoid fever is that given by Hoffmann: "Abdominal Typhus," 1869.

are more intensely affected are of gray or brownish color, of firm consistence, and rise abruptly from the surrounding mucous membrane, or even overhang it like a mushroom. The largest patches are sometimes more than three-eighths inch thick.

The enlargement and infiltration may spread from the patches to the surrounding mucous membrane, so that the patches appear very large, a number of them may become fused together, and there may be even an annular infiltration entirely around the lower end of the ileum.

The infiltration of the agminated follicles may also extend outward into the muscular coat, and even appear beneath and in the peritoneal coat as small, gray, rounded nodules. This condition is usually found only with a few patches in the lower end of the ileum; sometimes in the cæcum and appendix vermiformis. These little gray nodules usually correspond to diseased patches beneath them; sometimes they appear to excite an inflammation of the peritoneum, accompanied by the production of numbers of similar nodules all over that membrane. Hoffmann describes a case in which the inflammation extended to the pleura with the production of similar nodules there.

The solitary follicles are affected in the same way as Peyer's patches. They may be hardly enlarged at all, or be quite prominent, or may be affected over a larger portion of the intestine than are the patches. Very rarely the solitary follicles are enlarged, while the patches are not at all or but slightly affected.

The inflammation and enlargement of the agminated and solitary follicles is followed by a healing process. The character of this process varies according to the intensity of the previous inflammation.

(1) If the disease was mild, and the enlargement of the follicles moderate, the enlargement gradually disappears, and the follicles resume their normal appearance.

(2) In moderate enlargements, the retrograde processes affect first the follicles, and leave the septa between them still swollen and prominent. This gives to the surface of a patch a reticulated appearance. After a time, however, the entire patch becomes flattened and uniform.

(3) The solitary follicles, or the separate follicles of a patch soften, break down, and their contents are discharged with some attendant hæmorrhage. This leaves a bluish-gray pigmentation in the situation of each follicle. This pigmentation may remain for years.

(4) In more severe types of the disease, the enlargement of the follicles ends in ulceration. This takes place in two ways:

(a) The enlarged follicles soften, break down, and discharge into the intestine. In this way are formed small ulcers. These ulcers increase in size by the same softening process which gradually attacks their edges, and in this way ulcers of large size may be formed. The ulcers



may extend outward only to the peritoneal coat, or they may involve the peritoneal coat also and perforate.

(b) In the severest forms of the disease, considerable portions of the enlarged patches slough, are detached, and leave large ulcers with thick, overhanging edges. The slough may involve only the follicles, or it may involve also the muscular and peritoneal coats. These ulcers also may afterward increase in size, and several of them may be joined together.

If the patient recovers, the ulcers cicatrize, their edges become flattened, their floors are converted into connective tissue covered with cylindrical epithelium.

Both forms of ulceration sometimes end in perforation. This is effected by the extension of the ulcerative process through the peritoneal coat, or by the rupture of the floor of the ulcer. Peritonitis and death are the usual result. In rare cases, however, the patient recovers, and the perforation is closed by adhesions.

The minute changes which take place in the course of the intestinal lesion are as follows:

At first the blood-vessels around the follicles are dilated and congested, while the follicles are swollen, and the epithelium falls off. Then the follicles increase largely in size from a growth of new cells. The new cells are, in part, similar to the lymphoid cells, which normally compose the follicles; in part are large, rounded cells, some of which contain several nuclei. The production of new cells is not confined to the follicles, but extends also to the adjacent mucous membrane. In many cases also, little foci of the same cells are found in the muscular, subserous, and serous coats. This increased number of cells compresses the blood-vessels, and the parts become anæmic. Soon the cells degenerate, either by granular degeneration of individual cells, or by gangrene of part of a follicle. In either case the degenerated portion is eliminated into the intestine, and leaves an ulcer of which the floor and edges are infiltrated with cells. After this the cell-growth goes on, and the ulcer enlarges, or the cells are gradually replaced by connective tissue, and cicatrization follows.

The lesions we have described are found most frequently and most developed in the lower part of the ileum. They are not always, however, confined to this situation. Enlarged and ulcerated follicles may be found over the entire length of the ileum, and even in the jejunum. They may also extend downward, and be found in the colon, even as far down as the rectum. The same changes may also take place in the appendix vermiformis.

Besides the regular typhoid lesions of the intestines which have been described, we occasionally meet with others of a more accidental character.

*Gangrene* of the intestinal wall sometimes occurs. It most frequently

involves a portion of the wall corresponding to an ulcer, but may also affect other portions where no ulcer exists. The process may terminate in perforation or in healing.

*Croupous inflammation* may attack the mucous membrane of either the large or small intestine. The mucous membrane between the typhoid ulcers is covered and infiltrated with an exudation of fibrin and pus.

*Peritonitis* of a mild type is a frequent accompaniment of the intestinal lesions. It appears to have but little influence on the course of the disease.

Severe peritonitis is usually due to perforation, less frequently to ulcers which reach the serous coat, but do not perforate. When there is infiltration of the serous coat with the typhoid new growth, the peritonitis may be accompanied by a production of little gray nodules of the same character throughout the peritoneum.

*Infarctions* of the spleen, inflammation of the ovaries, and perforation of the gall-bladder are sometimes the cause of peritonitis.

*Hemorrhage* from the intestines is merely due to the inflammatory swelling and congestion of the mucous membrane and is slight; or it is due to the ulceration of the follicles and destruction of the blood-vessels, and is then often profuse.

*Mesenteric Glands.*—The mesenteric glands undergo the same changes as the follicles of the intestines, and are usually affected in a degree corresponding to the intensity of the intestinal lesion.

The glands are at first congested and succulent, then there is a production of lymphoid cells and large cells, as in the intestinal follicles, and the gland becomes enlarged. When the enlargement has reached its full size, the congestion diminishes and the cells begin to degenerate. The degeneration may take place slowly, and then the gland gradually returns to its normal condition; or more rapidly, and then little foci of softened purulent matter are formed. If the patient recovers, the small foci are absorbed, leaving a fibrous cicatrix; the larger foci become dry, cheesy, and inclosed in a fibrous capsule. The inflammation of the glands may produce a local or general peritonitis.

*The Spleen.*—In nearly every case of typhoid fever, the spleen is enlarged. This enlargement begins soon after the commencement of the disease, increases rapidly until the third week, remains stationary for a few days, and then diminishes. The organ is congested, of dark-red color and of firm consistence while it is increasing in size. After it has reached its maximum size, its consistence becomes soft, and there is a considerable deposit of brown pigment. The enlargement appears to be due to the congestion, and to an increase of the normal elements of the spleen.

In rare cases, the softened spleen is ruptured with an extravasation of blood into the peritoneal cavity.

There may be infarctions of the spleen, which sometimes soften and cause peritonitis.

II. The second class of lesions comprises those which are frequently found with typhoid fever, but are not peculiar to it.

*The Mouth.*—A number of changes are found about this region. The follicles at the root of the tongue and the tonsils may be enlarged; the muscles of the tongue may undergo waxy and granular degeneration; gangrenous ulcers may attack the floor and sides of the mouth, and destroy large areas of tissue.

*The pharynx* may be the seat of catarrhal or of croupous inflammation, producing superficial and deep ulcers.

*The parotid* is, in a moderate number of cases, the seat of an inflammation which tends to suppuration. In this process, both the glandular acini and the connective tissue between them are involved. Which of the two has the larger share in the process is still in dispute.

A slight enlargement and induration of the parotid and submaxillary glands is said by Hoffmann to be a frequent lesion, and to depend on increase of the gland-cells and dilatation of the follicles with their secretion.

*The pancreas* undergoes changes similar to those in the salivary glands. It becomes at first swollen and red, then hard and grayish, then yellow. The vessels are at first congested; afterward, there is increase of the gland-cells; and lastly, degeneration.

*The liver* may preserve its normal character, or may present changes.

In many cases, the organ will be found soft and flabby. Minute examination then shows that the liver-cells have undergone degeneration. They are filled with fine granules and small fat-globules, and the degeneration may go on so far that the outlines of the hepatic cells are lost, and nothing but a mass of granules can be seen.

Less frequently, we find in the liver very small, soft, grayish nodules resembling those found in the peritoneum. They are situated along the course of the small veins, and there is, at the same time, a diffuse infiltration of lymphoid cells along the small veins. The nodules consist of lymphoid cells; they are often too small to be distinguished with the naked eye.

*The Heart.*—In a considerable number of cases, the muscular tissue of the heart is altered. The heart feels soft and flabby, it is of grayish or brownish color, the muscular fibres are infiltrated with fine granules, and sometimes with brown pigment. Or the heart is firm, but friable and easily torn, its cut surface glistens, and its muscular fibres are in the condition of hyalin degeneration.

Thrombi in the cavities of the heart and vegetations on the valves are sometimes found. Detached fragments of these may be lodged as emboli in the different arteries.



*The Arteries.*<sup>1</sup>—There may be an acute inflammation of the arteries, especially at the commencement of convalescence. There are two varieties: an obliterating and a parietal. In the obliterating arteritis there is infiltration of all the coats of the artery, with roughening of the intima and the formation of a thrombus within the vessel, and this is followed by dry gangrene of the parts supplied by the artery. In the parietal variety the wall of the artery is infiltrated with cells, but the intima is not roughened and no thrombus is formed.

*The Veins.*—Thrombosis of the larger veins, especially of the femoral vein in the third and fourth weeks of the disease, is not uncommon.

*The Larynx* is very frequently the seat of catarrhal inflammation, with or without superficial erosions. Less frequently there is croupous inflammation, followed in some cases by destructive ulceration.

*The Lungs.*—Catarrhal inflammation of the large bronchi is very common. Broncho-pneumonia occurs in two forms. There may be a severe inflammation of most of the bronchi of both lungs, with cellular infiltration of the walls of the bronchi and zones of peribronchitic pneumonia; or there is an intense general bronchitis, with lobules of the lung corresponding to obstructed bronchi either collapsed or inflamed, or both.

From the long-continued recumbent position of the patients, the posterior portions of the lungs become congested, dense, and unaërated. Sometimes, in addition to this, irregular portions of the lung become hepatized.

Less frequently there is regular lobar pneumonia.

There may be infarctions in the lungs.

Gangrene of the lungs is occasionally found, either associated with lobular pneumonia, or with infarctions, or as an independent condition.

*The Kidneys* very frequently present the lesions of parenchymatous nephritis. They may contain infarctions.

*The Ovaries.*—Hemorrhage and gangrenous inflammation have been observed in rare cases.

*The Testicles.*—Orchitis has been described by Ollivier.<sup>2</sup> It generally is developed during convalescence; it is unilateral; it usually affects the testicle alone, less frequently the epididymis; it terminates in suppuration in nearly one-fourth of the cases.

*The Brain.*—Acute meningitis, thrombosis of the venous sinuses, and obliterating endarteritis of the cerebral arteries occasionally are observed.

*The Voluntary Muscles*, especially the abdominal muscles, the adductors of the thigh, the pectoral muscles, the muscles of the diaphragm and of the tongue frequently undergo the hyalin degenerative changes described under muscle lesions, Fig. 139.

<sup>1</sup> Barié, Rev. de Méd., Jan., Feb., 1884. Keen: Toner Lectures on the Surgical Complications of the Continued Fevers, 1877.

<sup>2</sup> Rev. de Méd., Nov. and Dec., 1883.

*The Skin.*—Gangrenous inflammation of the skin frequently occurs in the form of bed-sores, affecting especially the skin over the sacrum and trochanters, where it is subjected to the constant pressure of the bed.

There may be suppurative inflammation of the connective tissue in any part of the body. Perhaps the most important of these local suppurations is that which produces retro-pharyngeal abscesses.

The presence of a species of bacillus in various parts of the body in typhoid fever, in a considerable proportion of the cases examined, has been well established by a number of observers. Klebs<sup>1</sup> found bacilli of special form in various parts of the body, in all of the twenty-four cases examined. Eberth<sup>2</sup> found bacilli in the intestines, mesenteric glands and spleen in eighteen out of forty cases examined. Similar forms have been seen and photographed by Koch.<sup>3</sup> Meyer<sup>4</sup> also found similar forms in sixteen out of twenty cases. They have been repeatedly seen by other observers, the details of whose work it is not necessary to mention here.

Gaffky<sup>5</sup> has made a series of careful examinations and cultures with the new technique suggested by Koch. Out of twenty-eight cases examined, G. found the characteristic bacilli in twenty-six. One of the exceptional cases was examined in a late stage of the disease, and the other showed similar bacilli in a swollen solitary follicle. The bacilli were found in the mesenteric glands, spleen, liver, and kidneys. The bacilli are about three times as long as broad, being about one-third as long as the diameter of a red blood-cell, and are rounded at the ends. Sometimes they are joined at the ends to form chains. Sometimes they contain rounded spores. They are apt to occur in little heaps or masses, but they may occur singly. They lie in the smaller blood-vessels or in the capillaries, which they may completely fill. In the intestinal lesions where ulceration or necrosis has occurred, the presence of various forms of bacteria from the intestinal contents renders the identification of the typhoid bacillus difficult; but forms similar to those in the organs were detected in swollen follicles which had not undergone necrotic changes.

Pure cultures were made by Gaffky, who found that the bacilli grew readily on gelatinized bouillon which they did not render fluid, as do many other bacteria. On the surface of boiled potatoes they grew most luxuriantly, forming a delicate pellicle. The development is rapid both on gelatin bouillon and on potatoes, reaching its height in from two to

<sup>1</sup> Klebs, *Archiv f. exp. Path.*, Bd. 13, Heft 506, 1881.

<sup>2</sup> Eberth, *Virch. Archiv*, Bd. 81, p. 58, 1880; Bd. 83, p. 487, 1883.

<sup>3</sup> Koch: "*Mitth. a. d. k. Gesundheits-Amt*," Bd. I., 1881.

<sup>4</sup> Meyer: "*Untersuchungen ü. d. Bacillus des Abdominal Typhus*." Inaug. Diss. Berlin, 1881.

<sup>5</sup> Gaffky: "*Mitth. a. d. k. Gesundheits-Amt*," Bd. II., p. 372, contains good bibliography.

four days. Specimens from the cultures show distinct movements under the microscope, sometimes slow, sometimes rapid.

Inoculations into the lower animals were made by Gaffky, but with only negative results. These bacilli have not been found in any other diseases than typhoid fever. It will be seen from the above experiments and observations that, while the presence of the bacilli in the body in typhoid fever is very suggestive of their causative agency, this has not yet been proven. The failure to detect the bacilli in a number of cases, especially by the earlier observers, should not be considered as very important evidence against their occurrence or significance, because the technical procedures of the earlier workers were faulty; and furthermore, as the organisms are apt to occur in foci, the chances of their detection are unfavorable unless they are very abundant or an enormous number of sections is examined.

*Staining.*—The parts to be examined should be well hardened in alcohol, and sections may be stained with methyl violet, gentian violet, Bismarck brown, or fuchsin; which should be used in concentrated solutions. Gaffky recommends the staining of sections for twenty to twenty-four hours, in a very dark-colored solution of methylen blue made fresh each time, by adding to distilled water a sufficient quantity of a saturated alcoholic solution of methylen blue to make the fluid opaque. They are then washed in distilled water, dehydrated with absolute alcohol, cleared up with turpentine, and mounted in balsam. In specimens thus prepared the masses of bacilli may be seen with low powers, but for the recognition of the minuter characters of the individuals, one-twelfth oil immersion should be used, with the Abbé condensor. The staining of these bacilli is not as intense as that of many other species, and the blue preparations are apt to fade. For permanent preparation the Bismarck brown is better. They are decolorized after being stained, by nitric acid, and in this way differ from the bacillus tuberculosis.

The observations and conclusions of earlier investigators concerning the occurrence of micrococci in various parts of the body in typhoid fever have not been confirmed.



## TYPHUS FEVER.

---

This disease has not, so far as we know, any characteristic lesion ; but yet after death we may find a number of morbid conditions, such as are common to the infectious diseases.

The entire body has a tendency to rapid putrefaction.

The blood is often darker and more fluid than in other diseases.

The voluntary muscles may undergo waxy and granular degeneration.

The brain and its membranes may be congested.

The mucous membrane of the pharynx and larynx may be the seat of catarrhal or croupous inflammation.

In the lungs there may be bronchitis, broncho-pneumonia, or hypostatic congestion.

The walls of the heart may be soft and flabby.

The agminated glands of the ileum, and the mesenteric glands, may be a little swollen.

The spleen is often large and soft.

The kidneys are frequently the seat of parenchymatous nephritis.

## RELAPSING FEVER.

---

*Synonyms.*—Typhus recurrens. Famine fever. Spirillum fever.

*The Skin* may be jaundiced; it may be mottled by extravasations of blood.

*The Brain and Spinal Cord* are unchanged.

*The Pharynx and Larynx* may be the seat of catarrhal or croupous inflammation.

*The Lungs.*—There may be bronchitis, broncho-pneumonia, lobar pneumonia, hypostatic congestion, and pleurisy.

*The Heart* is often soft and flabby, with degeneration of its muscular fibres. There may be ecchymoses in the pericardium.

*The Stomach and Small Intestine* may be congested, there may be ecchymoses in the mucous membrane, there may be catarrhal inflammation.

*The Colon* may be the seat of catarrhal or croupous inflammation.

*The Mesenteric Glands* may be swollen.

*The Liver* is often enlarged and the hepatic cells are swollen and granular.

*The Spleen* is large and soft, like the spleen of typhoid fever. The change in its consistence is so marked that the spleen may rupture spontaneously during life. The spleen may also contain infarctions of different sizes; some are red, some yellow, some necrotic. Those which are necrotic may give rise to a local or general peritonitis.

*The Kidneys* show the lesions of parenchymatous nephritis.

*The Bones.*—Degenerative changes in the medulla of the bones have been described by Ponfick.<sup>1</sup>

*The Blood.*—In the blood is found a minute form of spirillum, Spirochæte Obermeieri, first described by Obermeier, and characteristic of the disease. It is in the form of a very thin, spiral thread from  $\frac{1}{5000}$  to  $\frac{1}{15000}$  of an inch in length (Fig. 140). It is found in large numbers in the blood within the blood-vessels in all parts of the body. It is con-

---

<sup>1</sup> Virch. Arch., Bd. 60, p. 153.

stantly present during the febrile attacks, and nearly or completely disappears during the afebrile intervals (see p. 85.)

The spirilla may be seen in fresh blood with a magnifying power of six hundred diameters.



FIG. 140.—SPIROCHÆTE OBERMEIERI,  $\times$  about 750 and reduced.  
From the blood of patient with relapsing fever.

The dried blood may be stained with aqueous solution of methyl violet, anilin brown, or fuchsin; the superfluous color is washed away with water, and the specimen again dried and mounted in balsam. The spirilla and the red and white blood-cells are deeply stained (Carter).



## EPIDEMIC CEREBRO-SPINAL MENINGITIS.

---

This is an acute general infectious disease, characterized by an exudative inflammation of the pia mater of the brain and spinal cord. The degree of the lesion in the meninges varies greatly, depending upon the period at which death occurs. In some cases, when death occurs early in the disease, there may be to the naked eye no evident change in the membranes, or a moderate serous infiltration. In these cases the microscope may reveal a moderate degree of extravasation of leucocytes in the vicinity of the vessels. In the well-marked cases the pia mater of the brain and cord is more or less densely infiltrated with serum, fibrin, and pus. This may occur over the convexity and base of the brain, and is frequently most marked in the latter situation. In the cord, the infiltration may occur over the anterior and posterior surfaces; but in many cases, probably owing to the recumbent position of the patient, it is most marked on the posterior surface. The ventricles of the brain and the central canal of the cord may contain turbid serum mingled with pus-cells, and sometimes blood-cells. The membranes and underlying nerve-tissue may be hyperæmic and the seat of capillary hemorrhages. Rarely a small amount of pus and fibrin may be found between the pia and dura mater.

In protracted cases the ventricles may be dilated with serum, and the exudation in the meninges may become fatty or dense and cheesy.

While the above are the characteristic lesions of this disease, there are a number of secondary changes in different parts of the body which are not constant, but which occur with sufficient frequency to render their observation necessary. There may be subserous punctate hemorrhages in the endocardium; petechiæ in the skin; hyalin and granular degeneration in the voluntary striated muscle; occasional multiple abscesses in various parts of the body; suppurative inflammation of the joints; parenchymatous degeneration of the heart, liver, and kidneys; and swelling of the gastro-intestinal lymphatic apparatus. Bronchitis and pneumonia,

pleurisy, pericarditis and endocarditis, suppurative inflammation of the middle ear, and iritis and choroiditis are of occasional occurrence.

Of the causation of this disease we are in almost entire ignorance. Its peculiar course and character justify the conjecture that it may be due to some infectious agent, like bacteria; and micrococci have been described as occurring in the exudation.<sup>1</sup> That they have any causative connection with the disease has not yet been proven.

---

<sup>1</sup> Consult Leyden: "Die Mikrokokken der Cerebrospinal-Meningitis," Centrbl. f. Klin. Med., Bd. 4, No. 10, 1883. Also Ughetti, Giornale della Reale Societa Italiana d'Igiene, 1883, No. 10 and 11; Review in Centrbl. f. Klin. Med., No. 14, April 5th, 1884, p. 222. Also Marchiafava and Celli, Gazz. degli ospitali, 1884; Review in Centrbl. f. Klin. Med., No. 7, 1884.

## DIPHTHERIA.

---

The term 'diphtheria' is used to designate a disease belonging to the class of general infectious diseases with characteristic local lesions. The characteristic local lesion of diphtheria is a croupous inflammation of one or more of the mucous membranes. Such a croupous inflammation in diphtheria is anatomically identical with croupous inflammations due to traumatic and other causes.

The mucous membranes which are the most frequently inflamed in diphtheria are those of the tonsils, pharynx, soft palate, nares, larynx, and trachea; less frequently, those of the mouth, gums, œsophagus, and stomach.

In different cases of the disease, we find great variety as to the position, extent, and severity of the inflammatory process.

The disease, as it occurs in New York, usually follows one of three types:

(1) There is a general congestion of the affected mucous membrane, and scattered on its surface are small patches of soft, yellow membrane.

(2) The mucous membrane is congested and covered with a continuous layer of very thin membrane, sometimes so thin that it is hardly appreciable by the naked eye.

(3) The mucous membrane is much swollen, and this swelling may extend to the adjacent soft tissues. The layer of false membrane is extensive, thick, and tenacious. There may be necrosis of portions of the mucous membrane.

When we examine these lesions more closely, we find that they are all characterized by the combination of necrotic and of inflammatory processes; the extent of the necrosis and the quantity of the inflammatory products varying in the different cases.

The most common form of necrosis is a coagulation necrosis of the epithelium of those mucous membranes which are covered with pavement epithelium. The epithelial cells are changed in appearance and shape; the cell bodies have a peculiar homogeneous appearance, the nuclei dis-



appear, the cells are shrunken and deformed into a variety of shapes, they adhere closely together, sometimes looking like a network. Less frequently the stroma of the mucous membrane also becomes necrotic.

The inflammatory products are pus and fibrin which infiltrate the stroma of the mucous membrane and collect on its surface.

The false membrane, therefore, may consist of epithelium in the condition of coagulation necrosis; or of fibrin, pus, and desquamated epithelium; or of both the necrotic epithelium and the fibrin and pus.

The presence of various forms of bacteria, and particularly of micrococci, in the false membrane has been demonstrated by numerous observers, but as yet there is not sufficient evidence that these organisms are the means by which the infection of the disease is effected.

(A full account of what is known concerning the micro-organisms of diphtheria, as well as the results of his own researches, is given by Loeffler: "Mitth. aus dem Kais. Gesundheits-Amte," Bd. II., p. 421.)

Besides the characteristic lesions of the disease, certain accessory lesions are often present.

The lymphatic glands near the inflamed mucous membrane are often swollen and inflamed.

The parotid and submaxillary glands may be swollen and inflamed. The bronchi may be the seat of either catarrhal or croupous inflammation.

In the lungs there may be zones of peribronchitic pneumonia, or diffuse pneumonia with consolidation of considerable portions of the lung.

The kidneys regularly exhibit the lesions of parenchymatous nephritis.

## YELLOW FEVER.

---

*The Skin* is of a yellow color from the presence of bile pigment, and may be mottled by ecchymoses.

*The Heart* is of a pale or brownish-yellow color. Its muscular fibres are the seat of fatty degeneration.

*The Lungs* are congested.

*The Stomach* often contains the characteristic black fluid which is vomited during life. Its mucous membrane is congested, softened, and sometimes eroded.

*The Intestines* are dark colored, often distended with gas, and sometimes contain blood.

*The Liver* in the earlier stages of the disease may be intensely congested. More frequently it contains but little blood, is of a light-yellow color, and the hepatic cells are infiltrated with coarse granules and fat-globules. The gall-bladder is contracted and contains but little bile.

*The Spleen* shows no marked changes.

*The Kidneys* present the lesions of the intense form of parenchymatous nephritis.

## CHOLERA.

---

In some cases of cholera there are no marked changes to be found after death.

If death occurs during the invasion of the disease, or in the stage of collapse, in the more marked cases the appearances are as follows :

The bodies remain warm for some time, and the temperature may rise for a short time after death. The rigor mortis begins soon and lasts for an unusually long time. The muscles sometimes exhibit a peculiar spasmodic twitching before the rigor mortis sets in, especially the muscles of the hand and arm.

*The Skin* is of a dusky gray color, the lips, eyelids, fingers, and toes of a livid purple. The ends of the fingers are shrivelled, the cheeks and eyes are fallen in.

*The Brain.* The sinuses of the dura mater are filled with dark, thick blood. The pia mater may be normal, or œdematous, or ecchymosed, or infiltrated with fibrin. The brain is usually normal, but may be dry and firmer than usual.

*The Lungs* are retracted and anæmic, the pleura may be dry, or coated with fibrin.

*The Heart* is normal.

*The Peritoneum* may be dry or coated with a layer of fibrin.

*The Stomach* is usually unchanged, but may be the seat of catarrhal inflammation.

*The Small Intestine.* There may be ecchymoses in the mucous membrane; the mucous membrane may be soft and œdematous; there may be general congestion, or the congestion may be confined to the peripheries of the solitary and agminated glands, and these glands may be swollen; or there may be croupous inflammation and superficial necrosis. All these changes are regularly most marked at the lower end of the small intestine. There is apt to be post-mortem desquamation of the epithelium. The characteristic rice-water fluid may be found in the intestines after death, or instead of this a dark-colored, bloody fluid.

*The Large Intestine* is usually normal, but in some epidemics croupous inflammation occurs in a considerable number of cases.



*The Liver and Spleen* undergo but few changes; they may be anæmic and flabby.

*The Kidneys* are often increased in size, with white and thickened cortex and congested pyramids. The epithelium of the cortex tubes contains coarse granules and fat-globules. The tubes contain cast matter and broken down epithelium. These changes may be looked upon as being simply of a degenerative character, or as the results of a parenchymatous nephritis.

*The Uterus and Ovaries* may be congested and contain extravasated blood.

If the patient does not die until the stage of reaction, the body does not present the same collapsed appearance, and there are often inflammatory changes in different parts of the body, especially in the larynx, the lungs, the stomach, and the intestines.

According to recent researches by Koch, there are constantly present in the small intestines of cholera patients during the early and active stages of the disease characteristic bacteria, probably closely allied with, if not belonging to the genus *Spirillum*.

These bacteria are short and thick (from one-half to two-thirds as long as the *Bacillus tuberculosis*, and considerably thicker). They are curved, sometimes slightly, sometimes considerably, and are occasionally seen in the form of a double curve or S. These bacteria are found in the follicles of Lieberkühn, between and beneath the epithelium, and in the submucous tissue. They are also present in varying abundance in the dejections, particularly in very acute cases which are uncomplicated with hemorrhage or putrefactive changes. They have been also found in vomited matter when this had an intestinal character. They have not been found in the blood or other organs. These bacteria are readily cultivated in artificial media, proliferating with extraordinary rapidity, and developing occasionally into long spiral forms. In fluid culture media they are seen to move about with great rapidity. They grow readily in beef-tea, milk, blood-serum, and also on solid media, such as gelatinized bouillon, agar agar, potatoes, etc. (see p. 91). The form of growth on solid culture media is said to be characteristic, and in gelatin culture the gelatin is liquefied in a peculiar manner by the growing colonies. In moist earth, on damp linen, etc., they also increase with extraordinary rapidity. A temperature of from 30°–40° C. is most favorable to their growth. At about 16° C. their proliferative activities cease, but they are not killed by –10° C. They are readily killed by drying, and the presence of acids is very inimical to their growth. Their period of life is short, and they appear to have no resting state, as under certain conditions do most bacilli. In this respect they resemble spirillum.

This cholera bacterium, sometimes called, on account of the slightly

curved form under which it commonly appears, the "comma bacillus," has not as yet been found except in connection with Asiatic cholera. Attempts to inoculate the lower animals with the bacteria have in a few cases been apparently successful.

As it is not always easy to find the cholera bacterium in the dejections of even genuine cases of cholera, and as the morphological characters alone do not, in the majority of cases, suffice for a diagnosis, recourse must be had to cultivation on gelatin, in most cases, for the evidence which the growing colonies furnish. This may be very easily accomplished, according to Koch, by mixing a small fragment of intestinal slime with a little gelatinized pepton bouillon (see p. 93), which has been made fluid by warming. This is then poured on to a sterilized glass plate, spread with a sterilized rod and cooled by placing on a piece of ice. It is then placed under a glass bell jar, the air of which is kept moist by water-soaked blotting-paper, and allowed to remain at a temperature of about 35° C. After the inoculation of gelatinized bouillon with the intestinal contents, the colony makes its appearance in a few hours as a small, pale, irregular contoured spot, which soon becomes granular. As the colony grows, the granulation becomes more marked, and finally looks as if composed of strongly refractile granules, like particles of glass. As it continues to grow, the gelatin around the colony becomes fluid, and the latter sinks beneath the surface, so that it is seen as a whitish spot in the middle of a funnel-shaped depression in the gelatin. The same appearances are observed when the cholera bacteria from pure cultures are implanted on gelatinized bouillon.

It is stained in the usual way after drying on a cover-glass (see p. 89) with an aqueous solution of fuchsin or methylen blue for a few seconds, and examined with a high power oil-immersion lens and the Abbé condenser. Sections of the intestine hardened in strong alcohol must be gently warmed in the methylen-blue solution, or allowed to remain in the cold solution for twenty-four hours.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Consult Proceedings of the Conference for the Consideration of the Cholera, Berlin, July 26th, 1884, Reported in *Deutsche med. Wochenschrift*, Aug. 7th and 11th, 1884, Nos. 32 and 32 A, for a résumé of his investigations by Dr. Koch, also later paper by Koch, "Ueber die Cholera-Bakterien," *ibid.*, Nov. 6th, 1884, No. 45.

## TUBERCULOSIS.

---

In speaking and thinking of tuberculosis, there are usually present in the mind two separate ideas: the idea of a morbid process of a general and infectious character, and the idea of certain characteristic anatomical lesions.

It is, therefore, convenient to consider separately tuberculosis as a general constitutional condition, and tubercle as an anatomical product of inflammation.

It has always been recognized that some persons are especially liable to acquire either general or local tuberculosis. It has been supposed that such a disposition is inherited, or acquired as the result of a peculiar deterioration of the general health. Such a predisposition renders the person in whom it exists liable to general or local tuberculosis whenever an exciting cause is added.

Opinions still differ as to what constitutes a sufficient exciting cause. Some believe that any causes, such as injuries or exposures to cold, which in most persons produce ordinary inflammation, in persons who have the tubercular predisposition produce tubercular inflammation. Thus exposure to cold, instead of being followed by a bronchitis or a pneumonia, will produce acute phthisis; a blow on the knee or on the spine will be followed by a tubercular synovitis or osteitis instead of a simple one; eczema of the scalp will produce, not a simple adenitis of the cervical glands, but a tubercular adenitis.

Furthermore, a local tuberculosis is often followed by a development of tubercular inflammation in other parts of the body as if by infection.

More recently, the discovery by Koch of the *Bacillus tuberculosis* in the lesions of almost all cases of tuberculosis has led to the belief that in persons who have the tubercular predisposition, the tubercle bacillus finds a favorable soil, and that to the entrance, lodgment, and growth of this bacillus are due the development of the tubercular lesions.

It has also been demonstrated that the *Bacillus tuberculosis* can be cultivated artificially outside of the human body, and thus freed from possible contaminations; can then be inoculated in animals, and that



these animals will then develop tubercular lesions in which similar bacilli will be found. This would seem to show that the bacillus is the real cause of the development of tubercular lesions.

We may then assume that some persons have a peculiar constitutional vice or diathesis—the tubercular diathesis; that this diathesis is inherited or acquired; that the possessors of the diathesis, in order to develop tuberculosis, must be subjected to some exciting cause; that such exciting causes are infection by the tubercle bacillus, exposure to cold and wet, irritants, or injuries.

Tuberculosis, however, is not always manifested in the same way. The patients may develop symptoms like those of a general disease with lesions involving many different parts of the body; or the lesions are confined to a circumscribed part of the body, while the symptoms are also localized. We must, therefore, distinguish:

1. Acute general tuberculosis which occurs in persons who have previously been well, or are already suffering from a local tuberculosis.

2. Localized tuberculosis.

3. Tuberculosis at first localized in some part of the body, and then succeeded by the development of localized lesions in other parts.

(1) *General Tuberculosis*.—This is a morbid process of which the clinical symptoms are eminently characteristic of an acute infectious disease. A person who has previously been in good health, or who has already a local tuberculosis, suddenly or gradually develops a febrile movement, rapid emaciation, and at the end of a few days or weeks dies. After death miliary tubercles are found throughout the body.

It is believed by some, however, that in these cases there is always first present a local tuberculosis, especially of the pulmonary veins or of the thoracic duct, and that from this local tuberculosis is derived the general infection.

It is to be noted that there is no proof in the cases given that the tuberculosis of the pulmonary veins or thoracic duct has preceded in its development the other tubercular lesions; and also that it is just as easy to suppose a person to be infected at first by a large dose of the tubercular poison as by a small one.

(2) *Localized Tuberculosis*.—This condition gives an entirely different clinical picture. The patients do not appear to suffer from a general disease, but from a local inflammation. Their symptoms are in proportion to the extent of the inflammation. If the inflammation is not too extensive it runs its course and the patient recovers.

(3) *Localized Tuberculosis, which extends*.—In these cases there is first a localized tuberculosis with its symptoms. Then after a time similar tubercular inflammations are developed in other parts of the body. The secondary tubercular lesions sometimes seem to be the result of infection from the primary lesion. In other cases, the primary lesion be-

comes obsolete and the secondary lesion appears as if from a fresh infection.

The patients then for the most part do not resemble cases of general tuberculosis, but are rather in the condition of persons suffering from a number of localized inflammations. But there are some of these cases which it is difficult to distinguish from those with general tuberculosis.

There are, therefore, three morbid conditions which are quite different in their clinical histories, and yet it is customary to call them all tubercular.

In persons who have suffered from any of these forms of tuberculosis there are regularly found after death morbid lesions. It would indeed seem possible that acute general tuberculosis may cause death before any recognizable lesions have been developed, as is sometimes the case in cerebro-spinal meningitis. But we have no certain knowledge on this point.

The lesions which we regularly find are:

1. Miliary tubercles.
2. Diffuse inflammation of various kinds, with cheesy degeneration of the inflammatory products.
3. The ordinary products of inflammation—pus, fibrin, serum, epithelium, granulation tissue, and connective tissue.

Associated with all these lesions we find the tubercle bacilli.

(1) Miliary Tubercles. There are small nodules, of irregularly spheroidal shape, the smallest hardly visible to the naked eye, the largest as large as a pea. The smaller ones are gray and semi-transparent; the larger are opaque, whitish or yellow, especially at their centres.

Miliary tubercles do not all have the same structure.

Some are composed of amorphous granular matter, of degenerated lung tissue, and of epithelial cells and pus.

Some are composed of a tissue resembling granulation tissue.

Some are composed of tubercle tissue, alone or associated with other inflammatory products (Figs. 89, 90, 91).

The term "tubercle tissue" is employed to designate an inflammatory product which somewhat resembles granulation tissue. It is composed of a basement-substance and of cells. The basement-substance is delicate and finely granular, and contains round and oval nuclei. This basement-substance has a reticulated arrangement, and in the spaces of the reticulum are polyhedral nucleated cells. There may also be present the large nucleated bodies called giant-cells. These giant-cells, although apparently all formed in the same way by the fusion of a number of smaller cells, yet do not always present exactly the same appearance. Some of them seem to form part of and to be continuous with the basement-substance; others are separated from the basement-substance, and look like large cells contained in the meshes of the basement-substance.

In some tubercle-tissue the basement-substance, in others the polyhedral cells, in others the giant cells are predominant (Figs. 20, 21, 22, 23).

Such tubercle tissue is arranged in the form of small spheroidal bodies—tubercle granula, and of a diffuse tissue. So that a “tubercular” miliary tubercle is composed of one or more tubercle granula and of diffuse tubercle, to which may be added other inflammatory products.

All miliary tubercles may undergo cheesy degeneration, or more rarely, be changed into connective tissue.

The miliary tubercles formed of amorphous granular matter or of indifferent round-celled tissue, are most common in acute general tuberculosis. The miliary tubercles formed of well-defined tubercle-tissue are most completely developed in localized tuberculosis.

Tubercle-tissue infiltrates and replaces connective tissue; it fills cavities, and it projects from free surfaces. It contains but very few blood-vessels, and when it infiltrates a tissue, the vessels of that tissue become obliterated. There is often associated with it a proliferation of the endothelial cells of the arteries or an obliterating endarteritis.

(2) Diffuse inflammation with cheesy degeneration of the inflammatory products. This form of lesion is found in the large tubercular masses in the brain, in the mucous membrane of the bronchi, in the large flat tumors of the serous membranes, and in the diffuse cheesy infiltration of the kidneys, the ureters, bladder, prostate, testicle, and uterus. The constant feature of the lesion is the development of an indifferent round-celled tissue, which rapidly undergoes cheesy degeneration. Embedded in this tissue there may be tubercle granula. When the lesion is far advanced, the degenerative changes may involve all the inflammatory products, so that we find no formed elements, nothing but a diffuse caseous mass. In the earlier stages of the lesion, the indifferent round-celled tissue and the tubercle granula are readily demonstrated.

(3) Pus, fibrin, serum, epithelial cells, connective tissue, and indifferent tissue are all found in varying quantities, either separately or together in those parts of the body where the tubercular lesions have been developed.

*The Tubercle Bacilli* are slender filamentous bacteria (Fig. 141), varying in length from one-fourth to one-half the diameter of a red blood-cell. They may contain spores, which give them a beaded appearance, and are sometimes slightly curved. It is possible, but very difficult, to see them when they have not been stained. Morphologically they very closely resemble the bacilli of leprosy and some other forms of filamentous bacteria. They differ from most similarly formed bacilli in the tenacity with which they retain the color after staining, although the bacilli of leprosy have this same property. It is, however, the effect of the living bacilli upon the organism, when introduced into it under favorable conditions, which furnishes the only absolute proof of their identity.



The tubercle bacilli are present in the characteristic lesions of almost all cases of local and general tuberculosis. But there are apparently exceptional cases of typical tuberculosis, in which the most careful examination fails to reveal the bacilli. Whether these cases are really exceptional, or only apparently so, owing to unknown conditions which interfere with the demonstration of the bacilli by the present methods, we are unable to say.

The number of bacilli which are present in the lesions is subject to great variations. They are most abundant in the walls and contents of

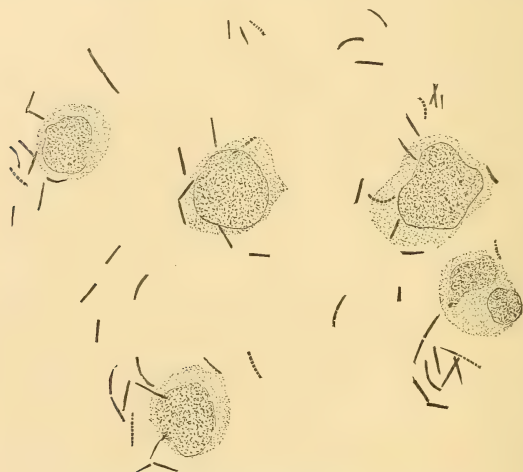


FIG. 141.—*BACILLUS TUBERCULOSIS*,  $\times$  about 850.  
From sputum in case of chronic phthisis stained with fuchsin.

phthical cavities, and in tubercle tissue which is undergoing cheesy degeneration and disintegration. In these situations they may be found in myriads forming sometimes a large part of the disintegrated mass. They are found in cells and scattered among them. Sometimes they are present in considerable numbers in the giant-cells of miliary tubercles. In the dense, firm, chronic miliary tubercles they are not commonly present. In the acute general tuberculosis of children they are often present in enormous numbers, particularly in the lungs. They may be found in tubercular inflammation in any part of the body, and have been seen in the blood. The bacilli are almost constantly found in the sputa of phthical patients, and their presence sometimes affords valuable diagnostic aid in early stages or obscure forms of the disease.

The characteristic features, then, of the lesions of persons who suffer from tuberculosis are:

The formation of tubercle tissue.

The formation of an indifferent round-celled tissue, which is apt to degenerate.

The presence of tubercle bacilli.

The other inflammatory lesions differ in no respect from the same lesions when produced by other causes.

#### METHODS OF STAINING THE TUBERCLE BACILLI.

The most reliable and useful of the numerous methods which are employed for staining the tubercle bacilli is *Ehrlich's*, or some modification of this. For the examination of fluids, such as sputum, etc., the material should be spread in a thin layer on a cover-glass, and dried according to the directions given on p. 89. The staining fluid is prepared by making, 1, a saturated solution of anilin oil in distilled water; this is done by adding about five per cent of the oil, and shaking vigorously and filtering through a moistened filter. To this clear filtrate should be added: 2, a sufficient quantity of a saturated alcoholic solution of fuchsin to give the fluid a dark, almost opalescent appearance (the exact amount of the stain is not important). The prepared cover-glass is floated—specimen side down—on this coloring fluid, and may remain from six to twenty-four hours at the ordinary temperature. Or, if a more rapid staining is desired, it may be completed in from five to ten minutes by gently heating the fluid, not over 40° C. A better result is obtained, however, by allowing the specimens to remain in the staining fluid for some time—about twelve hours—than by hastening the process by heat.

The entire specimen is thus completely stained, tubercle bacilli, tissue elements, and other bacteria which may be present, all in the same way. The next step is, to remove the color with acid, from all the structures which may be intermingled with the tubercle bacilli; the latter, owing to the tenacity with which they retain the color, being but slightly affected. This is done by dipping the cover-glass into an aqueous solution of twenty-five-per-cent nitric acid, and shaking it about for a few seconds. The acid may be even a little more dilute than this. Under the influence of the acid, the specimen on the cover-glass loses its red color, and becomes gray or colorless. It is then thoroughly rinsed in pure water to remove the acid, and the red color is thereby slightly restored. Care should be taken not to expose the specimen too long to the action of the acid, because then the bacilli may be also partially or completely decolorized. Koch recommends that the specimen be allowed to remain but a very short time in the acid, and should then be transferred directly to sixty per cent alcohol, which will remove the remainder of the superfluous color, and then dehydrated. This applies also to sections, see below. A little experience will enable the experimenter to judge of the proper time for the action of the acid. The specimen may now be mounted directly in glycerin, or dried over a spirit lamp, and mounted in balsam. Methyl-violet may be used instead of fuchsin for the staining.

Thin sections of tubercular tissue which has been preserved in alco-

hol, are stained in the same way, and after dehydration may be cleared up with oil of cloves, or better, oil of cedar, and mounted in balsam. The balsam used for mounting stained bacilli should be free from chloroform which is apt to extract the color from them after a time. If it is necessary to thin the balsam, turpentine should be used. Heating of the balsam during the mounting is apt to cause fading of the color in the bacilli. In specimens prepared in this way, the bacilli stand out as sharply defined slender red rods or filaments on the uncolored or but slightly tinted background. Other dilute acids besides nitric acid may be used for decolorization, such as hydrochloric. This is sometimes desirable in examining delicate tissues, since the nitric acid often causes shrinkage and distortion in the specimen. A one-per-cent alcoholic solution of hydrochloric acid is suitable for this purpose.

For purposes of simple recognition of the bacilli in specimens it seems to the writer usually better to have no color in the preparation other than that which the tubercle bacilli possess. But it is often convenient to demonstrate the nuclei of the cells at the same time, and this may be accomplished by staining afterwards with some color which will contrast with that of the bacilli, such as Bismarck brown or methyl blue. This double staining serves another purpose and is very useful in cases of fluids in which the tubercle bacilli are liable to be intermingled with other bacteria of similar form, as in the examination of fæces in cases of suspected tubercular ulcers of the intestine, and in many cases of sputum examination. For, although most other bacteria very readily give up their color in the presence of nitric acid, it still occasionally happens that other bacilli do retain a faint color similar to that of the tubercle bacilli, after the action of the acid. Now, if, after the action of the acid, we place the specimen in some color which contrasts sharply with that which we have used for staining the tubercle bacilli, it is found that this will stain other bacteria which may be present, its own color, and even replace whatever of the first color they may have retained, while the tubercle bacilli will remain entirely unchanged. In this way we have the tubercle bacilli stained with one color, and other bacteria and the nuclei of the cells stained with the contrasting color. A convenient combination of colors for this purpose is to use fuchsin for the primary color and methylin blue for the secondary contrasting color. The tubercle bacilli will then appear red; the cell nuclei and other bacteria, blue. Fränkel has shown<sup>1</sup> that we may accomplish the decolorization and the second staining in one operation by using the following solution: Alcohol, 50; water, 30; nitric acid, 20; mix and add powder of methylen blue to saturation. After staining in the usual way with fuchsin, the specimen is placed for one to two

<sup>1</sup> Fränkel: "Ueber die Färbung des Koch'schen Bacillus und seine Semiotische Bedeutung," etc. Berlin. Klin. Wochenschr., Mar. 31st, 1884, No. 13.



minutes in the above solution, which has been filtered, and then rinsed with water or with a mixture of equal parts of alcohol and water, to which one per cent of acetic acid has been added. It is then dried and mounted in the usual way. Thus the whole operation of drying the specimen on to the cover glass, staining, decolorizing, and staining again with the contrast color, and mounting may be done, if heat is used for the first staining, within ten minutes. Unless it is necessary, however, to obtain a rapid staining, a longer exposure to the stain, as above stated, seems to give better results. There are many other methods described for staining the tubercle bacilli, but those which we have given are sufficient for all cases and are of sufficiently easy application for practical purposes when once the rationale and details have become familiar.

Pure cultures are best obtained upon gelatinized blood-serum at a temperature of about  $37^{\circ}$  C. (see p. 94). For a full description of the methods of culture, characters of the colonies, etc., see Koch: "Mitt. a. d. k. Gesundheitsamt," Bd. II., p. 48.

Bibliography.—Aside from the standard works on General Pathology, the reader may consult, for an account of the earlier literature and investigations on tuberculosis up to 1869, the monograph of Waldenburg, "Die Tuberculose," Berlin, 1869. The announcement of the discovery of the *Bacillus tuberculosis* by Koch was made in the *Berliner Klin. Wochenschrift*, 1882, No. 15. A most elaborate and valuable article on the same subject by Koch is contained in the "Mittheilungen aus dem Kaiserlichen Gesundheitsamt," Vol. II.

The very voluminous literature on the subject of the tubercle bacillus which has accumulated since 1882 is for the most part scattered through the German, English, and French journals. It may be best obtained by consulting files of the *Index Medicus* of dates since April, 1882.

## PYÆMIA.

---

It has long been known that a certain number of persons who have received wounds by accident, or by the hands of the surgeon, may suffer from constitutional symptoms and develop lesions. To designate the condition of these patients, the terms pyæmia, septicæmia, septo-pyæmia, ichorrhæmia, inflammatory fever, surgical fever, traumatic fever, suppurative fever, and purulent infection have been used. Attempts have been made to distinguish several different forms of disease and to call one pyæmia, another septicæmia, and so on, but these attempts have not proved satisfactory, and for the present it is better to include them all under the general name of pyæmia.

As regards the nature of pyæmia three theories have been held:

- I. That pus is absorbed, circulates in the blood, and acts as a poison.
- II. That a chemical poison is evolved from pus and the other matters which are found in wounds, and that the system is poisoned by this.
- III. That bacteria are introduced into and developed in the wound, find their way into the blood and tissues, and there multiply (see p. 85).

The following are the ordinary forms of pyæmia, with their lesions:

I. There are cases of wounds and injuries which are characterized by the presence of a febrile movement without any other symptoms. In such cases no lesions are found except extravasated blood, and portions of necrotic tissue, neither of which are in the condition of putrefaction.

II. There are cases in which in some part of the body a portion of tissue is not only dead, but putrefying. While the process of putrefaction is going on, the patient suffers from rigors, a febrile movement, great prostration, and may die. If, however, the dead tissue can be removed, or the putrefactive process arrested, all the symptoms rapidly disappear.

III. A very small wound may apparently introduce at once into the body a specific poison, as in dissecting wounds. There is swelling and redness about the wound, and inflammation of the lymphatic vessels and glands in its neighborhood. Later, all the neighboring tissues become involved in an unhealthy inflammation; there may be infarctions

in the viscera, a large soft spleen, and parenchymatous degeneration of the liver and kidneys.

IV. There is a large number of cases which it is difficult to classify. They are the ordinary hospital cases of compound fractures and surgical wounds. After the deaths of these patients, there is a considerable variety in the post-mortem appearances.

(1) There are cases in which there are no recognizable lesions.

(2) These are cases characterized by early post-mortem decomposition; post-mortem staining of the tissues; congestion of the lungs, stomach, intestines, and kidneys; extravasations of blood in the serous membranes; swelling of the solitary and agminated glands in the small intestine; swelling of the spleen and parenchymatous degeneration of the liver and kidneys.

(3) In some cases there are localized inflammations. The joints, the connective tissue around the joints, the pleura (Fig. 142), the pericardium, the peritoneum, the pia mater, and the connective tissue in different

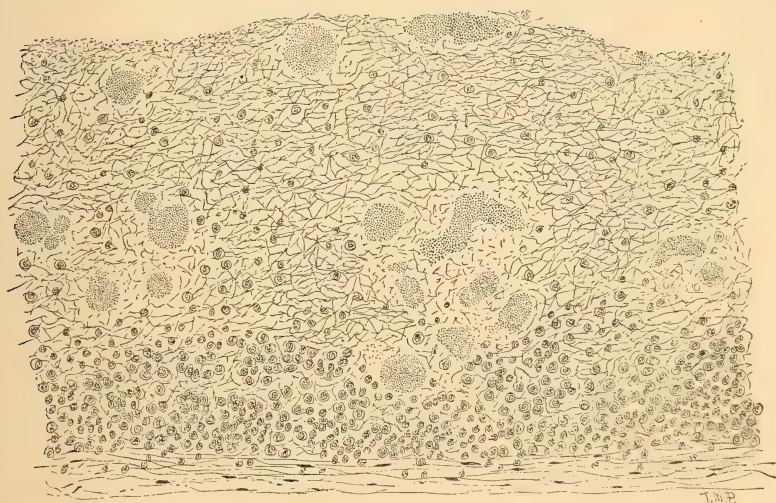


FIG. 142.—MICROCOCCHI IN ZOOGLYCEA COLONIES IN THE MEMBRANOUS EXUDATION OF PYÆMIC PLEURISY,  $\times$  about 750,

Following compound fracture of shoulder in child. (Specimen loaned by Dr. H. N. Heineman.)

parts of the body may be inflamed. These local inflammations are of a purulent character, except in the serous membranes, where the principal inflammatory product may be fibrin.

(4) There are cases in which the veins in the neighborhood of the wound contain softened, puriform thrombi; there are no infarctions in the viscera, but there may be inflammation of the joints and serous membranes.

(5) In other cases the veins contain thrombi; there are infarctions



and abscesses in the viscera; local inflammations of the joints and serous membranes may be present or absent. The thrombi are formed regularly in the veins near the wound, but they may be situated in veins at a distance, and sometimes, although infarctions and abscesses are present, no thrombus can be discovered. The veins may be distended by the thrombi or only contain small coagula. The different kinds of thrombi, and the varieties of emboli and infarctions which they produce, are described in the article on thrombosis, p. 51.

V. Prolonged suppuration. There is first a wound, or a bruise, or an idiopathic suppurative inflammation. This original focus of inflammation continues to suppurate for a long time, then successive abscesses are formed in different parts of the body, the patients lose flesh and strength, and die in a condition of extreme emaciation. After death, abscesses are found in different places, but not in the viscera. There are no thrombi nor infarctions. There may be bronchitis or broncho-pneumonia. The liver, spleen, and kidneys are often the seat of waxy degeneration.

VI. Spontaneous pyæmia. Under this name we include a group of cases which resemble ordinary pyæmia in their symptoms and lesions, but are of obscure etiology. There is no wound, fracture, or abscess to account for them, but they present the same symptoms and the same lesions as the ordinary cases of pyæmia.

In a very large proportion of cases of pyæmia, micrococci, scattered and in colonies, are found in various parts of the body (Figs. 14 and 142).

## GLANDERS, FARCY.

---

These names are given to two varieties of the same disease. The disease originates in the horse and occurs in men by contagion. According to some authors, it may be idiopathic in the human subject.

In the horse, we find four varieties of the disease: chronic and acute glanders, chronic and acute farcy.

(1) *Chronic Glanders*.—The disease begins in the mucous membrane of the nose. Small, whitish nodules, composed of small round cells, are formed in the mucous membrane. These nodules soften and ulcerate. The same nodules may be found in the larynx, trachea, and bronchi. The ulcerations may remain superficial, or they may extend and attack the subjacent cartilage and bone. Nodules of the same kind may be found in the lungs.

(2) *Acute Glanders*.—There is the same formation of nodules, which soften and ulcerate; but they are accompanied with an intense inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane, and the disease runs a rapid course.

(3) *Chronic Farcy*.—The lymphatic glands and vesicles become enlarged, and nodules are formed in the skin, lungs, and other viscera. The glands become cheesy or soften and suppurate. The cutaneous nodules soften and suppurate.

(4) *Acute Farcy*.—There are the same lesions of the lymphatics, and nodules and abscesses are found in the skin. There are also nodules in, and inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane, and the disease runs an acute course.

In man, the disease occurs in an acute and a chronic form, but does not exactly resemble any of the varieties of the disease in the horse.

The acute disease runs a rapid and malignant course. The skin may be covered with a pustular eruption. Furuncles, carbuncles, and abscesses are found beneath the skin and in the muscles. Nodules are found in the nasal mucous membrane, the lungs, kidneys, testes, spleen, and liver. The joints may be inflamed, and there may be osteomyelitis.

The disease may begin at a single point, so that it may be mistaken for a carbuncle, or a gangrenous erysipelas. Graefe gives a case which

began as an acute exophthalmos, and the nature of the disease was not ascertained until after death. In this case, there were nodules in the choroid coat of the eye.

The chronic form of the disease is still more difficult of diagnosis. The nodules grow very slowly, are hard, and may occur in groups, or like a string of beads. The nodules may soften and form chronic ulcers.

Small bacilli have been found in the lesions of glanders. Pure cultures of these were made by Schutz and Löffler,<sup>1</sup> and inoculation with the purified bacilli produced similar lesions in healthy animals.

---

<sup>1</sup> Notice of Researches in Deutsche Med. Wochenschrift, No. 51, 1882.



## HYDROPHOBIA.

---

This is a disease produced by the inoculation of a specific poison, and characterized during life by severe spasm of the voluntary muscles.

We should naturally look for lesions in the spinal cord, and some morbid changes have been found there. These changes, however, although they are well marked in some cases, are very slightly developed in others.

These changes are most marked in the medulla oblongata, but are also present in the cord. The change consists in an accumulation of round cells around the blood-vessels in the perivascular spaces.

## LUPUS.

---

This form of inflammation most frequently occurs in the skin of the face, but also in the mucous membrane of the mouth, pharynx, conjunctiva, vulva, and vagina. The lesion consists of small, multiple nodules of new-formed tissue, somewhat resembling granulation tissue,

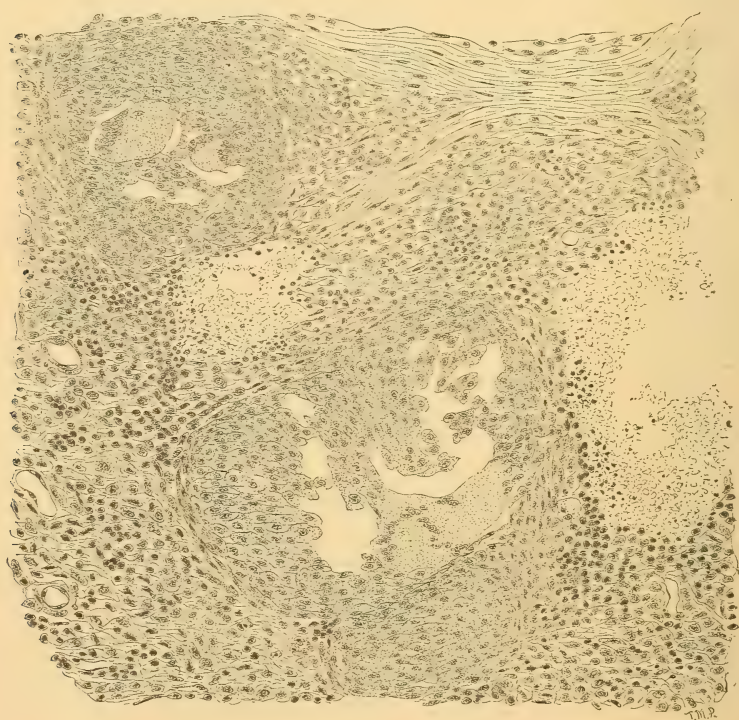


FIG. 143.—LUPUS OF FACE,  $\times 750$  and reduced.

in the cutis or mucosa and submucosa. By the formation of new nodules and a more diffuse cellular infiltration of the tissue between them, the lesion tends to spread, and by the confluence of the infiltrated portions,

a dense and more or less extensive area of nodular infiltration may be formed. There may be an excessive production and exfoliation of epidermis over the infiltrated area, or an ulceration of the new tissue.

Microscopical examination shows the lesion to consist in the formation of tissue composed of small spheroidal cells, intermingled with variable numbers of larger, so-called epithelioid cells and cell masses, and, in many cases, with giant cells (Fig. 143). In some cases, a well-marked reticulum is present between the new cells, and these are often grouped in masses around the blood-vessels. In some cases, there is, without previous ulceration, a formation of new connective tissue in the diseased area, and a well-marked cicatrization; in other cases, the cells and intercellular substance undergo a disintegration which leads to ulceration.

The lesion resembles, in some respects, that of tuberculosis, although the vascular character of lupus and a less marked tendency to cheesy degeneration would seem to indicate differences in their nature. Bacilli resembling those of tuberculosis, and also micrococci have been described as occurring in the lesions of lupus.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> A part of the literature showing the results of the study of lupus in its relations to bacteria may be found in an article by Morison: "Lupus and its Relations to Tuberculosis." *The Am. Jour. Med. Sciences*, April, 1884, p. 413. Consult also *Index Medicus*.



## LEPROSY.

---

*Lepra* (Leprosy).—This form of inflammation is characterized by the development of nodular and sometimes diffuse masses of tissue, consisting of larger and smaller cells of various shapes—spheroidal, fusiform, and branched—the whole somewhat resembling granulation tissue. The new tissue is most frequently formed in the most exposed parts of the skin, as the face, hands, and feet, but it may occur in the skin of any part of the body. It is formed more rarely in the subcutaneous connective tissue, in intrafascicular connective tissue of nerves, in the viscera, and in the mucous membranes. The mucous membranes most frequently affected are those of the eye, nose, mouth, and larynx. The nodules may be very small or as large as a walnut, and may be single or joined together in groups or masses. The tissue of the part in which the new formation occurs may be atrophied and replaced, or may remain intermingled with the leprous tissue, or it may be hypertrophied. The nodules may persist for a long time without undergoing any apparent change, or they may soften and break down, forming ulcers; but ulceration, except in the mucous membranes, is said usually to occur as the result of injury or unusual exposure. The leprous tissue may change without ulceration into cicatricial tissue, or cicatrization may follow ulceration.

Various secondary lesions and disturbances of nerve-function are associated with the formation of leprous tissue in the nerve and central nervous system, but these we cannot consider here.

In all the primary lesions of leprosy, bacilli are said to be present, mostly in the cells, and particularly in the larger spheroidal forms, but sometimes free in the intercellular substance. The bacilli have been found in the skin, mucous membrane of the mouth and larynx, in peripheral nerves, in the cornea, in cartilage, in the testicles, and lymph-glands. Sometimes the cells contain but few bacilli, but they are frequently crowded with them. The writer (T.M.P.) found them in enormous numbers in leprous nodules of the skin, testicles, and liver. The bacilli are from 4 to 6  $\mu$  long and very slender, being usually less than 1  $\mu$  in thickness. They are sometimes pointed at the ends, and sometimes present spheroidal swellings, which seem to indicate the for-

mation of spores (Fig. 144). They are capable of spontaneous movement. In their comportment towards staining agents, as well as in general morphological characters, they considerably resemble the *Bacillus tuberculosis*. They may be stained with fuchsin or gentian violet by the ordinary method (see pp. 89 and 90), or by the method employed for staining the tubercle bacillus.

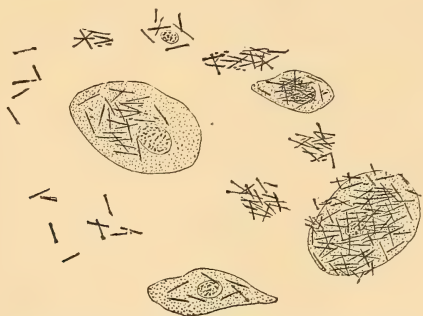


FIG. 144.—BACILLI OF LEPROSY,  $\times$  about 850.  
From nodule in skin, stained with fuchsin.

The reasonable conjecture that the *Bacillus lepræ* causes the lesions of leprosy depends as yet largely upon the constancy of their occurrence in the disease, and upon their relations to the cells of the new growth, since cultivation and inoculation experiments have thus far not given sufficiently definite results to enable us to declare positively their etiological significance.

## ERYSIPELAS.

---

Erysipelas is a diffuse inflammation of the skin and subcutaneous tissue which tends to spread, and which especially involves the lymph-spaces and the lymph-vessels. It is characterized locally by swelling of the tissue, and a bright red color of the integument. It is regularly accompanied by constitutional disturbances, the most marked of which is fever. The morphological changes at the seat of lesion, as we see them after death, vary considerably in different cases and in different stages of the disease. The redness of the skin usually disappears after death. But the tissues may be swollen by the accumulation of serous fluid. This fluid may be nearly transparent or turbid from admixture with pus-cells. Pus-cells may infiltrate the tissues either sparsely or in dense masses. Sometimes vesicles are found on the surface, or scabs; sometimes more or less of the affected region becomes filled with abscesses or gangrenous.



FIG. 145.—MICROCOCCHI IN BLOOD- AND LYMPH-VESSELS OF SKIN OF LEG IN ERYSIPELAS,  $\times$  about 750.

The pus-cells, as well as the cells of the affected tissue, may be in a condition of fatty degeneration. Micrococci, scattered and in colonies, are regularly present in the lymph-vessels and lymph-spaces in greater or less numbers (Fig. 145), during the active stages of the disease. The tissue about these colonies is frequently necrotic. The researches of Fehleisen,<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fehleisen: "Die Aetiologie des Erysipels," Berlin, 1883. This monograph contains most of the older and recent literature, and an account of the author's experiments.



Ziegler, and others, together with the general character of the disease, its mode of invasion, etc., seem to indicate that it is an acute infectious disorder dependent upon the presence of micrococci. Frequently, but not always, the original seat of the infection may be evident in some wound or abrasion of the skin or mucous membrane. In some cases we find, aside from the local lesions, petechiæ in the serous membranes, swelling of the spleen, and parenchymatous degeneration of the kidneys and liver. Simple inflammation of the skin, accompanied by redness, is often called erysipelas.

## ANTHRAX.

---

(Synonyms.—Splenic fever; malignant pustule; charbon.) This disease, which is much more common in the lower animals, especially the herbivora, than in man, is of infrequent occurrence in the United States. It is induced in man by the accidental inoculation with the *Bacillus anthracis*, which causes the disease in the lower animals.<sup>1</sup> This may occur through the agency of flies which have been feeding on animals infected with this disease, by handling their carcasses or hides, or in other ways. There may be in man, local lesions in the skin, in the form of papules, pustules, or a phlegmonous inflammation, with œdema and lymphangitis.

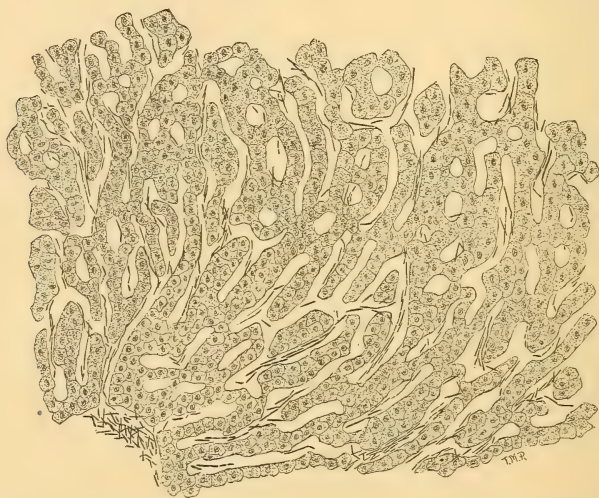


FIG. 146.—*BACILLUS ANTHRACIS* GROWING IN BLOOD-VESSELS OF LIVER OF MOUSE,  $\times 750$  and reduced.

The disease may remain local, or general infection may occur. In some cases, there is apparently no external lesion.

---

<sup>1</sup> For the literature of the relations of the *Bacillus anthracis* to this disease, see Koch, "Mitth. a. d. Kaiserlichen Gesundheitsamte," Bd. i., p. 49 *et seq.*

When general infection occurs, the post-mortem appearances vary.

Decomposition, as is usual in acute infections, generally sets in early. The blood is frequently not much coagulated and dark in color. Hemorrhages and ecchymoses are frequently found in the serous and mucous membranes and in various other parts of the body.

The lungs may show small hemorrhages and œdema; and the bronchi may be deeply congested. The pleural cavities may contain serum. The intestines may exhibit the lesions of the so-called *intestinal mycosis* (see p. 321). The bronchial and other lymphatic glands may be swollen. The spleen may be swollen, very dark in color, and soft, sometimes almost diffuent. The characteristic bacilli (Fig. 146) are found in various parts of the body (see p. 82).



## THE MALARIAL FEVERS.

---

The characteristic lesions of malarial poisoning, are certain changes in the blood, the spleen, and the liver.

In the more intense and acute form of malarial poisoning, the blood contains numerous particles of black or brown pigment, which are either free, or embedded in cells resembling the white blood-cells and the endothelium of the blood-vessels. After death, this pigment is found in the blood-vessels throughout the body, but is most abundant in the blood-vessels of the liver and spleen. These organs are then usually of large size, and of a peculiar brown or black color.

In some of these severe cases, there are also extravasations of blood from the mucous membranes, and in their substance. There may also be general jaundice.

In the milder and more protracted cases of malarial poisoning, the composition of the blood is altered, and the patients may become profoundly anæmic. The spleen becomes the seat of a simple hypertrophy, and may be enormously enlarged.

The liver may exhibit the changes due to chronic interstitial hepatitis.

Klebs and Tommasi-Crudelli<sup>1</sup> have described, as occurring in the soil, and in the air at certain times, in the vicinity of Rome, elongated oval spores which are mobile and which, in artificial cultures or on injection into the bodies of animals, develop into long thread-like bacilli. Animals inoculated with these organisms are said to exhibit the clinical and post-mortem characteristics of malarial fever, and their blood to contain the organisms. Similar bacilli have been found in various parts of the body of persons dead of malarial fever, and in the blood of malarial patients in the cold stage, by Marchiafava and Cuboni,<sup>2</sup> Ziehl,<sup>3</sup> Marchand,<sup>4</sup> McMunn,<sup>5</sup> Dreschfeldt,<sup>6</sup> and others. The experiments of Ceri with cultures and

---

<sup>1</sup> Archiv f. exp. Path., Bd. xi., p. 122.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., Bd. xiii., p.

<sup>3</sup> Deutsch. Med. Wochensch., Nov. 25th, 1882.

<sup>4</sup> Virch. Archiv, Bd. 88, p. 104, 1882.

<sup>5</sup> Brit. Med. Jour., 1881, Vol. II., p. 935.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid., 1884, Vol. I., p. 462.

inoculations were in general confirmatory of those of the earlier observers.

The experimental work thus far done in this direction, however, seems altogether too unsystematic, and the justifiable conclusions too indefinite, to permit us as yet to number the malarial among the bacterial diseases, however probable on clinical and other grounds such a conjecture may be.

## DISEASES CHARACTERIZED BY ALTERATIONS IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD.

---

There is a group of diseases in which the essential lesion seems to be an alteration in the composition of the blood, although in some members of the group other lesions are also present. This group embraces Chlorosis, Pernicious Anæmia, Addison's Disease, Leukæmia and Pseudo-leukæmia.

### CHLOROSIS.

In many cases of chlorosis the only lesion is the change in the composition of the blood.

The volume of the blood may be diminished, the red blood-globules contain less hæmoglobin, the number of red blood-cells is diminished, there are present red blood-cells some of which are larger and some smaller than the normal cells.

In a few cases there is also present a congenital smallness of the aorta.

### PERNICIOUS ANÆMIA.

In this disease the same changes in the blood exist as in chlorosis, and there may also be a moderate increase in the number of the white blood-cells.

There is often fatty degeneration of the walls of the heart, and of the arteries.

There may be thrombosis of the pulmonary artery.

The same changes in the marrow of the bones are found as in leukæmia.

There may be ecchymoses in different parts of the body.

### ADDISON'S DISEASE.

This name is applied to a disease characterized by a peculiar pigmentation of the skin, certain changes in the supra-renal capsules, and a diminution in the number of red blood-cells. The patients become



very anæmic, but are not emaciated. They suffer from cerebral symptoms, great prostration, syncope, and derangements of the functions of the stomach and intestines.

The pigmentation of the skin is the symptom which has especially attracted attention. The change in color usually begins and becomes most marked in those parts of the skin which are not covered by the clothing, or are naturally darker colored. The rest of the skin afterwards changes color, but not uniformly, white patches being left. The color is at first a light yellow or brown; this becomes darker until it is of a dark greenish, grayish, or blackish brown. The mucous membrane of the tongue, lips, and gums may be pigmented in the same way.

Under the name of Addison's Disease different observers have described cases in which the symptoms and bronzed skin existed without disease of the supra-renal capsules; cases in which the bronzed skin was the only lesion, and cases in which the supra-renal capsules were diseased without symptoms or bronzed skin.

We hardly know as yet what are really the characteristic lesions of the disease.

*The Skin.*—The discoloration of the skin is due to deposit of yellowish-brown pigment in the deeper layers of the epidermis, especially in the layer covering the papillæ and less constantly in the connective tissue of the cutis.

*The Brain.*—Pigmentation of the gray matter, acute meningitis, chronic meningitis and distention of the ventricles with serum have been observed.

*The Heart.*—The muscular fibres may be the seat of fatty degeneration.

*The Sympathetic Nerves* may show a variety of changes apparently due to chronic inflammation, especially the nerves which are in contact with the supra-renal capsules.

*The Supra-renal Capsules.*—The most common lesion of these bodies is a tubercular inflammation resembling that which occurs in the lymphatic glands.

The supra-renal capsules are large, hard, and nodular; less frequently of normal size or atrophied. On section, they are found to contain cheesy masses, surrounded by zones of gray, semi-translucent tissue. Later the cheesy masses may become calcified, or they may soften and break down.

The grayish zones are composed of tubercle tissue, granulation tissue, and connective tissue.

Other cases have been described in which the supra-renal capsules were the seat of carcinoma, or of fatty or waxy degeneration.

*The Blood* exhibits the same changes as exist in pernicious anæmia.

## LEUKÆMIA (LEUCOCYTHÆMIA).

This disease is characterized by a persistent and progressive increase in the number of white blood-cells in the blood, accompanied by alterations of varying amount in the spleen, lymph glands, and bone marrow. Sometimes one, sometimes another of these organs are especially involved. Not infrequently other internal organs, lungs, liver, kidneys, etc., are more or less densely infiltrated with leucocytes, either diffusely or in nodular form. The lymphatic tissue of the gastro-intestinal canal may be in a condition of hyperplasia.

Ecchymoses in the serous and mucous membranes, or severe hemorrhages on slight provocation, and fatty degeneration of the heart and kidneys frequently complicate leukæmia. Aside from various other foreign chemical substances which may exist in the blood in leukæmia, there are very frequently found in the blood, marrow, spleen, liver, etc., after death, elongated octahedral crystals, called *Charcot's crystals*, which are believed to be formed by a combination of phosphoric acid with some organic base.<sup>1</sup>

For a detailed description of the lesions of the different parts of the body in leukæmia, see chapters on Blood, Spleen, Lymph Glands, Bones, etc. It does not fall within the scope of this work to consider the various theories as to the probable causes of this disease, which is very obscure and but little understood.<sup>2</sup>

## PSEUDO-LEUKÆMIA (HODGKIN'S DISEASE).

In *pseudo-leukæmia*, which is very closely related to leukæmia, the anatomical changes in the organs are apparently identical with those of leukæmia, but there is no increase in the number of leucocytes in the blood. Of the internal organs the lymph glands are most apt to be specially affected in pseudo-leukæmia.

---

<sup>1</sup> For literature of Charcot's crystals, consult Zenker, Arch. für Klin. Medicin, Bd. 18, p. 125, 1876.

<sup>2</sup> For literature of leukæmia and pseudo-leukæmia consult Birch-Hirschfeldt: "Lehrbuch der path. Anatomie," 2d Ed., Bd. II., p. 146. For general consideration of the relation of certain diseases of the blood to the blood-forming organs—spleen, lymph glands, etc., see Cohnheim's "Vorlesungen über allgemeine Pathologie," Vol. I.

## SCORBUTUS, PURPURA, HÆMATOPHILIA.

---

### SCORBUTUS (SCURVY).

This disease appears to result from imperfect nutrition under conditions which cannot be considered here, and whose immediate cause we do not understand. The lesions are variable, the most prominent being extravasation of blood in the skin, subcutaneous tissue, and muscles; swelling and ulceration of the gums. Small and sometimes extensive hemorrhages are apt to occur in the mucous membranes and on serous surfaces. Small ulcers may form in the mucous membranes. Fatty degeneration of the heart, liver, and kidneys is not uncommon. The spleen may be large and soft. No constant characteristic changes have been discovered, either in the blood-vessels or the blood, which would satisfactorily account for the extravasations and other lesions.

The bodies are apt to decompose early. The skin may be mottled with small and large purple, blue, brown, or blackish spots produced by degenerative changes in the extravasated blood in the cutis. Sometimes ulcers are produced by the perforation of effused blood on to the surface.

The joints may be inflamed, may contain serum or blood. Rarely, the hemorrhages are followed by destruction of the cartilages and ends of the bones.

Very rarely, there is hemorrhage between the periosteum and bone, and in the bone itself, producing softening and destruction of the bone, and separation of the epiphyses. The sternal ends of the ribs are the most frequent seat of this change.

### PURPURA HÆMORRHAGICA (MORBUS MACULOSUS).

This disease is characterized by the occurrence of ecchymoses in the skin, mucous and serous membranes. Hemorrhages, particularly from the mucous membranes, may be very severe, and even fatal. The cause of the disease is unknown.



## HÆMATOPHILIA (HÆMORRHAGIC DIATHESIS).

This disease consists in a liability to hæmorrhage on the slightest provocation, and is dependent upon some constitutional peculiarity which is unknown to us. It is frequently hereditary. An unusual thinness of the intima of the arteries has been noticed in some cases, and other changes have been described, but there are no constant lesions associated with the hæmorrhages, as yet discovered, which would satisfactorily explain their occurrence. The hæmorrhages may be traumatic in origin, or they may occur spontaneously from the mucous membranes.

## GOUT.

---

The characteristic lesion of gout is the deposit of urate of soda in the articular cartilages, the ligaments of the joints, the ears, and the eye-lids.

The most frequent situation is the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the great toe. The cartilage may be infiltrated or incrustated with the deposit.

A very important feature of gout is that patients with the gouty diathesis are especially liable to derangements of digestion, and to certain chronic inflammations such as: chronic inflammation of the arteries, chronic bronchitis, and chronic nephritis.

## DIABETES.

---

It would be expected that so common and well marked a disease as saccharine diabetes should be characterized by definite lesions, but this is not the case. The changes which we find after death are accidental, or the results of the disease. No characteristic lesions have yet been discovered.

*The Brain* may appear to be entirely normal; it may be congested; there may be an increase of serum; the convolutions may be shrunken; there may be meningitis; there may be dilatation of the blood-vessels; small extravasations of blood around the vessels; enlargement of the perivascular spaces, and alterations in the perivascular sheaths, and nervous matter bounding the cavities; there may be tumors at the base of the brain.

*The Spinal Cord* may present dilatation of the blood-vessels; dilatation of the central canal; changes in the gray matter of the anterior cornua.

*The Lungs*.—There may be pleurisy, bronchitis, broncho-pneumonia, lobar pneumonia, gangrene of the lung, chronic pulmonary phthisis.

*The Heart* is often small, there may be chronic endocarditis.

*The Stomach and Intestines*.—The stomach may be dilated, its walls may be thickened, there may be hemorrhagic erosions of the mucous membrane. In the intestines there may be tubercular ulcers, or enteritis.

*The Liver and the Spleen* show no marked changes.

*The Pancreas* may be atrophied; it may contain abscesses.

*The Kidneys* may be enlarged, they may be the seat of parenchymatous or diffuse nephritis, there may be glycogenic degeneration of the epithelium of Henle's loops.

*The Blood*.—In a few cases fat has been found in the blood and fat emboli in the vessels of the lungs.

A considerable number of autopsies are recorded in the "Transactions of the Pathological Society of London," vol. xxxiv., p. 328, and in Fre-  
rich's monograph on Diabetes.



## SUNSTROKE.

---

During the hot summer months, cases of sunstroke are of frequent occurrence in New York. The persons affected are, for the most part, adult male laborers, usually of intemperate habits.

It is necessary to separate from the cases of sunstroke proper, when the patient is attacked while exposed to the heat of the sun, the cases of exhaustion from heat and fatigue, which may occur as well in the house.

The patients who are seriously affected by sunstroke exhibit, during life, an intense heat of the skin, convulsions, and coma. Death in many cases soon ensues. In other cases, the symptoms are more protracted.

After death, decomposition sets in very early, owing to the state of the weather. In autopsies which I have made within two hours after death, the increased heat of the skin was still maintained.

*The Brain* and its membranes were in some cases congested; in others not. Sometimes there was an increased amount of serum beneath the pia mater; sometimes there were small and thin extravasations of blood beneath the pia mater, and between the pia and dura mater.

In the other viscera there were no lesions except those due to the condition of coma existing before death. The lungs and kidneys were frequently congested.

In the cases in which cerebral symptoms are protracted for a number of days, the lesions of meningitis have been found after death.

Attention has been called by Dr. H. C. Wood, Jr., to the rigid condition of the wall of the heart after death, but this rigidity is certainly not present in all cases.

## DEATH FROM BURNING.

---

Death may be caused by the inspiration of smoke and flame ; by drinking of hot fluids ; by the direct contact of flame or hot substances with the external surface of body. It may be due to the direct effect of the agents ; to secondary affections of the viscera, or to the exhaustion produced by long-continued inflammation and suppuration.

The entire body may be burnt to a coal, or completely roasted, or only a larger or smaller area of the skin be burned.

We find the burned skin divested of epidermis, and presenting a peculiar red, hard, parchment-like appearance. If the patient has lived some time, this is replaced by a suppurating surface. Or there are small, bladder-like elevations of the epidermis. The base of these blisters is red, and they are surrounded by a red zone, or suppuration may have commenced.

These appearances cannot be produced by heat applied to the skin after death.

*The Brain* may be congested, œdematous, or softened. More frequently it is normal.

*The Larynx and Trachea* may be congested, and the seat of croupous inflammation. There may be œdema of the glottis.

*The Lungs* may be congested and œdematous, or hepatized, or the seat of pyæmic infarctions. There may be pleurisy.

Inflammation of the *peritoneum* is not very infrequent. There may be swelling of the *solitary* and *agminated glands* of the small intestine.

The duodenum may be the seat of perforating ulcers and the mucous membrane of entire gastro-intestinal canal may be congested. The *Liver*, *Spleen*, and *Kidneys* may be the seat of parenchymatous degeneration, or of pyæmic infarctions.

## DEATH FROM LIGHTNING.

---

Persons who are struck by lightning may die instantly ; or may continue for several hours comatose, or delirious, and then either die or recover ; or they may die after some time from the effects of the burns and injuries received.

The post-mortem appearances are very variable. Sometimes there are no marks of external violence or internal lesions. Sometimes the clothes are burnt and torn, while the skin beneath them is unchanged. Usually there are marks of contusion and laceration, or ecchymoses, or lacerated, punctured wounds, or fractures of the bones, or superficial or deep burns. The track of the electric fluid may sometimes be marked by dark-red arborescent streaks on the skin. Fractures are rare.

The internal viscera may be lacerated and disorganized from lightning.



## DEATH FROM SUFFOCATION.—ASPHYXIA.

---

By suffocation we understand that condition in which air is prevented from penetrating into the lungs, without direct pressure on the larynx or trachea. The interruption of the function of respiration which is thus brought about induces the condition known as *asphyxia*. Many deaths from drowning and strangulation take place in this way.

The methods in which the supply of air may be cut off from the lungs are very various. The mouth and nose may be closed by the hand, by plasters and cloths, by wrapping up the head in cloths, by covering the face with earth, hay, grain, etc. Foreign bodies may be introduced into the mouth, pharynx, and larynx. Blood may pass into the trachea from an aneurism, or from a wound. The glottis may be closed by inflammatory swelling. Matters which are vomited may lodge in the larynx.

On the other hand, injury or disease of the medulla oblongata or paralysis, or spasm of the muscles of respiration from drugs, tumors pressing upon the air-passages, or diseases of the lungs themselves, may induce asphyxia.

### *External Inspection.*

The body should be examined for marks of violence, the cavities of the mouth and nose for foreign substances.

The face may be livid and swollen, or present a natural appearance. The conjunctiva may be congested and ecchymotic. There may be small ecchymoses on the face, neck, and chest. The mouth often contains frothy blood and mucus. The tongue may be protruded.

### *Internal Examination.*

*The Brain* and its membranes may be congested, or anæmic and œdematous, or unchanged.

*The Blood* throughout the body is unusually dark-colored and fluid.

*The Larynx* may contain foreign bodies which have produced the suffocation. The mucous membrane of the larynx, trachea, and bronchi is congested, and some times ecchymotic. These passages contain frothy blood and mucus.

*The Lungs* are usually congested and œdematous, but sometimes do not differ from their ordinary appearance. There may be small patches of emphysema near the surface of the lungs. Sometimes, especially in infants, small ecchymoses are found in the costal and pulmonary pleura.

*The Heart* usually presents its right cavities full of blood, its left cavities empty; but to this there are frequent exceptions.

*The Abdominal Viscera* are usually congested.

## DEATH FROM STRANGULATION—HANGING.

Strangulation is effected by the weight of the body in hanging, by pressure on the neck with the hands or by some other object, or by constriction of the neck with a cord or ligature of some kind. Death is usually produced by asphyxia or by asphyxia combined with the effect of the cutting off of the blood supply to the brain by pressure on the large vessels of the neck. In some cases of hanging, death ensues as a result of fracture or dislocation of the cervical vertebræ.

*External Inspection.*—The face may be livid and swollen, the eyes prominent, the lips swollen, and the tongue protruded. These appearances are, however, often absent. Erection of the penis, ejaculation of semen, and evacuation of fæces and urine are frequently observed.

In most cases marks are left upon the neck by the objects which have directly produced the strangulation.

In cases of hanging, the mark about the neck varies considerably in position, direction, and general characters, depending upon the kind of ligature employed, the time of suspension, period after death at which the observation is made, etc. The most common mark left by a cord about the neck is a dry, dense, brownish furrow, whose breadth corresponds but in a very general way with the diameter of the cord. In some cases, according to Tidy and others, there may be no mark at all if the hanging is quickly accomplished with a soft ligature and the body cut down immediately after death. There may be abrasions and ecchymoses of the skin at the seat of ligature.

In cases of strangulation by the fingers, the marks on the neck may correspond in a general way to the shape of the fingers.

The application of the same forces immediately after death may produce the same marks as when death is induced by them.

*Internal Examination.*—*The Brain* and its membranes may be congested, or there may be extravasation of blood, or there may be no abnormal appearances. *The Neck.*—In some cases there is effusion of blood beneath the ligature, rupture of the cervical muscles, fracture of the os hyoides and cartilages of the larynx, fracture and dislocation of the cervical vertebræ, rupture of the internal vertebral ligaments, and of the inner and middle coats of the carotid arteries. Similar changes may be

produced in the dead body by the use of great violence. In death from asphyxia, the lesions are similar to those described above. In some cases, for example, where death has occurred from fright or shock, the results of post-mortem examination are entirely negative.

#### DEATH FROM DROWNING.

In examining the bodies of persons who have been drowned, it is necessary to bear in mind a number of questions which may arise: Whether the person came into the water alive or dead? How long a time has elapsed since death? Whether the person committed suicide, or was drowned by accident, or was murdered? These questions are to be solved sometimes certainly, sometimes with probability, sometimes not at all by the post-mortem examination. Persons dying in the water, to which condition the term drowning is commonly applied, may die from asphyxia, from exhaustion, from fright or syncope, from diseases of the heart, apoplexy, injuries, etc. While in the majority of cases asphyxia is a predominant or important factor in death by drowning; the conditions under which death occurs are so apt to be complex that in the minority of cases only are the lesions of pure asphyxia found after death, while in most cases the bodies present the more or less well-marked lesions of asphyxia, together with those indicative of complicating conditions. There are no post-mortem conditions which alone are absolutely characteristic of drowning, and it is only by considering all the facts elicited by the autopsy together, that any just conclusion can be arrived at. It should always be borne in mind, moreover, that even the most characteristic of the evidences of drowning are apt to be modified or to disappear as decomposition goes on.

*External Inspection.*—Post-mortem rigidity usually sets in early, sometimes immediately after death. Decomposition goes on, especially in summer, with unusual rapidity in bodies which have been removed from the water. Frequently, but by no means constantly, the peculiar roughening of the skin, known as goose skin (*cutis anserina*) is found, but this may occur after death from other causes. A light, lathery froth, either white or blood-stained, is frequently seen about the mouth and nostrils within twelve to twenty-four hours after removal of the body from the water, but it may be absent, and may be seen after death from other causes. After the body has lain for several hours in the water (twelve to twenty-four), the thick skin of the palms of the hands and soles of the feet may become macerated, and thrown into coarse wrinkles, just as it may after prolonged soaking during life, or in a dead body thrown into the water. The penis and nipples may be retracted and the scrotum shrunken, but this is not constant nor characteristic.

If the person has struggled in the water and clutched at objects



within his reach, there may be evidences of this in excoriations of the fingers or in the presence of sand, weeds, etc., under the nails or grasped in the hands.

External marks of injury, bruises, etc., should be sought for, since persons in diving or on being thrown into the water with homicidal intent may have died from the violence, and not, strictly speaking, from drowning. It should also be borne in mind in such complex cases that injuries, not in themselves fatal, may, when the body is in the water, prove so, on account of the inability of the person to rescue himself or gain time for recovery from the injury, and that then the struggle for breath may be but slight, and the more prominent signs of drowning but little marked.

#### INTERNAL EXAMINATION.

*The Brain.*—Congestion of the brain and its membranes is found only in a small proportion of cases.

*The Blood,* when death occurs from asphyxia, is usually fluid throughout the body and of a dark color, as in asphyxia from other causes.

*The Air-Passages.*—In persons who die from asphyxia, the mucous membrane of the larynx, trachea, and bronchi is usually congested, and the air-passages contain a variable quantity of bloody or mucous froth. In persons dying in the water from other causes than asphyxia, these appearances are absent. Foreign substance from the water, such as sand, weeds, etc., or matters regurgitated from the stomach, may find their way into the air-passages during the act of drowning, or as a post-mortem occurrence. Thus in bodies washed about on the bottom, sand or mud may get into the air-passages for a certain distance, from the mechanical action of the water.

*The Lungs* in typical cases are distended, so that they fill the thorax and cover the heart. The increased size is due partly to congestion, partly to the presence of the fluid in which the person was drowned, which is often inspired during the act of drowning; and partly to the distention of the air-vesicles with air. While in cases of drowning in which there is a struggle, and water is breathed in, the lungs contain more or less fluid, this may, as a result of decomposition, find its way in greater or less quantity into the pleural cavities by transudation, leaving the lungs comparatively empty. It should be remembered, however, that a considerable quantity of reddish fluid may collect in the pleural cavities under other conditions than drowning, as a post-mortem change, by transudation from the blood-vessels, and other adjacent tissues.

*The Heart.*—In those who die from asphyxia, the right cavities are usually filled with fluid blood, while the left cavities are empty. But where death is due to complex causes, this may not be the case.

*The Stomach.*—The fluid in which the person was drowned, some-

times mixed with sand, weeds, etc., may be swallowed during the act of drowning. Sand may wash for a short distance into the œsophagus after death in bodies washing about the bottom.

*The Abdominal Viscera* may be congested in persons who die from asphyxia.

In persons dying from syncope, shock, etc., we may find no lesions. When the death is partly due to asphyxia, and partly to other causes, the conditions will vary in various ways, which need not be described in detail here.

In important cases of doubtful drowning, it is desirable to carefully collect and save some of the fluid from the lungs and stomach for micro-chemical examination, since the identification of these fluids with those in which the person was presumably drowned, will often give certainty to an otherwise doubtful case.

For the detailed consideration of the anatomical diagnosis of drowning, the changes which bodies dead from drowning undergo from decomposition, and the factors bearing on the question of suicide, homicide, etc., we refer to works on Medical Jurisprudence.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Tidy: "Legal Medicine," Vol. II., 342-373. Guy and Ferrier: "Forensic Medicine," 274-285.

## DEATH FROM POISONING.

---

In cases of suspected poisoning which may possibly have a medico-legal bearing, the examination should be made with extreme care and thoroughness. The inspection of the body, and the examination of *all* the viscera should be thorough and detailed. Every appearance should be noted at the time, and nothing left to the memory. It is well to have an assistant record the observations as they are made. The disposition of the parts and organs in jars should also be noted at the same time.

It is important to remember that many poisons destroy life without producing appreciable lesions, and also that many cases of sudden death occur, not due to poisons, and without any discoverable cause.

In bodies which are exhumed for examination, the tissues may be so changed by decomposition that it is impossible to say whether lesions have or have not existed. In such cases, the careful and separate preservation of the viscera, and other parts for chemical examination is often all that can be done. For directions for preserving tissues and organs for the chemist in medico-legal cases, see Part I. (p. 32).

### SULPHURIC ACID.

The effects of this poison vary with the amount taken and with its strength. Death usually takes place in from two to twenty-four hours after the taking of the concentrated acid. A case of death within an hour is recorded. When the poison is less concentrated, or its effects less intense, the patient may survive for months.

The skin of the face about the mouth may be blackened and charred by the acid. The mouth and pharynx are of a grayish or blackish color, or are covered with a whitish layer, while the deeper tissues are reddened. Sometimes these regions escape the action of the poison.

The *larynx*, *trachea*, and *lungs* are sometimes acted on, softened and blackened by the accidental passage of the acid into them. This may even take place when the acid does not pass into the *œsophagus*.

The *œsophagus* seldom escapes. It is grayish or blackish colored, softened, and the mucous membrane comes off in shreds. If life is pro-



longed, cicatrices and strictures are formed. The *stomach* may contain a blackish pulpy fluid due to the action of the acid on mucus, blood, etc. It is coated on its internal surface with a black, sticky layer beneath which the mucous membrane is reddened. The mucous membrane may be blackened in patches or stripes. The organ may be contracted and the mucous membrane corrugated. Sometimes perforation takes place, and the acid blackens and softens the adjoining viscera. In protracted cases, cicatrices are formed, and the organ is contracted. If the poison is dilute, there may be only the lesions of chronic gastritis.

The *blood* is sometimes thickened, syrupy, acid, and may form thrombi in the vessels.

The body may be partially preserved from decomposition, owing to the action of the acid upon the tissues.

Fatty degeneration of the renal epithelium is mentioned by some authors.

The solution of indigo in sulphuric acid, commonly known as sulphate of indigo, produces the same lesions as sulphuric acid, and also stains the tissues with which it comes in contact of a dark-blue color. It is stated that an indigo-blue tint is often found in the mucous membranes after poisoning by pure sulphuric acid.<sup>1</sup>

#### NITRIC ACID.

Death may occur very soon after the taking of the poison, but does not usually occur for several hours, and may not take place for several days or weeks.

The surface of the mucous membrane of the *mouth*, *pharynx*, and *œsophagus* is covered with yellow eschars wherever the acid has touched it. Beneath and around the eschars the tissues are congested and red. The poison may be introduced into the *œsophagus* without acting on the mouth. The *stomach* contains a viscous, sanguinolent, yellow or greenish fluid. The mucous membrane is congested, red, swollen and softened, ecchymotic. It is rarely perforated. The *duodenum* may be inflamed, and the inflammation extend to its peritoneal coat. The rest of the intestines usually escapes the action of the acid.

The *larynx* is very frequently acted on by the acid. There are yellow eschars, congestion and swelling of mucous membrane, sometimes œdema of the glottis. The *trachea* may be inflamed and the *lungs* congested.

If the patient survives the first effects of the poison, the lesions of chronic inflammation, cicatrization, and contraction, may be found at a later period.

---

<sup>1</sup> Woodman and Tidy: "Forensic Medicine and Toxicology," Ed. 1877, p. 237.

The acid nitrate of mercury, if taken in a concentrated form into the stomach, may produce the same lesions as nitric acid.

#### HYDROCHLORIC ACID.

In fatal cases, death occurs on the average in about twenty-four hours. The lesions are in general similar to those produced by sulphuric and nitric acids, except that the eschars are usually of a whitish color at first, becoming, after a time, discolored and disintegrated. It is also more common to find false membranes on the inflamed surfaces.

#### OXALIC ACID.

In fatal cases, death may occur within ten minutes (in one case in three minutes) or may be delayed for two or three weeks. The period of death does not depend, as do in general the symptoms, upon the amount and concentration of the poison.

The mucous membrane of the *mouth*, *pharynx*, and *œsophagus* is usually white and shrivelled, and easily peeled off, and may be covered with brownish vomit from the stomach. The *œsophagus* may be much contracted. The *stomach* is usually contracted and contains a dark-brown, acid, mucous fluid. The mucous membrane of the stomach may be pale, soft, and easily detached, sometimes looking as if it had been boiled in water. Sometimes it is red and congested; sometimes blackened and gangrenous; sometimes peeled off in patches. Perforation is of rare occurrence. If life be prolonged, the whitened condition of the mucous membrane is succeeded by congestion and inflammation. The *small intestines* may be inflamed. Inflammation of the *pleura* and *peritoneum*, and congestion of the *lungs*, are of occasional occurrence. In some cases of death from oxalic acid there are no well-marked lesions.

Potassium oxalate produces the same lesions as oxalic acid.

#### TARTARIC ACID.

This acid is seldom used as a poison, but in large doses may prove fatal. The lesions in the cases observed were redness and inflammation of the mucous membrane of the gastro-intestinal canal.

#### POTASH, SODA, AND THEIR CARBONATES.

These substances are not commonly used as poisons with suicidal or homicidal intent, but may be taken by mistake. They may cause death in a few hours, or life may be prolonged for several weeks.

The mucous membrane of the *mouth*, *pharynx*, *œsophagus*, and *stomach* is softened, swollen, congested, and inflamed, or may be peeled off. It may be blackened from local changes in the blood. The mucous membrane of the *larynx* and *trachea* may also be swollen and inflamed.

If life is prolonged for some time, cicatrices and strictures of the *œsophagus* and *stomach* are apt to be produced as a result of the reparative inflammation.

#### AMMONIA.

The vapor of strong ammonia may cause death from inflammation of the larynx and air passages. The strong solution of ammonia produces lesions similar to those of potash and soda. The *larynx*, *trachea*, and *bronchi* are frequently inflamed and may be covered with false membranes. Fatal inflammation of the rectum and colon has been produced by an enema of strong solution of ammonia.

#### POTASSIUM NITRATE.

Accidental poisoning sometimes occurs from large doses of this salt. In the observed cases, there was intense congestion and inflammation of the *stomach* and *intestines*, and in one case a small perforation of the stomach.

For the effects of several infrequently employed salts of the alkalies and alkaline earths, which for the most part produce simple inflammation of the gastro-intestinal canal, we refer to special works on Toxicology.

#### PHOSPHORUS.

Poisoning by phosphorus is much more common in France and Germany than in this country. Some of the forms of rat poison of which this is a frequent ingredient and the ends of matches are common media for its administration. It is more often used with suicidal than homicidal intent.

The post-mortem appearances vary according to the length of time which elapses before death, which may be from a few hours to several months.

If death takes place in a few hours, the only lesions may be those produced by the direct local action of the poison. The mouth, pharynx, and *œsophagus* usually escape. The stomach may be only slightly reddened, or there may be patches of inflammation and erosion. The contents of the stomach are often mixed with blood, and may have the peculiar smell of phosphorus. There may be little bits of wood present when the poison has been taken from the heads of lucifer matches. It is said that the mucous membrane of the stomach may emit a phosphorescent light in the dark.

If death does not ensue until after several days, the lesions are more marked. The body is usually jaundiced. There may be ecchymosis beneath the pericardium, pleura, and peritoneum, in the lungs, the kidneys, the bladder, the uterus, the muscles, and the subcutaneous connective tissue, and bloody fluid in the visceral cavities.



The *heart and voluntary muscles*, the walls of the *blood-vessels*, and the endothelium of the air-vesicles of the lungs may be in the condition of fatty degeneration. The blood is usually dark and fluid.

The *Stomach* sometimes presents no very striking changes. There may be small circumscribed spots of inflammation, erosion, or gangrene, and occasionally perforation. The most constant change is a granular degeneration of the cells which fill the gastric follicles. In consequence of this, the mucous membrane appears thickened, opaque; of white, gray, or yellow color.

The *Small Intestine* appears normal or is congested.

The *Liver* is found in different degrees of parenchymatous and fatty degeneration, and is often stained yellow from the jaundice. It is usually increased in size, and of a grayish, grayish-yellow, or light-yellow color, unless stained by the bile. Less frequently the centres of the acini are congested, or the entire liver is congested, or there are small hemorrhages in the liver-tissue. The liver may be soft, flabby, and smaller than normal. In the interstitial tissue of the liver and along the branches of the portal vein there may be marked infiltration with small spheroidal cells.

The *Kidneys* often present parenchymatous and fatty degeneration of the epithelium. The *mesenteric glands* may be soft and swollen.

#### ARSENIC.

This poison is very frequently employed with suicidal intent. Death may occur in a longer or shorter time from the direct irritative effects of the poison upon the gastro-intestinal canal, with the symptoms which usually accompany the ingestion of irritant poisons; or it may occur with symptoms of collapse, or coma, or shock; or the symptoms may resemble those of cholera. The average time of death in acute fatal cases is about twenty hours, but death has occurred in twenty minutes, and has been prolonged for two or three weeks.

The *mouth, pharynx*, and *oesophagus* may be inflamed, but are more frequently unaltered. The *stomach* may be empty or contain mucus mixed with blood. The arsenic, in substance, may be found adherent to the mucous membrane or mixed with the contents of the organ. It has, in rare cases, been found encysted in the stomach, in considerable quantity. When invisible to the naked eye, a microscopical examination of the stomach contents will not infrequently reveal characteristic crystals of arsenious acid or some of its compounds. The stomach may be contracted and its mucous membrane corrugated. The entire inner surface may be red and inflamed, or there may be patches or streaks of inflammation or deep congestion. The inflamed and congested patches may be thickened and covered with false membrane mixed with larger and smaller particles

or masses of the poison. Ulceration, perforation, and gangrene are rare. Blood may be extravasated into the mucosa and submucosa, and with the congestion, give the mucous membrane a very dark-red or brown appearance. Frequently the mucous membrane is studded with small petechiæ. Sometimes the arsenic is converted in the stomach into the yellow sulphide. There may be acute gastritis even when the poison is absorbed by the skin or otherwise, and not introduced into the stomach. Taylor mentions a case in which the coats of the stomach were thickened and gelatinous, but not congested. The epithelium of the gastric glands may undergo granular and fatty degeneration.

The entire length of the *intestine* may be congested and inflamed, but the action of the poison does not usually extend beyond the duodenum. In some cases, the *solitary follicles*, *Peyer's patches*, and *mesenteric glands* are swollen. Inflammation of the *bladder* and *peritoneum*, and congestion and œdema of the *brain* have been observed, but are neither frequent nor in any way characteristic.

Fatty degeneration of the *muscles*, *liver*, *kidneys*, *blood-vessels*, and *vesicular epithelium* of the *lungs* may be produced in arsenical poisoning.

Alterations in the spinal cord indicative of acute myelitis have been described by Popon as occurring in dogs poisoned with arsenious acid.<sup>1</sup>

The walls of the stomach and intestines, and other parts of the body may be preserved from decomposition for a long time after death by arsenical poisoning.

It should always be borne in mind, in examining cases of suspected arsenic poisoning, that death may be produced by arsenic and its compounds without any appreciable lesions. While, in general, it may be said that, in the cases in which no lesions are discovered, death has been rapid, the death may be delayed in such cases until long after a period at which, in other cases, marked inflammatory changes have occurred.

Compounds of arsenic, such as the chloride, and sulphide, and the arsenite (Scheele's green; Paris green) are sometimes used for suicidal purposes, and produce lesions similar to those of arsenious acid. Paris green is a favorite article in New York, particularly among Germans, for suicidal purposes. It is usually taken in considerable quantities, and and is often found in the stomach after death.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Popon: "Ueber die Veränderungen im Rückenmarke nach Vergiftung mit Arsen," etc. Virch. Arch., Bd. 93, p. 351.

<sup>2</sup> It is advisable, in cases of suspected arsenic poisoning, particularly if the body have lain for some time, as in exhumations, to preserve, not only all of the internal organs entire for the chemist, but also portions of the muscles (back, thigh, arm, and abdomen), and also one of the long bones, preferably the femur, since arsenious acid and its compounds are quite diffusible, and may be present in proportionately larger quantity in other parts than in the gastro-intestinal canal.

## CORROSIVE SUBLIMATE.

The mucous membrane of the *mouth* and *throat* may be swollen, inflamed, or have a grayish-white appearance. The *œsophagus* may be swollen and white, or congested, or unaltered. The mucous membrane of the *stomach* is usually congested or inflamed, or there may be patches of softening, ulceration, or gangrene. Perforation is of rare occurrence. Small ecchymoses in the mucosa are not uncommon. Sometimes there is little or no change in the stomach. Sometimes the mucous membrane of the stomach is slate-colored from the deposition of metallic mercury from the decomposed salt. The *intestines* may appear normal, or there may be patches of congestion and ecchymosis.

The *larynx* and *trachea* may be congested. The *kidneys* may show parenchymatous and fatty degeneration of the epithelium.

## LEAD.

The different preparations of lead may prove fatal, either from the immediate effect of large doses or from the gradual effects of repeated small doses. Although there may be marked symptoms during life, the post-mortem lesions are few and variable.

Large doses may produce acute gastritis, and sometimes a whitening of the mucous membrane. The intestines are generally contracted, and there may be fatty degeneration of the renal epithelium; very frequently there are no appreciable lesions.

In chronic lead-poisoning the intestines may be contracted, the voluntary muscles flabby and light-colored, or partially replaced by connective tissue, and there may be chronic meningitis.

## COPPER.

Acute poisoning by salts of copper is not very common, but it is of occasional accidental occurrence, and the salts are infrequently used with suicidal intent. The sulphate and acetate are the most important salts in this respect. Soluble salts of copper may be formed in the use of copper cooking utensils, and accidents most frequently occur in this way.

The post-mortem appearances are somewhat variable. The *pharynx* and *œsophagus* may be somewhat inflamed or unchanged. The mucous membrane of the *stomach* and *intestines* may be inflamed, ulcerated, or gangrenous, and perforation and peritonitis may occur. The mucous

---

It is desirable to save the whole of the internal organs, and to weigh the muscle and bones, as well as the whole body at the autopsy, in order that the calculations of the chemist, in case arsenic be found, may rest upon a definite basis, and be as little as possible dependent upon estimates whose value may be questioned by lawyers, should the case come into the courts.



membrane may have a diffuse greenish color, or particles of the salt may be found adhering to it.

#### TARTAR EMETIC.

This preparation of antimony may prove fatal when administered in a single large dose or in repeated small doses. The post-mortem lesions are not constant. In cases of chronic poisoning there are usually no appreciable lesions.

In cases of acute poisoning, there may be evidence of acute inflammation of the *œsophagus*, *stomach*, *intestines*, and *peritoneum*. Sometimes the stomach exhibits no lesions, while the intestine is involved. The *larynx* and *lungs* may be deeply congested.

#### VEGETABLE IRRITANTS.

*Aloes*, *colocynth*, *gamboge*, *jalap*, *scammony*, *savin*, *croton oil*, *colchicum*, *veratria*, *hellebore*, *elaterium*, and *turpentine*.

All these drugs may produce poisonous effects. The post-mortem lesions are congestion, inflammation, and sometimes ulceration of the gastro-intestinal mucous membrane; but these lesions are sometimes present and sometimes absent.

#### CANTHARIDES.

This substance may be given in powder or tincture. The entire length, or only a portion of the *alimentary canal* may be congested or inflamed. There may be patches of gangrene of the mucous membrane of the *stomach*. When the poison was taken in substance, a microscopical examination of the contents of the alimentary canal or of the mucous membrane may reveal the glistening green and gold particles of the fly.

The *kidneys*, *ureters*, and *bladder* may be congested and inflamed. There is sometimes congestion of the *brain* and its membranes.

#### OPIUM.

The post-mortem appearances in persons who have died from opium poisoning are inconstant and not characteristic. Congestion of the *brain* and its membranes, with serous effusion in the membranes and ventricles, and congestion of the lungs, are changes occasionally seen, but they are frequently entirely absent, and when present are not characteristic of death from this poison.

#### POISONOUS FUNGI.

The action of these substances varies greatly, and the post-mortem appearances are inconstant and not characteristic. In general, when any lesions are present, they are these of gastro-intestinal irritation or of venous congestion, or both.

Microscopical examination may reveal characteristic fragments of fungi in the contents of the alimentary canal.

#### HYDROCYANIC ACID.

This poison in fatal doses may destroy life in a very short time. The post-mortem appearances are inconstant and not characteristic. The skin may be livid and the muscles contracted. The *stomach* may be congested or normal. The most frequent internal appearances are those of general venous congestion. Under favorable conditions the odor of prussic acid may be detected in the stomach or blood or brain or other parts of the body. It may be absent in the stomach and present in other parts of the body. If the patient have lived for some time, the odor may be absent altogether.

*Cyanide of potassium* may produce the same lesions as prussic acid, and there is the same inconstancy in their occurrence.

*Nitrobenzole*.—This substance produces general venous congestion, and the odor of the oil of bitter almonds may be more or less well marked in the body after death.

#### CARBOLIC ACID.

When this poison is taken into the stomach, the mucous membrane of the *mouth*, *oesophagus*, and *stomach* may be white, corrugated, and partially detached in patches, and the edges of the affected parts may be hyperæmic, or there may be patches of extravasation. Brownish shrunken patches may be present about the mouth. The *brain* and *meninges* may be congested. There may be congestion and œdema of the *lungs*, and congestion of the *liver* and *spleen*. The blood is usually dark and fluid. The *urine* is usually of a dark or greenish color. The odor of the poison may be evident in the body and in the urine.

#### ALCOHOL.

The different preparations of alcohol, when taken in concentrated form or in large quantities, sometimes produce sudden coma and death in from half an hour to several hours. In acute poisoning, if death have followed soon after the ingestion of the poison, the body may resist decomposition for an unusual length of time. The stomach and tissues may even have a more or less well-marked alcoholic odor. The *stomach* and even the *oesophagus* and *duodenum* may be of a deep-red color. There may be punctiform ecchymoses in the gastric mucous membrane. In many cases, the stomach is apparently quite normal. There is apt to be venous congestion in some of the internal organs, but this is not constant. There is frequently congestion and sometimes extravasation of blood in the *brain* and its *membranes* and œdema of the membranes or

of the brain substance, or both. There may be a serous effusion in the ventricles of the brain. The bladder is frequently distended with urine, as in other cases in which death is preceded by a period of unconsciousness.

Chronic alcoholic poisoning is of a different nature. The subjects of it may die from some other disease, or they die after a debauch without anything else to account for their death. In the latter case, there may be *delirium tremens*, or the patient dies exhausted and comatose. Chronic alcoholism is not infrequently mistaken clinically for meningitis. The post-mortem lesions are sometimes marked, sometimes absent. There may be chronic pachymeningitis resulting in thickening of the *dura mater* and its close adherence to the skull. The *pia mater* may be thickened and œdematous. The *brain* may be normal or œdematous or atrophied. The *lungs* are frequently congested. The *heart* may be thickly covered with fat, and its walls may be flabby and fatty. The *stomach* frequently presents the lesions of chronic gastritis. The *liver* may be cirrhotic, with or without fatty infiltration. The *kidneys* may present the lesions of parenchymatous or fatty degeneration or of chronic diffuse nephritis.

It should always be remembered, however, that all or a part of the above lesions may be absent in the bodies of drunkards and, furthermore, that the same lesions may be due to other causes.

#### CHLOROFORM.

Chloroform may cause death when it is taken in fluid form into the stomach, or when inhaled. Death from swallowing liquid chloroform is rare, and its immediate cause is usually uncertain. The post-mortem changes are variable; sometimes there are no lesions. In some cases there is simple reddening of the gastric mucous membrane, occasionally there is acute gastritis, or ulceration of the mucous membrane. The odor of chloroform may, or may not, be evident. Discoloration and softening of the mucous membrane of the pharynx, œsophagus, and duodenum have been observed. There may be general venous congestion; the heart may be flabby. Bubbles of gas have been frequently seen in the blood, but this is not characteristic. Death from inhalation of chloroform is a not infrequent accident in surgical practice. After death from inhalation, the results of the examination are usually quite negative.

#### ETHER.

The inhalation of ether occasionally causes death. The post-mortem examination is negative. The ingestion of fluid ether may induce inflammation of the stomach. The odor of ether may be perceptible if the autopsy is made soon after death.



## CHLORAL HYDRATE.

There are no characteristic post-mortem appearances after death by chloral. Hyperæmia of the brain, and the odor of the drug have been noticed.

## STRYCHNIA—NUX VOMICA.

The post-mortem appearances after poisoning by these drugs are not characteristic, and are inconstant. The body is usually relaxed at the time of death, but the rigor mortis usually comes on early and remains long. There may be congestion of the *brain* and *spinal cord*, and sometimes of the *lungs* and *stomach*.

## CONIUM, ACONITE, BELLADONNA, LOBELIA INFLATA, DIGITALIS, STRAMONIUM.

These vegetable poisons are administered in their natural form of leaves, berries, and roots, or in tinctures, infusions, and extracts, or in the form of their active alkaloid principles.

If the leaves, berries, or seeds are given, they may be detected in the contents of the stomach by microscopic examination. Otherwise the results of autopsies are not characteristic.

The *brain* and its membranes, and the lungs, may be congested. The *stomach* may present patches of congestion, inflammation, and extravasation, or its entire mucous coat may be inflamed, or it may appear normal.

Microscopical examination of the contents of the alimentary canal may reveal characteristic seeds, or fragments of leaves.<sup>1</sup>

## CARBONIC OXIDE.

This is one of the gases formed in the burning of charcoal, and forms one of the ingredients of illuminating gas. The most characteristic post-mortem appearance is the cherry-red color of the *blood*, and of the tissues and viscera which contain blood. The presence of carbonic acid in the gas may obscure the bright-red of the carbonic oxide by the dark color which it induces in the blood.

## CARBONIC ACID.

The lesions are essentially those of asphyxia, but the brain is said to be more frequently congested than in asphyxia by simple obstruction of respiration.

For a more detailed consideration of poisons, their effects, modes of detection, etc., consult: Taylor, on Poisons. Maschka's "Handbuch der Gericht-

---

<sup>1</sup> Consult Guy and Ferrier: "Forensic Medicine," p. 534.

lichen Medicin," Bd. II. [ Woodman and Tidy : " Forensic Medicine." Wormley's " Micro-chemistry of Poisons," contains a series of good plates of the microscopical appearances of various forms of crystals of poisonous substances.

Lesser's " Atlas der Gerichtlichen Medicin " contains a series of fine colored plates, showing the appearance of the stomach after the action of various poisons. The small work of Guy and Ferrier, on Forensic Medicine, contains in very compact and reliable form, much information on the general subjects treated in the foregoing section.

# INDEX.

- Abbé's condenser, use of, in examining bacteria, 91
- Abdominal cavity, examination of, in adults, 15, 22  
cavity, examination of, in children, 37  
cavity, methods of opening, 15  
cavity, serum in, as a result of post-mortem changes, 15  
pregnancy, 432
- Abscesses, formation of, in inflammation, 99  
of brain, 181  
pyæmic, 514
- Accessory spleens, 25
- Achorion Schönleini, 76
- Acid, carbolic, poisoning, lesions of, 551  
carbonic, poisoning, lesions of, 553  
chromic, use of, in decalcifying tissues, 40  
hydrochloric, poisoning, lesions of, 545  
hydrocyanic, poisoning, lesions of, 551  
nitric, poisoning, lesions of, 544  
nitric, use of, in decalcifying tissues, 40  
osmic, use of, in preserving tissues, 42  
oxalic, poisoning, lesions of, 545  
picric, use of, in decalcifying, 40  
picric, use of, in preserving sediments, exudations, casts, etc., 42  
sulphuric, poisoning, lesions of, 543  
tartaric, poisoning, lesions of, 545
- Aconite poisoning, lesions of, 553
- Actinomycosis, 77
- Acute yellow atrophy of liver, 342  
yellow atrophy of liver, micrococci in, 80
- Addison's disease, lesions of, 528
- Adenoma, general consideration of, 140  
characters and varieties of, 142
- Adeno-sarcoma, 131
- Agar-agar, use of, in cultivating bacteria, 94
- Ague-cake, 364
- Air, presence of, in blood air emboli, 57
- Alcohol poisoning, lesions of, 551  
use of, in preserving tissues, 41
- Alimentary canal, 293
- Aloes poisoning, lesions of, 550
- Alveolar carcinoma, 152  
sarcoma, 130
- Ammonia poisoning, lesions of, 546
- Amoeba, occurrence of, in dysentery, 66
- Amyelia, 199
- Amyloid degeneration, 61  
degeneration, methods of staining tissues in, 62  
degeneration, conditions of, 62  
degeneration, parts most frequently affected by, 62
- Anæmia, changes of blood in, 55  
changes of marrow cells in, 456  
effects of, on tissues and organs, 56  
general effects of, 49  
nature and effects of, 49  
pernicious, 528
- Aneurism, cirroid, 275  
dissecting, 276  
false, 279  
fusiform, 276  
of the aorta, 276  
of the blood-vessels, 275  
of the coronary arteries, 277  
of the heart, 269  
of the heart-valves, 268  
of the pulmonary arteries, 277  
sacculated, 276  
spurious, 279
- Aneurismal varix, 279
- Angioma cavernosum, 140  
telangiectoides, 139
- Angiomata, general characters of, 138
- Angio-sarcoma, 129
- Anhydræmia, 55
- Anilin colors, uses of, in staining bacteria, 89, 90



- Animal parasites, 66  
 Ante-mortem heart-clots, 19, 269  
 Anthracosis, 65  
 Anthrax bacillus, 82, 524  
   bacillus in blood, 58  
   lesions of, 524  
   lesions and bacteria of, 82, 524  
 Anus, atresia of, 313  
 Aorta, examination of arch of, before  
   removal from body, 18  
   aneurism of, 276  
   aneurism, dissecting, of, 279  
   atheroma of, 274  
   malformations of, 256  
   stenosis of, 277  
 Apoplectic clots, methods of examin-  
   ing, 12  
 Arnold, J., researches of, on lymphatic  
   tissues in organs, 291  
 Arteries, aneurism of, 275  
   dilatation of, 275  
   effect of contraction of, when  
   in obliterating endarteritis,  
   275  
   inflammation of (see arteritis),  
   271  
   rupture of, 278  
   tumors of, 280  
   wounds of, 278  
 Arteritis, acute, 271  
   chronic, 272  
   syphilitic, 185, 274  
 Arsenic poisoning, lesions of, 547  
   poisoning, precautions to be  
   taken in examining for, 548  
 Arthritis, acute, 470  
   chronic, 471  
   chronic rheumatic, 471  
   deformans, 471  
   purulent, 470  
   sero-fibrinous, 470  
   serous, 470  
   tubercular, 472  
   uritica, 472  
 Ascaris lumbricoides, 71  
   maritima, 72  
   mystax, 72  
 Ascending gray degeneration of spinal  
   cord, 193  
 Aspergillus, 77  
 Asphyxia, lesions of, 538  
 Atelectasis of lungs, 223  
 Atheroma, 273  
   of aorta, 274  
   of blood-vessels, 273  
 Atheromatous cysts of blood-vessels,  
   274  
   ulcers of blood-vessels,  
   274  
 Auricles of heart, method of examin-  
   ing, 20  
 Autopsies in cases of suspected poison-  
   ing, 32, 543  
 Bacilli, pathogenous, 82  
 Bacilli, zymogenous, 82  
 Bacillus anthracis, characters and re-  
   lations to anthrax, 82, 524  
   butyricus, 82  
   genus, characters of, 82  
   Kochii (see B. tuberculosis), 83,  
   507  
   lepræ, 83, 520  
   malariae, 83, 526  
   subtilis, 82  
   syncyanum, 82  
   tuberculosis, characters of, 83,  
   507  
   tuberculosis, cultivation of,  
   511  
   tuberculosis, presence of, in  
   tubercle tissue, 103, 504, 508  
   tuberculosis, methods of stain-  
   ing, 509  
   tuberculosis, references to lit-  
   erature of, 511  
   of cholera, 83, 502  
   of glanders, 83, 515  
   of malignant oedema of mice,  
   pigs, and rabbits, 83  
   of septicæmia of mice, 83  
   of typhoid fever, 83, 491  
 Bacteria  
   action of disinfectants on, 78  
   artificial cultivation of, 91  
   artificial cultivation of, care  
   and skill required in, 95  
   artificial cultivation on Agar-  
   agar, 94  
   artificial cultivation on gela-  
   tinized blood-serum, 94  
   artificial cultivation on gelati-  
   nized bouillon, 93  
   artificial cultivation on Ja-  
   panese isinglass, 94  
   artificial cultivation on pota-  
   toes, 92  
   classification of, 79  
   double staining of, 90, 510  
   effects of temperature on, 78  
   filamentous, see bacilli, 82  
   Gram's method of staining, 90  
   in chicken cholera, 82  
   in emboli, 52  
   in false membrane of croupous  
   inflammation, 109  
   in kidneys, method of preser-  
   vation of tissue for study  
   of, 24  
   in putrefaction, 78  
   in pyelo-nephritis, 82  
   in septicæmia of rabbits, 82  
   in syphilitic inflammation, 105  
   in thrombi, 52  
   local effects of, in tissues, 85  
   methods of studying, 85  
   morphology and physiology of,  
   77  
   of pneumonia, 82, 228  
   of relapsing fever, 85, 494  
   of syphilis, 105

- Bacteria**, references to literature of, 95  
 relations to disease, 85  
 speedy appearance of, in dead body, 85  
 spiral-celled, 84  
 spiro, 84  
 spores of, method of destroying, 93  
 spores of, vulnerability of, 78
- Bacterium æruginosum**, 81  
 characters of the genus, 81  
 chromogenous species of, 81  
 lineola, 81  
 pathogenous species of, 81  
 synxanthum, 81  
 termo, 81  
 zymogenous species of, 81
- Balanitis**, 435
- Belladonna poisoning**, lesions of, 553
- Bile-ducts**, lesions of, to be looked for  
 at autopsies, 27  
 method of detecting patulousness of, 27  
 method of opening and examining, 27
- Biliary calculi**, 357  
 passages, lesions of, 356
- Bilirubin**, crystals of, in blood, 57
- Bismark brown** for staining fresh tissues, 40
- Bladder**, gall, lesions of, 357  
 urinary, absence of, 395  
 urinary, calculi in, 400  
 urinary, changes in size of, 396  
 urinary, cysts of, 399  
 urinary, dilatation of, 396  
 urinary, diverticula of, acquired, 396  
 urinary, diverticula of, congenital, 395  
 urinary, extroversion of, 395  
 urinary, foreign bodies in, 400  
 urinary, hemorrhage of, 397  
 urinary, herniæ of, 396  
 urinary, hyperæmia of, 397  
 urinary, hypertrophy of, 396  
 urinary, inflammation of, see cystitis, 397  
 urinary, malformations of, 395  
 urinary, methods of preserving, 29  
 urinary, of young children, contents and intra-uterine lesions of, 39  
 urinary, parasites of, 400  
 urinary, perforation of, 397  
 urinary, removal and examination of, 29  
 urinary, rupture of, 396  
 urinary, tumors of, 399
- Blood**, air in, 57  
 alterations of, reference to literature, 58  
 anhydraemia, 55
- Blood**, bilirubin, crystals in, 57  
 cells containing red blood-cells, 465  
 changes in composition of, 55  
 changes in circulation of, 49  
 changes of, in Addison's disease, 528  
 changes of, in anæmia, 55  
 changes of, in chlorosis, 528  
 changes of, in Hodgkin's disease, 530  
 changes of, in leucocythæmia, 56, 530  
 changes of, in leucocytosis, 56  
 changes of, in leukæmia, 56, 530  
 changes of, in pernicious anæmia, 528  
 coagulability of, changes in, 55  
 counting, apparatus for, 58  
 difference in distribution of, in life and after death, 9  
 endothelial cells in, 57  
 extravasated, changes in, 50  
 fat in, 57  
 foreign bodies in, 57  
 hydræmia of, 55  
 in melanæmia, 56  
 parasites in, 58  
 pigment in, from inhaled dust, 57  
 pus-cells, in, 57
- Blood-serum**, gelatinized, preparation of for cultivation of bacteria, 94
- Blood-vessels**, amyloid degeneration of, 271  
 atheroma of, 273  
 atrophy of, 270  
 calcification of, 271  
 development of, in inflammation, 101  
 fatty degeneration of, 270  
 fatty ulcers of, 271  
 hypertrophy of, 270  
 inflammations of, 271, 282  
 method of preserving, 14
- Blue milk**, bacillus which produces color of, 82
- Bone**, 450  
 abscess, 456  
 atrophy of, 466  
 caries of, 461  
 cysts of, 469  
 decalcification of, method of, 40  
 dislocations of, 451  
 disturbances of circulation in, 450  
 fractures of, 451  
 hemorrhage, 450  
 hyperæmia of, 450  
 inflammation of, see osteitis, 453  
 inflammation of marrow of, see osteomyelitis, 459  
 marrow, alterations in leukæmia and pseudo-leukæmia, 464  
 necrosis of, 460

- Bone, of young children, examination of, 39  
osteomalacia, 464  
parasites of, 469  
rachitis, 462  
syphilis, congenital, of, 457  
tumors of, 466  
wounds of, 451
- Bothriocephalus cordatus, 71  
  cristatus, 71  
  latus, 71
- Brain, abscess of, 181  
  anæmia of, 178  
  cysts in, 184  
  emboli of, 175  
  hemorrhage in, 178  
  hernia of, 189  
  hyperæmia of, 177  
  hypertrophy and atrophy of, 186  
  inflammation of, see encephalitis, 181  
  inflammation, syphilitic of, 185  
  inflammation, tubercular of, 185  
  inflammatory softening of, 181  
  lesions of, in the chronic insane, 186  
  location of lesion in, 11  
  malformations of, 188  
  membranes of, 158  
  method of examination and dissection of, 11, 12  
  method of preserving, 13  
  method of removal from skull, 11  
  œdema of, 178  
  parasites of, 188  
  pigmentation of, 187  
  pus-cells in tissue of, 182  
  red softening of, 176  
  sclerosis of, 182  
  softened areas in, method of studying, 14  
  summary of surface lesions to be looked for at autopsies, 11  
  thrombosis of, 175  
  tumors of, 187  
  ventricles of, lesions of, 171  
  weight of, 11  
  white and yellow softening of, 176  
  wounds of, 183
- Brain-sand, composition of, 174  
  in choroid plexus, 174  
  in pachymeningitis, 160
- Bright's disease, see nephritis, 380
- Bronchi, abnormal contents of, 21  
  appearances to be noted in autopsies, 21  
  inflammation of, see bronchitis, 217  
  method of opening, 21  
  method of preserving, 21  
  tumors of, 219
- Bronchiectasia, 218, 241
- Bronchitis, acute catarrhal, 217  
  acute croupous, 218  
    acute general, 217  
    capillary, 217, 232  
  chronic catarrhal, 218  
  chronic croupous, 218  
    in acute phthisis, 244  
    in chronic phthisis, 249
- Broncho-pneumonia, 232
- Bronze-liver, 341  
  skin in Addison's disease, 529
- Brood-capsules of echinococcus cysts, 69
- Brown induration of lung, 231
- Brownian movement in micrococci, 79
- Burning, lesions in death from, 536
- Cachexia, development of, in malignant tumors, 115
- Cadaveric hypostasis, 4  
  lividity, 4
- Calcareous degeneration, 64
- Calcification, 64
- Calcium carbonate in vesical calculi, 400  
  oxalate, in vesical calculi, 401
- Calculi, biliary, 357  
  vesical, 400
- Calvarium, changes of, to be noticed at autopsies, 10  
  depressions of, by Pacchionian bodies, 10  
  method of removing, 9
- Cancer, see carcinoma, 144
- Cantharides poisoning, lesions of, 550
- Capillaries, blood, lesions of, 283
- Capillary hemorrhage in brain, 174
- Capsule, brood, of echinococcus, 69  
  supra-renal, changes in, by decomposition, 25  
  supra-renal, general appearance of, 24  
  supra-renal, lesions of, 25, 377  
  supra-renal, method of preservation, 25  
  supra-renal, of children, 38
- Caput succedaneum, 35
- Carbolic acid poisoning, lesions of, 551  
  acid to be avoided in preserving microscopical specimens, 46
- Carbonates of soda and potash poisoning, lesions of, 545
- Carbonic acid poisoning, lesions of, 553  
  oxide poisoning, lesions of, 553
- Carcinoma, alveolar, 152  
  colloid, 151  
  cylindrical-celled, 15  
  encephaloid or medullary, 151  
  fibrous (scirrhus), 151  
  flat-celled or epithelioma, 147  
  forms of, 146  
  general considerations on, 140



- Carcinoma**, gland-celled, 150  
 melano, 153  
 modes of extension, 145, 146  
 molle, 151  
 myxomatodes, 152  
 simplex, 150  
 structure and origin of, 144  
 telangiectoides, 151  
 variability in shape of cells of, 145
- Caries** of bone, 461
- Cartilaginous tumors**, see **chondroma**, 133
- Casts**, preservation of, 42
- Cavities** in lungs in chronic miliary tuberculosis, 242  
 in phthisis, 249  
 of heart, contents of, 19
- Catarrhal inflammation**, acute, of mucous membranes, 106  
 inflammation, chronic, of mucous membranes, 107
- Celloidin**, preservation of specimens embedded in, 44  
 use of, in embedding, 42
- Cellular inflammation**, 97
- Cephalhæmatoma** in the new-born, 36
- Cephalocele**, 189
- Cercomonas intestinalis**, 66
- Cerebellum**, method of dissection of, 12
- Cerebral arteries**, examination of, at autopsies, 11  
 ganglia, location of lesions in, 12  
 ganglia, methods of dissection of, 12
- Cerebro-spinal meningitis**, 496  
 meningitis, micrococci in, 80, 497
- Cestode worms**, 67
- Charbon**, lesions and bacilli of, 524
- Charcot's crystals** in leukæmia, 530
- Cheesy degeneration**, 60  
 degeneration in acute phthisis, 245  
 degeneration in chronic phthisis, 247  
 degeneration of lymph-glands in scrofula, 288
- Children**, changes in appearance of, immediately after birth, 35  
 chronic internal hydrocephalus in, method of removing brain, 36  
 examination of thorax and abdomen, 37  
 new-born, cephalhæmatoma in, 36  
 new-born, examination of head, 36  
 new-born, post-mortem examination of, in general, 32 to 39
- Chloral hydrate poisoning**, lesions of, 553
- Chloral hydrate**, use of solution of, for preserving cysts, etc., 45
- Chloroform poisoning**, lesions of, 552
- Chloroma**, 131
- Chlorosis**, 528
- Cholera**, bacteria of, 83, 502  
 lesions of, 501
- Cholestearin crystals** in softening of brain, 176  
 developed from fat in fatty degeneration, 61
- Chondroma**, characters, varieties, and situations, 133
- Choroid plexus**, brain-sand in, 174  
 corpora amylacea in, 174  
 cysts of, 12, 174  
 tubercles in, 168
- Chromic acid mixture**, composition and use of, in hardening tissue, 41  
 acid, use of, in decalcifying bone, 40
- Chromogenous micrococci**, 79
- Cicatrical tissue**, formation of, in inflammation, 101
- Circulation of blood**, morbid changes in, 49  
 of blood, inflammation, 98
- Cirrrosis of liver**, 344
- Cirsoid aneurism**, 275
- Clitoris**, malformations of, 405
- Cloacæ** in connection with intestines, 312
- Clots**, apoplectic in brain, 12, 179  
 heart, characters and significance of, 19, 269
- Coagulation necrosis** in acute phthisis, 244  
 necrosis in croupous inflammation, 60, 109  
 necrosis in infarctions, 59  
 necrosis, nature, conditions, and effects of, 59
- Cœcum**, inflammation of, 318
- Cohnheim's hypothesis** of embryonal origin of tumors, 116
- Cohn's classification** of bacteria, 79
- Colchicum poisoning**, lesions of, 550
- Colitis**, catarrhal, acute, 317  
 catarrhal, chronic, 317  
 croupous, 318  
 ulcerative, 318
- Colloid carcinoma**, 151  
 degeneration, 63
- Colon**, lesions of solitary follicles of, 318  
 transverse, position of, 16
- Colocynth poisoning**, lesions of, 550
- Comedones**, 119
- Comma bacillus**, 502
- Compound granular corpuscle**, nature of, 176  
 ovarian cysts, 426
- Condenser**, Abbé's, in examination of bacteria, 91

- Condyloma of vulva, 407  
 Conium poisoning, lesions of, 553  
 Connective tissue, inflammations of, 96  
     tissue, new formation of, in  
     inflammation, 100, 102  
 Contusions, ante-mortem, 7  
     post-mortem, 7  
 Convolutions of brain, significance of  
     flattening of, 10  
 Cooling of body after death, 5, 6  
 Copper poisoning, lesions of, 549  
 Cord, spinal, lesions of, 14, 190  
     spinal, method of removal, 14  
     spinal, post-mortem changes in, 14  
 Coronary arteries, effects of closure on  
     heart, 275  
 Corpora amylacea, 63  
     amylacea in choroid plexus, 174  
     amylacea in softening of brain,  
     176  
     cavernosa penis, inflammation  
     of, 436  
 Corrosive sublimate poisoning, lesions  
     of, 549  
     sublimate, use of, in steriliz-  
     ing vessels, etc., 92  
 Craniotabes, 463  
 Cranium, base of, examination of, 13  
 Creases of neck, liable to be mistaken  
     for marks of hanging, etc., 8  
 Croton oil poisoning, lesions of, 550  
 Croupous inflammation, coagulation  
     necrosis in, 60  
     inflammation of mucous  
     membranes, 108  
 Cryptorchismus, 437  
 Cuticula of echinococcus cysts, 69  
 Cyanide of potassium poisoning, lesions  
     of, 551  
 Cyindroma, 130  
 Cystic kidney, 391  
 Cysticercus cellulosæ, 68  
     taenia mediocanellata, 68  
 Cystin calculi, 401  
 Cystitis, catarrhal acute, 397  
     catarrhal chronic, 398  
     croupous, 398  
     gangrenous, 398  
     tubercular, 398  
 Cystocele, 408  
     vaginal, 396  
 Cysto-sarcoma, 131  
 Cysts, classification of, 119  
     congenital, 119  
     dermoid, 118  
     exudation, 119  
     formed around foreign bodies,  
     119  
     formed by softening of tissue,  
     119  
     formed in spaces in new growths,  
     119  
     in brain, 184  
     method of preserving for mu-  
     seum specimens, 45  
 Cysts, of echinococcus, 69  
     retention, 119  
 Death, causes of, in general, 3  
     sudden, frequent obscurity of  
     causes of, 3  
 Decalcification of bone, methods of, 40  
 Degeneration, amyloid, 61  
     amyloid, method of stain-  
     ing tissues in, 62  
     amyloid, parts most fre-  
     quently seat of, 62  
     calcareous, 64  
     colloid, 63  
     cheesy, 60, 245, 247  
     fatty, 60, 61  
     hyalin, 63  
     mucoid, 63  
     of tissues in general, 59  
     parenchymatous, 60  
     waxy, see amyloid, 61  
 Degenerations, secondary, in brain  
     lesions, 180  
 Dermoid cysts, 118  
 Descending gray degeneration of spinal  
     cord, 193  
 Desmo-bacteria, 82  
 Diabetes, lesions of, 534  
 Diapedesis, hemorrhage by, 50  
     in inflammation, 99  
 Diaphragm, position and height of, 17  
 Diffuse inflammation of the viscera 111  
 Digitalis poisoning, lesions of, 553  
 Diphtheria, 498  
     micrococci in, 80, 499  
 Diphtheritic inflammation of mucous  
     membranes, 108  
 Diplococcus, 79  
 Discolorations of body after death, 4  
     of internal organs in pu-  
     trefaction, 15  
 Disinfectants, action of, on bacteria,  
     79  
 Displacement of organs by putrefactive  
     gases, 5  
 Dissecting aneurism, 276  
 Distoma hematobium, 58, 67  
     hepaticum, 67  
     lanceoleatum, 67  
     sinense, 67  
 Dochmius duodenalis, 72  
 Dropsy, nature of, 51  
 Drowning, examination of body in  
     cases of, 540  
     lesions of, 541  
 Drysdale's corpuscles, 428  
 Duodenum, method of opening and pre-  
     serving, 27  
     ulcers of, 316  
 Dura mater, hemorrhages of, 157  
     mater, inflammation of, see pac-  
     chymeningitis, 158  
     mater, lesions to be looked for at  
     autopsies, 10  
     mater, method of preserving, 13

- Dura mater, method of removing from body, 10  
 mater, perforation of, by Pacchionian bodies, 10  
 mater, structure of, 157  
 mater, thrombosis of sinuses of, 157  
 mater, tumors of, 161  
 mater, spinalis, hemorrhage, and other lesions of, 190  
 mater, spinalis, preservation of, 15
- Dyscrasia of tumors, 115
- Dysentery, 318
- Echinococcus, 68  
   cysts, preservation of, for museums, 45  
   exogena, 70  
   in blood, 58  
   multilocularis, 70, 355  
   scolecipariens, 70
- Ecchondroses, 134
- Ecchymoses of skin, post-mortem, 7  
   nature of, 50
- Ecchymosis, ante-mortem and post-mortem, 4
- Ehrlich's method of staining tubercle bacillus, 509
- Elaterium poisoning, lesions of, 550
- Elephantiasis, dilatation of lymph-vessels in, 285  
   of vulva, 407
- Embedding in celloidin, 42  
   methods of, 42
- Emboli, fat, 57  
   infectious, effects of, 53
- Embolie infarctions, most frequent seat of, 54
- Embolism, effects and occurrence of, 52, 53  
   fat, 57  
   in brain, 175  
   of cerebral arteries, most common seat of, 177  
   nature of, 52
- Embryonal origin of tumors, Cohnheim's hypothesis of, 116
- Emigration of white blood-cells, 98
- Emphysema of lungs, 222
- Empyema, 213
- Encephalitis, 181  
   chronic interstitial, 182  
   in new-born, 183
- Encephalocele, 189
- Encephaloid cancer, 151
- Endarteritis, acute, 271  
   chronic, 272  
   obliterans, 272  
   syphilitic, 274
- Endartery (see terminal artery), 53
- Endocarditis, acute, 264  
   chronic, 266  
   malignant, 265  
   tubercular, 267
- Endocarditis, ulcerative, 80, 265, 266
- Endocardium, structure of, 264  
   discolorations of, 20
- Endometritis, acute catarrhal, 415  
   chronic catarrhal, 416  
   croupous, 416  
   puerperal, 417  
   syphilitic, 416  
   tubercular, 416
- Endophlebitis, 282
- Endothelioma, general characters and situation of, 132, 133
- Enteritis, catarrhal acute, 315  
   catarrhal chronic, 315  
   croupous, 315  
   suppurative, 316
- Eosin, use of, in staining tissues, 44
- Epididymitis, acute, 440
- Ependyma, cysts of, 174  
   examination of, at autopsy, 12  
   inflammations of, see ependymitis 172  
   method of preserving, 13  
   tumors of, 174
- Ependymitis, acute and chronic, 172  
   tubercular, 169
- Epispadia, 434
- Epithelial pearls in epithelioma, 148  
   tumors, 140
- Epitheliomata, characters of, 147  
   most frequent situation of, 150
- Erysipelas, characters of, 522  
   micrococci of, 80, 522
- Ether poisoning, lesions of, 552
- Exostoses, 135
- Extra-uterine pregnancy, 432
- Extravasation of blood in contusions, 7
- Exudations, inflammatory nature and origin of, 51, 99  
   method of preserving, 42
- Eye, method of hardening and removal of, 13, 14
- Fallopian tubes, changes in size and position of, 430  
   tubes, common lesions of, to be looked for, 31  
   tubes, cysts of, 431,  
   tubes, dilatation of, 430  
   tubes, hemorrhage of, 430  
   tubes, inflammation of, see salpingitis, 431  
   tubes, malformations of, 430  
   tubes, position, shape, and dimensions of, 31  
   tubes, tumors of, 431
- False membrane in croupous inflammation, 109  
   neuromata, 138
- Farcy, characters and bacilli of, 515
- Fat-embolism, 57



- Fat in tissues, method of demonstrating, 61  
necrosis, in pancreas, 370
- Fatty degeneration, 60, 61  
infiltration, 60
- Female generative organs, removal of, 29  
generative organs, lesions of, 29, 405
- Fever, inflammatory, see pyæmia, 512  
malarial, lesions and bacteria of, 526  
relapsing, 494  
relapsing, spirillum of, 85, 494  
splenic, lesions and bacteria of, 82, 524  
suppurative, see pyæmia, 512  
surgical, see pyæmia, 512  
traumatic, see pyæmia, 512  
typhoid, see typhoid fever, 485, typhus, 493
- Fibrin, formation of, in inflammation, 99
- Fibro-carcinoma (scirrhus), 151
- Fibroma, durum and molle, 121  
forms and characters of, 121  
intracanalicular, 122  
usual situations of, 122
- Fibrô-myoma, 136
- Filamentous bacteria, 82
- Filaria medinensis, 74  
sanguinis hominis, 58, 75
- Flukes, 67
- Foetal tissues, preservation of, 39
- Foetus, determination of age of, 32, 34
- Fourth ventricle of brain, method of opening, 12
- Fractures, ante-mortem and post-mortem, 8  
intra-uterine, 35
- Fraenkel's method of double staining of tubercular sputum and sections, 510
- Freezing microtome, 40
- Fresh tissues, method of studying, 40
- Fuchsin, use of, in staining bacteria, 89  
acid for staining nerve-tissue, 203
- Fungi, parasitic, 76  
poisoning by, lesions in, 550  
reference to literature of, 77
- Gall-bladder, dilatation of, 357  
bladder, lesions of, 356  
bladder, opening of, at autopsy, 28  
bladder, tumors of, 359  
ducts, constriction and occlusion of, 357  
ducts, dilatation of, 357  
ducts, inflammations of, 356  
ducts, method of examining, 27  
ducts, tumors of, 359  
stones, 357
- Gastritis, catarrhal, acute and chronic, 304
- Gastritis, croupous, 305  
suppurative, 305  
toxic, 306
- Gamboge poisoning, lesions of, 550
- Ganglia, cerebral, localization of lesions in, 12  
cerebral, method of dissection, 12
- Gangrene of lungs, 224
- Gas in intestines in young children, 39  
in pericardium, 255
- Gelatin bouillon for bacteria cultures, 93
- Generative organs, female, lesions of, 29, 405  
organs, female, preservation and removal of, 29, 30, 31  
organs, male, lesions of, 29, 434  
organs, male, removal of, 29  
organs of young children, position and characters of, 39
- Genito-urinary organs, removal and preservation of, 29
- Gentian-violet for staining bacteria, 89
- Giant cells in tubercle tissue, 102, 506  
celled or myeloid sarcoma, 128
- Glanders, lesions and bacteria of, 83, 515, 516
- Glioma, general characters of, 135  
varieties and situations of, 136
- Glomerulo-nephritis, see Bright's disease, 383
- Glossitis, 296  
parenchymatous, 297  
syphilitic, 297  
tubercular, 297
- Gluge's corpuscles, nature of, 176
- Goitre, 375
- Gonococcus, 80, 403
- Gonorrhœa, 403
- Gout, lesions of, 533
- Gram's method of staining bacteria, 90
- Granulation tissue, characters and formation of, 100
- Granuloma, infective, 120
- Gravel, see calculi, 400
- Gray degeneration, secondary, of spinal cord, 193
- Guinea worm, 74
- Gummata, 105
- Hanging, lesions in death from, 539  
marks of, liable to be confounded with natural creases of neck, 8
- Hardening and preservation of tissues, 41
- Head, method of examination of, 9
- Heart, amyloid degeneration of, 263

- Heart and great vessels, malformations of, 256  
aneurism of, 269  
animal parasites of, 270  
atrophy of, 259  
calcification of, 264  
changes in, from thrombosis and embolism of coronary artery, 264  
changes in position of, 258  
clots, 19, 269  
concentric hypertrophy of, 260  
contents of cavities of, 19  
dilatation of, 261  
displacements of, 258  
fatty degeneration of, 262  
fatty infiltration of, 263  
hypertrophy of, 260  
inflammation of, see myocarditis, 267  
in young children, 37  
lipomatosis of, 263  
method of opening, 19  
method of preserving, 20  
method of removal from body, 18  
mucous degeneration of, 263  
parenchymatous degeneration of, 262  
position of, in body, 17, 18  
rupture of, 259  
softening of, from thrombosis and embolism, 264  
thickness of walls of, 20  
thrombosis of, 269  
tumors of, 276  
uncovered area of, 17  
valves, aneurism of, 268  
valves, degeneration of, 267  
valves, fenestration of, 268  
valves, general examination of, 19  
valves, hemorrhage in, 269  
valves, inflammation of, see endocarditis, 264  
valves, method of preserving, 20  
valves, method of testing sufficiency of, 18  
valves, position of, 18  
valvular openings of, size of, 19  
ventricles, estimation of size of, 20  
walls of, effect of decomposition on, 20  
waxy degeneration of, 263  
weight of, 20  
wounds of, 258
- Hematocele, ante-uterine, 415  
of tunica vaginalis testis, 439  
peri-uterine, 415  
retro-uterine, 415
- Hematoidin from changes in extravasated blood, 50
- Hematoma, nature of, 50
- Hematometra, 412
- Hematophilia, 532
- Hematoxylin, formula for, 44
- Hemorrhage by diapedesis, 50  
by rhexis, 49  
causes of, 50  
changes in extravasated blood in, 50  
from umbilical cord in young children, 35  
intermeningeal, 163  
modes of, 49  
of brain, 174  
of dura mater, 157  
of pia mater, 163
- Hemorrhagic diathesis, 532  
infarctions, changes in, 53  
infarctions, mode of formation, 53  
infarctions, nature of, 50
- Hellebore poisoning, lesions of, 550
- Hepatitis, acute, 343  
chronic, interstitial, 344  
peri, 350  
purulent, 343  
syphilitic, 348  
tubercular, 349
- Hepatization in phthisis, 244, 246  
in pneumonia, 225, 233
- Hermaphroditism, 434
- Hernia, intestino-vaginalis, 408  
recto-vaginalis, 408  
vesico-vaginalis, 408
- Heterologous tumors, 112
- Histoid or connective-tissue tumors, 117
- Hodgkin's disease, 292, 365
- Homogeneous immersion lenses for studying bacteria, 91
- Homologous tumors, 112
- Hooklets of *tænia echinococcus*, 70
- Horse-shoe kidney, 379
- Howship's lacunæ in bone, 455
- Hyalin degeneration, 62
- Hydatids, see *echinococcus*, 69
- Hydatid moles, 124
- Hydræmia, 55
- Hydrencephalocele, 189
- Hydrocele, 438
- Hydrocephalus, acute tubercular, 170  
chronic, internal in children, method of removing brain in, 36  
congenital, 173  
externus, 189  
forms of, 173  
internus, 188  
primary, in adults, 174  
secondary, 173
- Hydrochloric acid poisoning, lesions of, 545
- Hydrocyanic acid poisoning, lesions of, 551

- Hydromeningocele, 189  
 Hydrometra, 412  
 Hydromyelocele, 199  
 Hydronephrosis, 390  
 Hydropericardium, 254  
 Hydrophobia, 517  
 Hydrorrachis, interna and externa, 199  
 Hydrostatic test of aëration of lungs, 38  
 Hydrothorax, 208  
 Hydrosalpinx, 430  
 Hymen, lesions of, 405  
 Hyperæmia, effects of, in general, 49  
 Hypertrophy of heart, 260  
 Hypospadiæ, 434  
 Hypostasis, cadaveric, 4  
 Hypostatic pneumonia, 230  
  
 Ichorrhæmia, see pyæmia, 512  
 Incarceration of intestines, 313  
 Indigo-sulphate poisoning, lesions of, 544  
 Infarction, embolic, most frequent seat of, 54  
     hemorrhagic, changes in, 53  
     hemorrhagic, mode of formation of, 53  
     hemorrhagic, nature of, 50  
     white, 53  
 Infectious diseases, relations of bacteria to, 85  
 Infective granuloma, 120  
 Infiltration, fatty, 60  
 Inflammation, catarrhal, of mucous membranes, 107  
     cellular, 97  
     chronic, with formation of connective tissue, 102  
     classification of, 96  
     croupous, coagulation necrosis in, 60  
     croupous, of mucous membranes, 108  
     diffuse, of viscera, 111  
     formation of abscesses in, 99  
     formation of blood-vessels, 101  
     formation of cicatricial tissue in, 101  
     formation of exudations in, 99  
     formation of granulation-tissue in, 100  
     forms of, in connective tissue, 96  
     forms of, in mucous membranes, 106  
     forms of, in viscera, 110  
     interstitial, of viscera, 110  
     parenchymatous, of viscera, 110  
     purulent, of mucous membranes, 107  
     syphilitic, 103, 109  
     tubercular, 102, 109  
     tubercular, with simple inflammation, 103  
     with production of serum, fibrin, and pus, 98  
     with production of serum, fibrin, and pus, and new connective tissue, 100  
 Inflammatory softening of brain, 181  
 Infusoria in intestinal contents, 67  
 Injection, interstitial, mode of, in hardening tissues, 42  
 Internal examination, mode of, in autopsies, 8  
 Interstitial inflammation of viscera, 110  
     injection, 42  
     pneumonia, 235  
     pregnancy, 432  
 Intestines, cadaveric lividities in, 26  
     concretions in, 320  
     diverticula of, 312  
     incarceration of, 313  
     intussusception of, 314  
     large, inflammation of, see colitis, 317  
     lesions of, caused by emboli, 317  
     malformations of, 312  
     method of opening, 26  
     method of preservation, 26  
     method of procedure with, in suspected poisoning, 26  
     method of removal, 22, 25  
     method of testing for amyloid degeneration, 26  
     of young children, gas in, 39  
     more common lesions of, 38  
     parasites of, 321  
     post-mortem changes in, 26  
     résumé of more common lesions, 26  
     rupture of, 315  
     small, inflammation of, see enteritis, 315  
     small, position of, and condition at autopsies, 16  
     small, ulcers of, 317  
     solitary and agminated glands of, 316  
     strangulation of, 313  
     transposition of, 315  
     tumors of, 319  
     ulcers of, 316, 318  
     ulcers, syphilitic, of, 319



- Intestines, ulcers, tubercular, of, 315  
 ulcers, typhoid, of, 486  
 wounds of, 315
- Intracanalicular fibroma, 122, 447
- Intussusception of intestines, 314
- Iodine, use of, in staining bacteria by  
 Gram's method, 90  
 use of, in testing for amyloid  
 degeneration, 24
- Jalap poisoning, lesions of, 550
- Janeway's case of thrombosis of portal  
 vein from fish bone, 337
- Japanese isinglass, use of, in cultivat-  
 ing bacteria, 94
- Joints, diseases of, 470  
 foreign bodies in, 473  
 inflammations of, see arthritis,  
 470  
 tumors of, 473
- Kidneys, atrophied, 384  
 Bright's disease of, classifica-  
 tion of, 380  
 calculi of, 392  
 changes in position of, 379  
 congestion of, 380  
 cysts of, 391  
 embolism of, 390  
 examination and removal of,  
 at autopsies, 23  
 fatty infiltration of, 388  
 hydronephrosis, 390  
 inflammation around, 392  
 inflammation of, see nephri-  
 tis, 380  
 injection of vessels of, for  
 preservation, 24  
 large white, 382, 384  
 macroscopical appearance of,  
 23  
 malformations of, 379  
 methods of preservation of, 24  
 methods of removal from  
 body, 23  
 parasites of, 394  
 of young children, resumé of  
 lesions of, 38  
 parenchymatous degeneration  
 of, 24  
 pelvis of, calculi in, 392  
 pelvis of, examination of, 24  
 post-mortem changes in, 23  
 preservation of, for study of  
 bacteria, 24  
 size and weight of, 23  
 study of fresh tissue of, 24  
 thrombosis of, 390  
 tumors of, 393  
 waxy, 24, 385
- Koch's method of solid culture for bac-  
 teria, 91
- Kühne's theory of cause of rigor mortis,  
 6
- Lardaceous degeneration, see waxy de-  
 generation, 61
- Large white kidney, 382, 384
- Laryngitis, catarrhal, acute, 205  
 catarrhal, chronic, 206  
 croupous, 206  
 syphilitic, 206  
 tubercular, 207
- Larynx and trachea, tumors of, 205  
 inflammation of, see laryngi-  
 tis, 205  
 in young children, examina-  
 tion of, 38  
 malformations of, 205  
 method of preservation of, 22  
 method of removal of, 22  
 perichondritis of, 206
- Lateral ventricles of brain, examina-  
 tion of, 12
- Lead poisoning, lesions of, 549
- Leiomyoma, 136
- Lepra anæsthetica, 201  
 bacilli of, 83, 520  
 lesions of, 520
- Leprosy, see lepra, 520
- Leptomeningitis, 163
- Leptothrix buccalis, 84
- Lesions, extent of necessary, to cause  
 death, 3
- Leucocythæmia, lesions of, in general,  
 530  
 lesions of, in blood,  
 56  
 lesions of, in bones,  
 464  
 lesions of, in lymph-  
 glands, 291  
 lesions of, in spleen,  
 365
- Leucocytosis, nature and occurrence  
 of, 56
- Leukæmia, see leucocythæmia, 530  
 nucleated red blood-cells in,  
 365  
 pseudo, 292
- Lightning, lesions in death from, 537
- Lipæmia, 57
- Lipoma, characters and situations of,  
 133
- Liver, abscess of, 343, 344  
 acute yellow atrophy of, 342  
 acute yellow atrophy of, micro-  
 cocci in, 80  
 amyloid degeneration of, 340  
 anæmia of, 334  
 atrophy of, 338  
 bronze, 341  
 changes in position, size, and  
 shape of, 16, 333  
 cirrhosis of, 344  
 congestion of, 334  
 cysts of, 333  
 fatty degeneration of, 339  
 fatty infiltration of, 338  
 gummata of, 349

- Liver**, hemorrhage of, 336  
 hepatic artery, lesions of, 336  
 hepatic veins, lesions of, 338  
 "hob-nail," 344  
 hyperæmia of, 334  
 inflammations of, see hepatitis, 343  
 lymphatic tissue, hyperplasia of, 351  
 malformations of, 333  
 metastatic abscesses of, 344  
 method of examination of, 27, 28  
 method of preservation of, 28  
 method of removal of, from body, 27  
 miliary lymphoma in, 351  
 "nutmeg," 335  
 of young children, appearances of 39  
 parasites of, 353  
 parenchymatous degeneration of, 338  
 pigmentation of, 341  
 portal vein of, lesions of, 336  
 position of, in body, 16  
 post-mortem discoloration of, 28  
 resumé of lesions to be looked for at autopsies, 28  
 rupture of, 336  
 size and weight of, 28  
 tumors of, 351  
 waxy degeneration of, 340  
 wounds of, 336
- Lividity**, cadaveric, 4  
 post-mortem in internal organs, 15
- Lobar pneumonia**, acute, 225
- Lobelia inflata** poisoning, lesions of, 553
- Locomotor ataxia**, 196
- Longitudinal sinus** of dura mater, examination of, 10
- Lungs**, acute miliary tuberculosis of, 237  
 atelectasis of, 223  
 brown induration of, 231  
 congestion of, 221  
 emphysema of, 222  
 gangrene of, 224  
 general examination of, at autopsies, 20  
 hemorrhage of, 221  
 hydrostatic test for presence of air in, 38  
 inflammation of, 224  
 injuries of, 220  
 malformations of, 220  
 method of examining at autopsies, 21  
 method of preservation of, 21  
 method of removal of, 20  
 non-aërated, in new-born children, 38  
 oedema of, 221
- Lungs** of still-born children, 37  
 of children born alive, 38  
 parasites in, 251  
 pneumonia, acute lobar of, 225  
 pneumonia broncho, 230, 232  
 pneumonia, complicating, 230  
 pneumonia, interstitial, 235  
 pneumonia of heart disease, 231  
 pneumonia, secondary, 230  
 pneumonia, syphilitic, 236  
 structure of, 207  
 tumors of, 250
- Lupus**, micrococci in, 80  
 relations of bacteria to, 519  
 structure of nodules of, 518
- Lymphangiectasis**, 285
- Lymphangioma**, 140, 285
- Lymphangitis**, 284
- Lymphatic follicles** of intestines, lesions of, 316  
 tissue in various organs, 291
- Lymphoma**, 120, 291, 292, 351
- Lympho-sarcoma**, 127
- Lymph-glands**, amyloid degeneration of, 291  
 glands, atrophy of, 290  
 glands, enlargements of, 291  
 glands, hyalin degeneration of, 291  
 glands, hyperplasia of, 291  
 glands, inflammation of, acute, 286  
 glands, inflammation of, chronic, 287  
 glands, inflammation of, with cheesy degeneration, 288  
 glands, inflammation of, syphilitic, 290  
 glands, inflammation of, tubercular, 289  
 glands, parasites of, 292  
 glands, pigmentation of, 287  
 glands, structure and relations of, to disease, 285  
 glands, tumors of, 292  
 vessels, dilatation of, 285  
 vessels, inflammations of, 284  
 vessels, lesions of, 283  
 vessels, tumors of, 285
- Macroglossia**, 285, 296
- Malarial fever**, bacteria in, 83, 526  
 fever, lesions of, 526
- Malignant pustule**, 82, 524
- Mamma**, female, cysts of, 446  
 female, hemorrhage of, 445  
 female, inflammation of, see mastitis, 445  
 female, malformations of, 444  
 female, nipple of, eczema and ulcers, 446  
 female, tumors of, 446

- Mamma, male, lesions of, 449  
 Marrow of bone, anæmia, 465  
     of bone, alterations in leukæmia, 464  
     of bone, inflammation of, see osteomyelitis, 459  
 Mastitis, acute, 445  
     chronic, 445  
 "Measle," 67  
 Measles, micrococci in, 80  
 Meconium in intestines of young children, 39  
 Mediastinum, description of, 251  
     inflammation of, 251  
     tumors of, 252  
 Medulla oblongata, examination of, 12  
 Medullary cancer, 151  
 Melanæmia, blood in, 56  
     deposit of pigment in organs in, 56  
 Melano-carcinoma, 153  
     sarcoma, 127  
 Membranes of brain, lesions of, 157  
 Meningitis, 163  
     acute cellular, 164  
     acute simple, 165  
     chronic, 167  
     epidemic cerebro-spinal, 80, 496  
     syphilitic, 171  
     tubercular, 167  
 Metastasis of tumors, 114  
 Methyl-violet for staining amyloid and bacteria, 62, 509  
 Methylen-blue for staining bacteria, 89, 510  
 Metritis, acute, 416  
     chronic, 417  
     puerperal, 417  
 Micro-bacteria, 81  
     organisms, 77  
 Microcephalia, 189  
 Micrococci, chromogenous, 79  
     pathogenous, 80  
     zymogenous, 80  
 Micrococcus, characters of, 79  
     luteus, 80  
     prodigiosus, 80  
     ureæ, 80  
 Microcytes in blood, 56  
 Microsporon furfur, 77  
 Microtome, freezing, of Thoma, 40  
     sliding of. Thoma, 44  
 Miliary tubercles, characters of, 102, 237, 241, 506  
 Moles, hydatid, 124  
     pigmented, 128  
 Morbus maculosus, lesions of, 531  
 Moulds, 76  
 Mouth, gangrene of, 295  
     hypertrophy of, 294  
     inflammations of, see stomatitis, 294  
     malformations of, 293  
     tumors of, 295  
 Mucoid degeneration, 63  
 Mucous membranes, inflammation of, catarrhal, 106  
     membranes inflammation of, croupous, 108  
     membranes, inflammation of, diphtheritic, 108  
     membranes, inflammation of, purulent, 107  
     membranes, inflammation of, syphilitic, 109  
     membranes, inflammation of, tubercular, 109  
     membranes, polypi of, 122  
     membranes, structure of, 106  
     patch on mucous membranes, 110  
 Müller's fluid, formula for and use of, 41, 42  
 Multilocular cysts of ovary, 426  
 Mumps, 373  
 Muscle, heart, method of preserving, 20  
     voluntary striated, 475  
     voluntary striated, atrophy, simple of, 478  
     voluntary striated, atrophy, progressive of, 478  
     voluntary striated, degenerations of, 478  
     voluntary striated, degeneration, fatty, of, 480  
     voluntary striated, degenerations, hyalin, of, 480  
     voluntary striated, degenerations, waxy, of, 480  
     voluntary striated, emboli of, 475  
     voluntary striated, hemorrhage of, 475  
     voluntary striated, fatty infiltrations of, 479  
     voluntary striated, hypertrophy of, 481  
     voluntary striated, hypertrophy, pseudo-, of, 479  
     voluntary striated, inflammation of, see myositis, 475  
     voluntary striated, lipomatosis of, 479  
     voluntary striated, parasites of, 482  
     voluntary striated, rupture of, 475  
     voluntary striated, tumors of, 481  
     voluntary striated, wounds of, 475  
 Museums, preservation of specimens for, 44  
 Mycosis intestinalis, 321  
 Myelitis, acute, 194  
     chronic, 196  
     disseminated, 195  
     of anterior cornua, polio-myelitis anterior, 195



- Myeloid or giant-celled sarcoma, 128  
 Myocarditis, acute purulent, 267  
     chronic interstitial, 268  
     interstitial, 267  
     syphilitic, 268  
 Myoma, 136  
     lævicellulare, 136  
     striocellulare, 137  
 Myomalacia of heart, 264  
 Myosin, coagulation of, in rigor mortis, 6  
 Myositis, acute parenchymatous, 476  
     chronic interstitial, 476  
     ossificans, 477  
     suppurative, 475  
     syphilitic, 478  
     tubercular, 478  
 Myxomata, 122, 123, 124  
 Myxo-sarcoma, 131  
 Nabothi ovula on cervix uteri, 31  
 Nævi, vascular, 139  
 Necrosis, coagulation, in acute and chronic phthisis, 244, 247  
     coagulation, in croupous inflammation, 60, 109  
     coagulation, in infarctions, 59  
     coagulation, nature and conditions of occurrence of, 59  
     simple, nature and varieties of, 59  
     of bone, 460  
     of tissue as result of inflammation, 99  
     phosphorus, of bone, 461  
     presence of bacteria in, 59  
 Nematode worms, 71  
 Nephritis, diffuse acute, 383  
     diffuse chronic, 383  
     interstitial acute, 386  
     interstitial chronic, 387  
     parenchymatous acute, 381  
     parenchymatous chronic, 382  
     peri-, 392  
     pyelo-, acute, 388  
     pyelo-, chronic, 389  
     suppurative, 388  
     tubercular, 389  
 Nephro-phthisis, 389  
 Nerve, optic, preservation of, 14  
 Nerves, changes in, after division, 200  
     inflammation of, see neuritis, 201  
     peripheral, lesions of, 200  
     tumors of, 201  
 Nerve-tissue, methods of preservation and study of, 202  
     staining, Weigert's method of, 203  
 Nervous system, 157  
 Neuritis, acute and chronic, 201  
     leprous, 201  
     syphilitic, 201  
     tubercular, 201  
 Neuroma, characters and varieties of, 138  
 New-born children, changes in appearance, soon after death, 35  
     children, post-mortem examination of, 32 to 39  
 Nitrate of mercury, poisoning by, 545  
     of potassium poisoning, lesions of, 546  
 Nitric acid poisoning, lesions of, 544  
     acid, use of, in decalcifying bone, 40  
 Nitro-benzole poisoning, lesions of, 551  
 Noma of vulva, 406  
 Nutmeg liver, 335  
 Nux vomica poisoning, lesions of, 553  
 Obliterating endarteritis, 272  
     thrombi, 51  
 Œdema glottidis, 206  
     glottidis post mortem, 22  
     nature of, 51  
 Œsophagitis catarrhal, 298  
     croupous, 298  
 Œsophagus, cysts of, 300  
     dilatation of, 299  
     malformations of, 298  
     method of preservation of, 22  
     method of removal of, 22  
     perforation and rupture, 299  
     softening post mortem, 303  
     stenosis of, 300  
     tumors of, 300  
     ulceration of, 299  
     veins of, dilatation of, 300  
 Oidium albicans, 77  
 Omentum, position of, 16  
 Oöphoritis, 424  
     syphilitic, 425  
     tubercular, 425  
 Opium poisoning, lesions of, 550  
 Optic nerve, method of hardening, 14  
 Orchitis, acute, 439  
     chronic, 440  
     syphilitic, 441  
     tubercular, 440  
 Organs, method of preservation, 41  
     of young children, preservation of, 39  
 Osmic acid, use of, in preserving tissue, 42  
 Osteitis, 453  
     condensing, 455  
     rarefying, 454  
     suppurative, 456  
     syphilitic, 457  
     tubercular, 457  
 Osteoblasts, 452  
 Osteoclasts, 454  
 Osteoma, characters and situation of, 135  
 Osteomalacia, 464

- Osteomyelitis, 459
  - idiopathic, 459
  - malignant, 459
  - traumatic, 460
- Osteophytes, 135, 452
- Osteo-sarcoma, 129
- Osteo-sclerosis, 455
- Ovarian pregnancy, 432
- Ovaries, appearance, size, weight of, 31
  - changes in size and position of, 424
  - cysts of, 426, 429
  - hemorrhage and hyperæmia of, 424
  - inflammation of, see oöphoritis, 424
  - malformations of, 423
  - method of preservation of, 31
  - removal of, 29
  - tumors of, 425
- Ovula Nabothi in cervix uteri, 31, 119
- Oxalic acid poisoning, lesions of, 545
- Oxide, carbonic, poisoning, lesions of, 553
- Oxyuris vermicularis, 72
- Pancreas, amyloid degeneration of, 370
  - atrophy of, 370
  - calculi in ducts of, 371
  - cirrrosis of, 369
  - cysts of, 371
  - degeneration of, 370
  - displacements of, 372
  - fat-necrosis of, 370
  - fatty degeneration and infiltration of, 370
  - hemorrhage of, 369, 370
  - inflammation of, see pancreatitis, 369
  - malformations of, 372
  - method of examination, weight, size, etc., of, 28, 29
  - tumors of, 371
- Pancreatic ducts, lesions of, 371
- Pancreatitis, chronic interstitial, 369
  - parenchymatous, 369
  - suppurative, 369
  - syphilitic and tubercular, 370
- Pacchionian bodies, 161
- Pachymeningitis, forms of, 158
  - syphilitic and tubercular, 160
- Papillomata, sarcomatous, 131
- Parametritis, 417
- Paraphimosis, 435
- Parasites, animal, 66
  - animal, methods of preservation and study, 75
  - vegetable, 76
- Parenchymatous degeneration, 60
  - inflammations of viscera, 110
- Parietal thrombi, 51
- Paris green poisoning, lesions of, 548
- Parotid gland, inflammation of, 373
  - gland, parasites of, 374
  - gland, tumors of, 374
- Parovarium, cysts of, 430
- Pathogenous bacteria, 80, 81, 82
- Pathological tissues, preservation of, 40
- Pearls, epithelial, in epithelioma, 148
- Pelvis of kidney, examination of, 24
- Penis, calcification of, 436
  - condyloma of, 436
  - enlargements of, 435
  - hemorrhage of, 435
  - inflammation of, 435
  - injuries of, 435
  - malformations of, 434
  - method of removal from body 29
  - ossification of, 436
  - tumors of, 436
  - ulcers of, 436
- Periarteritis, 271
- Peribronchitis in acute phthisis, 244
  - in chronic phthisis, 247
- Pericarditis, 255
  - tubercular, 256
- Pericardium, adhesions of, 256
  - calcification of, 264
  - dropsy of, 254
  - extravasation of blood in, 254
  - gas in, 255
  - hemorrhage of, 254
  - inflammation of, 255
  - injuries of, 254
  - method of opening, 18
  - perforation of, 254
  - serum in, 18
  - thickenings of, 18
  - tumors of, 256
- Perihepatitis, 350
- Perimetritis, 417
- Perinephritis, 392
- Periosteum, inflammation of, see periostitis, 451
- Periostitis, acute, simple, 451
  - fibrous, 452
  - infective, micrococci of, 80
  - ossifying, 452
  - suppurative, 451
  - syphilitic, 452
  - tubercular, 453
- Periphlebitis, 282
- Perisplenitis, 365
- Peritoneum, inflammation of, see peritonitis, 322
  - malformations of, 322
  - parasites of, 322
  - structure of, 321
  - tumors of, 329
- Peritonitis, acute, 322
  - acute cellular, 323
  - acute exudative, 324
  - chronic adhesive, 326

- Peritonitis, chronic cellular, 325  
 chronic exudative, 328  
 chronic, with serum, fibrin,  
 and pus, 328  
 chronic, with thickening of  
 peritoneum, 329  
 hemorrhagic, 328  
 tubercular, 329
- Pernicious anæmia, 528
- Petechiæ, 50
- Pharyngitis, catarrhal, 298  
 croupous, 298  
 submucous, 298
- Pharynx, examination of, in children,  
 38  
 inflammation of, 298  
 lupus of, 299  
 malformations of, 298  
 removal and examination of,  
 22  
 tumors of, 301  
 ulcerations of, 299
- Phimosis, 435
- Phlebectasia, 280
- Phlebitis, 282  
 syphilitic, 283  
 tubercular, 282
- Phleboliths, 52, 281
- Phosphates in vesical calculi, 400
- Phosphorus poisoning, lesions of, 546
- Phthisis, acute, 243  
 chronic, 245
- Pia mater, collection of serum in, 10  
 mater, examination of, 10  
 mater, fatty degeneration of cells  
 along vessels of, 166  
 mater, hemorrhage and hyperæmia  
 of, 163  
 mater, inflammation of, see menin-  
 gitis, 163  
 mater, localized thickenings of, 162  
 mater, method of preserving, 13  
 mater, œdema of, 163  
 mater, opacities of, 10  
 mater, Pacchionian bodies of, 162  
 mater, parasites and pigmentation  
 of, 171  
 mater, structure of, 161  
 mater, tumors of, 171  
 mater spinalis, lesions of, 191
- Picric acid, use of, for decalcifying, 40  
 acid, use of, in preserving sedi-  
 ments, casts, etc., 42
- Pigment in blood, 56, 57
- Pigmentation of lymph-glands, 287  
 of tissues, 64
- Pin-worm, 72
- Pineal gland, 174
- Pituitary body, 175
- Pityriasis versicolor, fungus of, 77
- Placenta, amyloid degeneration of, 434  
 apoplexy of, 433  
 cysts of, 434  
 fatty degeneration of, 434  
 hemorrhage of, 433
- Placenta, inflammation of, see placen-  
 titis, 433
- Placentitis, 433
- Pleura, hemorrhage in, 208  
 inflammation of, see pleurisy,  
 208  
 tumors of, 216
- Pleural cavities, examination of, 20, 37  
 cavities, method of determin-  
 ing presence of air in, 17  
 cavities, serum in, as a result  
 of decomposition, 20
- Pleurisy, acute, 209  
 chronic, 215  
 dry, 209  
 with effusion, 209  
 with production of serum,  
 fibrin, and pus, 213  
 subacute, 209  
 tubercular, 215
- Plexiform neuroma, 138
- Pneumonia, broncho-, 232  
 diffuse, in acute phthisis,  
 243  
 diffuse, in chronic phthisis,  
 246  
 interstitial, 235  
 interstitial, in chronic  
 phthisis, 246  
 lobar acute, 235  
 lobar, micrococci in, 80, 82,  
 228  
 of heart disease, 231  
 secondary and complicat-  
 ing, 230  
 syphilitic, 236
- Poisoning, lesions of, by alcohol, 551  
 lesions of, by aconite, 553  
 lesions of, by aloes, 550  
 lesions of, by arsenic, 547  
 lesions of, by belladonna, 553  
 lesions of, by cantharides,  
 550  
 lesions of, by carbolic acid,  
 551  
 lesions of, by carbonic acid,  
 553  
 lesions of, by carbonic ox-  
 ide, 553  
 lesions of, by chloral hy-  
 drate, 553  
 lesions of, by chloroform,  
 552  
 lesions of, by colchicum, 550  
 lesions of, by colocynth, 550  
 lesions of, by conium, 553  
 lesions of, by copper, 549  
 lesions of, by corrosive sub-  
 limate, 549  
 lesions of, by croton oil, 550  
 lesions of, by digitalis, 553  
 lesions of, by elaterium, 550  
 lesions of, by ether, 552  
 lesions of, by gamboge, 550  
 lesions of, by hellebore, 550



- Poisoning, lesions of, by hydrochloric acid, 545  
 lesions of, by hydrocyanic acid, 551  
 lesions of, by indigo-sulphate, 544  
 lesions of, by jalap, 550  
 lesions of, by lead, 549  
 lesions of, by lobelia infla a, 553  
 lesions of, by nitric acid, 544  
 lesions of, by nitro-benzole, 551  
 lesions of, by nux vomica, 553  
 lesions of, by opium, 550  
 lesions of, by oxalic acid, 545  
 lesions of, by phosphorus, 546  
 lesions of, by potash, 545  
 lesions of, by potassium cyanide, 551  
 lesions of, by potassium nitrate, 546  
 lesions of, by savin, 550  
 lesions of, by scammony, 550  
 lesions of, by Scheele's green, 548  
 lesions of, by soda, 545  
 lesions of, by stramonium, 553  
 lesions of, by strychnia, 553  
 lesions of, by sulphuric acid, 543  
 lesions of, by tartar emetic, 550  
 lesions of, by tartaric acid, 545  
 lesions of, by turpentine, 550  
 lesions of, by vegetable irritants, 550  
 lesions of, by veratria, 550  
 general considerations on autopsies in cases of, 32, 543
- Poliomyelitis anterior, 195
- Polypi of mucous membranes, fibrous, 122  
 of mucous membranes, myxomatous, 124  
 of mucous membranes, sarcomatous, 131
- Porencephalie, 184
- Portal vein, dilatation of, 337  
 vein, embolism of, 336  
 vein, examination of, 27  
 vein, inflammation of, 336  
 vein, rupture of, 337  
 vein, thrombosis of, 336
- Posterior spinal sclerosis, 196
- Post-mortem changes in internal organs, 26  
 cooling of body, 5  
 distribution of blood in body, 9  
 elevation of temperature, 6  
 examinations, external inspection, 4-8  
 examinations, internal, order to follow, 8  
 examinations, method of making, 3-39  
 fractures, 8  
 heart-clots, 19, 269  
 lividity, 4  
 putrefaction, 5  
 stiffening of body, 6  
 wounds, 8
- Potash poisoning, lesions of, 545
- Potassium cyanide poisoning, lesions of, 551  
 nitrate poisoning, lesions of, 546
- Potatoes, sterilized, for cultivating bacteria, 92
- Pregnancy, extrauterine, 432
- Preservation and hardening of tissues, 40, 41, 44, 45  
 and hardening of organs in poisoning cases, 31, 548  
 of tumors, 120
- Prickle-cells in epithelioma, 147
- Proglottides of tape-worms, 67
- Prostate, atrophy of, 443  
 concretions in, 444  
 hypertrophy of, 443  
 inflammations of, 443  
 parasites of, 444  
 preservation of, 29  
 removal of, 29  
 tumors of, 444
- Protozoa, 66
- Psammoma, 131, 161
- Pseudo-hermaphrodites, 405  
 hypertrophy of muscle, 479  
 leukæmia, 530
- Psorospermia of liver, 66
- Pulmonary arteries, aneurism of, 277  
 arteries, malformations of, 256
- Purpura hemorrhagica, 531
- Puerperal fever, bacteria in, 80  
 metritis and endometritis, 417
- Purulent infection, see pyæmia, 512
- Pus, blue, bacteria of, 81  
 cells in blood, 57  
 formation of, in inflammation, 98, 99
- Putrefaction after death, 5, 15, 85
- Pyæmia, bacteria of, 80, 513  
 lesions of, 512
- Pyelitis, micrococci in, 80

- Pyelo-nephritis, acute, 388  
     chronic, 389  
     species of bacteria in, 82  
 Pyo-pneumothorax, 313  
 Pyo-salpinx, 431  
  
 Rabies, 517  
 Rachitis, 462  
 Ranula, 119, 374  
 Ray-fungus, 77  
 Rectocele vaginalis, 408  
 Rectum, inflammation of, 319  
 Recto-vaginal fistulæ, 409  
 Relapsing fever, 494  
     fever, bacteria of, 85, 495  
 Renal calculi, 392  
 Respiratory system, lesions of, 205  
 Rhabdonema strongyloides, 75  
 Rhabdomyoma, 137  
 Rhexis, hemorrhage by, 49  
 Rickets, 462  
 Rigor mortis, absence of, in foetuses  
     before term, 7  
     mortis, nature and cause of, 6  
     order of occurrence and continuance of, 6, 7  
 Ring-worm fungus, 76  
 Rod bacteria, characters of, 81  
 Rosanilin, use of, in staining bacteria, 89  
 Round-worms, 71  
  
 Saccharomyces albicans, 77  
 Salivary glands, lesions of, 373  
 Salpingitis, 431  
 Sarcina ventriculi, 81  
 Sarcoma, alveolar, 130  
     angio-, 129  
     cysto-, 131  
     general characters of, 124  
     lympho-, 127  
     melano-, 127  
     myeloid or giant-celled, 127  
     myxomatodes, 131  
     osteo-, 129  
     round-celled, 126  
     spindle-celled, 125  
 Savin poisoning, lesions of, 550  
 Scammony poisoning, lesions of, 550  
 Scars and tattoo marks, 8  
 Scheele's green poisoning, lesions of, 548  
 Scirrhus carcinoma, 151  
 Sclerosis of brain, 182  
     of spinal cord, 193, 196  
 Scolex of tape-worm, 67  
 Scorbutus, lesions of, 531  
 Scrofula, inflammation of lymph-glands in, 238  
 Scrotum, lesions of, 437  
 Scurvy, 531  
 Secondary degenerations in spinal cord, 192  
 Section-cutting, 44  
  
 Seminal vesicles, 442  
 Septicæmia, see pyæmia, 512  
 Septo-pyæmia, see pyæmia, 512  
 Serum in pleural cavities from post-mortem changes, 20  
 Sinus, longitudinal of dura mater, examination of, 10, 13  
 Skull, base of, examination of, 10  
     method of opening, 9  
 Small intestines, examination and lesions of, 16, 315  
     pox, micrococci in, 81  
 Soda poisoning, lesions of, 545  
 Sodium chloride, use of, in studying fresh tissues, 40  
 Softening of brain, 12, 176  
     of internal organs, post-mortem, 16  
 Solitary tubercles of brain, 185  
 Spermatocoele, 439  
 Sphero-bacteria, 79  
 Spina bifida, 199  
 Spinal cord, ascending gray degeneration of, 193  
     cord, cysts of, 198  
     cord, secondary degenerations of, 192  
     cord, descending gray degeneration of, 193  
     cord, examination of, 14, 16  
     cord, gummata of, 198  
     cord, hemorrhage of, 192  
     cord, inflammation of, 194  
     cord, injuries of, 192  
     cord, lesions of, 190, 192  
     cord, malformations of, 199  
     cord, pia mater of, post-mortem changes in, 14, 191  
     cord, preservation of, 14  
     cord, sclerosis of, 196  
     cord, tubercles of, 198  
     cord, tumors of, 198  
 Spirillum rugula, 84  
     serpens, 84  
 Spiro-bacteria, 84  
 Spirochæte denticola, 83  
     Obermeieri, 85, 494  
     plicatilis, 85  
 Spleen, abscess of, 363  
     alterations of, in leukæmia, 365  
     amyloid degeneration of, 366  
     atrophy of, 366  
     changes in blood content of, 361  
     displacements of, 368  
     examination, size, weight, etc., of, 25, 38  
     general relations of the vascular system, 360  
     infarctions of, 361  
     inflammations of, see splenitis, 362  
     malformations of, 367  
     parasites of, 367

- Spleen, pigmentation of, 367  
 rupture of, 360  
 sago, 366  
 tumors of, 367  
 waxy degeneration of, 366  
 wounds of, 360
- Splenic fever, 82, 524
- Splenitis, acute hyperplastic, 362  
 chronic indurative, 363  
 peri-, 365  
 suppurative, 363  
 syphilitic, 364  
 tubercular, 365
- Spores of bacteria, destruction of, 93
- Sputum, examination of, for bacilli of tuberculosis, 509
- Staining, methods of, 44
- Sterilizer, steam, for bacteria, 92
- Stomacace, 294
- Stomach, attachments and position of, 16, 17  
 calcification of, 312  
 dilatation of, 309  
 erosions, hemorrhagic, of, 308  
 hemorrhage of, 303  
 inflammation of, see gastritis, 304  
 injuries and rupture of, 303  
 malformations of, 302  
 opening, removal, and preservation of, 27  
 post-mortem changes in, 303  
 tumors of, 309  
 ulcers of, 306, 309  
 waxy degeneration of, 312
- Stomatitis, catarrhal and croupous, 294  
 syphilitic and tubercular, 295  
 ulcerosa, 294
- Stomatite ulcero-membraneuse, 294
- Stramonium poisoning, lesions of, 553
- Strangulation, lesions in, 8, 539
- Strawberry marks, 139
- Streptococcus, 80
- Strongylus gigas, 72  
 longevaginatus, 72
- Struma, 375
- Strychnia poisoning, lesion of, 553
- Subclavian artery, stenosis of, by atheroma of aorta, 278
- Sublimate, corrosive, poisoning, lesions of, 549
- Sublingual gland, inflammation of, 373
- Submaxillary gland, inflammation of, 373  
 tumors of, 374
- Suffocation, lesions in death by, 538
- Sulphuric acid poisoning, lesions of, 543
- Sunstroke, lesions of, 535
- Suppuration, micrococci in, 81
- Supra-renal capsules, lesions of, 377, 378  
 capsules, removal, size, etc., of, 23, 24, 25, 38
- Syphilitic inflammation, 103  
 inflammation of mucous membrane, 109  
 inflammation, bacteria of, 80, 105
- Tabes dorsalis, 196
- Tænia cucumerina, 71  
 echinococcus, 68  
 flavopuntata, 71  
 madagascariensis, 71  
 mediocanellata, 68  
 nana, 71  
 saginata, 68  
 solium, 67
- Tape-worms, see tænia, 67
- Tartar emetic poisoning, lesions of, 550
- Tartaric acid poisoning, lesions of, 545
- Tattoo marks and scars, 8
- Temperature, change of, in body after death, 5
- Teratoid tumors, teratoma, 118, 252
- Terminal arteries, 53
- Testicles, atrophy of, 438  
 cysts of, 442  
 inflammation of, see orchitis, 439  
 malformations of, 437  
 method of removal and preservation of, 29  
 parasites of, 442  
 tumors of, 441
- Thoma's microtomes, 40, 44
- Thorax, method of examination, 15, 17
- Thread-worms, 72
- Thrombi, bacteria in infectious, 52  
 canalization of, 52  
 compositions, varieties, changes, and effects of, 52  
 obliterating, 51  
 organization of, 52
- Thrush, 77
- Thymus gland in children, 37
- Thyroid gland, amyloid degeneration of, 375  
 gland, colloid degeneration of, 375  
 gland, goitre, 375  
 gland, hyperæmia and inflammation of, 375  
 gland of young children, 38  
 gland, parasites of, 376  
 gland, struma of, 375  
 gland, tumors of, 375
- Tissues, method of preservation of, 39, 41
- Tongue, cysts of, 297  
 hypertrophy of, 296  
 inflammation of, see glossitis, 296  
 malformations of, 296  
 tumors of, 297
- Trachea, inflammation of, see tracheitis, 205  
 malformations of, 205



- Trachea, of children, 38  
 preservation of, 22  
 tumors of, 207
- Transudation, nature of, 51
- Trematode worms, 67
- Trichina spiralis, 58, 73, 74
- Trichocephalus dispar, 72
- Trichomonas vaginalis, 66
- Trichophyton tonsurans, 76
- Tubercle bacilli, 83, 504, 507, 508, 509, 511  
 granula, 103  
 tissue, 102, 506
- Tubercles, miliary, 103, 506  
 solitary, of brain, 185
- Tubercular inflammation, 102, 103
- Tuberculosis, acute miliary of lung, 237  
 bacillus of, 83, 504, 507, 508, 509, 511  
 characters and causes of, 504  
 chronic miliary of lungs, 241  
 general and localized, 505  
 lesions of, 506
- Tubes, Fallopian, lesions of, 430  
 Fallopian, position, shape and dimensions of, 31
- Tubal pregnancy, 432
- Tumors, benign, 114  
 cachexia from, 115  
 causes of, 116  
 characters of, in general, 112  
 classification of, 117  
 complex, congenital forms of, 118  
 complex, nomenclature of, 120  
 Cohnheim's hypothesis of origin of, 116  
 degenerations of, 113  
 epithelial, 140  
 heterologous and homologous, 112  
 malignancy of, 114  
 metastases of, 114  
 methods of preservation of, 120  
 modes of growth of, 113  
 parts of, best adapted for study, 117  
 shapes of, 113  
 special forms of, 121  
 teratoid, 118  
 vessels of, 112
- Turpentine poisoning, lesions of, 550
- Typhlitis, 318
- Typhoid fever, 485  
 fever, bacteria of, 80, 83, 491  
 fever, complicating and secondary lesions of, 489  
 fever, hemorrhages and infarctions in, 488  
 fever, intestinal lesions of, 485
- Typhoid fever, mesenteric glands in, 488  
 fever, peritonitis in, 488  
 fever, spleen, lesions of, in, 488
- Typhus fever, lesions of, 493
- Ulcerative endocarditis, 80, 265
- Umbilical cord, examination of, 35
- Urachus, 395
- Urates in vesical calculi, 400
- Ureter, examination of, 23
- Urethra, dilatations of, 401  
 examination of, 29  
 inflammations of, see urethritis, 403  
 malformations of, 401  
 perforation of, 402  
 preservation of, 29  
 prolapse of mucous membrane of, 504  
 rupture and strictures of, 402  
 tumors and ulcers of, 404  
 wounds of, 402
- Urethritis, 403, 404
- Urinary apparatus, lesions of, 379
- Uric acid in vesical calculi, 400
- Uterus, amyloid degeneration of, 418  
 ante-flexion of, 412  
 anteversion of, 412  
 changes during menstruation, 30  
 changes in size and position of, 411, 412  
 cysts of, 423  
 dilatation of, 411  
 elevation of, 413  
 enlarged condition after pregnancy, 30  
 enlargement of, 411  
 fatty degeneration of, 418  
 hematocoele of, 415  
 hemorrhage and hyperæmia of, 414  
 herniæ of, 413  
 inflammation, see metritis, 415, 416, 417  
 inversion of, 413  
 latero-flexion of, 412  
 latero-version of, 413  
 malformations of, 410  
 obliteration of cavity of, 411  
 parasites of, 423  
 perforation of, 414  
 polypi of, 419  
 prolapse of, 413  
 retroflexion and retroversion of, 412  
 rupture of, 414  
 size, position, removal, etc., of, 29, 30, 31  
 tumors of, 419  
 ulcerations of, 418  
 versions of, 412  
 waxy degeneration of, 418

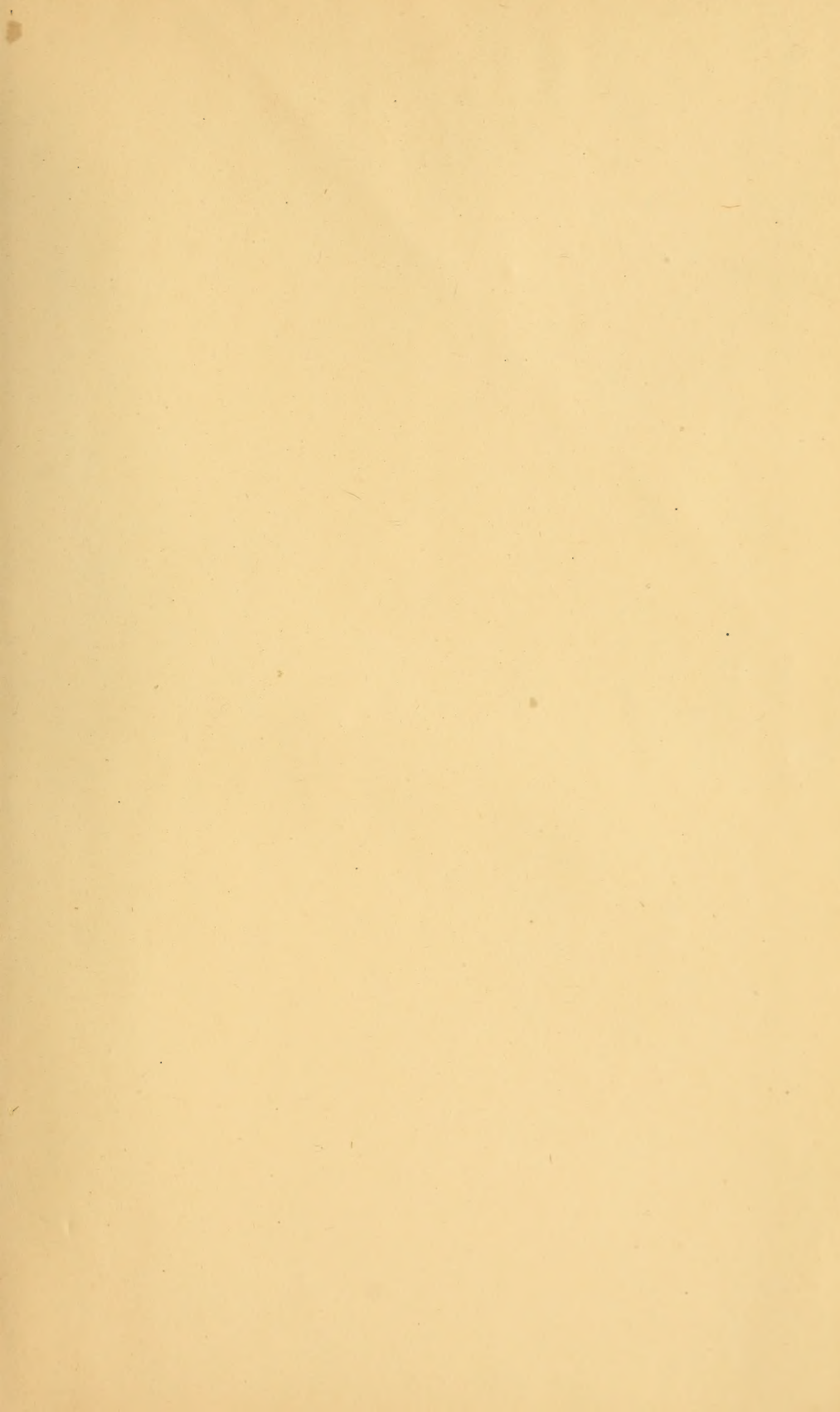
- Vagina, cysts of, 410  
   dilatations of, 408  
   fistulæ of, 409  
   gangrene of, 409  
   herniæ of, 408  
   inflammation of, see vaginitis, 409  
   malformations of, 407  
   parasites of, 410  
   perforations of, 408  
   prolapse of, 408  
   removal, preservation, etc., of, 30, 31  
   tumors of, 410  
   wounds of, 408  
 Vaginitis, 409  
 Valves of heart, examination, removal, preservation, etc., of, 18, 19, 20  
   of heart, lesions of, see endocarditis, 264  
 Varicose aneurism, 279  
 Variola, micrococci of, 81  
 Vegetable parasites, 76  
 Vein, portal, examination of, 27  
   portal, lesions of, 336  
   stones, 52  
 Veins, animal parasites in, 283  
   dilatation of, 280  
   inflammation of, see phlebitis, 282  
   perforations of, 282  
   rupture of, 281  
   tumors of, 283  
   wounds of, 281  
 Ventricles of brain, examination of, 12  
   of brain, lesions of, 171, 173, 174  
   of heart, examination of, 19, 20  
   of heart, lesions of, see endocarditis, 264  
 Veratria poisoning, lesions of, 550  
 Vermiform appendix, lesions of, 319  
 Vernix caseosa, 35  
 Vertebrae, examination of, 14  
 Vesical calculi, 400  
 Vesico-vaginal fistulæ, 409  
 Vesiculæ seminales, examination and preservation of, 29  
   seminales, lesions of, 442  
 Violet-methyl, use of in staining amyloid, 62  
 Viscera, inflammations of, in general, 110, 111  
 Vulva, changes in size of, 408  
   cysts of, 407  
   examination and removal of, 30  
   gangrene of, 406  
   hemorrhage and hyperæmia of, 405  
   inflammation of, 406  
   lupus of, 406  
   malformations of, 405  
   œdema of, 406  
   tumors of, 406  
 Warts, sarcomatous, 131  
 Wandering kidneys, 380  
 Water test for aëration of lungs, 38  
   test for sufficiency of heart valves, 18  
 Waxy degeneration, 61  
 Weigert's methods of staining nerve-tissue, 203  
 Whip-worm, 72  
 Wickersheimer's fluid, formula and use of, 45  
 Worms, 67  
 Wounds, examination of, 8  
   healing of, 100  
 Xanthin calculi, 401  
 Yeasts, 76  
 Yellow fever, 500  
 Zooglœa colonies of bacteria, 78  
 Zymogenous bacteria, 80, 81, 82



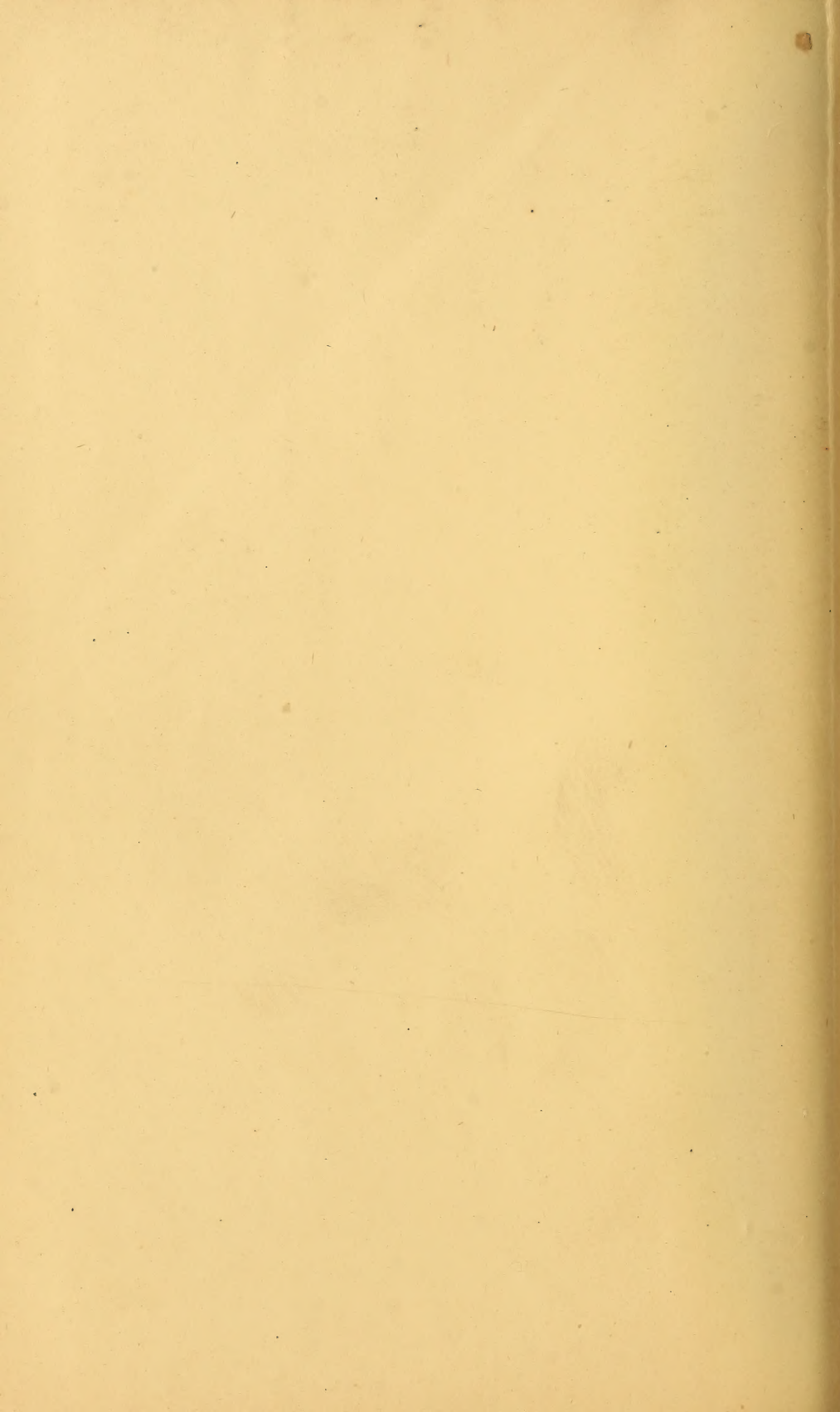
















LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 007 635 441 8

